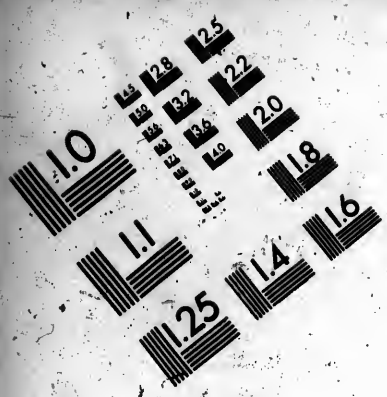
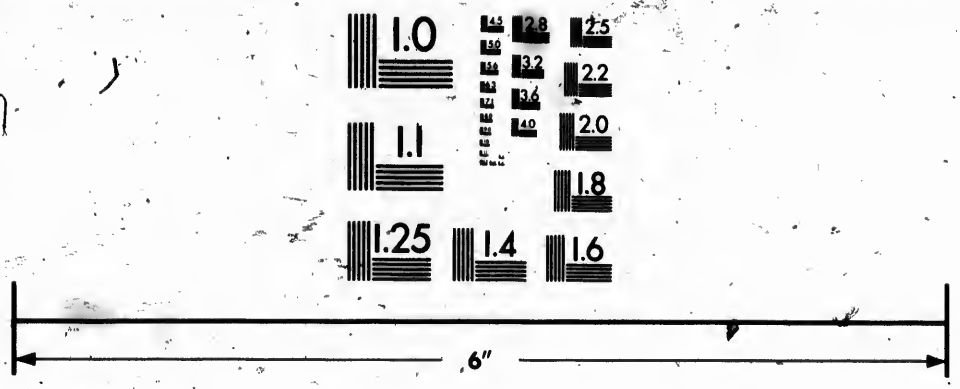
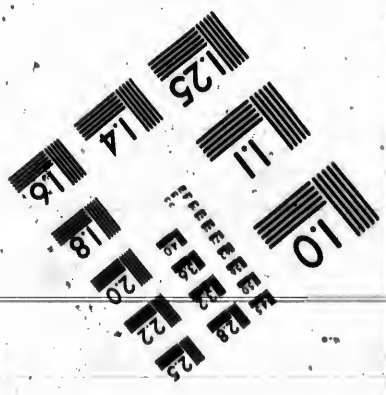


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.

CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.

Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1987

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

- ☐ Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- ☐ Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☑ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- ☑ Showthrough/ Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

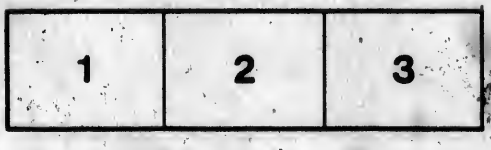
D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol ⟶ (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▽ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole ⟶ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▽ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

THE NEW

PRIMARY LATIN BOOK

FOR

ELEMENTARY AND ADVANCED CLASSES IN HIGH SCHOOLS,

CONTAINING

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS, AUTHORS, AND PROSE COMPOSITION.

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.,

Lecturer on Greek, University College, Toronto,

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, B.A.,

Associate Professor of Greek, Victoria College, Toronto.

TORONTO:

WILLIAM BRIGGS.

1900

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred, by WILLIAM BRIGGS, at the Department of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

THE present edition of the PRIMARY LATIN BOOK appears in response to instructions from the Education Department of Ontario, which desires that the authorized text-books in Latin shall retain, unchanged and unrevised, the Introductory Lessons of the former text-books, and shall also include the selections from Nepos and Cæsar prescribed for matriculation by the University of Toronto, together with annotations, vocabularies and exercises in prose composition and sight translation based on these selections.

The authors regret that it has proved impossible for the present to secure permission to revise the Introductory Lessons also. One result is a difference between the old and the new portion of the book in the marking of the "hidden quantities" of certain words—a matter on which much new light has been thrown since the first appearance of the PRIMARY LATIN BOOK in 1892. The chief differences are in the words cĕssī, clăssis and jŭssī; fīrmus, mīlle, mīllia, relĭctus, quārtus, vāllum and vāstō, which, it is now fairly established, are to be marked as above.

TORONTO, *August*, 1900.

CONTENTS.

PART		PAGE
I.	Introductory Lessons and Exercises	1
II.	Preparatory Lessons in Continuous Reading	115
III.	Inflection—	
	I. Paradigms of Inflection	136
	II. Epitome of Rules and Peculiarities	170
IV.	Selections from Nepos and Cæsar, with Annotations—	
	Nepos: Themistocles, Aristides, Hannibal	185
	Cæsar: De Bello Gallico, Bk, IV., Bk. V. 1-23	201
	Annotations on the Selections	229
V.	Latin Prose Composition and Translation at Sight—	
	I. Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition.	285
	II. Exercises in Translation at Sight	448
VI.	Vocabularies and Index—	
	I. Latin-English Vocabulary	466
	II. English-Latin Vocabulary	528
	III. Index	559

PART I.

Introductory Lessons and Exercises.

LESSON		
Introductory.	—Pronunciation, Syllabication, Accent	1
I.	Present Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	3
II.	Nominative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	5
III.	Accusative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	6
IV.	Genitive Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	7
V.	Dative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. *Ad* with Accusative	8
VI.	Imperfect Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	10
VII.	Ablative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. *Cum, in, ā, ab,* with Ablative	11

LESSON		PAGE
VIII.	Vocative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. Nouns in *er* and *ir* of Declension II. Use of *-que*	13
IX.	Nouns in *um* of Declension II. Gender	15
X.	Adjectives of Declensions I. and II.	16
XI.	Future Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	18
XII.	Masculine and Feminine Nouns of Declension III.	19
XIII.	Perfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations	20
XIV.	Neuter Nouns of Declension III.	22
XV.	Pluperfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations.	24
XVI.	Prepositions *ā, ab, ad, cum, dē, ex, in, inter, per, post, propter, sine, trāns*	25
XVII.	Future Perfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations	26
XVIII.	Adjectives of Declension III.	28
XIX.	Complementary Infinitive (Active Voice)	29
XX.	Nouns of Declension IV.	30
XXI.	Perfect Indicative Passive of all Conjugations	32
XXII.	Ablative of Agent with *ā, ab*	34
XXIII.	Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of all Conjugations	36
XXIV.	Nouns of Declension V. Ordinal Numerals	38
XXV.	Ablative of Point of Time. Accusative of Duration of Time	39
XXVI.	Nouns of Declension III. with *I*-stems	40
XXVII.	Present, Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of Conjugations I. and II.	42
XXVIII.	Regular Comparison of Adjectives	43
XXIX.	Indicative and Present Infinitive of *sum*. Predicate Adjectives	44
XXX.	Dative with Adjectives	45
XXXI.	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	46
XXXII.	Present Indicative Active and Passive of Conjugations III. and IV.	48
XXXIII.	Adjectives with Genitive in *-ius*	49
XXXIV.	Imperfect and Future Indicative Active and Passive of Conjugations III. and IV.	50
XXXV.	Cardinal Numerals	51
XXXVI.	Active Periphrastic Conjugation	52
XXXVII.	Use of *Mille*. Accusative of Extent of Space	53
XXXVIII.	Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs	55
XXXIX.	Relative Pronoun.	56

LESSON		PAGE
XL.	Passive Periphrastic Conjugation	58
XLI.	Conjunctions *quod, dum, ubi, postquam, simul atque, ut*, with the Indicative	59
XLII.	Personal Pronouns, *ego, tū, is*	61
XLIII.	Dative of Agent with Gerundives	62
XLIV.	Reflexive Pronoun, *suī*. Possessive Pronouns	63
XLV.	Perfect Participle Passive	65
XLVI.	Verbs in *-iō* of Conjugation III.	67
XLVII.	Demonstrative Pronouns, *hic, ille, is*	68
XLVIII.	Present Participle Active. Present Infinitive Passive	69
XLIX.	Demonstrative Pronouns, *ipse, idem*	71
L.	Ablative Absolute	72
LI.	Interrogative Pronouns	74
LII.	Adverbs; Formation and Comparison. *Quam* with Superlative	76
LIII.	Deponent Verbs	78
LIV.	Ablative of Specification. *Quam* with Comparative	79
LV.	Accusative and Infinitive	81
LVI.	Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic	84
LVII.	Present and Perfect Infinitive Passive. Infinitives of Deponents. Dative of Purpose	85
LVIII.	Ablative of Manner and Accompanying Circumstances	87
LIX.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive of Result	88
LX.	Pluperfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive of *sum*. *Cum* with Subjunctive	89
LXI.	*Possum*	91
LXII.	Perfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive Passive. Subjunctive of Indirect Question	92
LXIII.	*Volō, nōlō, mālō*	94
LXIV.	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Narration	95
LXV.	*Ferō*	97
LXVI.	Subjunctive of Purpose	98
LXVII.	*Eō, fīō*	100
LXVIII.	Gerund	101
LXIX.	Gerundive Construction	102
LXX.	Indefinite Pronouns	104
Supplementary Exercises		106
Review Exercises in Accidence		110

PART V.

I. Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition.

CHAPTER		PAGE
Introductory.—	Order of Words, Order of Clauses, Concords	285
I.	The Accusative and Infinitive	291
II.	Complementary Infinitive	295
III.	Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose)	298
IV.	Consecutive Clauses (Clauses of Result)	302
V.	Questions, Direct and Indirect	305
VI.	The Present and Perfect Participles	309
VII.	The Ablative Absolute	313
VIII.	Verbs Completed by the Dative, the Genitive or the Ablative. The Impersonal Passive	316
IX.	Conditional Sentences	320
X.	Clauses of Concession. Clauses of Proviso. Conditional Clauses of Comparison	324
XI.	Uses of the Accusative	327
XII.	Uses of the Dative	331
XIII.	Uses of the Genitive	336
XIV.	Uses of the Ablative	341
XV.	Verbal Nouns—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine	348
XVI.	Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles	352
XVII.	Expressions of Place and Time	355
XVIII.	Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	359
XIX.	Verbs of Fearing. Uses of *Quīn* and *Quōminus*	363
XX.	Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission	366
XXI.	Causal Sentences. Uses of *Cum*	369
XXII.	Temporal Clauses	373
XXIII.	Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns	377
XXIV.	Indefinite Pronouns	382
XXV.	The Relative Pronoun	386
XXVI.	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Narration	390
XXVII.	Tenses of the Indicative	394
XXVIII.	Indirect Narration	398
XXIX.	Different Forms of the Noun Clause	406
XXX.	Continuous Narrative Prose	410

OSITION.

PAGE
. . 285
. . 291
. . 295
. . 298
. . 302
. . 305
. . 309
. . 313
or the
. . 316
. . 320
tional
. . 324
. . 327
. . 331
. . 336
. . 341
. . 348
. . 352
. . 355
e . 359
. . 363
. . 366
. . 369
. . 373
e Pro-
. . 377
. . 382
. . 386
. . 390
. . 394
. . 398
. . 406
. . 410

PRIMARY LATIN BOOK.

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

I. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.[1]

Vowels.[2]

ă is sounded like the first *a* in *aha, papa.*
ā " " second *a* in *aha, papa.*
ĕ " " *e* in *met.*
ē " " *e* in *they.*
ĭ " " *i* in *sit.*
ī " " *i* in *machine.*
ŏ " " *o* in *obey*, or the first *o* in *oho.*
ō " " *o* in *holy*, or the second *o* in *oho.*
ŭ " " *u* in *put*, or *oo* in *foot.*
ū " " *oo* in *boot.*

1. The method of pronouncing Latin given above is called the Roman method. The English method is as follows:

The vowels are sounded as in English (long *u* having the sound of *you*), but long vowels are often sounded as short, especially in final syllables, and before two consonants (*e.g.*, *mēnsis* as *mĕnsis*); and short vowels are often sounded as long, especially before another vowel (or *h*), and before a single consonant, either in the first syllable of dissyllabic words, or in the unaccented syllables of other words (*e.g.*, *nihil* as *nīhil*, *sine* as *sīne*, *populus* as *popŭlus*).

The diphthongs are sounded as follows: *ae* and *oe* as *ee*; *au* as *aw*; *eu* as *you*; *ei* and *ui* as *eye*.

The consonants are sounded as in English: *c* and *g* as *s* and *j* before *e* and *i* sounds, otherwise as *k* and *g* hard; *s* like *z* at the end of a word, and occasionally in other cases through the influence of English (*e.g.*, *causa*); *t* and *c* before *i* (unless preceded by *s*, *t* or *x*), as *sh*.

2. Vowels before *ns*, *nf*, *gn* and *j*, are regularly long.

Diphthongs.

In diphthongs both vowels should be sounded in their proper order.

ae	is sounded much like the		*ai*	in	*pain.*[1]
au	"	"	"	*ou*	in *our, house.*
oe	"	"	"	*wa*	in *wade.*[1]
ei	"	"	"	*ei*	in *vein.*
eu	"	"	"	*ew*	in *blew.*
ui	"	"	"	*ive*	in *weep.*

Consonants.

Consonants are for the most part pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:

c	is always sounded as in		*come,*	never as in	*cent.*
g	"	"	in *game,*	"	" *gem.*
s	"	"	in *this,*	"	" *his.*
t	"	"	in *native,*	"	" *nation.*
x	"	"	in *axe,*	"	" *exact.*
j	"	"	*y* in *yet.*		
v	"	"	*w* in *want.*		

n before *c, g, qu, x,* is sounded as *ng,* or as *n* in *ankle.*

II. Syllabication.

In the following list the words in parentheses are English words to be contrasted with the Latin; in other cases the Latin and the English words to be contrasted have the same spelling, the quantity of the Latin words being marked.[2]

Diē, salvē, mīles, parēs, māne, cāre, honor, comes, cōnsūmēs, palma (*palm*), *aliēnus* (*alien*), *resistō* (*resist*), *possessiō* (*possess, possession*), *condemnō* (*condemn*), *legiōnis* (*legion*), *festīnō* (*hasten*), *nuptiālis* (*nuptial*), *auctiō* (*auction*), *dēsertor* (*deserter*), *scēna* (*scene*), *rēgnum* (*reigning*).

1. It is held by some that *ae* is sounded like *ai* in *aisle,* and *oe* like *oi* in *coin.*

2. Throughout this book, all long vowels are indicated, except in footnotes; vowels not marked are accordingly to be regarded as short.

Observation.—What can be learned from the foregoing examples, (*a*) of silent létters in Latin, (*b*) of the number of syllables in each Latin word, (*c*) of the number of sounds represented by each letter in Latin.[1]

III. Accent.

(*a*) **mo′-vēs**	**rī′-pa**	**tē′-lō**	**va′da**
an′-nus	**ī′-ter**	**ser′-vō**	**cōn′-sul**

Observation.—How are words of two syllables accented?

(*b*) **spē-rā′-mus**	**sa-lū′-tem**	**ge′-ne-ra**	**cī′-vi-tās**
vec-tī-gā′-lī	**re-dūx′-it**	**hī′-e-mēs**	**i-dō′-ne-us**
cōn-sēn′-sus	**po-ten′-tēs**	**cōn-sēn′-se-rās**	**re′-lī-quī**

Observation.—How are words of more than two syllables accented, (*a*) when the vowel of the second last syllable is long or precedes two consonants; (*b*) when the vowel of the second last syllable is short and does not precede two consonants?[2]

LESSON I.

(*a*) **Oppūgnāmus**, *we attack.*	**Jubēmus**, *we order.*
Vulnerāmus, *we wound.*	**Removēmus**, *we remove.*
Convocāmus, *we call together.*	**Obtinēmus**, *we occupy.*
(*b*) **Oppūgnant**, *they attack.*	**Jubent**, *they order.*
Vulnerant, *they wound.*	**Removent**, *they remove.*
(*c*) **Vulnerat**, *he, she* or *it, wounds.*	**Obtinet**, *he, she* or *it, occupies.*
Convocās, *you call together.*	**Removēs**, *you remove.*

(When speaking to one person.)

---

1. Every letter in a Latin word should be sounded, and given always the same sound, except in the case of the vowels, which have each two sounds, a long and a short.

In dividing Latin words into syllables, place at the beginning of each syllable all the consonants which, with the following vowel or diphthong, could be pronounced at the beginning of a word; *e.g.*, *a-sper*, *ser-vo*, *mit-to*. In compounds, however, the several parts are kept distinct; *e.g.*, *ab-est*, not *a-best*.

2. Two exceptions should be noted: (i.) When the two consonants consist of *r* (or *l*) preceded by a different consonant, the word is accented as though there were but one consonant; *e.g.*, *ar′bitror*, *mul′tiplex*, but *impul′sus*, *vexil′lum*, *adver′to*, *incur′ro*, *contex′o*, according to the general rule. (ii.) *x* is treated as a double consonant; *e.g.*, *rex*.

(The second last syllable is called the *penult*, the third last the *antepenult*.)

Convocātis, *you call together.* **Removētis**, *you remove.*
(When speaking to more than one person.)

(*d*) **Vulnerō**, *I wound.* **Jubeō**, *I order.*
Oppūgnō, *I attack.* **Obtineō**, *I occupy.*

Observation.—How does Latin express the persons *we*, *they*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *you* and *I*, as subjects of the verb? What two classes of verb are represented? What irregularity is there in joining the personal endings to the first part?[1]

EXERCISE I.

Vocabulary.

(**āre** and **ēre** are used to indicate **-ā** and **-ē**[2] verbs respectively.)

Adequitō, āre, *ride up.*
Convocō, āre, *summon, call together.*
Habeō, ēre, *have.*
Imperō, āre, *give orders.*
Jubeō, ēre, *order.*
Nāvigō, āre, *sail.*
Obtineō, ēre, *occupy.*
Oppūgnō, āre, *attack.*
Pāreō, ēre, *be obedient.*
Parō, āre, *prepare, procure.*
Permoveō, ēre, *alarm.*
Properō, āre, *hasten.*
Removeō, ēre, *remove.*
Teneō, ēre, *hold.*
Vulnerō, āre, *wound.*

I.—1. Permovēs. 2. Tenēmus. 3. Convocant. 4. Parātis. 5. Imperāmus. 6. Jubet. 7. Pārēmus. 8. Vulnerant. 9. Habeō. 10. Jubētis. 11. Tenet. 12. Adequitant. 13. Removet. 14. Properō. 15. Oppūgnātis. 16. Obtinēs.

II.—1. They hasten. 2. He sails. 3. I hold. 4. You (*singular*) order. 5. You (*plural*) have. 6. We prepare. 7. She has. 8. I occupy. 9. He wounds. 10. It alarms. 11. They remove. 12. She is obedient. 13. We give orders. 14. You (*plural*) alarm. 15. They attack. 16. You (*singular*) ride up.

---

1. CAUTION.—It must not be supposed that the ending is *-amus* or *-ant*, *-emus* or *-ent*. Instead, the same endings, *-mus*, *-nt*, etc., are added to forms (representing verbal ideas) which differ in that in some cases the final letter is *a*, in others *e*. (It will be seen later that other final letters are found in the first part.) The only difference between these *a* and *e* verbs is that, before the personal ending *o*, a final *a* is dropped, while a final *e* is retained.

2. These *-a* and *-e* verbs are generally called verbs of the first and second conjugations respectively. There are in all four conjugations, or divisions of verbs according to form.

LESSON II.

(*a*) **Vulnerāmus,** *we wound* or *we are wounding.*
Jubent, *they order* or *they are ordering.*
Oppūgnat, *he attacks* or *he is attacking.*

Observation.—The twofold translation of each form, and the point of time referred to.

(*b*) **Rōmānus,** *a Roman.* **Rōmānī,** *the Romans.*
Nauta, *the sailor.* **Nautae,** *the sailors.*
Lēgātus convocat, *a lieutenant calls together.*
Lēgātī jubent, *the lieutenants order.*
Victōria permovet, *the victory alarms.*
Victōriae permovent, *victories alarm.*

Observation.—How is the plural of nouns ending in *us* and *a* formed? How are *a* and *the* expressed in Latin? The personal endings, *-t* and *-nt*, retained even when a noun is the subject, and when English does not use *he* or *they*.

EXERCISE II.

Vocabulary.

Barbarus, i, m., *barbarian.*
Belga, ae, m., *Belgian* (one of a tribe in Gaul).
Cōpia, ae, f. (in singular), *supply, abundance, plenty;* (in plural), *forces, troops.*
Exspectō, āre, *await.*
Fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
Germānus, i, m., *German.*
Gallus, i, m., *Gaul* (a native of the country called Gaul).
Lēgātus, i, m., *lieutenant.*
Nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*
Nūntiō, āre, *announce.*
Rōmānus, i, m., *Roman.*
Socius, i, m., *ally.*
Turma, ae, f. *squadron.*
Victōria, ae, f., *victory.*

I.—1. Lēgātus adequitat. 2. Fuga permovet. 3. Rōmānī exspectant. 4. Nautae properant. 5. Nūntiāmus. 6. Sociī obtinent. 7. Barbarī adequitant. 8. Germānus vulnerat. 9. Turmae oppūgnant. 10. Belgae obtinent. 11. Expectātis. 12. Jubēs. 13. Germānī habent. 14. Cōpiae oppūgnant. 15. Victōriae permovent. 16. Nauta habet.

II.—1. We are awaiting. 2. They are removing. 3. He is holding. 4. The squadrons ride up. 5. The victory alarms. 6. The allies summon. 7. The lieutenant is sailing. 8. The sailor removes. 9. You are preparing. 10. The Belgians have. 11. The forces occupy. 12. The Roman is ordering. 13. We are obedient. 14. The lieutenant is giving orders. 15. The Gauls occupy. 16. The barbarians are attacking.

LESSON III.

Victōria Rōmānōs permovet, *the victory alarms the Romans.*
Lēgātus victōriam nūntiat, *the lieutenant announces the victory.*
Cōpiae lēgātum exspectant, *the forces are awaiting the lieutenant.*
Rōmānī cōpiās exspectant, *the Romans are awaiting the forces.*

Observation.—What different forms have nouns in *us* and *a*, in the singular and the plural, when they are used as the subject, and when they are used as the object of the verb?[1] How does the order of the Latin sentences differ from that of the English?[2]

EXERCISE III.

Vocabulary.

Animus, I, m., *spirit, mind, heart.*
Captīvus, I, m., *captive.*
Comportō, āre, *bring in.*
Cōnfirmō, āre, *encourage, establish, arouse.*
Equus, I, m., *horse.*
Et, *and.*
Labiēnus, I, m., *Labienus* (a Roman's name).
Locus, I, m., *place, position, ground.*
Nūntius, I, m., *messenger, message.*
Perturbō, āre, *throw into confusion, disturb.*
Praeda, ae, f., *plunder.*
Prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
Pūgnō, āre, *fight.*
Servus, I, m., *slave.*
Superō, āre, *conquer, prevail.*
Tribūnus, I, m., *tribune* (a military officer among the Romans).

---

1. The form used as the subject is called the *Nominative Case*, that used as the object the *Accusative Case*.

2. It must not be supposed that this order is invariable in Latin, but it should be retained by the beginner until he has learned something of the causes (or at least some of the cases) of variation from the general rule. This applies to all other general rules of order, to which attention may be directed.

I.—1. Cōpiās superat. 2. Praedam comportāmus. 3. Rōmānī locum obtinent. 4. Labiēnus equōs removet. 5. Lēgātōs et tribūnōs convocās. 6. Victōriae animōs cōnfirmant. 7. Servī pūgnant. 8. Nūntium exspectat. 9. Captīvōs habētis. 10. Belgae Gallōs superant. 11. Barbarī Rōmānōs et sociōs perturbant. 12. Belgās permovet. 13. Cōpiam habeō. 14. Turma cōpiās perturbat. 15. Victōriam nūntiās. 16. Nautae lēgātum exspectant.

II.—1. The slaves are wounding the messenger. 2. The forces occupy the province. 3. The Germans conquer the Gauls. 4. The lieutenant conquers the Germans and the Belgians. 5. The tribunes await the allies. 6. You attack the place. 7. It arouses the spirit. 8. The flight alarms the barbarians. 9. The sailor announces the flight. 10. I am summoning the lieutenants. 11. The forces are awaiting the squadrons. 12. They have plenty. 13. It disturbs the hearts. 14. You (*plural*) are fighting. 15. The sailors prevail. 16. The captive is obedient.

LESSON IV.

Equōs lēgātōrum removet, *he removes the horses of the lieutenants.*

Sociōs Belgārum exspectat, *he awaits the allies of the Belgians.*

Fuga turmae animum lēgātī permovet, *the flight of the squadron alarms the mind of the lieutenant.*

Equum lēgātī removet, *he removes the lieutenant's horse.*

Observation.—How is *of* expressed in Latin? What is the position of the word translated by means of *of*, or by the English possessive ?[1]

EXERCISE IV.

Vocabulary.

Aeduus, i, m., *an Aeduan;* in plural, *the Aedui* (a tribe in Gaul).

Cibus, i, m., *food.*

Concilio, āre, *win over.*

Contineō, ēre, *hem in, restrain.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Cotta* (a Roman's name).

Dō, are, *give, grant.*

Filius, i, m., *son.*

1. This form is known as the *Genitive Case.*

Galba, ae, m., *Galba* (a Roman's name).
Inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity.*
Nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
Obsideō, ēre, *blockade, beset.*
Occupō, āre, *seize.*
Porta, ae, f., *gate.*
Probō, āre, *favor.*
Sententia, ae, f., *opinion.*
Via, ae, f., *road.*

I.—1. Rōmānī cōpiās Germānōrum superant. 2. Sententiam Cottae probāmus. 3. Sententia Labiēnī superat. 4. Inopia cibī Belgās perturbat. 5. Equum Galbae vulnerat. 6. Sociī Belgārum locum oppūgnant. 7. Nātūra locī Aeduōs continet. 8. Aeduī portās occupant. 9. Victōriae cōpiārum animōs sociōrum cōnfirmant. 10. Barbarī cōpiās parant. 11. Cōpiae Belgārum locum obsident. 12. Labiēnus cōpiam captīvōrum habet. 13. Fuga turmārum Belgās permovet. 14. Equōs lēgātōrum removet. 15. Victōriam lēgātī nūntiat.

II.—1. We are removing the horse of the lieutenant. 2. The allies of the Aeduī give food. 3. Galba's sons procure horses. 4. The victory of Galba arouses the Belgians' spirit. 5. The forces of the allies beset the roads. 6. The tribune's son has plenty of horses. 7. You are wounding the sons of Cotta and Labienus. 8. The lieutenant wins over the Belgians. 9. The Belgians are awaiting the forces of the Gauls. 10. A squadron rides up. 11. They favor the place. 12. The tribunes and the lieutenants restrain the forces. 13. We favor the opinions of the lieutenants and the tribunes. 14. Galba procures forces.

LESSON V.

(*a*) **Lēgātō victōriam nūntiat,** *he announces the victory to the lieutenant.*
Prōvinciae imperat, *he gives orders to the province.*
Cōpiīs imperat, *he gives orders to the forces.*
Sociīs praedam dōnat, *he presents the plunder to the allies.*

Observation.—How is *to* before a noun expressed in Latin? What is the position of the word translated by means of *to*?[1]

1. The indirect object (*i.e.*, the word translated by means of *to*) is more frequently placed before than after the direct object of the verb. In most of the sentences which follow, either order may be followed. This form is known as the *Dative Case.*

(*b*) **Ad prōvinciam properat,** *he hastens to the province.*
Ad cōpiās adequitat, *he rides up to the forces.*
Ad lēgātōs adequitat, *he rides up to the lieutenants.*
Ad locum lēgātōs convocat, *he summons the lieutenants to the place.*

Observation.—How is *to* before a noun expressed in Latin, when it is used in a phrase implying motion towards a place or person?

EXERCISE V.

Vocabulary.

Agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture, farming.*
Dōnō, āre, *present.*
Ēvocō, āre, *challenge.*
Fīlia, ae, f., *daughter.*
Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*
Lēgātus, i, m., *ambassador.*
Māteria, ae, f., *timber, materials.*
Mūrus, i, m., *wall.*
Pertineō, ēre, *extend.*
Praestō, āre, *be superior.*
Pūgna, ae, f., *battle, fighting.*
Respondeō, ēre, *reply.*
Rhēnus, i, m., *the Rhine.*
Ripa, ae, f., *bank.*
Silva, ae, f., *wood, forest.*
Studeō, ēre, *pay attention.*
Venia, ae, f., *pardon.*
Ventitō, āre, *come often.*

I.—1. Māteriam ad locum comportant. 2. Aeduī ad prōvinciam ventitant. 3. Aeduīs veniam dat. 4. Cōpiīs praedam dōnat. 5. Gallī Rōmānōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. 6. Germānī Belgīs praestant. 7. Lēgātus ad cōpiās adequitat. 8. Socii Rōmānōrum agricultūrae student. 9. Aeduīs imperat. 10. Ad Belgās adequitāmus. 11. Silva ad locum pertinet. 12. Belgae Labiēnō respondent. 13. Ad Ītaliam ventitās. 14. Fīliam lēgātō dat. 15. Lēgātus Belgās Rōmānīs conciliat.

II.—1. Labienus hastens to the forces. 2. You are superior to the forces of the Belgians. 3. We come often to the provinces. 4. They grant pardon to the captives. 5. The ambassadors win over the allies of the Germans to the Romans. 6. They come often to the walls. 7. The woods extend to the Rhine. 8. I give orders to the province. 9. He announces the victory of the allies to the ambassador. 10. You are obedient to Labienus' son. 11. The squadrons ride up to the barbarians. 12. Labienus replies to the

ambassadors. 13. He challenges the Gaul to battle. 14. The forces of the Germans ride up to the banks of the Rhine. 15. He summons the lieutenants to the province.

LESSON VI.

(*a*) **Oppūgnābat,** *he was attacking*, or *he used to attack.*
Jubēbāmus, *we were ordering*, or *we used to order.*
Convocābant, *they were summoning*, or *they used to summon.*
Permovēbātis, *you* (plur.) *were alarming*, or *you used to alarm.*
Vulnerābās, *you* (sing.) *were wounding*, or *you used to wound.*
(*b*) **Jubēbam,** *I was ordering*, or *I used to order.*
Convocābam, *I was summoning*, or *I used to summon.*

Observation.—The new element in the Latin verbs. What idea does this new element express? What new personal ending is used? What point of time is referred to?[1]

EXERCISE VI.

Vocabulary.

Compleō, ēre, *fill up, fill.*
Firmō, āre, *strengthen.*
Fossa, ae, f., *trench, moat.*
Funda, ae, f., *sling.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul* (the country now called France).
Gladius, i, m., *sword.*
Hiemō, āre, *pass the winter, winter.*
Impetrō, āre, *obtain one's*[2] *request.*
Prōvocō, āre, *call out, challenge.*
Remaneō, ēre, *remain.*
Revocō, āre, *recall.*

I.—1. Exspectābāmus. 2. Oppūgnābant. 3. Complēbat. 4. Habētis. 5. Studēbam. 6. Perturbant. 7. Removēbat. 8. Hiemābant. 9. Fossās complēbant. 10. Gladium nautae dabātis. 11. Ad Galliam ventitābātis. 12. Remanēmus. 13. Rōmānōs ad pūgnam ēvocābant. 14. Impetrātis. 15. Fundam habeō. 16. Locum firmābant.

---

1. Notice that where *was* or *were* are used to translate these forms, containing the letters *-ba*, the English verb will end in *-ing*. (The translation by the simple past tense of English should not even be referred to until the student is much further advanced.)

2. Put *his, her, their, my, our, your*, in place of *one's*, as the context suggests.

II.—1. They were recalling. 2. He used to pass the winter. 3. She was awaiting. 4. I was obedient. 5. We used to have. 6. We are filling up the trench. 7. You (*plur.*) were ordering. 8. You (*sing.*) are superior. 9. They were attacking the wall. 10. I was hastening to Italy. 11. He was occupying. 12. He used to favor. 13. They used to have. 14. I remain. 15. She obtains her request. 16. They were strengthening the walls.

LESSON VII.

(*a*)

Lēgātum fundā vulnerat,	*he wounds the lieutenant with a sling.*
Cum turmā properat,	*he hastens with a squadron.*
Lēgātum gladiō vulnerat,	*he wounds the lieutenant with a sword.*
Cum lēgātō adequitat,	*he rides up with the lieutenant.*
Cum cōpiīs hiemat,	*he winters with the forces.*
Locum mūrīs et fossīs firmat,	*he strengthens the place with walls and trenches.*
Cum Gallīs pūgnant,	*they fight with the Gauls.*

Observation.—In what two ways is *with* expressed in Latin?[1] What corresponding difference is there in the meaning of *with* in English?[2]

(*b*)

In Galliā hiemat,	*he winters in Gaul.*
In locō remanent,	*they remain in the place.*
Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocat,	*he recalls the forces from battle.*
Ab Ītāliā properat,	*he hastens from Italy.*
Ab lēgātō et Rōmānīs impetrat,	*he obtains his request from the lieutenant and the Romans.*

Observation.—How are *in* and *from* expressed in Latin? When is *ab* used in place of *a*?[3]

---

1. These forms are known as the *Ablative Case*.

2. In the last example, notice that *cum*, like the English *with*, is used of one's opponents, rather than of one's allies, with verbs of *fighting, contending, waging war*, etc. Here also *cum* means *together with, in company with*. ("It takes two to make a quarrel.")

3. *A* is never used before vowels.

EXERCISE VII.

Vocabulary.

Circumdō, āre, *surround.*
Collocō, āre, *station, place.*
Comparō, āre, *raise, collect.*
Contineō, ēre, *keep, hem in.*
Injūria, ae, f., *wrong-doing, injury, wrong.*
Insidiae, ārum, f. (used in plural only), *ambush.*
Pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
Permaneō, ēre, *persist.*
Prohibeō, ēre, *restrain.*
Rāmus, I, m., *branch.*
Sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*
Sollicitō, āre, *try to influence.*
Submoveō, ēre, *drive off.*

I.—1. Lēgātus Aeduōs ab injūriā prohibēbat. 2. Cum cōpiīs in Ītaliā hiemābāmus. 3. Gallī mūrōs cōpiīs complēbant. 4. Belgae locum mūrō et fossā firmant. 5. Silva ab Aeduīs ad Belgās pertinet. 6. Labiēnus cōpiās in īnsidiīs collocābat. 7. Barbarī fossās rāmīs complent. 8. Cum turmā ad locum properābam. 9. Tribūnum sagittā vulnerās. 10. Captīvī in sententiā permanent. 11. Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocābāmus. 12. Sagittīs et fundīs Aeduōs ā mūrō submovēbant. 13. Cum fīliō lēgātī ad Ītaliam nāvigābātis. 14. Barbarī in locō remanēbant. 15. Lēgātī Aeduōrum ā sociīs Germanōrum impetrant. 16. Germānī cum Belgīs pūgnābant. 17. Animōs cōpiārum pecūniā sollicitātis.

II.—1. Forests used to extend from Gaul to Italy. 2. The tribunes were keeping the forces in the woods. 3. He was restraining the allies from battle. 4. The barbarians used to fight with slings. 5. They remain with the lieutenant. 6. The allies were raising forces in Gaul. 7. We were surrounding the place with trenches. 8. Labienus used to winter with the allies. 9. We were sailing from Italy to the province with the lieutenant. 10. The barbarians used to station ambushes in the woods. 11. You were wounding the tribune's son with a sling. 12. She obtains her request from Labienus. 13. You are driving off the Gauls from the place. 14. I was passing the winter with the lieutenant and tribunes in the province. 15. They were trying to influence the allies with money. 16. The slave was fighting with the sailor.

LESSON VIII.

(*a*) **In sententiā, Labiēne, permanēs,** *you persist in (your) opinion, Labienus.*

Cōpiās, lēgātī, comparāmus, *we are raising forces, lieutenants.*

Nūntiōs, Belgae, exspectāmus, *we are awaiting messengers, Belgians.*

Sententiam, fīlia, collaudō, *(my) daughter, I commend (your) opinion.*

Observation.—What forms of the nouns ending in **us** and **a** are used in speaking to a person? In what position are these forms?[1] Omission of Latin words meaning *your, my,* etc.[2]

(*b*) The student should now turn to Part III., sections 1 and 2, where examples are given of nouns ending in **a** and **us**, in the order in which the cases are usually arranged. To give all the forms of a noun in this order is called *declining* a noun, and the different series of endings are called *Declensions.*

(*c*) On the same page, section 3, are declined the words **puer, ager** and **vir.**

Observation.—How do the endings of these nouns differ from those of nouns ending in **us**? What is the difference between the declension of **puer** and that of **ager**? Notice how the vocabulary, by always giving the genitive case of a noun,[3] indicates whether a noun ending in **er** is declined like **puer** or like **ager.**

(*d*) **Rōmānī et socii,** or **Rōmānī sociīque,** *the Romans and (their) allies.*

Lēgātōs et tribūnōs, or **lēgātōs tribūnōsque,** *the lieutenants and the tribunes.*

Mūrum et fossam, or **mūrum fossamque,** *a wall and trench.*

Observation.—The use and position of **-que.**[4]

1. These forms are in the *Vocative Case.*

2. Latin possesses words meaning *my, our, your, his, her, its* and *their,* but does not use them when it can be readily gathered from the context to whom the thing (or person) spoken of belongs. So in translating from Latin these words have often to be inserted in the English, and until Exercise XLIV. are to be regularly omitted in translating into Latin. For several exercises to come these words are put in parentheses, to indicate their omission.

3. In all vocabularies the genitive of each noun is given, and as no two of the five declensions have the same genitive, this serves to indicate to what declension the noun belongs.

4. When *-que* is added to a word, the accent is shifted to the syllable before *-que*; *e.g., fos'sam,* but *fossam'que.*

EXERCISE VIII.

Vocabulary.

Ager, agrī, m., *land, field, territory.*
Amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
Amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*
Arbiter, trī, m., *arbitrator.*
Faber, brī, m., *workman.*
Gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*
Līberī, ōrum, m. (in plural only), *children.*
Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus* (a man's name).
Necō, āre, *kill.*
Nōn, *not.*
Occultō, āre, *conceal.*
Puer, erī, m., *boy.*
Socer, erī, m., *father-in-law.*
Vacō, āre, *be unoccupied, lie waste.*
Vastō, āre, *lay waste.*
Vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
Vir, virī, m., *man.*

I.—1. Agrōs vīcōsque, Aeduī, habētis. 2. Labiēnus fabrōs nautāsque ad Galliam convocat. 3. Cum līberīs ad Rhēnum properant. 4. Gallīs, sociī, arbitrōs dant. 5. Ā lēgātō, Belgae, nōn impetrāmus. 6. Germānī agrōs Belgārum vastābant. 7. Cum Aeduīs, Labiēne, amīcitiam cōnfirmās. 8. In agrīs Aeduōrum hiemābāmus. 9. Puerōs in silvīs occultant. 10. Socerum lēgātī līberōsque necant. 11. Virum gladiō vulnerant. 12. Cum generīs ad cōpiās adequitat.

II.—1. He grants lands to the son-in-law of the tribune. 2. He grants pardon to the boys. 3. The workmen used to come often to the wall. 4. You used to have friends, Marcus. 5. The lands of the Belgians are unoccupied. 6. The Gauls were establishing friendship with the Belgians. 7. The forces [illegible]hting in the land of the Belgians. 8. The father-in-law [illegible]enant was giving money to the children of (his) friend. 9. They are giving lands to the Germans, lieutenant. 10. The men were fighting with swords, the boys with slings and arrows. 11. The forces of the [illegible]ians are laying waste the land of the Gauls. 12. They were co[illegible] by an ambush.

LESSON IX.

(*a*) In part III., section 3, is given the declension of **templum**.

Observation.—How does the declension of nouns ending in **um** differ from that of nouns ending in **us**?

(*b*) The student should look over the vocabularies of this and the preceding lessons, to see what is the gender of the nouns that have been used.

Observation.—Of what gender are all the Latin nouns that refer to males? to females? to what is neither male nor female? What is the gender of the nouns ending in **us**? in **er**? in **ir**? in **um**? in **a**? Explain the apparent exceptions to the general rule in the vocabulary of Exercises II. and IV.

EXERCISE IX.

Vocabulary.

Bellum, i, n., *war.*
Castra, ōrum, n. (plural form with singular meaning), *camp.*
Exemplum, i, n., *example.*
Expūgnō, āre, *take by storm.*
Frūmentum, i, n., *grain, corn.*
Helvētius, i, m., *Helvetian* (one of a tribe in Gaul).
Hīberna, ōrum, n. (plural form with singular meaning), *winter quarters.*
Imperium, i, n., *command.*
Maneō, ēre, *remain, continue.*
Moveō, ēre, *move.*
Officium, i, n., *duty, allegiance.*
Oppidum, i, n., *town.*
Postulō, āre, *demand.*
Praemium, i, n., *reward.*
Praesidium, i, n., *garrison.*
Proelium, i, n., *battle.*
Renovō, āre, *renew.*

I.—1. Frūmentum comportābant. 2. Lēgātus cōpiās in hībernīs collocat. 3. Animōs cōpiārum praemiīs sollicitābāmus. 4. Imperium bellī postulant. 5. Ab hībernīs ad prōvinciam properābat. 6. Rōmānōs ā proeliō revocat. 7. Mūrum oppidī virīs complent. 8. Ad oppidum ventitābātis. 9. Rōmānī castra movent. 10. Germānōs in officiō continēbat. 11. Praesidiō locum tenēmus. 12. Bellum cum Rōmānīs renovābant. 13. Exempla habētis. 14. Labiēnus cōpiās ā proeliō continet. 15. Cōpiam frūmentī habēmus. 16. In castrīs Helvētiōrum manent.

II.—1. They are stationing garrisons in the towns. 2. We were bringing in plenty of corn. 3. The forces of the Belgians were renewing war with Labienus. 4. The Germans continue in (their) allegiance. 5. The allies of the Romans kill the garrisons of the towns. 6. He was arousing the spirit of the boy with examples and rewards. 7. The children have an example. 8. The Helvetians were laying waste the lands of the Aedui, and taking by storm (their) towns and villages. 9. The forces were renewing the battle. 10. They are attacking the camp. 11. He was stationing a garrison in the town. 12. They used to come often with the barbarians to the winter quarters of the forces. 13. You were surrounding the camp with a trench. 14. He gives orders to the garrison. 15. The Gauls attack the camp and fill up the trench.

LESSON X.

(*a*) 1. **Lēgātus clārus,** *a famous lieutenant.*
2. **Victōria clāra,** *a famous victory.*
3. **Exemplum clārum,** *a famous example.*
4. **Lēgātī clārī,** *of a famous lieutenant.*
5. **Victōriae clārae,** *famous victories.*

(*b*) 6. **Vir clārus,** *a famous man.*
7. **Belgae clārī,** *the famous Belgians.*
8. **Ager pūblicus,** *public land.*
9. **Locus asper,** *a rough place.*
10. **Nauta perītus,** *a skilful sailor.*
11. **Nautārum perītōrum,** *of skilful sailors.*

(*c*) 12. **Multa exempla,** *many examples.*
13. **Cum paucīs Belgīs,** *with a few Belgians.*
14. **Reliquī Belgae,** *the remaining Belgians.*
15. **Māgnae cōpiae,** *large forces.*

Observation.—(*a*) Does the Latin adjective remain unchanged, like the English? Is there a change in the gender, the number, or the case of the nouns accompanying the adjectives, comparing (i.) 1, 2 and 3; (ii.) 2 and 5; (iii.) 1 and 4?

(*b*) Are the endings of nouns and adjectives always alike? How does the form of the noun affect the form of the adjective?

(c) What is the position of the adjective in 1 to 11? in 12 to 15? When is the adjective placed before its noun?[1]

In Part III., section 10, is given the declension of adjectives whose masculine nominative singular ends in **us** or **er**.

Observation.—Is there any difference between the declension of these adjectives (**bonus, liber** and **aeger**) and the declension of the nouns given in sections 1, 2 and 3? How does the vocabulary indicate whether an adjective ending in **er** is declined like **liber** or like **aeger**?

EXERCISE X.

Vocabulary.

Adversus, a, um, *unsuccessful.*
Altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
Asper, era, erum, *rugged, rough.*
Commoveō, ēre, *disturb, alarm, agitate.*
Crēber, brā, brum, *numerous, frequent.*
Excitō, āre, *stimulate.*
Finitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjacent.*
Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetians.*
Idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
Incitō, āre, *arouse, stir up.*
Lātus, a, um, *broad, wide.*
Liber, era, erum, *free.*
Māgnus, a, um, *great, large.*
Maritimus, a, um, *maritime, of or on the sea.*
Numerus, I, m., *number.*
Ōra, ae, f., *shore, coast; ōra maritima, the sea coast.*
Paucī, ae, a (plural), *few.*
Populus, I, m., *nation, people.*
Reliquus, a, um, *remaining.*[2]
Saxum, I, n., *stone.*
Sollicitō, āre, *tempt, bribe, try to win over.*

I.—1. Locum fossā lātā et mūrō altō firmant. 2. Ōram maritimam vastābātis. 3. Fossam crēbrīs rāmīs complēmus. 4. Māgna saxa in[3] mūrīs collocābant. 5. Proelium adversum animōs paucōrum Belgārum commovet. 6. In locō asperō īnsidiās collocant. 7. Māgnum numerum servōrum et reliquam praedam cōpiīs cōnat. 8. Līberōs Galliae populōs superābās. 9. Paucōs tribūnōs ad

1. As a rule, adjectives follow the noun with which they agree, but precede it in the following cases: (*a*) when emphatic; (*b*) when expressing number or quantity; (*c*) when the noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order then being regularly, adjective, genitive, noun. See footnote 2, page 6.

2. The best way generally of translating *reliquus* is by "*the rest of*"; *e.g.*, *reliqui Belgae, the remaining Belgians, i.e., the rest of the Belgians.*

3. Here, as often, Latin *in* is to be translated by English *on.*

locum idōneum convocant. 10. Ad prōvinciam fīnitimam ventitābat.

II.—1. A few tribunes were stirring up the allies by frequent messages. 2. They are wintering in the provinces on the sea with the remaining forces. 3. You were stimulating a few Gauls with large rewards. 4. Rugged forests extend from the sea coast to the neighboring provinces. 5. The Helvetians are superior to the rest of the (*literally, remaining*) Gauls. 6. We are laying waste the Helvetian territory with large forces. 7. They used to strengthen the camp with wide trenches. 8. The neighboring province is unoccupied. 9. He was raising large forces in the Helvetian territory. 10. The defeats (*literally, unsuccessful battles*) alarm the rest of the Belgians.

LESSON XI.

(*a*) **Impetrābis,** *you will gain your request.*
Superābitis, *you will conquer.*
Removēbit, *he will remove.*
Complēbimus, *we shall fill up.*

Observation.—What new element is found in the Latin verbs? What idea does it express? What point of time is referred to?

(*b*) **Impetrābō,** *I shall gain my request.*
Superābunt, *they will conquer.*
Removēbō, *I shall remove.*
Complēbunt, *they will fill up.*

Observation.—What variations occur in that part of the Latin verb which expresses *shall* or *will*?

EXERCISE XI.

Vocabulary.

Castellum, i, n., *fort.*
Certus, a, um, *certain, fixed, specified.*
Condōnō, āre, *overlook.*
Firmus, a, um, *powerful, strong.*
Imperō, āre, *require, demand.*
Integer, gra, grum, *fresh.*
Lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*
Multus, a, um, *much,* (in plural) *many.*
Obsecrō, āre, *beseech, implore.*
Pecūnia, ae, f., *sum of money.*
Perīculum, i, n., *danger.*
Privātus, a, um, *private.*

I.—1. Multa oppida expūgnābimus. 2. Māgnō[1] cum perīculō bellum renovābitis. 3. Lēgātōs et tribūnōs ad certum locum convocābit. 4. Injūriās prīvātās condōnābō. 5. Locum praesidiō firmō tenēbit. 6. Cōpiae integrae bellum renovābunt. 7. Māgnam frūmentī cōpiam comportābāmus. 8. Multīs[1] cum lacrimīs lēgātum obsecrat. 9. Certum numerum fabrōrum imperābit. 10. Cōpiās in īnsidiīs collocābis.

II.—1. He will winter with the rest of the forces in the neighboring province. 2. Many Belgians will continue in (their) allegiance. 3. We shall surround the place with a wall and numerous forts. 4. Powerful nations will conquer Gaul. 5. You will conquer a powerful nation. 6. The rest of the Germans do[2] not have private lands. 7. They will require a specified sum of money. 8. I shall come often to the camp with a large number of the barbarians. 9. They will strengthen the rest of the towns with large garrisons. 10. The opinion of the rest of the tribunes will prevail.

LESSON XII.

(*a*) The student should examine and learn the endings of the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 4.

Observation.—What are the endings of the various cases? In what cases is there no uniform ending? Is the change from the nominative to the genitive always made in the same way? From which of the two cases given in the vocabulary are the other cases formed?

(*b*)

Cōnsul Rōmānus,	*a Roman consul.*
Cōnsulis Rōmānī,	*of a Roman consul.*
Regiō fīnitima,	*a neighboring district.*
Ab regiōne fīnitimā,	*from a neighboring district.*

Observation.—The agreement of an adjective of one declension with a noun of another.

---

1. Often when a noun is governed by a preposition of one syllable, an emphatic adjective is placed before both noun and preposition.

2. *Do not have* = *have not.* The same form that means, *e.g.*, *he attacks* or *he is attacking*, is often translated by *does attack*, especially with a negative or in a question. In the same way *did* is often to be used in place of *was* or *were*.

EXERCISE XII.

Vocabulary.

Caes-ar, -aris, m., *Caesar.*
Centurī-ō, -ōnis, m., *centurion.*
Cīvi-tās, -tātis, f., *state.*
Co-hors, -hortis, f., *cohort, company* (one-tenth of a legion).
Eques, equitis, m., *horse soldier,* (in plural) *cavalry.*
Legi-ō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*
Mercā-tor, -tōris, m., *trader.*
Mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*
Multitū-dō, -dinis, f., *multitude, great number.*
Obses, obsidis, m., *hostage.*
Ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *rank.*
Pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
Pedes, peditis, m., *foot soldier,* (in plural) *infantry.*
Servō, āre, *keep.*

I.—1. Obsidēs Caesarī dabimus. 2. Mercātōrēs ad legiōnem ventitābant. 3. Pācem et amīcitiam cum Caesare cōnfirmābit. 4. Mīlitēs ōrdinēs non servābant.[1] 5. Paucī peditēs māgnam multitūdinem equitum superant. 6. Cum reliquīs legiōnibus in Galliā hiemābō. 7. Caesar māgnum obsidum numerum[2] impōnit. 8. Tribūnōs mīlitum et centuriōnēs convocābat. 9. Mīlitēs reliquārum legiōnum cīvitātem in officiō continēbunt. 10. Paucās cohortēs in īnsidiīs collocat.

II.—1. He rides up to Cæsar. 2. Cæsar will hasten with the rest of the legion to the town. 3. You will grant pardon to the centurion. 4. The rest of the cohorts will lay waste the neighboring territory. 5. We were restraining the legions from battle. 6. The opinion of the centurion will prevail. 7. He fills the camp with a multitude of soldiers. 8. Cæsar establishes peace with the neighboring states. 9. He will winter in Gaul with the rest of the legion and the cavalry. 10. They try to win over the rest of the states. 11. With a few soldiers we shall hasten to the camp.

LESSON XIII.

(*a*) **Expūgnāvī,** *I have taken by storm,* or *I took by storm.*
Expūgnāvistī, *you* (sing.) *have taken by storm,* or *you took by storm.*

1. See footnote 2, page 19.
2. See footnote 1, page 17

Expūgnāvit,	*he has taken by storm,* or *he took by storm.*
Expūgnāvimus,	*we have taken by storm,* or *we took by storm.*
Expūgnāvistis,	*you* (plural) *have taken by storm,* or *you took by storm.*
Expūgnāvērunt,	*they have taken by storm,* or *they took by storm.*

Observation.—What changes occur in the verb forms, comparing one with another?[1] Resemblance to regular personal endings. Twofold translation.

(*b*) Turn to the perfect tense of all four conjugations, as given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Are the endings found in **expūgnāvī**, etc., found in all these verbs?

(*c*)

First Conjugation.		Second Conjugation.	
Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.	Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
amō	**amāvī**	**moneō**	**monuī**
dō	**dedī**	**videō**	**vīdī**
stō	**stetī**	**jubeō**	**jūssī**
adjuvō	**adjūvī**	**remāneō**	**remānsī**

Third Conjugation.		Fourth Conjugation.	
Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.	Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
regō	**rēxī**	**audīō**	**audīvī**
legō	**lēgī**	**veniō**	**vēnī**
sūmō	**sūmpsī**	**vinciō**	**vinxī**
mittō	**mīsī**	**sentiō**	**sēnsī**
parcō	**peperci**	**comperiō**	**comperī**

Observation.—Is the change from the present to the perfect made in the same way always in each conjugation? In what one respect only do all the forms of the perfect given in this list agree? Notice that, in the vocabularies that follow, the perfect tense is always clearly indicated.[2]

1. The division recommended in classes for beginners is into the unchanging part of the perfect stem and the changing endings; *expugnav+i*, etc. The relation between the present and perfect stems should be reserved for a much later stage, and even the fact that most verbs of conjugations I., II. and IV. have in the perfect of each conjugation a similar formation, should not be presented for a few lessons, until the pupil has learned to form his perfect, not by the rule of three, but on the authority of the Vocabulary.

2. For the perfect tense of verbs occurring in the preceding vocabularies, the student is referred to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

EXERCISE XIII.

Vocabulary.

Accipiō, accēpī, *receive.*
Arma, armōrum, n. (in plural only), *arms.*
Dō, dare, dedī, *give.*
Faciō, fēcī, *do, make.*
Facul-tās, -tātis, f., *opportunity.*
Gerō, gessī, *carry on, wage.*
Juvō, āre, jūvī, *aid, assist.*
Moveō, ēre, mōvī, *move.*
Mūniō, mūnīvī, *fortify, protect.*
Per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, *remain.*
Petō, petīvī, *ask, seek.*
Pōnō, posuī, *place, pitch* (camp), *lay down.*
Trā-dō, -didī, *give up.*
Vallum, ī, n., *wall, rampart* (of camp).
Veniō, vēnī, *come.*

I.—1. Gessimus. 2. Accēpērunt. 3. Trādidit. 4. Caesar castra mōvit. 5. Helvētiī pācem ā Caesare petīvērunt. 6. Facultātem fugae captīvīs dedistī. 7. Māgna praesidia in oppidīs posuī. 8. Reliquae cohortēs castra vallō fossāque mūnīvērunt. 9. Caesar māgnam injūriam fēcit. 10. Sociī legiōnēs frūmentō jūvērunt. 11. Caesar legiōnibus veniam dedit. 12. In officiō permānsimus. 13. Cum multīs equitibus ad castra vēnit. 14. Arma posuistis et obsidēs dedistis. 15. Agrōs habēmus.

II.—1. He has aided. 2. We gave. 3. She has sought. 4. You have moved. 5. We came. 6. We received the hostages. 7. The Gauls waged war with Cæsar. 8. They gave up (their) arms, captives (and) hostages to Cæsar. 9. You fortified the camp with high walls. 10. Cæsar has made peace with the neighboring states. 11. The Gauls gave lands to the Germans. 12. I have received many injuries from the Romans. 13. He placed a garrison in the camp. 14. You gave the legion to the lieutenant. 15. They came with a few horsemen to Cæsar. 16. The rest of the legion pitched the camp. 17. The soldiers move the camp. 18. You received great injury from Cæsar. 19. They have villages.

LESSON XIV.

The student should turn to the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 5.

Observation.—Compare the endings of the nouns in section 5

with those of the nouns in section 4. What differences are there in the endings? What is the gender of the nouns in section 5? in section 4? In what respect do neuter nouns of the second and third declensions agree?

EXERCISE XIV.

Vocabulary.

Ag-men, -minis, n., *line of march, army* (on the march).
Āmittō, āmīsī, *lose.*
Āvert-ō, -ī, *turn aside.*
Contend-ō, -ī, *hasten.*
Dis-cēdō, -cēssī, *depart, withdraw.*[1]
Flū-men, -minis, n., *river.*
Imped-iō, -īvī, *obstruct.*
Iter, itineris, n., *march, road.*
Lat-us, -eris, n., *side, flank.*
Op-us, -eris, n., *work, fortification.*
Per-ficiō, -fēcī, *finish.*
Signum, ī, n., *standard, signal.*[2]
Vuln-us, -eris, n., *wound.*

I.—1. Iter ā flūmine āvertimus. 2. Mīlitēs opus perfēcērunt. 3. Paucī equitēs vulnera accēpērunt. 4. Māgnīs itineribus Caesar ad flūmen contendit. 5. Sīgnum proelī cohortibus dedit. 6. Multī peditēs ab agmine discēssērunt. 7. Mīlitēs ab opere revocāvit. 8. Silva pertinet ā flūmine ad castra. 9. Lēgātī ad Caesarem in[3] itinere vēnērunt. 10. Cohortēs sīgna āmīsērunt. 11. Iter agminis impedīvērunt. 12. Helvētiī iter fēcērunt.[4]

II.—1. You have received a wound. 2. Cæsar recalled the soldiers from work. 3. Broad rivers hem in the Helvetii. 4. We have finished the fortification of the camp. 5. They have marched (*literally, made a march*) from the province. 6. By a forced (*literally, great*) march I came to the camp. 7. Cæsar has turned aside (his) march from the Helvetii. 8. We have lost a standard. 9. A few soldiers have left (*literally, departed from*) the standards. 10. The river has protected the sides of the camp. 11. We came to the river with the rest of the cohorts. 12. We received a few wounds.

---

1. *Discedo ab* = *I leave*, literally, *I depart from.*
2. A genitive depending on *signum* (= *signal*) should be translated by *for.*
3. *In* is in this phrase to be translated *on.*
4. *Iter facio* = *I march*, literally, *I make a march.*

LESSON XV.

Dederam, *I had given.*
Mīserās, *you* (sing.) *had sent.*
Jūsserat, *he had ordered.*
Vēnerāmus, *we had come.*
Jūsserātis, *you* (plural) *had ordered.*
Dederant, *they had given.*

Observation.—Personal endings. What letters are found in each Latin word? What word occurs in the translation of each of these Latin words? Referring to Lesson XIII. (*c*), are these forms obtained from the present or the perfect tense?

EXERCISE XV.

Vocabulary.

Cōgnōscō, cōgnōvī, *learn, find out.*
Cōn-fugiō, -fūgī, *flee.*
Cōn-sīdō, -sēdī, *encamp.*
Con-veniō, -vēnī, *come together, assemble.*
Ērupti-ō, -ōnis, f., *sally.*
Explōrā-tor, -tōris, m., *scout.*
Impedīmenta, ōrum, n. (in plural), *baggage, baggage-animals.*
Mittō, mīsī, *send.*
Ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, *hold, possess.*
Occup-ō, āre, -āvī, *seize.*
Re-dūcō, -dūxī, *lead back.*
Rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *Rhine.*
Tim-eō, ēre, -uī, *fear, be afraid.*
Trāns-dūco, -dūxī, *lead across.*

I.—1. Cōpiās redūxerās. 2. Ad Rhēnum contenderat. 3. Lēgātōs mīsimus. 4. Explōrātōrēs iter cōgnōverant. 5. Barbarōs timent. 6. Ēruptiōnem fēcerant. 7. Cōpiae cōnsēderant. 8. Rēgnum obtinuerat. 9. Accēperāmus. 10. Discēsserant. 11. Gessērunt. 12. Fēceram. 13. Vulnerant. 14. Dedimus. 15. Jūvistis. 16. Posuerātis. 17. Petīvimus. 18. Discēssit. 19. Cōnfūgerāmus. 20. Properat. 21. Imperāverat.

II.—1. He had led the soldiers across. 2. They came together to Cæsar. 3. I shall seize the royal power. 4. We had sent scouts. 5. They had fled to the baggage. 6. Cæsar encamped with the rest of the forces. 7. Ambassadors had come to the camp. 8. We led a large number of baggage-animals across. 9.

The forces had encamped. 10. They received a few wounds. 11. He has sought peace. 12. We had given. 13. You had led back the legion. 14. I had finished. 15. We encamped. 16. She had sent. 17. We were hastening. 18. You sent. 19. They will wound. 20. I received.

LESSON XVI.

Ab Ītaliā pertinet,	*it extends from Italy.*
Ad Caesarem vēnērunt,	*they came to Cæsar.*
Cum Gallīs pācem fēcit,	*he made peace with the Gauls.*
Dē pāce lēgātōs mīsērunt,	*they sent ambassadors concerning (or about) peace.*
Ex agrīs frūmentum comportant,	*they bring in corn out of (or from) the fields.*
In prōvinciā hiemat,	*he winters in the province.*
Cōpiās in Galliam mīsit,	*he sent the forces into (or to) Gaul.*
Inter flūmen et silvās iter fēcit,	*he marched between the river and the woods.*
Inter Belgās valet,	*he is influential among the Belgians.*
Per prōvinciam iter fēcērunt,	*they marched through the province.*
Per Helvētiōs cōgnōvit,	*he found out through (or by means of) the Helvetians.*
Litterīs cōgnōvit,	*he found out by means of letters.*
Post pūgnam cōgnōvit,	*he found out after the battle.*
Propter multitūdinem Germānōrum timent,	*they are afraid on account of the great number of Germans.*
Sine causā timent,	*they fear without cause.*
Trāns Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt,	*they encamped across the Rhine.*

Observation.—The meaning of the prepositions used, and the case which follows each of them. The difference between **in** with accusative and **in** with ablative; **ab** and **ex**; **ad** and **in** with accusative; the ablative of means and **per** with accusative.

EXERCISE XVI.

Vocabulary.

Auctōrĭ-tās, -tātis, f., *influence.*
Dēdĭtĭ-ō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*
Incol-ō, -ŭī, *dwell, inhabit.*
Inŏpĭa, ae, f., *want, scarcity.*
Jūdĭc-ō, āre, -āvī, *decide.*
Mors, mortis, f., *death.*
Pater, patris, m., *father.*
Tĭm-or, -ōris, m., *fear.*
Vălĕ-ō, ēre, -ŭī, *be influential.*
Vĭr-tūs, -tūtis, f., *valor, bravery.*

I.—1. Sine injūriā per prōvinciam iter fēcimus. 2. Frūmentum ex agrīs in castra comportābant. 3. Post proelium lēgātī ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne vēnērunt. 4. Trāns Rhēnum in locō idōneō cōnsēderat. 5. Māgnam inter Belgās auctōritātem prōpter virtūtem habēbat. 6. Mīlitēs ex hībernīs et ā Caesare convēnerant. 7. Ex captīvīs cōgnōverat. 8. In certum locum convēnerāmus. 9. Arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dedit. 10. Germānōs sine causā timent. 11. Cum reliquīs legiōnibus in Galliăm contendit. 12. Ex castrīs discēssistis. 13. Iter in prōvinciam āverterant. 14. Arma ex oppidō trādidērunt. 15. Sine causā bellum gessērātis.

II.—1. He had sent the forces across the river into Gaul. 2. He found out through scouts. 3. After the death of (his) father he had held the royal power. 4. They had made numerous sallies out of the woods. 5. The rest of the Belgians had sent ambassadors concerning peace. 6. He used to be influential among the Gauls. 7. They remain in the camp not without great danger, on account of the scarcity of corn. 8. They had placed the baggage between the river and the cavalry. 9. He led back the forces into winter quarters. 10. We shall not decide about the road. 11. They had dwelt across the Rhine. 12. On account of (their) fear they had fled into the woods. 13. Cæsar had led across the forces without baggage. 14. We used to have lands across the Rhine in the province. 15. Out of a large number few received wounds.

LESSON XVII.

(*a*) **Dederis,** *you* (sing.) *will have given.*
Mīserĭt, *he will have sent.*
Jūsserĭt, *he will have ordered.*
Vēnerĭmus, *we shall have come.*
Jūsserĭtis, *you* (plur.) *will have ordered.*
Dederint, *they will have given.*

Observation.—Personal endings. What letters are found in each Latin word in the translation of which are found the words *shall have* or *will have*? Are these forms obtained from the present or the perfect tense?

(*b*) **Dederō**, *I shall have given.* **Mīserō**, *I shall have sent.*

Observation.—What variation occurs in that part of the Latin verb which expresses *shall have*?

(*c*) In Part III., section 27, may be found the names by which the tenses of the Latin verb are known.

EXERCISE XVII.

Vocabulary.

Dē-ligō, -lēgī, *choose.*
Dē-pōnō, -posuī, *lay aside.*
Dē-terreō, ēre, -terruī, *deter.*
Dubit-ō, āre, -āvī, *hesitate, have doubts.*
Fug-ō, āre, -āvī, *rout, put to flight.*
Jubeō, ēre, jūssī, *order.*
Memoria, ae, f., *memory.*
Per-dūcō, -dūxī, *carry, bring.*
Regi-ō, -ōnis, f., *region, district.*
Re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, *preserve.*
Vet-ō, āre, -uī, *forbid.*
Videō, ēre, vīdī, *see.*

I.—1. Fabrōs ex legiōne dēlēgerat. 2. Mūrum perdūxerimus. 3. Arma dēposuerint. 4. Regiōnem vastāvērunt. 5. Legiō montem nōn tenēbit. 6. Vidētis. 7. Renovābam. 8. Discēssit. 9. Jūdicāverō. 10. Dubitābāmus. 11. Dēterret. 12. Vetuistī. 13. Gesserāmus. 14. Discēsserit. 15. Complēbunt. 16. Expūgnāvērunt. 17. Occupāverās. 18. Vīderitis. 19. Mūnīvērunt. 20. Cōnsēderat. 21. Vēneram.

II.—1. He has not laid aside the memory. 2. You had remembered (*literally, preserved the memory*). 3. They will have routed. 4. I shall have learned. 5. We had hesitated. 6. They chose. 7. I shall order. 8. We have come. 9. We were holding. 10. It used to deter. 11. You were hesitating. 12. She used to be influential. 13. They will have fled. 14. We shall have sent. 15. I forbade. 16. They order. 17. You are deciding. 18. You were deterring.

LESSON XVIII.

Turn to the adjectives of the third declension, as given in Part III., section 11.

Observation.—How far do the endings of the adjective agree with those of the noun, as given in sections 4 and 5 (comparing forms of the same gender always)? Is there always a separate form for the feminine nominative? for the neuter nominative? Examine the vocabulary, to see how the genitive case and the different genders of adjectives of the third declension are marked.[1]

EXERCISE XVIII.

Vocabulary.

Dēclīvis, e, *sloping.*
Duplex, duplicis, *double.*
Eques-ter, -tris, -tre, *of cavalry, cavalry-* (adjective).
Fertilis, e, *fertile.*
Fortis, e, *brave.*
Humilis, e, *low, lowly.*
Incend-ō, -ī, *burn.*
Levis, e, *slight, trifling.*
Omnis, e, *all.*
Pot-ēns, -entis, *powerful.*
Prae-ceps, -cipitis, *steep.*
Rec-ēns, -entis, *recent, unexhausted.*
Silvestris, e, *wooded.*
Vēl-ōx, -ōcis, *swift, active.*

I.—1. Praesidia in omnibus oppidīs collocābit. 2. Proelium equestre fēcimus.[2] 3. Fīliam lēgātō, virō fortī et potentī, dedit. 4. In locō silvestrī cōnsēderant. 5. Cōpiae recentēs et integrae proelium renovābant. 6. Animōs omnium sociōrum cōnfirmat. 7. Peditēs vēlōcēs et fortēs dēlēgeram. 8. Duplicem fossam ā castrīs ad flūmen perdūxit. 9. Omnia arma trādidērunt. 10. Levia equestria proelia fēcerant.[2] 11. Per regiōnem fertilem iter fēcerant. 12. Ex humilī locō ad māgnam auctōritātem Mārcum perdūxerat.

---

1. All adjectives not ending in *us* (or *er*), *a*, *um*, are of the third declension. Adjectives of this declension end generally in (*a*) masculine and feminine, *-is*, neuter, *-e*, the genitive of each being the same as the masculine nominative; (*b*) masculine, *-er*, feminine, *-ris*, neuter, *-re*, the genitive of each being the same as the feminine nominative; (*c*) masculine, feminine and neuter, *-ns*, the genitive having *-ntis* in place of *-ns*; (*d*) masculine, feminine and neuter, *-x*, the genitive having *-cis* in place of *-x* (but *-icis* in place of *-ex*).

2. *Proelium facio* = *I fight a battle*, literally, *I make a battle.*

II.—1. They had fortified the camp with a double wall. 2. Cæsar removed the horses of all the lieutenants. 3. They were laying waste all the lands. 4. The Helvetians had burned all the towns, all the rest of the villages, (and) all the corn. 5. He had not laid aside the memory of the recent wrongs. 6. He has granted pardon to all the captives. 7. You have pitched the camp in a sloping and steep place. 8. He will have sent fresh and unexhausted cavalry. 9. I hastened with all the cavalry to the river. 10. We marched through fertile lands. 11. We shall deter the Gauls by (our) recent victory. 12. He summons the centurions of all ranks.

LESSON XIX.

Bellum renovāre dubitant,	*they hesitate to renew the war.*
Cōpiās in prōvinciā jūssit hiemāre,	*he ordered the forces to winter in the province.*
Labiēnum locum tenēre jūsserat,	*he had ordered Labienus to hold the place.*
Lēgātōs discēdere vetuit,	*he forbade the lieutenants to depart.*
Labiēnum jubet castra mūnīre,	*he orders Labienus to fortify the camp.*
Vēnīre dubitat,	*he hesitates to come.*

Observation.—In each sentence notice how one verb completes the meaning of the other. Formation of the infinitive in each conjugation. What is generally the position of the infinitive? Notice that in the vocabularies that follow, the infinitive is always given, as a means of indicating the conjugation to which a verb belongs.[1]

EXERCISE XIX.

Vocabulary.

Audeō, ēre, *venture.*	**Cōgō, ere, coēgī,** *collect, compel.*
Coepī (used in the perfect tenses only) *began.*	**Cōnstitu-ō, ere, -ī,** *determine.*
	Dēsil-iō, ire, -uī, *leap down.*

1. In preceding vocabularies, the infinitive has not been given for all verbs. In such cases the student should refer to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

I.—1. Bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit. 2. Mīlitēs vetuit ab sīgnīs discēdere. 3. Ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus mīlitēs jubet convenīre. 4. Oppidum oppūgnāre et portās incendere coepērunt. 5. Lēgātī ad castra venīre dubitāverant. 6. Māgna praesidia in omnibus oppidīs cōnstituit collocāre, et cum reliquīs cōpiīs in vīcō Aeduōrum hiemāre. 7. Cōpiās in hīberna redūcere cōnstituerat. 8. Omnēs lēgātōs coēgit equōs removēre. 9. Multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem obsecrāre coepimus. 10. Proelium renovāre nōn audēbunt. 11. Omnia oppida incendere cōnstituerāmus. 12. Labiēnum cum omnibus equitibus locum tenēre jūssit. 13. Patrem imperium dēpōnere coēgit.

II.—1. Cæsar had ordered all the Aedui to give up (their) arms. 2. They determined to send ambassadors to Cæsar concerning peace. 3. They had begun to lay waste the lands of the allies. 4. Cæsar forbade the legions to leave (their) work. 5. They have begun to collect forces. 6. He ordered all the soldiers to leap down. 7. They began to fill up the trenches with branches. 8. He had ordered the soldiers to fortify the camp with a double trench. 9. We determined to collect forces and wage war with Cæsar. 10. They do not venture to send ambassadors. 11. He had compelled the Aedui to give hostages. 12. They hesitate to winter in Gaul. 13. The Gauls began to assemble out of all the towns.

LESSON XX.

Turn to the nouns of the fourth declension given in Part III., section 7.

Observation.—The case-endings of the declension. The gender of the nouns in **us** and in **ū**.[1] How does the vocabulary indicate that a noun is of the fourth declension?

EXERCISE XX.

Vocabulary.

Adventus, ūs, m., *arrival.*
Commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*[2]
Com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, *entrust;* (with proelium) *join, begin.*

1. See Part III., section 50, *b*. 2. See footnote 1, page 31.

Cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*
Cornū, ūs, n., *wing* (of an army).
Dexter, tra, trum, *right.*
Discēssus, ūs, m., *departure.*
Equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*[1]
Exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
Homō, hominis, m., *man,* (in plural) *people.*
Impetus, ūs, m., *attack, fury.*
Lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
Magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate, office.*
Peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*[1]
Sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*
Sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, *withstand, endure.*
Ūsus, ūs, m., *experience.*

I.—1. Post adventum Caesaris obsidēs dare cōnstituerant. 2. Gallī impetum in[2] equitātum fēcērunt. 3. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsērunt. 4. Helvētiī agrōs Aeduōrum in cōnspectū exercitūs Rōmānī vastābant. 5. Ā lacū ad flūmen mūrum duplicem perdūxerāmus. 6. Magistrātum obtinēbat. 7. Salūtem magistrātuum equitātuī commīsit. 8. In[3] dextrō cornū omnem equitātum collocāvit. 9. Oppidum māgnō impetū oppūgnāre coepērunt. 10. Equitātūs in[4] cōnspectum vēneram. 11. Magistrātūs multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs coēgerant. 12. Reliquum exercitum Labiēnō dare cōnstituit. 13. Exercitum sine māgnō commeātū cōgere nōn audēbunt. 14. Lēgātōs ab omnibus exercitibus convenīre jūssit.

II.—1. They will not withstand the attacks of the cavalry. 2. He ordered the lieutenant to remove out of sight the horses of all the soldiers. 3. He determined to winter in the province with all the cavalry. 4. After the departure of the Belgians they had begun to renew the war. 5. The plunder he orders the lieutenant to present to the cavalry. 6. He hastened to the lake. 7. We have determined to await Labienus' arrival. 8. He orders all the magistrates to assemble. 9. He had forbidden the soldiers to seek supplies. 10. They were surrounding the forces with cavalry. 11. He ordered Labienus with the rest of the cavalry to hasten to the right wing. 12. They have experience in camps. 13. He found out through scouts about the departure of the allies. 14. He hesitates to entrust all the plunder to the magistrates.

1. These words are to be used in Latin in the singular, not in the plural, in spite of their meaning.
2. With *impetum facio, in* with the accusative is to be translated *on.*
3. See footnote 3, page 17.
4. Translate *in* here by *in,* not *into.*

LESSON XXI.

(*a*) **Missus sum,** *I have been sent,* or *I was sent.*
Superātus es, *you* (sing.) *have been conquered,* or *you were conquered.*
Audītus est, *he has been heard,* or *he was heard.*
Revocātī sumus, *we have been recalled,* or *we were recalled.*
Jūssī estis, *you* (plural) *have been ordered,* or *you were ordered.*
Coāctī sunt, *they have been compelled,* or *they were compelled.*

Observation.—Twofold translation. Voice. Number of words in each Latin phrase. Which indicates the person? What does the change of ending in the other indicate?

(*b*) **Jūssa est,** *she was ordered.*
Audītum est, *it has been heard.*
Locus mūnītus est, *the place was fortified.*
Castra mūnīta sunt, *the camp was fortified.*
Legiōnēs missae sunt, *the legions have been sent.*
Militēs jūssī sunt, *the soldiers have been ordered.*

Observation.—What new endings are found in these verbs? What do the different endings indicate?

(*c*)

Present.	Perfect Active.	Perfect Passive.
First Conjugation.		
amō	amāvī	amātus sum
dō	dedī	datus sum
vetō	vetuī	vetitus sum
Second Conjugation.		
moneō	monuī	monitus sum
jubeō	jūssī	jūssus sum
commoveō	commōvī	commōtus sum
compleō	complēvī	complētus sum
Third Conjugation.		
regō	rēxī	rēctus sum
cōgō	coēgī	coāctus sum
cōgnōsco	cōgnōvī	cōgnitus sum
mittō	mīsī	missus sum

Fourth Conjugation.

Present.	Perfect Active.	Perfect Passive.
audiō	audīvī	audītus sum
sentiō	sēnsī	sēnsus sum
vinciō	vīnxī	vīnctus sum

Observation.—Is the relation between the forms of the perfect passive and those of the present or perfect active always the same? Is it the same in any conjugation? In what respect do all the perfect passive forms agree?

Notice how in the vocabularies that follow a form is given with each verb, from which the perfect passive may easily be obtained.[1]

EXERCISE XXI.

Vocabulary.

Ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive.*

Colloc-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *station.*

Com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *entrust, begin.*

Com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *alarm.*

Convoc-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call together.*

Dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose.*

Expūgn-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *take by storm.*

Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *do, make.*

In-cendo, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *burn.*

Mūn-iō, īre, -īvī, -ītum, *fortify.*

Per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish.*

Prohib-eō, ēre, -uī, -itum, *restrain.*

Re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back.*

Renov-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *renew.*

Trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give up.*

Trāns-dūco, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across.*

Vast-o, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste.*

Vulner-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wound.*

---

1. For each regular Latin verb the vocabulary gives four forms, ending in *-ō, -re, -ī* and *-um*, called the *Principal Parts* of the verb. With the exception of the first two, these have no constant relation one to another in form, although in the first conjugation a majority of verbs always change *-ō* to *-āvī, -ātum;* in the second conjugation, *-eō* to *-uī, -itum;* and in the fourth conjugation, *-iō* to *-īvī, -ītum.*

For the perfect passive of verbs occurring in the preceding vocabularies the student is referred to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

I.—1. Agrī vastātī sunt. 2. Cōpiae coāctae sunt. 3. Dēlēctī sumus. 4. Cōgnitum est. 5. Oppida incēnsa sunt. 6. Equitātus missus est. 7. Jūssus sum. 8. Vetita es. 9. Locus est[1] mūnītus. 10. Opus perfectum est. 11. Equī remōtī sunt. 12. Fossa complēta est. 13. Reductī sumus. 14. Convocātī sunt. 15. Prohibita est. 16. Prohibitae sunt. 17. Vulnus acceptum est. 18. Proelium factum est. 19. Exercitus trānsductus est. 20. Caesar commōtus est.

II.—1. The soldiers were ordered. 2. A large number of men has been collected. 3. Wounds were received. 4. We have been sent. 5. She has been wounded. 6. The camp was fortified. 7. I was ordered. 8. The war was renewed. 9. The arms have been given up. 10. The forces were led back. 11. The cavalry has been led across. 12. Garrisons were stationed. 13. A legion was stationed. 14. Hostages have been given. 15. We have been alarmed. 16. You have been ordered. 17. The signal was given. 18. The battle has been begun. 19. The camp was taken by storm. 20. The magistrates were called together.

LESSON XXII.

Fundā vulnerātus est,	*he was wounded by a sling.*
Agrī ā cōpiis vastātī sunt,	*the fields have been laid waste by the forces.*
Locus vallō fossāque mūnītus est,	*the place was fortified by a wall and trench.*
Equī ā Caesare remōtī sunt,	*the horses were removed by Cæsar.*

Observation.—Two ways of translating *by*. Which is used in connection with the passive voice to denote the person by whom something is done?[2]

---

1. *Est munitus* has the same meaning as *munitus est*. Not only may the order be changed in these perfect passive forms, but the two parts are sometimes separated by other words.

2. With the active voice *a* and *ab* will mean *from*; with the passive, *from* or *by*, whichever the rest of the sentence requires.

EXERCISE XXII.

Vocabulary.

Onus, oneris, n., *burden.*
Op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *overwhelm.*
Perturb-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *throw into confusion.*
Prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance.*

I.—1. Obsidēs ab Helvētiīs Caesarī datī sunt. 2. Lēgātī ab omnibus regiōnibus vēnerant. 3. Sagittīs et fundīs barbarī ā mūrō submōtī sunt. 4. Lēgātī et omnēs centuriōnēs ā Caesare convocātī sunt. 5. Ā magistrātū multitūdō hominum ex agrīs coācta est. 6. Castra ā mīlitibus duplicī fossā circumdata sunt. 7. Cōpiae oppressae sunt timōre. 8. Equī omnium ex cōnspectū remōtī sunt. 9. Jūssī sumus obsidēs dare et frūmentum in hīberna comportāre. 10. Fossa rāmīs complēta est. 11. Labiēnus cum omnī equitātū ad prōvinciam praemissus est. 12. Ā Caesare ex captīvīs cōgnitum est. 13. Frūmentō commeātūque ā sociīs jūtī estis. 14. Impetus ā barbarīs in[1] equitātum factus est. 15. Rōmānī adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commōtī sunt.

II.—1. Ambassadors were sent in advance by Cæsar into Gaul. 2. The forces were thrown into confusion by the attack of the barbarians. 3. The camp has been fortified by a rampart and trench. 4. You have been recalled from work. 5. The wall was filled with men. 6. They were ordered by the lieutenant to remove the horses. 7. Ambassadors were ordered to assemble from every town. 8. Large forces have been collected by the Belgians. 9. A large number of the Belgians was slain. 10. The soldiers were overwhelmed by the great weight of (their) arms. 11. All the towns were burned by the Helvetians. 12. We were alarmed by the arrival of Cæsar. 13. The land of the Aedui has been laid waste by the Germans. 14. She was wounded by an arrow. 15. Arms were given up by all the Belgians. 16. The forces were alarmed by the scarcity of corn. 17. A sally was made out of the woods by the Gauls. 18. The army was led back into camp.

1. See footnote 2, page 31.

LESSON XXIII.

(*a*) **Missus eram,** *I had been sent.*

Commōtus erās, *you* (sing.) *had been alarmed.*

Audītus erat, *he had been heard.*

Audītum erat, *it had been heard.*

Jūssa erat, *she had been ordered.*

Revocātī erāmus, *we had been recalled.*

Jūssī erātis, *you* (plural) *had been ordered.*

Coāctī erant, *they had been compelled.*

Castra mūnīta erant, *the camp had been fortified.*

Cōpiae missae erant, *the forces had been sent.*

Observation.—Compare these phrases with those given in Lesson XXI. (*a*) and (*b*). What differences in form and meaning do you find?

(*b*) **Missus erō,** *I shall have been sent.*

Commōtus eris, *you* (sing.) *will have been alarmed.*

Audītum erit, *it will have been heard.*

Jūssa erit, *she will have been ordered.*

Revocātī erimus, *we shall have been recalled.*

Jūssī eritis, *you* (plural) *will have been ordered.*

Castra mūnīta erunt, *the camp will have been fortified.*

Cōpiae missae erunt, *the forces will have been sent.*

Observation.—Compare these phrases with those in (*a*). What differences in form and meaning do you find?

(*c*) **Miseram,** *I had sent.*

Audīverat, *he had heard.*

Miserō, *I shall have sent.*

Jūsserātis, *you* (plural) *had ordered.*

Coēgerant, *they had compelled.*

Mūnīverint, *they will have fortified.*

Observation.—Compare these forms with the phrases in (*a*) and (*b*). What is the difference between the corresponding active and passive forms in Latin?

EXERCISE XXIII.

Vocabulary.

Ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *influence.*

Compar-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *make ready, procure.*

In-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *draw up.*

Tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *take away.*

I.—1. Cōpiae īnstrūctae erant. 2. Adductī erāmus. 3. Frūmentum comparātum erit. 4. Jūssus erō. 5. Convocātī erant. 6. Collocātī sunt. 7. Coēgerāmus. 8. Incendērunt. 9. Oppida incēnsa erunt. 10. Collocābit. 11. Vastāvit. 12. Commovet. 13. Remōvit. 14. Munīverātis. 15. Sustulimus. 16. Addūxeram. 17. Īnstrūctī sunt. 18. Fossa erat complēta. 19. Vulnera accepta erant. 20. Trānsductī erimus. 21. Proelium commīserant. 22. Proelium commissum erat. 23. Jubēbat. 24. Commovēbit. 25. Sustinuerāmus. 26. Dēlēgerās. 27. Dēlēctus erās. 28. Cōgnitum erit. 29. Sublātum erat. 30. Vulnerātis.

II.—1. The war had been renewed. 2. We had renewed. 3. We were not influenced. 4. The legion had been drawn up. 5. They had been made ready. 6. The battle was begun. 7. They will have been overwhelmed. 8. The camp had been taken by storm. 9. They sent in advance. 10. It had been finished. 11. They used to favor. 12. We were calling together. 13. They will have found out. 14. It was found out. 15. They had been compelled. 16. The legion was led back. 17. The legions had been led across. 18. You were sent in advance. 19. He procures. 20. They are making ready. 21. I shall have taken away. 22. The camp had been fortified. 23. They will take the camp by storm. 24. I shall remove. 25. They had wounded. 26. She had been wounded. 27. They wound. 28. It had been given. 29. I gave. 30. I was giving.

LESSON XXIV.

(*a*) Turn to the nouns of the fifth declension, given in Part III., section 8.

Observation.—The case-endings of the declension. How does the vocabulary indicate that a noun is of the fifth declension? Of what gender are most nouns of this declension?[1]

(*b*) Turn to the list of ordinal numerals, given in Part III., section 15.

Observation.—Forms and translation. Notice the way in which *thirteenth*, *fourteenth*, *twenty-first*, etc., are expressed.

In the general Vocabulary all ordinal numerals are given as follows: **prīmus, a, um**, *first*; **secundus, a, um**, *second*: **decimus, a, um**, *tenth*. What is indicated by the letters **a, um**?

EXERCISE XXIV.

Vocabulary.

Aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle, line.*
Diēs, ēī, m., *day.*
Ēgregius, a, um, *remarkable.*
Fidēs, eī, f., *honor, word, fidelity.*
Hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
Mīlitāris, e, *military.*
Occāsus, ūs, m., *setting.*
Pars, partis, f., *part.*
Rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair.*
Scientia, ae, f., *knowledge.*
Sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
Spēs, eī, f., *hope.*

I.—1. Spem fugae sustulerat. 2. Mīlitēs in aciē īnstrūctī sunt. 3. Cum tertiā legiōne in prōvinciā hiemāre cōnstituit. 4. Fidem servāvit dē numerō diērum. 5. Scientiam reī[2] mīlitāris habet. 6. Ab hōrā septimā ad occāsum sōlis pūgnāverant. 7. Multīs rēbus adductī erant. 8. Ēgregiam fidem lēgātī cōgnōverat. 9. Tertia pars exercitūs interfecta est. 10. Omnēs centuriōnēs quartae cohortis interfectī erant. 11. Dē fidē Gallōrum dubitāverant. 12. Propter inopiam omnium rērum mīlitēs nōnae legiōnis in prōvinciam redūcere cōnstituerat. 13. Omnem spem salūtis in virtūte posuerāmus.

---

1. See Part III., section 51, *b*.
2. *Res militaris* (the singular) = *military affairs, the art of warfare.*

II.—1. An attack had been made by the soldiers of the fifth legion on the first line. 2. They had been influenced by the hope of plunder. 3. The forces had been led back to the camp after the fourth day. 4. All things will have been made ready. 5. The second line had been surrounded by the barbarians. 6. He had had great experience in military affairs.[2] 7. He drew up the line of battle. 8. They had inhabited a third part of Gaul. 9. They will not withstand the first attack of the forces. 10. The forces had been influenced by the want of everything (*literally, all things*). 11. The matter had been found out through scouts. 12. They had come into Gaul not without great hope of plunder. 13. He had stationed the tenth legion in ambush.

LESSON XXV.

Tertiō diē ad Caesarem vēnērunt,	*on the third day they came to Cæsar.*
Hōrā septimā proelium commīsit,	*he joined battle at the seventh hour.*
Occāsū sōlis in castra reductī sunt,	*they were led back into camp at sunset* (literally, at the setting of the sun).
Multōs diēs iter fēcerant,	*they had marched many days.*
Māgnam partem diēī pūgnāverant,	*they had fought a large part of the day.*
Paucās hōrās impetūs sustinuērunt,	*for a few hours they withstood the attacks.*

Observation.—The two ideas connected with time found in these sentences. The mode of expressing each in Latin. Is each idea always expressed in the same way in English?

EXERCISE XXV.

(*For this, and all subsequent exercises, no special vocabulary will be given. The student must depend entirely on the general vocabularies, at the end of the book.*)

1. See footnote 2, page 31. 2. See footnote 2, page 38.

I.—1. Posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverant. 2. Complūrēs hōrās pūgnāvērunt. 3. Nocte ad Rhēnum contendit. 4. Sōlis occāsū cōpiae in castra reductae sunt. 5. Multōs annōs rēgnum obtinuerat. 6. Hōrā circiter decimā diēī nūntium ad Labiēnum mīsimus. 7. Permultōs diēs iter per prōvinciam fēcerant. 8. Continuōs complūrēs diēs Caesar aciem īnstrūxit. 9. Prīmā lūce rēs ab explōrātōribus cōnfirmāta est. 10. Certō annī tempore magistrātūs ā Caesare convenīre jūssī erant. 11. Tertiam partem Galliae paucōs annōs incoluerāmus. 12. Adventū Caesaris barbarī cōnstitērunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians moved their camp the next day at daybreak. 2. In the third watch they made a sally out of the town with all their forces. 3. For several hours they withstood the attacks of the cavalry. 4. On the first arrival of the army numerous sallies had been made by the Gauls. 5. He decided to attack the town on the seventh day. 6. They had for many days laid waste the lands of the Aedui. 7. On the following day an attack was made by the Gauls on the cavalry. 8. The camp was moved in the fourth watch with[1] great noise and confusion. 9. After his father's death he had possessed the royal power for several years. 10. At daybreak on the remaining days a double line of battle had been drawn up by Cæsar. 11. They had waged war with the Romans for many years. 12. We reached the camp the third hour of the day.

LESSON XXVI.

Turn to the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 6.

Observation.—How do the case-endings differ from those given in sections 4 and 5 (comparing always nouns of the same gender)? Do the same differences occur in all the words?[2] Compare the adjectives of the third declension given in Part III., section 11.

Notice also the irregular declension of the nouns given in Part III., section 9.

1. Use *cum*.

2. Most nouns having these endings will be found to belong to one of the following classes:

EXERCISE XXVI.

I.—1. Equitēs impetum hostium sustinent. 2. Fīnēs Aeduōrum multōs mēnsēs ferrō et īgnī vastātī sunt. 3. Nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū barbarī permōtī erant. 4. Culmina Alpium ab hostibus occupāta erant. 5. Animālia atque māgnum numerum servōrum, et clientium Gallī īgnī cremābant. 6. Posterō diē Labiēnum cum omnī equitātū montem tenēre jūssit. 7. In fīnēs hostium incursiōnem fēcerant. 8. Hieme nāvēs cōnstituit aedificāre. 9. Ē fīnibus hostium Helvētiōrum in fīnēs Aeduōrum iter per vim fēcērunt. 10. In fīnibus hostium hiemāverat. 11. Propter altitūdinem montium castra in valle posita sunt. 12. Nāvēs ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus jubet convenīre.

II.—1. They had built a large number of ships in the third year of the war. 2. He demanded a large number of hostages. 3. An attack was made at daybreak by the enemy on the line of battle. 4. All the towns of the enemy were burned. 5. They had marched through the province by (*literally, through*) force. 6. They were alarmed by the violence of the rivers. 7. For many years he used to have a large number of retainers. 8. A forest used to extend from the mountain to the territories of the Aedui, and restrain[1] the enemy's cavalry from inroads. 8. On account of the depth of the sea, the soldiers hesitated to leap down out of the ship. 10. The forces of the enemy had been dismayed by the size of the ships of war. 11. For a large part of the day they had laid waste the fields with fire and sword. 12. For several years he had leased all the rest of the revenues of the Aedui.

---

(1) Nouns ending in *is* or *es*, and having two syllables in both nominative and genitive singular.

(2) Monosyllables ending in *s* or *x* immediately preceded by a consonant.

(3) Nouns ending in *ns* or *rs*.

(4) Neuter nouns ending in *e*, *al* or *ar*.

These have *ium* in genitive plural; very few have *i* in the ablative singular, the following being the commonest in Cæsar: *ignis*, fire; *navis*, a ship; *continens*, the continent or mainland.

1. *i.e.*, *used to restrain*. All similar ellipses are to be supplied in translating from English to Latin, where the words to be understood are expressed in Latin by part of a word, not a separate word.

LESSON XXVII.

Turn to the present, imperfect and future indicative (active and passive) of the first and second conjugations, as given in Part III., sections 27 and 28.

Observation.—From which of the principal parts are these tenses formed in the active voice? in the passive voice? How is the difference between the voices indicated in Latin?[1]

EXERCISE XXVII.

I.—1. Helvētiī locī nātūrā continentur. 2. Māgnae cōpiae ab hostibus comparābantur. 3. Tertia pars Galliae ā Belgīs obtinētur. 4. Ā Gallīs sollicitābāmur. 5. Mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbitur. 6. Fugā Gallōrum commovēminī. 7. Māgnam inter Belgās auctōritātem habēre vidēris. 8. Vīcus montibus continēbātur. 9. Equitēs peditum virtūte servantur. 10. In servitūte tenēberis. 11. Numerus hostium augētur. 12. Nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbuntur. 13. Hostēs ā pūgnā tempestātibus continēbantur. 14. Adventū Caesaris commovēbar. 15. Cōpiae hostium ē castrīs videntur. 16. Iter ā flūmine āvertere vidēbimur. 17. Prōvincia ab hostibus incursiōnibus vastābātur. 18. Multitūdine hominum castra complēbuntur.

II.—1. The forces of the enemy are being increased. 2. Stones were being placed on the wall. 3. The battle will be renewed. 4. You will be awaited by the consul. 5. The Helvetians are inclosed by the river Rhine, the Jura mountains,[2] and the river Rhone. 6. We shall not be alarmed by the departure of the allies. 7. The arrival of the forces was being awaited by the citizens. 8. For several successive days the enemy's forces are kept in camp by storms. 9. The lands of the Aedui used to be laid waste by the Germans. 10. It is announced to Cæsar. 11. I shall be held in subjection. 12. They seem to fear without cause.

---

1. Notice also that there is no change whatever in the part that precedes the personal ending, except that *i* before *s* is changed to *ē* before *ris* (*er* having almost the same sound as *ir*, but being easier to pronounce).

2. Use the singular of *mons*, which has the meaning of a *mountain chain*, as well as of a single *mountain* or *hill*.

13. They were removed. 14. We were removing. 15. They were being removed. 16. He will recall. 17. You will be recalled. 18. They will be recalled. 19. I used to restrain. 20. I used to be restrained.

LESSON XXVIII.

(*a*)

Lātus, *broad;*	**lātior,** *broader;*	**lātissimus,** *broadest* or *very broad.*
Fortis, *brave;*	**fortior,** *braver;*	**fortissimus,** *bravest* or *very brave.*
Vēlōx, *swift;*	**vēlōcior,** *swifter;*	**vēlōcissimus,** *swiftest* or *very swift.*
Potēns, *powerful;*	**potentior,** *more powerful.*	**potentissimus,** *most* or *very powerful.*

Observation.—Endings indicating the different degrees of comparison. Formation of comparative and superlative from the positive.[1] Twofold translation of the superlative.

(*b*)

Virī fortiōris,	*of a braver man.*
Flūmen lātius,	*a broader river.*
Fossae lātiōrēs,	*broader trenches.*
Militis fortissimī,	*of a very brave soldier.*
Flūmen lātissimum,	*a very broad river.*
Fossae lātissimae,	*very broad trenches.*

Observation.—Declension and agreement of comparative and superlative adjectives.

(*c*) Turn to the declension of comparative adjectives, as given in Part III., section 12.

Observation.—How do the case-endings of the comparative differ from those of adjectives of the positive degree belonging to the same declension? (See section 11.)

---

1. Notice that the genitive of the positive degree of these adjectives is respectively *lati, fortis, velocis, potentis.*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I.—1. Helvētiī flūmine lātissimō et altissimō continentur. 2. Caesarem dē adventū Labiēnī certiōrem fēcērunt. 3. Urbs in monte altissimō posita erat. 4. Peditēs vēlōcissimī et fortissimī dēlēctī sunt. 5. Humiliōrēs ā potentiōribus expulsī erant. 6. Legiōnēs longiōre itinere circumdūxit. 7. In dēnsissimās silvās cōnfūgērunt. 8. Castra lātiōribus fossīs mūnīta sunt. 9. Ad flūmen lātius vēnerant. 10. Rēs opportūnissima accidit. 11. Crēbriōrēs explōrātōrēs in fīnēs hostium mīsit. 12. In novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians had been informed of (*literally, about*) the enemy's departure. 2. The enemy sought denser forests. 3. He gives his daughter to the centurion, a very brave and powerful[1] man. 4. He came at a most opportune time. 5. They had sent the noblest (men) of the state. 6. They are alarmed by the appearance of the wider vessels. 7. He ordered Labienus to make the vessels lower and wider. 8. They used to possess most fertile lands. 9. The rear was being thrown into confusion. 10. They encamped in a very fertile region. 11. They used to be hemmed in by higher mountains and a broader river. 12. A deeper river hems in the Helvetians. 13. Cæsar had been informed by more frequent messages. 14. He had entrusted the safety of the hostages to the bravest soldiers.

LESSON XXIX.

(*a*) **Missus est,** *he was* (or *has been*) *sent.*

Jussī sunt, *they were ordered.*

Cōgnitum erat, *it had been found out.*

Reductī erunt, *they will have been led back.*

Rōmānus est, *he is a Roman.*

Fortēs sunt, *they are brave.*

Potēns erat, *he was powerful.*

Līberī erunt, *they will be free.*

Observation.—What difference in translation occurs when **est, sunt,** etc., are joined with a noun or adjective, not with the part

1. *i.e., very powerful.* See footnote 1, page 41.

of the verb used in forming the perfect tenses? In what case is the noun or adjective in the predicate with the verb **sum**?

(*b*) Turn to the inflection of the verb **sum**, given in Part III., section 41.

Observation.—Formation and translation of the six tenses in the indicative, and of the present infinitive.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I.—1. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae. 2. Exercitus erat[1] in cōnspectū. 3. Perīculōsum est. 4. In armīs sumus. 5. Tertiā nocte lūna erat plēna. 6. Locus erat idōneus. 7. Omnēs rēs comparātae erant. 8. Noctēs breviōrēs sunt. 9. Castra angustiōra erant. 10. Spēs est sublāta. 11. Rēx fuerat. 12. Miserior et gravior esse fortūna Sēquanōrum vidētur. 13. Mōns altissimus est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 14. In itinere erātis. 15. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 16. Mīlitēs montem tenēbant. 17. Adventus hostium cōgnitus erat. 18. Reliquae nāvēs erunt inūtilēs. 19. Nōn audēbunt esse inimīcī. 20. Vir fortissimus et nōbilissimus fuit. 21. Reductī sunt. 22. Fossa erat ante oppidum. 23. Homō sum.

II.—1. All the rest of the Belgians are in arms. 2. The road through the province will be longer. 3. Ambassadors were sent. 4. The adjacent regions are very fertile. 5. They are aided. 6. The Belgians seem to be very hostile. 7. There[2] is scarcity of all things. 8. They were awaiting. 9. The night was very short. 10. The vessels are low and wide. 11. The forces were sent in advance. 12. The allies used to be free. 13. They began to be hostile. 14. There[2] had been great danger. 15. Nothing is easier. 16. We shall be thrown into confusion. 17. You are useful friends. 18. They have been in Cæsar's army. 19. He has been influenced. 20. They are making ready all things. 21. It is uncertain.

1. In this, as in many of the succeeding sentences, the English word *there* may be used in translation. This word has no equivalent in Latin, which would express "*there are ten men present*" and "*ten men are present*" by the same words.

2. *There* (the introductory adverb) has no equivalent in Latin. See footnote 1.

LESSON XXX.

Populō Rōmānō perīculōsum erat,	*it was dangerous to the Roman people.*
Helvētiīs erat inimīcus,	*he was hostile to the Helvetians.*
Fīnitimī sunt Galliae,	*they are adjacent to Gaul.*

Observation.[1]—Nature of the adjectives. Addition of a noun defining their application. Case of the noun indicating the person concerned or the thing to which the quality is directed. Does the dative in these sentences generally precede or follow the adjective it refers to?[2]

EXERCISE XXX.

I.—1. Amīcus fuerat Helvētiīs. 2. Caesarī es fidēlis. 3. Incursiōnes hostium prōvinciae sunt perīculōsae. 4. Fugae similis erat discēssus. 5. Turpissimum est reīpūblicae. 6. Nihil est grātius dīs immortālibus. 7. Omnibus equitibus incōgnitum erat. 8. Gallī fīnitimī Belgīs erant. 9. Caesarī erat inimīcus. 10. Cārī fuērunt dīs immortālibus. 11. Vulnera mīlitī perīculōsa sunt. 12. Gallī nōn parēs erant Belgīs. 13. Multīs cīvibus erit grātum.

II.—1. We are not equal to the enemy's cavalry. 2. The Aedui are adjacent to the provinces. 3. Nothing was more disgraceful to the Germans. 4. The road is dangerous to the army. 5. She is dear to all. 6. We used to be friendly to the Romans. 7. They are useful friends to the hostages. 8. We had been faithful to the Roman people. 9. The punishments are more pleasing to the immortal gods. 10. He used to seem to be hostile to the Roman people. 11. The war will be dangerous to the state. 12. The harbors were unknown to the Gauls. 13. It is similar to the Gallic war.

LESSON XXXI.

Turn to the list of irregularities in the comparison of adjectives, given in Part III., section 13 (parts ii., iii. and iv.).

---

1. For beginners it may be sufficient to call attention to the use of datives (translated in the ordinary way) depending on adjectives as well as on verbs.

2. See footnote 2, page 6.

Observation.—The difference between the comparison of these adjectives and the regular comparison, given in Lesson XXVIII.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I.—1. Prīmā lūce mājōrem multitūdinem equitum ab ūlteriōre portū mīsit. 2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs. 3. Ascēnsus est facillimus. 4. Superiōre annō minōre cum perīculō bellum gesserant. 5. Crēberrima aedificia in Galliā sunt. 6. Proximā nocte summa erat difficultās. 7. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum extrēmum. 8. Spem celerrimae victōriae habent. 9. Māximīs itīneribus in Galliam citeriōrem contendit. 10. Iter per prōvinciam erat facillimum. 11. Summam scientiam reī mīlitāris habet. 12. Superiōra loca occupāverant. 13. In citeriōre Galliā legiōnēs cōnscrīpserat. 14. Superiōre annō cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāvērunt. 15. Propter summam virtūtem dēlēcti [illegible] 16. Superiōribus diēbus mājōrem mōtum exspectābāmus. 17. Superiōrem partem collis dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant.

II.—1. They had collected very many ships in the preceding summer. 2. The road will be very difficult. 3. They had been stationed in the upper line. 4. He had sent very frequent messengers into farther Gaul. 5. At the most troublesome (*literally, difficult*) time of the year more states were conspiring. 6. For the larger part of the summer they had waged war in hither Gaul. 7. They made an attack from (*literally, out of*) the higher ground. 8. They were attacking the outer fortifications. 9. He had come on the preceding day to the smaller camp with a larger number of foot-soldiers. 10. The depth of the river is very great. 11. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetians. 12. Nothing is better. 13. They fled to the nearest woods. 14. They burned the finest city of Gaul. 15. It is best to hasten to the lower part of the island. 16. They had collected very large forces.

LESSON XXXII.

(*a*) Turn to the present indicative active of the third conjugation, given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Personal endings. Manner of joining personal endings to the common part **reg-**.[1]

(*b*) In the same way examine the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation, in the same section.

(*c*) Turn to the present indicative passive of the third and fourth conjugations, given in section 28.

Observation.—Is the difference between the active and the passive, in the present tense, the same as in the first and second conjugations?[2]

EXERCISE XXXII.

I.—1. Ā Caesare in Galliam praemittitur. 2. Hostēs in silvās repelluntur. 3. Lēgātī ab omnibus cīvitātibus veniunt. 4. Tertiam partem Galliae incolitis. 5. Ad castra vēnit: ad castra venit. 6. Ex castrīs discēdunt. 7. Ad Caesarem convenīmus. 8. Castra vāllō altissimō mūniuntur. 9. Vincīminī: vincīminī. 10. Pontem rescindunt. 11. Rhodanus prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. 12. Vīcus flūmine dīviditur. 13. Ā populō Rōmānō impedīmur. 14. Exercitum in ūlteriōrem Galliam dūcis. 15. Aciem circumveniunt. 16. Vincīmus. 17. Castra in locō idōneō pōnimus. 18. Oppida omnia incendunt. 19. In fluctūs dēsilit. 20. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt.

II.—1. They leap down out of the ship. 2. The line of battle is drawn up. 3. You are enrolling a legion. 4. A few foot-soldiers fall. 5. We are being surrounded by the Gauls. 6. We are waging war with the Romans. 7. They assemble on the seventh day. 8. They send ambassadors to Cæsar about peace. 9. The legion is led back into winter quarters. 10. You are binding. 11. We are conquering. 12. The bridge is broken down.

1. With beginners it is sufficient for all practical purposes to consider the present stem as ending in the consonant preceding *o*, *e.g.*, *reg-*, *pon-*, *ger-*. To introduce the so-called thematic vowel *-e* will only cause confusion.

2. See footnote 1, page 42.

13. They fortify the camp with a wall and trench. 14. A message is sent to Cæsar. 15. They are assembling from all the camps. 16. The camp is pitched in a valley. 17. Labienus is sent in advance with the scouts. 18. I am hindered by the violence of the river. 19. I am cut off from the army. 20. It is announced.

LESSON XXXIII.

Turn to the adjectives whose declension is given in Part III., section 14.

Observation.—Declension to which these adjectives in the main belong. Irregularities in declension.

The most peculiar of the common uses of the adjectives given in the list may be observed in the following sentences:

Alia loca fossīs, alia vallīs, alia turribus mūnīēbat. *Some places he was fortifying with trenches, others with walls, others with towers.*

Altera legiō in Galliā hiemat, altera in Italiā. *One legion is wintering in Gaul, the other in Italy.*

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I.—1. Alterum iter facilius erat. 2. Lēgātī tōtīus Galliae ad Caesarem veniunt. 3. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne proelium committit. 4. Aliud iter habēmus nullum.[1] 5. Relinquitur[2] ūna per Sēquanōs via. 6. In utram partem flūmen fluit?[3] 7. Nūllī acciderat. 8. Neuter proelium committere audēbit. 9. Ūnō tempore dē adventū equitātūs et dē Labiēnī victōriā certior factus est. 10. Alteram partem vīcī Gallīs concēdit, alteram cohortibus. 11. Ab aliīs audiunt. 12. Aliā in parte legiōnēs collocāvit. 13. Factiōnum alterius prīncipātum tenent Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. 14. Sine ūllō perīculō castra mūniunt. 15. Ager Sēquanus optimus est tōtīus Galliae.

---

1. *Nullum* agrees with *iter*, and is placed where it is for emphasis' sake.

2. By means of this sentence the use of the introductory *there* in English, where no corresponding word is found in Latin, may be shown. See footnote 1, page 45.

3. See footnote 2, page 19.

II.—1. He gives orders to the whole province. 2. An attack was made from all directions at one time. 3. Some fill the trenches, others attack the walls. 4. It is pleasing to neither. 5. They had marched through the province without (doing) any mischief. 6. The Sequani alone do[1] not venture to ask aid. 7. He puts the baggage of the whole army in a suitable place. 8. They assembled in (*literally, to*) one place. 9. They made a sally from another part of the town. 10. On the other bank of the river a legion is left. 11. Neither line begins the battle. 12. He hastened to the other camp. 13. Some he ordered to give up their arms, others to give hostages. 14. We shall aid neither. 15. He will not be deterred by the influence of any state.

LESSON XXXIV.

(*a*) Turn to the imperfect and future indicative active of the third and fourth conjugations, given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Compare these with the corresponding forms in the first and second conjugations. Are they formed from the same principal part? Have they the same letters indicating *was, were* or *used to*? *shall* or *will*?[2]

(*b*) The corresponding forms of the passive voice are given in Part III., section 28.

Observation.—Are the changes from the active to the passive made in the same way as in the first and second conjugations?[3]

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I.—1. Bellum gerēbant. 2. Aciēs īnstruēbātur. 3. Dēsiliēmus. 4. Commoventur. 5. Legiōnem cōnscrībēbat. 6. Castra mūniēbāmus. 7. Mittēmur. 8. Conveniēbātis. 9. Intercludēminī. 10. Bellum gerunt. 11. Veniēbat. 12. Oppida incendēbantur. 13. Praemittuntur. 14. Castra mūniēbantur. 15. Vinciār. 16. Dēligentur. 17. Prohibētis. 18. Impedīris. 19. Vinceris. 20. Trādētur.

---

1. See footnote 2, page 19. 2. See footnote 1, page 48. 3. See footnote 1, page 42.

II.—1. They were assembling. 2. We shall depart. 3. He was leading back. 4. I shall be led back. 5. He was leaping down. 6. The camp is being fortified. 7. He will encamp. 8. They will move the camp. 9. I shall be restrained. 10. It used to divide. 11. It was being fortified. 12. We were waging war. 13. A legion will be enrolled. 14. You will be bound. 15. You will be conquered. 16. You will have conquered. 17. Arms were being got ready. 18. You shall be hindered. 19. I used to come. 20. We shall not begin battle.

LESSON XXXV.

Turn to the list of cardinal numerals given in Part III., section 15.

Observation.—Notice the similarity in form of the cardinal and ordinal numerals; the formation of the words from eleven to twenty; the manner of expressing twenty-one and similar numbers; the various expressions for eighteen and similar numbers. For the declension of the cardinal numerals, see Part III., section 16.[1]

EXERCISE XXXV.

I.—1. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōnscrībēbat, et trēs ex hībernīs ēdūxerat. 2. Quīngentīs equitibus māgnam multitūdinem hostium prōpulerant. 3. Diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcerāmus. 4. Ad Caesarem cum ducentīs obsidibus veniēbat. 5. Nāvēs octōdecim ex superiōre portū solvent. 6. Sīgna mīlitāria quattuor et septuāgintā ad Caesarem retulērunt. 7. Centum vīgintī quīnque pāgōs habent. 8. Equitēs circiter trīgintā trānsportāverat. 9. Quattuordecim annōs bellum gesserant. 10. Cum sescentīs equitibus ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 11. Diēs decem et octo trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmēmus. 12. Nāvēs octōgintā coāctae erant. 13. Legiōnem quartam decimam in prōvinciam redūcet. 14. Quadrāgintā cohortēs coāctae sunt. 15. Diēs continuōs quīnque cōpiās in aciē īnstrūxit.

1. The declension and use of *mille* are taken up in Lesson XXXVII.

II.—1. He drew up a triple line of four legions. 2. He was demanding five hundred hostages. 3. In one summer two very great wars had been finished. 4. They had taken forty-three towns and about two hundred villages. 5. An attack was made by four hundred cavalry. 6. He ordered Labienus with two legions and one hundred and fifty cavalry to ascend the mountain. 7. They were collecting twenty-eight ships. 8. Thirty-five soldiers will be chosen from the whole army. 9. Twenty-three forts were made. 10. The village is divided into two parts by a river. 11. There were two parties[1] in Gaul. 12. About four hundred villages will be burned. 13. He left two legions in the camp, and with the remaining six marched for nine days through the territories of the Belgians. 14. Two legions, the eleventh and the sixteenth, will be left on the other bank. 15. On the twenty-fifth day two hundred and fifty horsemen had been collected. 16. They will give up the two sons of Galba, and three hundred and fifty hostages. 17. They have three months' corn.

LESSON XXXVI.

Missūrus est,	*he is going to send, he is about to send, he intends to send.*
Vastātūrī sumus,	*we are going to lay waste, we are on the point of laying waste.*
Cōpiae mūnītūrae erant,	*the forces were on the point of fortifying, were about to fortify.*
Jūssūrus eram,	*I was going to order.*
Legiō nōn ventūra erit,	*the legion will not be likely to come.*

Observation.—Formation of Latin verbal phrases. Changes in ending **us, I, ae, a.** From which of the principal parts are **missūrus, jussūrus,** etc., obtained? Various translations possible for each form. To which voice do the verbs belong? Difference in meaning and formation between **missus est** and **missūrus est,** etc.

---

1. Literally, *two parties were.* See footnote 1, page 45.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I.—1. Duodecim cohortēs coāctūrī sumus. 2. Omnia aedificia incēnsūrī erant et iter per prōvinciam per vim temptātūrī. 3. Sine equitātū nōn est ventūrus. 4. Bellum cum Rōmānīs gestūrī erant. 5. Nūllo cum perīculō cōpiae ad proxima castra perventūrae sunt. 6. Neque obsidēs repetitūrī, neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrī erant. 7. Centuriōnēs et tribūnōs mīlitum convocātūrus sum. 8. Proximā nocte quartā vigiliā castra mōta erant. 9. Dē itinere brevī tempore jūdicātūrī estis. 10. Omnēs collēs et loca superiōra occupātūrī erāmus. 11. Impedīmenta relictūrī et ēruptiōnem factūrī sumus. 12. Injūriās Aeduōrum nōn neglēctūrus erit. 13. Aeduīs obsidēs nōn reddītūrus sum. 14. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī recūsātūrus est. 15. Cūr ab officiō discēssūrus es?

II.—1. The enemy are going to send ambassadors and give hostages. 2. Reinforcements are likely to come from the nearest winter quarters. 3. The forces are going to winter in hither Gaul. 4. The flight of the Gauls is likely to alarm the Romans. 5. We are intending to aid the other army. 6. They were about to lead across three-fourths (*literally, three parts*) of their forces. 7. She is not likely to gain her request. 8. They had been on the point of giving up their arms. 9. He was about to make an attack with three hundred cavalry. 10. The army was led out of the camp the next day. 11. We are likely to finish the war without any danger. 12. They are not likely to refrain from wrong-doing and mischief. 13. I intend to say nothing about Labienus' opinion. 14. Neither will be likely to begin battle. 15. We shall spend three days in the province.

LESSON XXXVII.

(*a*) **Mille equitēs mittentur,** *a thousand horsemen will be sent.*
Adventus mille equitum, *the arrival of a thousand horsemen.*
Cum mille equitibus contendit, *he hastened with a thousand horsemen.*

Tria millia equitum mittentur, *three thousand horsemen will be sent.*

Cum duōbus millibus equitum contendit, *he hastened with two thousand horsemen.*

Observation.—Difference between singular and plural of **mille** in declension, and in relation to other parts of the sentence. For declension, see Part III., section 16.

(*b*) **Mille passūs pertinet,** *it extends a thousand paces,* or *a mile.*

Tria millia passuum abest,[1] *he is three thousand paces,* or *three miles, distant.*

Observation.—By what case does Latin indicate distance or the extent of space?

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I.—1. Hostēs sub monte cōnsēderant millia passuum octo ā castrīs Rōmānōrum. 2. Millia hominum octōgintā dēlēcta sunt. 3. Summa omnium erat millia trecenta sexāgintā octo. 4. Locus sescentōs passūs abest. 5. Ā lacū Lemannō ad flūmen Rhodanum millia passuum decem novem mūrum perdūcit. 6. Nūllam partem noctis iter intermīsērunt. 7. Millia sex convēnērunt. 8. Ex millibus trīgintā tertia pars interfecta erat. 9. Ā Germanīs iter paucōrum diērum aberant. 10. Mīlitēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā, altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt. 11. Spatium trium millium[2] patet. 12. Ex proeliō millia hominum trīgintā tria superfuērunt.[3] 13. Multa millia passuum agrī vacant. 14. Silva novem diērum iter patet. 15. Sex millia peditum relīquit.

II.—1. They are six miles distant. 2. He restored about twenty thousand captives to the Aedui. 3. The camp was pitched three miles from Cæsar's camp. 4. Out of a number of fifty-two thousand scarcely a fourth part is left. 5. At day-break he was a mile and a half from the enemy's camp. 6. The rest of the legions are

1. *Abest* is from the verb *absum, I am distant, I am away. Absum* is a compound of the preposition *ab* and the various forms of the verb *sum,* which is similarly compounded with many other prepositions, as *de, ad, prae, super.*

2. *Passuum* is generally omitted when the genitive of *millia* is used.

3. From *supersum;* see footnote 1.

a great distance away. 7. The Boii with fifteen thousand men were bringing up the line of march. 8. We were about a mile away from the river. 9. Twenty-three thousand Gauls had come to Cæsar. 10. The territories of the Helvetians used to extend two hundred and forty miles. 11. He selected a suitable place about six hundred paces from the Germans. 12. The Gauls will send twenty-five thousand, the Belgians ten, the Germans three. 13. We shall advance a journey of ten miles. 14. Four thousand men had been slain. 15. A town of the Belgians was eight miles from the camp.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Caesarī pārent,	*they obey* (or *are obedient to*) *Cæsar.*
Equitātuī Rōmānō praestant,	*they surpass* (or *are superior to*) *the Roman cavalry.*
Legiōnī subveniunt,	*they aid* (or *give aid to*) *the legion.*
Prōvinciae imperat,	*he commands* (or *gives orders to*) *the province.*
Militī persuādet,	*he persuades* (literally, makes it agreeable to) *the soldier.*

Observation.—What case is used with these Latin verbs to express the object of the English verbs? Notice that in all the examples the word expressed by this case represents the person indirectly affected (to, or for, or in connection with whom something is done).

Notice how the general vocabulary indicates when a verb (*e.g.*, **resistō**) belongs to the same class as those given above.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I.—1. Aliī ēruptiōnibus resistunt, aliī equitibus subveniunt. 2. Dumnorigī māgnīs praemiīs persuādet. 3. Ex māgnō equitum numerō nōnnūllī Gallicīs rēbus favēbant. 4. Aeduōrum cīvitātī Caesar indulserat. 5. Caesar Dumnorigī īgnōvit. 6. Maritimīs regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant.[1] 7. Nūllā in rē commūnī

1. For *praesum*, see footnote 1, page 54.

salūtī deerat.[1] 8. Omnibus Gallīs praestant. 9. Necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subvēnerat. 10. Legiōnī succurrunt et equitum impetūs sustinent. 11. Neque ad concilia veniunt neque imperiō Caesaris pārent. 12. Omnia nāvibus deerant.[1] 13. Reliquae legiōnēs Caesarī satisfēcerant.

II.—1. They will aid the allies. 2. He was injuring Cæsar and the government. 3. They decided to give hostages and obey the rule of the Roman people. 4. Dumnorix had command of the cavalry. 5. Dumnorix favors the Helvetians on account of the relationship. 6. Cæsar had indulged the tenth legion, and used to trust (it) on account of (its) valor. 7. In another direction two legions were resisting the enemy. 8. They spared neither women nor infants. 9. The Germans used to surpass the Belgians. 10. They had given satisfaction to the Aedui about the injuries. 11. One thing[2] was lacking to Cæsar. 12. He favors Labienus opinion. 13. The infantry was aiding the cavalry.

LESSON XXXIX.

Lēgātus quī missus erat,	*the ambassador who had been sent.*
Legiō, quae missa erat,	*the legion which had been sent.*
Oppidum quod erat expūgnātum,	*the town which had been taken by storm.*
Lēgātus quem mīserant,	*the ambassador whom they had sent.*
Adventus lēgātōrum quōs mīserant,	*the arrival of the ambassadors whom they had sent.*
Ab oppidō quod erat expūgnātum,	*from the town which had been taken by storm.*
Germānī quibuscum bellum gesserant,	*the Germans with whom they had waged war.*

Observation.—Change of form in the relative pronoun. (The declension of **quī** is given in Part III., section 24.) What deter-

1. For *desum*, see footnote 1, page 54.

2. Instead of using *res*, the word *thing*, with an adjective (or pronoun) in agreement, may be expressed by using in Latin the neuter of the adjective (or pronoun). This should be done only in the nominative and accusative cases.

mines the number, the gender, the case, of the pronoun? Cum with the relative. The position of the clause introduced by the relative pronoun.[1]

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I.—1. Ex alterā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concēsserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 2. Reliquum exercitum in[2] Morinōs, ab quibus lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūxit. 3. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitābat, cui indulserat, discēssūrus erat. 4. Caesar posterō diē lēgātum cum legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in[2] Morinōs, quī rebellionem fēcerant, mīsit. 5. Cum lēgātīs Commium, cūjus virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat, mittit. 6. In fīnēs Aeduōrum, quī proximī Sēquanīs erant, exercitum dūxit. 7. Ab omnibus nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolunt, lēgātī ad Caesarem missī sunt. 8. Nāvēs habent plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigant. 9. Ad oppidum, quod circiter mille passūs aberat, cōnfūgērunt. 10. Omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam habet auctōritātem.

II.—1. The Belgians are nearest to the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, with whom they are continually waging war. 2. He ordered Labienus with two legions which had wintered in the province to hasten to the river, which was ten miles distant. 3. They did what they had been ordered. 4. He is likely to persuade Casticus, whose father has possessed royal power among the Sequani for many years. 5. He will collect all his retainers, of whom he has a great number. 6. He sends the cavalry in advance through the forest (of) Ardennes,[3] which is the largest in (*literally, of*) all Gaul. 7. Twenty-four thousand Germans came to Ariovistus, who had settled in the country of the Sequani. 8. Two legions, which he had enrolled in hither Gaul, brought up the whole line of march. 9. The Sequani, through whose territories

1. The relative clause is regularly placed immediately after the word to which the relative pronoun refers (the antecedent). The order in each of the Latin sentences in the exercise should be observed.

2. Translate *in* by *against*.

3. In such phrases as the city of Rome, the province of Gaul, where the city *is* Rome, etc., Latin does not use the genitive, but puts the words in the same case.

we had marched, were going to rebuild the towns which had been burnt. 10. Dumnorix had command of the cavalry which had been sent.

LESSON XL.

Exspectandus est,	*he should be awaited.*
Equus removendus est,	*the horse must be removed.*
Lēgātus mittendus erat,	*an ambassador ought to have been sent.*
Locus mūniendus erit,	*the place will have to be fortified.*
Castra mūnienda erant,	*the camp had to be fortified.*
Bellum gerendum est,	*war is to be waged.*
Lēgātī mittendī sunt,	*ambassadors ought to be sent.*
Legiō exspectanda erit,	*the legion will have to be awaited.*
Cōpiae exspectandae erant,	*the forces should have been awaited.*

Observation.—Formation in the different conjugations of the new part[1] of the verb here joined with the verb **sum** (see the first four examples). Changes in the ending of the gerundive. The various translations given for each tense.

EXERCISE XL.

I.—1. Bellum gerendum erat. 2. Lēgātī ad Caesarem mittendī sunt. 3. Altera pars vīcī Gallīs concēdenda est, altera cohortibus. 4. Injūriae Aeduōrum nōn negligendae erant. 5. Proelium committendum est. 6. Ab injūriā prohibendī eritis. 7. Omnia[2] ūnō tempore agenda erant. 8. In hīberna redūcendī sumus. 9. Coercendus atque dēterrendus erās. 10. Hieme nāvēs aedificandae, veterēsque reficiendae sunt. 11. Exercitus trānsportandus est. 12. Lēgātī audiendī erant. 13. Hostēs sunt opprimendī. 14. Aeduōs ab injūriā dēfendī. 15. Cōpiae hostium submovendae erant.

II.—1. All the horses should have been removed out of sight. 2. The arrival of the cohorts which Cæsar sent must be awaited.

---

1. This form is called the *Gerundive*; it expresses duty or necessity, and is always passive.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. The opportunity is not to be lost. 4. The camp ought to be fortified with a double wall. 5. The line of battle had to be drawn up. 6. The hostages will have to be restored. 7. Two cohorts should have been sent to the smaller camp, which was three miles distant. 8. Peace must be established with the nearest states. 9. The war ought to be renewed. 10. The baggage should have been stationed in one place. 11. Forces had to be raised. 12. The rest of the army is to be led into the country of the Morini. 13. The soldiers should be recalled from work. 14. You should have been sent in advance. 15. The camp must be defended.

LESSON XLI.

Commōtī sunt quod māgna pars exercitūs interfecta erat,	*they were alarmed because a large part of the army had been slain.*
Dum Rōmānī castra pōnunt, hostēs impetum subitō fēcērunt,	*while the Romans were pitching their camp, the enemy suddenly made an attack.*
Ubī parātī sunt, oppida omnia incendērunt,	*when they were ready, they burned all their towns.*
Postquam pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit,	*after* (or *when*), *he arrived, he demanded hostages.*
Simul atque dē adventū Caesaris certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mīsērunt,	*as soon as they were informed of Cæsar's arrival, they sent ambassadors.*
Obsidēs, ut imperāverat, adductī sunt,	*the hostages were brought, as he had ordered.*

Observation.—How are the ideas *because*, *while*, *when*, *after*, *as soon as* and *as* expressed in Latin? What peculiarity in the tense used with **dum**?[1] What tense is used after **ubi**, **postquam**, **simul atque**?[2] The position of the dependent clause in each sentence.

1. Latin uses the present tense with *dum*, where the imperfect might have been expected.

2. Latin uses the perfect tense with *ubi*, *postquam* and *simul atque*, where English could use either the past or the past perfect forms.

EXERCISE XLI.

I.—1. Summa erat difficultās quod mīlitēs māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressī sunt. 2. Ubi lēgātī ad Caesarem revertērunt, obsidēs quīngentōs poposcit. 3. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiae in ūnum locum coāctae sunt, ad flūmen Axonam, quod est in fīnibus Rēmōrum, contendērunt. 4. Dum bellum cum Venetīs geritur, Sabīnus cum cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Rēmōrum pervēnit. 5. Miserior et gravior est fortūna Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī auxilium implōrāre nōn audent. 6. Cōpiae[1] simul atque in āridō cōnstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. 7. Ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, adventus Labiēnī nōn cōgnitus erat. 8. Hostēs[1] ubi equitēs cōnspexērunt, impetum subitō fēcērunt. 9. Bellum gerendum erat in locīs ubi[2] alter lēgātus interfectus est, atque unde alter profūgerat. 10. Helvētiī, quod prīdiē Rōmānī proelium nōn commīserant, novissimum agmen lacessere coepērunt.

II.—1. When neither army begins the battle, Cæsar leads his forces back to the camp. 2. Of all the Gauls the Belgians were the bravest, because they were the nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually waging war. 3. We are going to march through the province, because we have no other road. 4. When the Helvetians were informed of (*literally, about*) Cæsar's arrival, they sent ambassadors. 5. He ordered the Helvetians to rebuild all the towns which they had burned, because the place whence they had departed was unoccupied. 6. The forces had to be led back to the province, because there[3] was a scarcity of corn. 7. While the ships were assembling, ambassadors came from a large part of the Morini to Cæsar. 8. As soon as he learned of (*literally, about*) Cæsar's departure, he began to collect forces. 9. Because he was eighteen miles from the largest town of the Aedui, he turned (his) march aside from the Helvetians. 10. The barbarians were alarmed because the town had been taken by storm.

---

1. Often in Latin the subject (or some other prominent word) of a dependent sentence beginning with a conjunction, is placed before the conjunction. This is especially common where the subject is the same as that of the leading verb.

2. *Ubi* means *where* as well as *when*.

3. See footnote 1, page 45.

LESSON XLII.

The declension of the pronouns **ego** (*I*), **tū** (*you*), and **is, ea, id** (*he, she, it*), is given in Part III., sections 18, 19 and 22.

Observation.—The translation of the various forms of the personal pronouns.[1]

EXERCISE XLII.

I.—1. Pācem vōbīscum[2] fēcerāmus. 2. Ab eīs circumveniēmur. 3. Impetum in nōs fēcērunt. 4. Māgnam inter eōs auctōritātem habēbat. 5. Nihil ā vōbīs postulō. 6. Ubi lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt, adventum Caesaris eōs exspectāre jūssit. 7. Tēcum[2] remittendī sunt. 8. Mīrum mihi vidētur. 9. Duo frātrēs eīs praeerant. 10. Jūssit eōs impedīmenta in ūnum locum collocāre et eum mūnīre. 11. Ego vōbīs rēgna conciliābō. 12. Nūntius ā tē missus erat. 13. Id ab eō comperit. 14. Nōbīs nocēbat. 15. Mihi, nōn tibi, indulgēbat. 16. Eīs satisfēcimus dē injūriīs quās intulerāmus. 17. Tū, Labiēne, mihi reīque pūblicae ūtilis fuistī. 18. Alteram partem vīcī eīs concēssit.

II.—1. They sent ambassadors to him. 2. They will not spare you. 3. Hostages will be given up to us by you. 4. Peace must be established with them. 5. We slew a large part of them. 6. When we were informed of Cæsar's arrival, we sent ambassadors to him. 7. He ordered us to select a suitable place and fortify it with a double wall. 8. They favor us, not you. 9. The citizens fear you. 10. I had not made war on[3] the Gauls, but the Gauls on me. 11. We do not believe him. 12. They will come with you. 13. We were eight miles from him. 14. He is not likely to persuade her. 15. He strove with us for many years about the leadership. 16. (His) son will have to be restored to him. 17. We shall aid the Gauls, who are wintering with us, neither with corn nor (any) other thing. 18. He sent an army into the country of the Morini, because ambassadors had not come from them.

1. The nominative of these pronouns should be used only when the subject of the verb is to be emphasized.

2. With the ablative (both singular and plural) of *ego, tu, sui*, and generally of *qui* and *quis*, the preposition *cum* is placed after the pronoun, forming one word with it. The accent, in such cases, is on the syllable preceding *cum*.

3. The phrase for *make war on* is *bellum infero*, with the dative case expressing the idea of *on*.

LESSON XLIII.

Bellum ā Rōmānīs gestum erat,	*war had been waged by the Romans.*
Bellum Rōmānīs gerendum erat,	*war should have been waged by the Romans,* or *the Romans should have waged war.*
Aciēs ā Caesare īnstrūcta est,	*the line was drawn up by Cæsar.*
Aciēs Caesarī īnstruenda est,	*the line must be drawn up by Cæsar,* or *Cæsar must draw up the line.*
Occāsiō ā mē nōn āmittētur,	*the opportunity will not be lost by me.*
Occāsiō mihi nōn āmittenda est,	*the opportunity must not be lost by me,* or *I must not lose the opportunity.*

Observation.—How is the personal agent expressed in Latin with ordinary passive forms? with the gerundive? Notice also the free translation of the gerundive by the active voice.[1]

EXERCISE XLIII.

I.—1. Caesarī omnia[2] ūnō tempore erant agenda; vexillum prōpōnendum,[3] sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs quī castra mūnīre coeperant, aciēs īnstruenda. 2. Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrī sumus, vel vī coāctūrī. 3. Cōpiae hostium Sabīnō distinendae erunt. 4. Clāssis, quae ab eīs missa est, nōbīs est exspectanda. 5. Loca superiōra occupātūrī sunt. 6. Postquam equitātus in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus. 7. Nūllam partem noctis iter vōbīs intermittendum est. 8. Mihi nōn āmittenda erat occāsiō. 9. Rēs tibi cōgitanda est. 10. Castra erant angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat. 11. Dum reliquae cōpiae

1. There is no form in the Latin active voice corresponding to the gerundive of the passive voice, but by a change in the form of the English sentence, duty or obligation expressed in the active voice may be rendered into Latin by the passive gerundive.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. With each of the gerundives *erat* (or *erant*) is to be understood.

conveniunt, lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt. 12. Complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt.

II.—1. Ambassadors should have been sent to him by us. 2. You must not lead a larger number of men across. 3. Cæsar will have to raise large forces. 4. When Cæsar found it out, he ordered them to hasten with us to the river. 5. We are not going to make war on[1] them, because the winters are very early in Gaul. 6. Opportunity had been given him.[2] 7. Labienus must seize the heights. 8. The army will have to be led across without baggage, on account of the scarcity of ships. 9. Some had to fill up the trenches, others to tear down the walls. 10. I must not neglect the wrongs of the Aedui. 11. He was going to break up camp the next night in the fourth watch. 12. They must await the arrival of the forces. 13. As soon as they made an attack on us, Cæsar had to remove all the horses out of sight. 14. The Morini, from whom ambassadors have not come, are going to collect very large forces and renew the war.

LESSON XLIV.

(*a*) **Sē abdidit,** *he hid himself.*
Sē abdidērunt, *they hid themselves.*
Duās legiōnēs sēcum ēdūxit, *he led out two legions with him.*
Duās legiōnēs cum eō mīsit, *he sent two legions with him.*

Observation.—The declension of the word from which **sē** comes (Part III., section 20). How are the singular and plural to be distinguished? Two translations (*e.g.*, *him* and *himself*) given. Difference between **sē** and **is**. Position when used with **cum**.[3]

(*b*) **Meum adventum exspectāvit,** *he awaited my arrival.*
Tuum adventum, Caesar, exspectāvit, *he awaited your arrival, Cæsar.*
Nostrum adventum exspectāvit. *he awaited our arrival.*

1. See footnote 3, page 61. 2. Literally, *to him*. 3. See footnote 2, page 61.

Vestrum adventum exspectāvit, cīvēs,	*he awaited your arrival, citizens.*
Nōs adventum suum exspectāre jūssit,	*he ordered us to await his arrival.*
Nōs adventum ējus exspectāre jūssērunt,	*they ordered us to await his arrival.*
Nōs adventum suum exspectāre jūssērunt,	*they ordered us to await their arrival.*
Nōs adventum eōrum exspectāre jūssit,	*he ordered us to await their arrival.*

Observation.—Manner of expressing in Latin the possessive pronouns, *my, your, our, his (her, its), their.* For the declension of the Latin possessive pronouns see Part III., section 21. Difference between **tuus** and **vester, suus** and **ējus, suus** and **eōrum.**

(*c*) **Arma trādidērunt,**	*they gave up their arms.*
In officiō permanēbimus,	*we shall remain in our allegiance.*
Fīlium mīsit,	*he sent his son.*
Fīlium suum mīsit,	*he sent his own son.*

Observation.—When are the English possessive pronouns not expressed in Latin?[1] What is the effect if they are expressed when not needed for clearness' sake?

EXERCISE XLIV.

I.—1. In cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī eōrum vastātī erant. 2. Eōrum fugā nostrī[2] erant perterritī. 3. Cūr dē tuā virtūte aut dē meā dīligentiā dēspērās? 4. Sē suaque[2] omnia sine morā eī dēdidērunt. 5. Eōs suum adventum exspectāre jūssit. 6. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 7. Frātrem tuum ad sē vocat. 8. Helvētiī quī vōs nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in vestrīs fīnibus superāvērunt, nostrō exercituī nōn parēs sunt. 9. Ego meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vestrīs [illegible] conciliābō. 10. Legiō, quam sēcum habēbat, in nostrōs impetum fēcit. 11. Sēquanīs, quī [illegible] fīnēs suōs eum recēp[illegible] quōrum

1. See footnote 2, page 13.

2. *Nostrī* is often used without a noun, in the sense of *our men*; [illegible] mean *his* (or *their*) *men, friends, people,* and *sua* (neuter plural), *their possessions*.

omnia oppida in potestāte ējus sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī. 12. Rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupātūrus est. 13. Vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt. 14. Sēsē in silvās abdidērunt. 15. Caesar prīmum suum deinde omnium equōs ex cōnspectū remōvit. 16. Sē in montem recēpērunt. 17. Sē ad suōs recēpit.

II.—1. He resolved to lead out with him two legions. 2. The Helvetians had now led their forces into the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their fields. 3. He gave the signal to his men.[1] 4. He ordered us to obey him. 5. He hastens to them and sends all the cavalry before him. 6. They will not withstand the attacks of our men.[1] 7. On his arrival they withdrew themselves and all their possessions[1] into the town. 8. They were waging war with your allies. 9. The cavalry betook themselves to him. 10. For the sake of their safety I neglected my own danger. 11. They are going to join battle with our men.[1] 12. Cæsar was restraining his men[1] from battle. 13. We learned it through their messengers. 14. Cæsar ought to lead the legions which he has with him across into our province. 15. We are going to march through your territories. 16. They will surrender themselves to him.

LESSON XLV.

Adventū Caesaris commōtī sunt,	*they were alarmed by Cæsar's arrival.*
Adventū Caesaris commōtī, lēgātōs mīsērunt,	*alarmed* (or *being alarmed*) *by Cæsar's arrival, they sent hostages.*
Cōpiae in ūnum locum coāctae erant,	*the forces had been gathered to one place.*
Cōpiae in ūnum locum coāctae, in prōvinciam mittentur,	*the forces, after being gathered* (or *on being gathered*) *to one place, will be sent into the province.*
Legiō dēlēcta est,	*a legion was chosen.*
Legiōnem dēlēctam mīsit,	*he sent a chosen legion.*

1. See footnote 2, page 64.

Observation.—The use and force of **commōtī, coāctae, dēlēcta,** when no longer joined with parts of the verb **sum.**[1] The different translations given. The voice. The relation in point of time of the participle and the principal verb. The formation and declension of the participle.

EXERCISE XLV.

I.—1. Nostrō adventū commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōnscrībit. 2. Nōnnūllī pudōre adductī remanēbunt. 3. Vulneribus cōnfectī, barbarī sē in fugam contulērunt.[2] 4. Repentīnō ējus adventū prohibitus, cōpiās in fīnēs suōs redūxit. 5. In nostrōs disjectōs impetum fēcērunt. 6. In omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. 7. Spē praedae adductī, in Galliam contendērunt. 8. Hostēs vulneribus cōnfectōs ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulimus. 9. Barbarī commōtī quod oppidum, et[3] nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum, expūgnātum erat, mājōrēs cōpiās parāre coepērunt. 10. Omnēs Belgārum cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, ad eum veniēbant. 11. Impulsī ā prīncipibus, ā nōbīs dēfectūrī erant. 12. Hostēs undique circumventī, fugā salūtem petiērunt. 13. Celeritāte Rōmānōrum commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum dē dēditiōne mittunt. 14. Alteram partem vīcī Gallīs concēssit, alteram vacuam ab eīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. 15. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

II.—1. After being driven back into the town they made a sally. 2. They withdrew themselves and all their possessions into a place excellently fortified by nature. 3. Alarmed by the want of supplies, he hastened the next day to the province. 4. The Aedui, after being called brothers by the senate, are held in bondage by him. 5. Being defeated by the first attack of our men, they betook themselves to the camp. 6. Dumnorix on being recalled had resisted the cavalry. 7. The Aedui, being defeated by him, had suffered great loss. 8. The soldiers, weighed down by the heavy burden of their armor, had to join battle with the enemy

1. This part of the verb is known as the *Perfect Participle Passive.*
2. *Contulerunt* is from *confero.*
3. *Et . . . . et* here, as often, means *both . . . . and.*

at an unfavorable time. 9. Cæsar, on being informed of their approach, leads out with him all the cavalry and hastens to them. 10. Led by his influence, they detained the ambassadors sent by him. 11. Dismayed by the appearance of the ships, the barbarians halted. 12. The Aedui, having been crushed by the battles and disasters, had given hostages to him. 13. The Helvetians, alarmed by his sudden approach, are going to send ambassadors to him. 14. He has led his forces across into Gaul, having been asked and invited by the Gauls. 15. Driven by madness and folly, they have made war[1] on us.

LESSON XLVI.

Turning to Part III., section 39, examine the inflection of the verb **capiō**, in the indicative (active and passive), the present infinitive active, and the gerundive passive.

Observation.—The peculiarities of inflection in verbs like **capiō**.[2]

EXERCISE XLVI.

I.—1. Accipiet. 2. Sē recipiunt. 3. Faciendum est. 4. Tēla conjiciēbant. 5. Nūntiat. 6. Rēs est suscipienda. 7. Sē in oppidum recipere coepērunt. 8. Suscipiētur. 9. Superiōra loca multitūdine hostium complēta cōnspiciēbantur. 10. Perfacile est cōnāta perficere. 11. Mūnītiōnēs perficientur. 12. Lēgātōs interficiunt. 13. Ex oppidō profugere nōn audēbunt. 14. Condiciōnēs pācis accipiendae erant. 15. Ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficiēbant. 16. Nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficiunt.

II.—1. The Roman people makes peace with them. 2. They undertake the war. 3. They were marching through the province. 4. The war should not have been undertaken. 5. We fortify. 6. Supplies will fail us. 7. He will be put to death by them. 8. They were ordered to hurl their darts. 9. The fortifications must be finished. 10. We receive. 11. They will make an attack. 12. They will announce. 13. They hesitate to revolt from the Aedui. 14. He undertakes the matter. 15. They perceive him. 16. They were fleeing.

---

1. See footnote 3, page 61. 2. See Part III., section 67.

LESSON XLVII.

(*a*) Turn to Part III., section 23.

Observation.—The declension of **hīc** and **ille**.

(*b*) **Prōvincia mea haec est, illa vestra,** *this is my province, that (is) yours.*

Eum locum mūnīvērunt, *they fortified that place.*

In eōs quī haec faciēbant impetum fēcērunt, *they made an attack on those who were doing this* (literally, these things).[1]

Lēgātī pācem ā Caesare petiērunt. Ille haec respondit, *the ambassadors asked peace of Cæsar. He answered as follows* (literally, these things).

Observation.—The various translations of **hīc, ille** and **is.** What word is used for *that* (*those*) when emphatic (by contrast)? when the antecedent of a relative? When is **ille,** not **is,** used for *he* (*they,* etc.)?[2]

EXERCISE XLVII.

I.—1. Haec omnia[1] Gallīs erant incōgnita. 2. Gallōs, quī ea loca incoluerant, expulērunt. 3. Hōs Germanōs Helvētiī, nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, superāverant. 4. Haec cōnsuētūdō vīctūs cum illā nōn comparanda est. 5. Hī in armīs sunt, illī domī remānent. 6. Ad eam sententiam haec ratiō dēdūxit. 7. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, ad maritimās regiōnēs, quibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, nūntiōs mittit. 8. Nostrī pīla in hostēs conjiciunt. Illī prīmō concursū in fugam conjectī proximās silvās petiērunt. 9. Hōc latus īnsulae pertinet circiter millia passuum quīngenta. 10. Ab iīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus haec cōgnōvit. 11. Hunc illī comprehēderant. 12. Hūjus locī haec erat nātūra. 13. Ūnī ex omnibus Sēquanī nihil eārum rērum faciēbant, quās cēterī fēcerant. 14. Illum prō amīcō, tē prō hoste habēbō.

---

1. See footnote 2, page 56.

2. *Ille* is practically an emphatic *is;* hence when *he* or *they* is emphasized, *ille* should be used. This includes the case where there is a change of subject, as in the last example.

II.—1. The Helvetians on the following day move their camp from that place. 2. On being informed of these things, he orders them to give up all their arms. They quickly do (his) commands. 3. We shall defend those into whose territories Cæsar has sent this army. 4. Alarmed by all these things, they send ambassadors to him. 5. These do[1] not agree with those. 6. The width of this forest extends a nine days' journey. 7. Of all these the Belgians are the bravest, because they are nearest to the Germans. 8. By this speech he persuades them. 9. On their arrival he leads his forces into the country of the Morini. They flee into the woods and swamps. 10. This legion Cæsar had indulged. 11. At that time he held the leading place in this state. 12. They hasten towards the camp and those who were finishing the fortifications. 13. Our men drove them into the woods, but lost a few of (*literally, out of*) their comrades. 14. As soon as Cæsar came to the border of these woods, they betook themselves to their friends, and Cæsar led his forces into winter quarters.

LESSON XLVIII.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 33.

Observation.—The formation in each conjugation of the present participle active.

(b)

Adventum Caesaris exspectāns māgnās cōpiās coēgit,	*while awaiting Cæsar's approach he raised large forces.*
Adventum Caesaris exspectantēs castra mūnīēmus,	*while awaiting Cæsar's approach we shall fortify the camp.*
Lēgātum fortiter resistentem vulnerāvērunt,	*they wounded the lieutenant while he was bravely resisting.*
In eōs fugientēs impetum fēcimus,	*we made an attack on them as* (or *while* or *when*) *they were fleeing.*

1. See footnote 2, page 19.

Observation.—Declension and agreement of present participle active. The different translations given. The voice. The relation in point of time of the participle and of the principal verb.

(*c*) **Equitēs revocārī jūssit,** *he ordered the cavalry to be recalled.*

Fossās complērī jūssit, *he ordered the trenches to be filled.*

Nāvēs cōgī jūssit, *he ordered ships to be collected.*

Castra mūnīrī jūssit, *he ordered a camp to be fortified.*

Observation.—The formation in each conjugation and the translation of the present infinitive passive.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I.—1. Discēdēns ab hībernīs in Ītaliam, jūssit plūrimās hieme nāvēs aedificārī. 2. Lēgēs Aeduōrum duo ex ūnā familiā magistrātūs creārī vetant. 3. Māgnum numerum eōrum fugientium concīdērunt. 4. Haec flēns ā Caesare petīvit. 5. Nāvēs paulum removērī et rēmīs incitārī et ad[1] latus apertum hostium cōnstituī jūssit. 6. Succurrit illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. 7. Equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere, simul castra altiōre vallō mūnīrī jūssit. 8. Caesar petentibus Aeduīs concēssit. 9. Scaphās mīlitibus complērī jubet, et subsidia eīs quōs labōrantēs cōnspicit submittī. 10. Hunc fugientem silvae tēxērunt. 11. Obsidēs in continentem addūcī jūssit. 12. Fortiter pūgnāns interfectus est. 13. Hostēs, hīs rēbus permōtī, Lutētiam incendī, pontēsque ējus oppidī rescindī jubent.

II.—1. He orders the ambassadors to be called to him. 2. Cæsar, while expecting a larger uprising of Gaul, began to hold a levy. 3. Weeping they besought him. 4. He ordered the camp to be fortified by a wall. 5. We made an attack on the enemy as they were betaking themselves to the camp. 6. Our men, while resisting bravely, were surrounded by the enemy's cavalry. 7. He ordered the enemy to be dislodged and driven off with slings and arrows. 8. Lucius Cotta while fighting is slain with a very large portion of the soldiers, the rest betake themselves to the camp. 9. On departing they order cavalry to be procured. 10.

1. Translate *ad* here by *on*.

Influenced by their statements, he ordered the battle to be begun. 11. The enemy, because they had a larger number of men, surrounded our men as they were fighting. 12. We seized him as he was fleeing.

LESSON XLIX.

(*a*) Turn to Part III., section 23.

Observation.—The declension of **ipse** and **idem.**

(*b*)

Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus castra mūnīre jubet, ipse in Galliam contendit,	*he orders Labienus with two legions to fortify the camp, he himself hastens to Gaul.*
Ab Aeduīs ipsīs certior factus est,	*he was informed by the Aedui themselves.*
Sē ad castra recēpērunt,	*they betook themselves to the camp.*
Eāsdem cōpiās reliquit,	*he left the same forces.*

Observation.—The translation of **ipse** and **idem.** The difference between **sē** and **ipse.**[1]

EXERCISE XLIX.

I.—1. Eōdem tempore Caesarem certiōrem faciunt dē ējus adventū. 2. Omnibus Gallīs idem[2] est faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcērunt. 3. Aquilam intrā vallum prōjēcit, ipse prō castrīs pūgnāns occīditur. 4. Postulat eadem.[2] 5. Haec ipsī ab aliīs audīverant. 6. Eōdem diē hostēs sub monte cōnsēderant millia passuum ab Caesaris castrīs octo. 7. Neque Caesaris ipsīus adventus neque Labiēnī cōgnitus erat. 8. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 9. Cōnstituit cohortēs duās in prōvinciā collocāre, et ipse cum reliquīs ējus legiōnis cohortibus hiemāre. 10. Hōrum auctōritāte adductī, eādem dē causā lēgātōs retinent. 11. Eādem nocte sē interficiunt. 12. Eīdem prīncipēs quī[3] ante vēnerant ad eum revertērunt. 13. Ipse in Aeduōs, quae cīvitās

1. *Se* is the reflexive pronoun of the third person; *ipse* is used purely for emphasis, and may be used of any person.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. Notice that, after *idem*, *qui* may be translated *as*, instead of *who*.

propīnqua hīs locīs erat, contendit. 14. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus, quod ipse longē aberat, nāvēs aedificārī, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet.

II.—1. On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemy came to Cæsar. 2. He himself drew up a triple line of four legions. 3. He hastens to them by the same route and sends all the cavalry before him. 4. He had learned this from the Romans themselves through the same messengers. 5. He ordered them to be sent to him. 6. The same night the camp was moved. 7. These are the same enemies with whom the Helvetians have waged war. 8. They themselves sought denser forests. 9. The enemy betook themselves to the camp. 10. The next day they move the camp from that place; Cæsar does the same. 11. Supplies began to fail the enemy themselves. 12. Hostages were given up, and the two sons of the king himself. 13. They were ordered to give themselves up to him. 14. The Sequani remained silent in the same dejection. 15. He himself began the battle on (*literally, from*) the right wing. 16. The town was protected by the very nature (*literally, the nature itself*) of the place.

LESSON L.

(*a*) **Castrīs mūnītīs, cōpiās īnstrūxit,**	*the camp having been fortified, he drew up his forces.*
Obsidibus acceptīs, pācem fēcit,	(literally, hostages having been received) *having received hostages* (or *after receiving hostages*), *he made peace.*
Armīs trāditīs, pācem fēcit,	(literally, arms having been given up) *when* (or *as*) *the arms were given up, he made peace.*
Impetū factō, nostrōs perturbāvērunt,	(literally, an attack having been made) *making an attack, they threw our men into confusion.*
Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, lēgātōs mittunt,	(literally, Cæsar's arrival having been learned) *on learning of Cæsar's arrival, they send ambassadors.*

Observation.—The nature of the ablative absolute.[1] The various translations for the ablative absolute in the perfect participle passive. The absence of a perfect participle active in Latin.

(*b*) **Nostrīs castra oppūgnantibus, ēruptiōnem hostēs fēcērunt,** — *while* (or *as*) *our men were assaulting the camp, the enemy made a sally.*

Observation.—The translation of the ablative absolute in the present participle active. The position of the ablative absolute clause.

EXERCISE L.

I.—1. Hōc proeliō factō, exercitum trādūcit. 2. Datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumpunt. 3. Vīcīs aedificiīsque eōrum incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit. 4. Hīs rēbus expositīs, sīgnum dat. 5. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, cōnsilium convocāvit. 6. Colle occupātō, mille passūs ab nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. 7. Germānī clāmōre audītō, armīs abjectīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt. 8. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās in Ītaliā cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnes prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. 9. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus, rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet. 10. Nūllō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in prōvinciam perdūxit, ibique hiemāvit. 11. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, paulum suprā eum locum pontem fēcērunt. 12. Dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs, praesidia dēdūcent. 13. Itinere conversō, novissimum agmen lacessere coepērunt. 14. Multa, ipsō praesente, in conciliō Gallōrum dicta erant. 15. Phalange disjectā equitibusque repulsīs, impetum in eōs fēcērunt. 16. Impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, eīsdem itineribus quibus pervēnerant, ad flūmen Rhēnum contendērunt. 17. Celeritāte nostrōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt, et petentibus Rōmīs impetrant. 18. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā equitātūque comparātō, in hostium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. 19. Nihil timentibus nostrīs, hostēs impetum fēcērunt. 20. Īnstrūctō exercitū ut locī nātūra postulābat, proelium commīsit. 21. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt, ipsī rējectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem succēssērunt. 22. Caesar, prīmum suō deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, proelium commīsit.

1. See more fully Part III., section 85, *b*.

II.—1. After receiving many wounds, they betook themselves to the woods. 2. Having pitched the camp, they determined to await his arrival. 3. Collecting large forces, he drives him out of the state. 4. When several towns had been taken by storm, Cæsar determined to await the fleet. 5. Having procured supplies and selected the cavalry, he began to march into that country. 6. Drawing their swords, they seized the gates. 7. Having sent ambassadors, they had sought peace from him. 8. As a large number had been slain, the rest cast themselves into the river. 9. After capturing a large number of men and cattle and laying waste the fields, he compelled them to give hostages. 10. As our men were in distress, he ordered the third line to make an attack on the enemy's forces. 11. When several battles had been fought, they sent ambassadors to Cæsar and surrendered themselves to him. 12. On learning this (*literally, these things*), he sends Labienus in advance with three legions; he himself with the remaining two hastened to the river. 13. While these were fighting, a few fled to the camp. 14. Having slain a third part of them, our men began to attack the town. 15. On learning of his arrival, the enemy, collecting large forces, began a cavalry battle with our men on the march; then on their cavalry being defeated, they suddenly disclosed the infantry which they had stationed in ambush. 16. As (but) a few are defending (it), they are likely to take the town by storm. 17. Having thus routed all the forces of the enemy, they withdrew themselves to their own camp. 18. He himself, after drawing up a triple line of battle, advanced to the enemy's camp. 19. The signal being given, our men made an attack on the enemy's line. 20. Having in one summer finished two very important (*literally, great*) wars, Cæsar withdrew the army into winter quarters; he himself wintered in hither Gaul. 21. As these were resisting bravely, he ordered the ships to be removed.

LESSON LI.

Quis tibi persuāsit?	*who has persuaded you?*
Quem ūsum belli habent?	*what experience of war have they?*
Quid vēnistis?	*why have you come?*

Quanta est Insula?	*how large is the island?*
Uter est celerior?	*which (of the two) is the swifter?*
Cūr mē accūsās?	*why do you accuse me?*

Observation.—The difference between the English and the Latin verb in asking a question.[1] The declension of the interrogative pronouns. (For **quis** and **quī**, see Part III., section 25; for **uter**, section 14.)

EXERCISE LI.

I.—1. Quanta est īnsulae māgnitūdō? 2. In ūtram partem[2] flūmen fluit? 3. Quis ējus cōnsilii auctor fuit? 4. Quā dē causā[3] discēdunt? 5. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, bellum parāre coepērunt. 6. Quae et quantae nātiōnēs Britanniam incolunt? 7. Quid mihi faciendum est? 8. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstrūctā, hostēs exspectābat. 9. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, eum ad sē vocārī jubet. 10. Cūr ab officiō discēssūrus es? 11. Quibus ex regiōnibus[3] vēnistis, quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōvistis? 12. Quid dubitās? 13. Quid petunt aliud Rōmānī? 14. Quid illō bellō simile fuit? 15. Cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā dīligentiā dēspērātis? 16. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit.

II.—1. What states are in arms? 2. Why have they led their forces across into our territories? 3. What[4] was said in the council of the Gauls about him? 4. Alarmed by the scarcity of corn and supplies, he hastened the next day into the province, after burning all the buildings of that village. 5. What[4] is being done in the enemy's camp? 6. In what[3] place have the forces of the enemy encamped? 7. How large a number of men are they likely to send to that war? 8. The enemy, after losing all their baggage, fled. 9. What (*literally, of what sort*) is the nature of the mountain? 10. On giving this answer he withdrew. 11. In

1. In English the order is often different in a statement and in a question, the subject (unless it is itself the interrogative pronoun) coming after either the whole or part of the verb; *e.g.*, *he has come, has he come?* No such difference is found in Latin. See also footnote 2, page 10. In both Latin and English the interrogative begins the sentence.

2. *In . . . partem = in . . . direction*, literally, *into . . . quarter* (or *part*).

3. When the interrogative pronoun agrees with a noun which depends on a preposition of one syllable, the order is pronoun, preposition, noun; this order is usual with the relative pronouns also, and is often found with emphatic adjectives.

4. The neuter plural, literally, *what things*, is very commonly rendered by *what*. See footnote 2, page 56.

what[1] place is Cæsar? 12. In what[1] direction are the enemy marching? 13. With whom are they waging war? 14. What[2] have you heard or learned about this matter? 15. On receiving hostages he leaves Labienus with the cavalry in the same village; he himself hastens to the nearest town. 16. What is more disgraceful? 17. Which is the more disgraceful deed?

LESSON LII.

(*a*)

Longē, *far*;	**longius**, *farther*;	**longissimē**, *farthest*, or *very far*.
Līberē, *freely*;	**līberius**, *more freely*.	**līberrimē**, *most*, or *very freely*.
Ācriter, *fiercely*;	**ācrius**, *more fiercely*.	**ācerrimē**, *most*, or *very fiercely*.
Fortiter, *bravely*;	**fortius**, *more bravely*.	**fortissimē**, *most*, or *very bravely*.
Dīligenter, *carefully*;	**dīligentius**, *more carefully*.	**dīligentissimē**, *most*, or *very carefully*.

Observation.—The regular formation of adverbs from adjectives in the positive, comparative and superlative degrees.[3]

(*b*) Turn to Part III., section 17.

Observation.—Irregular formation and comparison of adverbs.

(*c*)

Quam māximās cōpiās coēgit,	*he collected forces as large as possible.*
Quam longissimē,	*as far as possible.*

Observation.—The translation of a superlative modified by **quam**.

EXERCISE LII.

I.—1. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. 2. Inter-

1. See footnote 3, page 75. 2. See footnote 4, page 75.

3. The corresponding adjectives are *longus, a, um; liber, era, erum; acer, acris, acre; fortis, e; diligens, entis.*

pretibus remōtīs, dīcit līberius atque audācius. 3. Sē in currūs citissimē recipiunt. 4. Ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvēnit. 5. Novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, illī per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt. 6. Quam māximīs itineribus in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit. 7. Id quod ipsī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcit. 8. Cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetunt. 9. Mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cuī quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, ācriter pūgnāvērunt. 10. Quā minimē arduus ascēnsus erat, ex oppidō ēruptiōnem subitō fēcērunt. 11. Facillimē impetūs hostium diūtius sustinēbimus. 12. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae valet. 13. Haec cīvitās diū plūrimum tōtīus Galliae valēbat. 14. Hīs rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrere cōnstituit. 15. Huīc legiōnī Caesar indulserat praecipuē, et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē. 16. Omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnāvērunt. 17. Quam aequissimum locum dēlēgit, atque castra quam māximē contrāxit.

II.—1. They will resist us less easily. 2. They are approaching nearer. 3. After procuring supplies as quickly as possible, he hastens by forced marches towards Ariovistus. 4. Our men were greatly alarmed. 5. They began to resist more boldly and fight more bravely. 6. He persuades them more easily because the Helvetians are hemmed in on all sides by the nature of the country. 7. Our men hesitated to leap down, chiefly on account of the depth of the sea. 8. He forbade the soldiers to depart too far[1] from the line of march. 9. Our men, quickly making an attack on them, fought long and vigorously. 10. He ordered as many ships as possible to be collected in that winter. 11. The right of ambassadors must be more carefully upheld. 12. Many ships were most seriously shattered. 13. He demanded as large a number of soldiers as possible. 14. He stationed the army in winter quarters in those states which had last made war. 15. He himself is slain while fighting bravely. 16. He determined to have an escort as friendly as possible. 17. He has waged many wars with the neighboring states most successfully.

1. Translate *too far* by the comparative; literally, *farther (than they should)*.

LESSON LIII.

(*a*) **Morābantur,** *they were delaying.*
Morātus, *after delaying.*
Verētur, *he fears.*
Veritus, *fearing.*
Secūtī erant, *they had followed.*
Sequī coepit, *he began to follow.*
Potītur, *he gains.*
Potītus, *having gained.*
Prōgreditur, *he advances.*

Observation.—To what voice do these verb-forms belong (*a*) with respect to their form, (*b*) with respect to the translation?[1]

(*b*) **Sequēns,** *while following.*
Secūtūrī sunt, *they are going to follow.*

Observation.—To which voice do these forms belong?

For a synopsis of the deponent verb in all conjugations, see Part III., section 40.

EXERCISE LIII.

I.—1. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar morātur, tempestās subitō coorta est. 2. Helvētiī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, cum eīs proficiscentur. 3. Lēgātōs cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit. 4. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī cōnsecūtī, māgnum numerum eōrum concīdērunt. 5. Inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius. 6. Nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, centuriō deōs contestātus dēsilit. 7. Id cōnspicātī, Helvētiī, itinere conversō, nostrōs īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt. 8. Dum cīvitās jūs suum exsequī cōnātur, Orgetorix mortuus est. 9. Germānōs cēdentēs īnsequī ausī erant. 10. Cohortātus suōs, hostēs aggressus est. 11. Nē in locīs quidem superiōribus hostēs cōnsistere patiuntur. 12. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum. 13. Hī nostrōs adortī proelium renovant. 14. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, tertiā vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et sē sequī jūssit. 15.

1. Such verbs are called *Deponents*. The principal parts, as given in the vocabulary, differ, of course, from those of the regular active verb; *e.g.*, *moror, ari, atus sum; sequor, i, secutus sum.* Of these the first is the present indicative, the second the infinitive marking the conjugation (see Lesson XLVIII., *c*), and the third the perfect indicative.

Equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās ostendērunt.

II.—1. Cæsar, after encouraging his men, gives the signal. 2. The Aedui had promised corn. 3. He did not allow the soldiers to go outside of the fortifications. 4. On the interpreters being removed he converses with him more freely. 5. After advancing seven miles from that place, he drew up the line of battle. 6. A sudden war arose in Gaul. 7. When this battle had been reported, those who had come to the Rhine began to return; he himself set out for hither Gaul. 8. He ordered the Helvetians to return to their own territories, from which they had set out. 9. They have not ventured to attack us. 10. They will attempt to seize the higher ground. 11. He himself sets out with all his forces. 12. At daybreak, leaving the camp of the Helvetians, they hastened to the territories of the Germans. 13. A great storm having arisen, all the ships were most seriously shattered. 14. Suddenly attacking them, they slew a large number. 15. With whom (*plural*) does he hold converse?

LESSON LIV.

(*a*) **Virtūte praestant,** *they are superior in valor.*
Celeritāte omnēs praecēdunt, *they excel all in speed.*
Oppida numerō duodecim, *towns twelve in number.*
Oppidum nōmine Bibrax, *a town Bibrax by name.*

Observation.—The use of the ablative without a preposition to specify in what respect a statement or term is to be applied.

(*b*) **Fortiōres quam Gallī sunt,** *they are braver than the Gauls.*
Hibernia est minor quam Britannia, *Ireland is smaller than Britain.*
Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant vīsae, *more than eight hundred vessels had been seen.*
Mīlitēs minus septingentī conveniunt, *less than seven hundred soldiers assemble.*

Observation.—The force of **quam** after a comparative.[1] The omission of **quam** with numerals.[2]

EXERCISE LIV.

I.—1. Haec cīvitās hominum multitūdine praestābat. 2. Magis virtūte quam dolō contendimus. 3. Venetī scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs Gallōs antecēdunt. 4. Virtūte omnibus praestātis. 5. Ūnō diē amplius vīgintī urbēs incenduntur. 6. Praestat omnia ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab Gallīs interficī. 7. Flūmen ab castrīs nōn amplius millia passuum decem aberat. 8. Germānōs Gallī virtūte superābant. 9. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et[3] virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent. 10. Haec rēs Caesarī nōn mīnōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit.[4] 11. Aquitānia et[3] regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum tertia pars Galliae est aestimanda. 12. Gallōs dispersōs adortus, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcit. 13. Plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs in fugam conjiciunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians surpass in valor all the rest of the Gauls. 2. They are strong in infantry. 3. He himself was not farther than a mile and a half from the enemy's camp. 4. Our fleet was superior in swiftness. 5. They themselves have not more than three hundred cavalry. 6. They are going to burn all their own towns, twelve in number. 7. The Gauls do not compare themselves with them in valor. 8. The lot of the Sequani is more wretched and bitter than (that) of the others. 9. Our men were equal to the enemy both in valor and in number. 10. The nights are shorter than in Gaul. 11. Labienus has collected all the ships, two hundred in number. 12. It is better to be slain in battle (*use aciēs*) than not to regain our liberty.

---

1. So also after words implying comparison, *e.g.*, *praestat, it is better.* The use of the ablative of comparison is omitted here because of its rarity in Cæsar.

2. So only after *amplius, plus, minus* and *longius.*

3. See footnote 3, page 66.

4. From *affero.*

LESSON LV.[1]

(*a*) **Respondent Rōmānōs venīre,** *they answer that the Romans are coming.*

Existimat Gallōs esse inimīcōs, *he thinks that the Gauls are hostile.*

Certior factus est Helvētiōs iter facere, *he has been informed that the Helvetians are marching.*

Intellegit nostrōs castra movēre, *he perceives that our men are breaking up camp.*

Observation.—The Latin equivalent for English clauses introduced by *that* after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving. Mood. Case of subject. Translation of *that.*

(*b*) **Respondent Rōmānōs vēnisse,** *they answer that the Romans have come.*

Existimat Gallōs fuisse inimīcōs, *he thinks that the Gauls have been hostile.*

Intellegit nostrōs castra mōtūrōs (esse), *he perceives that our men are going to move the camp.*

Respondet sē nōn ventūrum (esse), *he answers that he will not come.*

Respondent eum nōn ventūrum (esse), *they answer that he will not come.*

Observation.—The formation of the various tenses of the infinitive active, and their translation after verbs of saying, thinking, etc. (See Part III., section 31, and for the verb **sum**, section 41.) The changes of form in the future infinitive.[2] Use of **sē** and **eum** as subject of an infinitive.[3]

1. On account of the length and difficulty of this lesson, the exercises is so arranged that sections (*a*), (*b*) and (*c*) may be taken as separate lessons. See more fully Part II., sections 12 and 16, and Part III., section 101, *b*.

2. The future infinitive is made up of the future participle in *-urus* and the infinitive of *sum*, but *esse* is generally omitted. The participle in *-urus* will, of course, agree in gender, number and case with the person to whom it refers, i.e., its subject.

3. *Sē* regularly in short sentences refers to the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends. As there are personal endings with the infinitive, the subject should always be expressed by a noun or pronoun in the accusative case.

(*c*) **Certior factus erat, eōs iter facere,** *he had been informed that they were marching.*

Respondērunt Rōmānōs venīre, *they answered that the Romans were coming.*

Respondērunt Rōmānōs vēnisse, *they answered that the Romans had come.*

Existimābat cōpiās ventūrās (esse), *he thought that the forces would come.*

Observation.—The translation of the various tenses of the infinitive, when the verb of saying, thinking, etc., is in a past tense, *i.e.*, imperfect, perfect (=English past) or pluperfect.[1]

EXERCISE LV.

I.—(*a*) 1. Renūntiant Gallōs ex vīcō discēdere. 2. Intellēgit Nerviōs bellum parāre. 3. Nostrōs ex nāvī dēsilīre cōnspiciunt.[2] 4. Hostem intrā portās esse existimant.[2] 5. Dīcit cōpiās hostium fossās complēre vallumque scindere. 6. Vidētis nihil esse arduum.

(*b*) 7. Sē obsidēs reciperātūrum existimat. 8. Cōgnōscit nāvēs in continentem revertisse. 9. Duās vēnisse legiōnēs videt. 10. Nōs iter facere cōgnōscit. 11. Cōpiās temperātūrās ab injūriā et maleficiō existimat. 12. Eīs sēsē vel persuāsūrōs vel vī coāctūrōs existimant. 13. Omnem exercitum discēssisse renūntiant.

(*c*) 14. Respondit māgnam Caesarem injūriam facere. 15. Renūntiāverant Gallōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse. 16. Negāvit Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditurum esse. 17. Helvētiī angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.[3] 18. Helvētiōs temperātūrōs ab injūriā existimābat.[3] 19. Ex captīvīs cōgnōvit flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius millia passuum duodecim abesse, trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse, adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre. 20. Hostēs simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, ad Caesarem dē pāce lēgātōs mīsērunt, atque obsidēs sē datūrōs pollicitī sunt. 21. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiōs iter in Aeduōrum

1. These tenses are called the *secondary* or *historical* tenses; the present, future and perfect (when translated by *have*) being called the *primary* tenses.

2. The verb of saying, thinking, etc., often follows the clause which depends on it.

3. With verbs of thinking, feeling and knowing, the imperfect tense is generally to be translated by the English past tense.

fīnēs facere. 22. Caesar postquam per explōrātōrēs comperit hostēs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius. 23. Helvētiī timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimābant.[1] 24. Breviōrēs esse quam in Galliā noctēs vidēbāmus.[1]

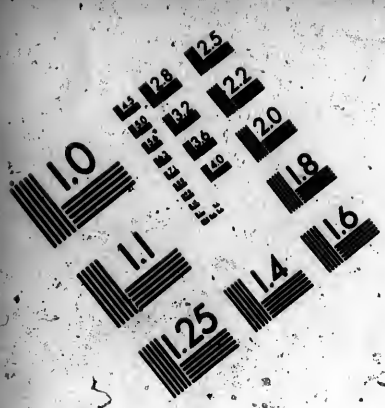
II.—(*a*) 1. He learns that the Belgians are assembling. 2. They think that Cæsar is waging war without supplies. 3. He sees that the Germans do not venture to begin battle. 4. They bring back word that the enemy's cavalry are riding up and hurling stones and weapons. 5. They understand that cavalry, ships (and) provisions are wanting. 6. He says that the corn is now ripe in the fields.

(*b*) 7. They perceive that Cæsar has led across the forces without baggage. 8. He thinks that Labienus will order the Aedui to send ambassadors. 9. He learns that the Britons have seized the ambassador and put (him) in chains. 10. He says that they have rested all hope of safety in valor alone. 11. They bring back word that Cæsar, after leading his army across, has broken down the bridge. 12. All the states promise to send (*literally, that they will send*) hostages.

(*c*) 13. He answered that he would break up camp the next night. 14. On the same day Cæsar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain, eight miles from his camp. 15. He promised not to neglect[2] the wrongs of the Aedui. 16. He was informed that all the neighboring states were revolting. 17. They promised not to revolt.[2] 18. They declare that they will neither send ambassadors nor surrender their arms. 19. He said that for this reason he had been silent. 20. From these he learns that a town, protected by woods and marshes, is not far distant from that place. 21. They said that, influenced by him, they had revolted from the Aedui. 22. He declares that they have always been hostile to him. 23. Cæsar, thinking (*literally, having thought*) that this had happened quite opportunely, demands hostages. 24. He promised to finish[2] the war without any danger to them (*literally, of them*).

1. See footnote 3, page 82.

2. Compare sentence 12, and avoid using the *present* infinitive after verbs of promising.



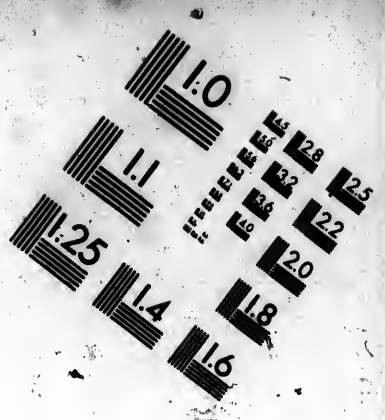
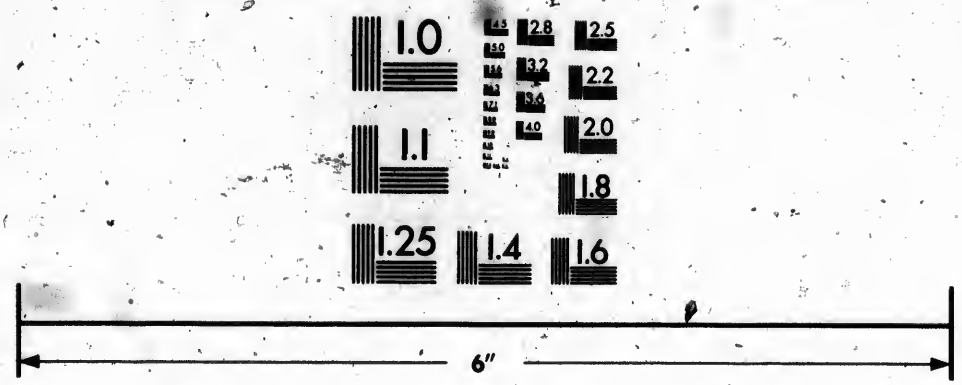
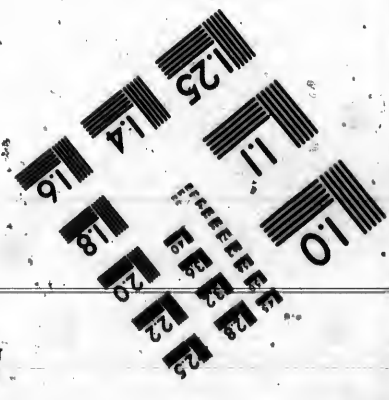


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

LESSON LVI.

Vir māximae virtūtis,	*a man of the greatest bravery.*
Clāssis nāvium vīgintī,	*a fleet of twenty ships.*
Novem diērum iter,	*a nine days' march* (literally, a march of nine days).
Mōns māgnā altitūdine,	*a mountain of great height.*
Vir māximā virtūte,	*a man of the greatest bravery.*
Immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs,	*men of huge size* (of bodies).

Observation.—The cases used to describe the qualities or characteristics of objects. Which case is used when the description refers to number? which case is preferred when physical characteristics are described?[1]

EXERCISE LVI.

I.—1. Reperit Nerviōs esse hominēs māgnae virtūtis. 2. Quod erat cīvitās māgnae inter Belgās auctōritātis, atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. 3. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et summae virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrit, atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docet. 4. Mercātōrēs ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs esse praedicābant. 5. Nerviī vallō pedum novem et fossā quīndecim[2] hīberna cingunt. 6. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen. 7. Quibus vīribus hominēs tantulae statūrae tantī oneris turrim mōtūrī sunt? 8. Per explōrātōrēs certior factus est silvam esse īnfīnītā māgnitūdine. 9. Vercingetorix, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūjus pater prīncipātum Galliae tōtius obtinuerat, clientēs convocat. 10. Cēterī ējusdem generis sunt hūmāniōrēs.

II.—1. He was distant a few days' journey from him. 2. A mountain of great height takes up the rest of the space. 3. It was an enterprise of great danger. 4. A wood of immense extent stretches from the river Rhine to their territories. 5. They

1. See more fully Part III., sections 81, *c*, and 85, *c*.

2. The height of the wall and the breadth of the trench are the important measurements. Compare sentence 6 in the English.

brought back word that the Germans were (men) of incredible bravery. 6. They are going to fortify the town with a rampart twelve feet high (*literally, of twelve feet*). 7. He found that Dumnorix was (a man) of the utmost boldness, and of great influence with the Gauls on account of his liberality. 8. He sends to them Valerius, a young man of the highest valor and accomplishments. 9. He did not think that men of an unfriendly disposition would refrain from wrong-doing and mischief. 10. This state was powerful, and was of great weight among them.

LESSON LVII.

(*a*) **Certior factus est agrōs vastārī,** *he was informed that the fields were being laid waste.*

Respondērunt agrōs vastātōs et oppida incēnsa esse, *they answered that their fields had been laid waste and their towns burned.*

Pollicitī sunt sē secūtūrōs (esse), *they promised to follow* (literally, that they would follow).

Dixit eōs loquī cōnātōs esse, *he said they had attempted to speak.*

Observation.—Formation of present and perfect infinitive passive (see Part III., section 32). Changes in form of the perfect infinitive passive. Infinitive of Deponents (see Part III., section 40). Compare Lesson LV.

(*b*) **Praesidiō castrīs erant,** *they were a protection* (literally, for a protection) *to the camp.*

Omnia quae erant ūsuī nostrīs, *all things which were of service* (literally, for an advantage) *to our men.*

Nostrīs erat impedimentō, *it was a hindrance* (literally, for a hindrance) *to our men.*

Equitēs auxiliō nostrīs mīsērunt, *they sent the cavalry as aid* (literally, for an aid) *to our men,* or *to aid our men.*

Observation.—The case used as a predicate to state the purpose a person or thing serves.[1]

EXERCISE LVII.

I.—1. Respondit omnēs eōrum cōpiās ā sē pulsās āc superātās esse. 2. Multitūdine hostium castra complērī et nostrās legiōnēs premī vīdērunt. 3. Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō castrīs relīquit. 4. Renūntiant Helvētiōs iter per prōvinciam facere cōnārī. 5. Haec rēs māgnō ūsuī fuit. 6. Dēmōnstrat idem omnibus Gallīs esse faciendum. 7. Equitēs nūntiāvērunt superiōre nocte, māximā coortā tempestāte, omnēs nāvēs afflictās esse. 8. Equitēs ab hostibus urgērī cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. 9. Gallīs māgnō erat impedīmentō. 10. Arbitrātī eum nōn longius prōgredī cōnātūrum, in fīnēs suōs revertērunt. 11. Respondērunt nōn sē hostem verērī sed magnitūdinem silvārum. 12. Certiōrēs factī sunt Caesarem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, cum reliquīs cōpiīs prīmā lūce profectum esse. 13. Hōc māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābantur.[2]

II.—1. He found that their arrival was being awaited by the enemy. 2. He was afterwards informed that Labienus' approach had not been discovered by the enemy. 3. The two legions which had been last enrolled were left as guard for the baggage. 4. He promised to follow Cæsar. 5. Those who were coming to the aid of the Belgians learned that several towns had been taken by storm. 6. He was informed that a sudden war had arisen in Gaul. 7. One thing was a great advantage to our men. 8. They answered that the friendship of the Roman people was an honor and a safeguard, not a loss. 9. These informed Cæsar that the two ambassadors had been put to death. 10. All (things) were wanting which were of use for (*use ad*) these purposes. 11. He said that the Aedui had been compelled to give hostages. 12. He said that he would set out for the province the next day. 13. He perceived that our men were being surrounded by the enemy.

1. This use of the dative is found chiefly with the words given above. It should be noticed that there is generally another dative telling the person to whom the thing spoken of is a benefit or injury, and often to be translated by *for*.

2. See footnote 3, page 82.

LESSON LVIII.

Māgnā celeritāte dēcurrērunt,	*they ran down with great swiftness.*
Aliā ratiōne bellum gerunt,	*they carry on the war in another manner.*
Summō studiō castra mūniunt,	*they fortify the camp with the greatest zeal.*
Suā cōnsuētūdine dēsiluērunt,	*they leaped down, according to their custom.*
Caesaris voluntāte profectī sunt,	*they set out with Cæsar's consent.*

Observation.—The use and translation of the ablative expressing the manner in which, or that in accordance with which, something is done.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I.—1. Equitibus nostrīs pulsīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcurrunt. 2. Gallīs māgnō erat impedīmentō quod nūdō corpore pūgnāvērunt. 3. Ab eīs cōgnōvit Gallōs mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse. 4. Hostēs māximō clāmōre scālīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. 5. Cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar cohortēs complūrēs praesidiō castrīs relīquerat. 6. Repperit id flūmen per fīnēs Aeduōrum in Rhodanum īnfluere incrēdibilī lēnitāte. 7. Ad castra māgnō cursū contendērunt. 8. Cōnsēnsū omnium Gallōrum, pāce factā, Germānī hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt. 9. Ad haec Caesar respondit sē nunquam aliā ratiōne bellum gestūrum. 10. Summō studiō mīlitēs nāvēs aedificāre veterēsque reficere coepērunt.

II.—1. He ordered the camp to be moved with greater noise and confusion. 2. He said this in a loud voice. 3. They reported that all the Gauls with loud weeping began to ask aid from Cæsar. 4. Having with incredible speed covered a great distance, they reached the camp on the eighth day. 5. According to their custom, they leap down and fight on foot. 6. They brought back word that the camp had not been fortified with the same care on

(*use ex*) all sides. 7. He answered that he would not come on any other condition. 8. With the same speed they hastened towards our camp. 9. With the approval of all, they sent ambassadors to him and promised to give hostages. 10. He found out through scouts that, according to the practice of the Roman people, the enemy were fortifying a camp.

LESSON LIX.

Impetum tam subitō faciunt ut nēmō resistat,	*they make an attack so suddenly that no one resists.*
Impetum tam subitō fēcērunt ut nēmō resisteret,	*they made an attack so suddenly that no one resisted.*
Tantus timor hostēs occupāvit ut proelium committere nōn audērent,	*such a panic seized the enemy that they did not dare to join battle.*
Accidit ut castra mīlitēs mūnīrent,	*it happened that the soldiers were fortifying the camp.*

Observation.—Formation of the subjunctive in the present and imperfect active of all conjugations. (See Part III., section 29.)[1] The translation and use of these tenses of the subjunctive in dependent sentences of result.[2] Position of the clause introduced by **ut**.[3]

EXERCISE LIX.

I.—1. Tam subitō impetum fēcērunt ut hostēs terga verterent. 2. Nōn tam barbarus sum ut haec nōn sciam. 3. Ita Helvētiī īnstitūtī sunt ut obsidēs accipere nōn dare soleant. 4. Tantus fuit timor ut discēdere ab sīgnīs nōn audērēmus. 5. Accidit ut Gallī cōpiās comparārent. 6. Ita currūs collocant ut expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. 7. Tantum potentiā antecēsserant ut

1. See also Part III., section 39, for the subjunctive of the verbs in *-io* of the third conjugation.

2. In these lessons it will be sufficient to notice that the tenses of the subjunctive are translated in the same way as the indicative is; the present like the present indicative, the imperfect like the imperfect or perfect (= English past) indicative, the perfect like the perfect indicative, and the pluperfect like the perfect (= English past) or pluperfect indicative. This is for beginners a safer guide in translation than the rules for the "Sequence of Tenses."

3. Notice that except after verbs of happening (the result of chance), some word containing the idea of *so* or *such* precedes the *ut* clause.

Galliae tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. 8. Tam celeriter ēruptiōnem faciunt ut nēmō resistat. 9. Tantam sibi auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent. 10. Tantum exercitātiōne efficiunt ut in praecipitī locō equōs brevī moderārī soleant. 11. Sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut fossās complēre audērent. 12. Hostēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut altissimās rīpās ascendere audērent.

II.—1. The enemy were so terrified that they fled to the woods. 2. So great was the valor of the soldiers that all fought fiercely and bravely. 3. On their arrival such a change occurred (*literally, was made*) that our men at once renewed the battle. 4. It happened that the soldiers were leaving the standards. 5. Such was the swiftness of the Germans that they equalled the speed of their horses. 6. So great is the panic that we do not venture to engage battle with them. 7. So great a storm arose that very few of all the ships reached land. 8. The enemy have been so alarmed by his arrival that they are sending ambassadors about peace. 9. They fought so fiercely that no one dared leave the standards. 10. They display such valor that the neighboring states eagerly seek their friendship. 11. They have such influence among the Belgians that no one dares to lay waste their fields. 12. So quick were they (*literally, so great was their quickness*) that he with difficulty saved himself from the enemy's hands.

LESSON LX.

Cum frūmentum nostrī comportārent, certior factus est . . . ,	*when our men were bringing in corn, he was informed . . . .*
Cum haec vīdisset, equitēs mīsit,	*when he saw* (literally, had seen) *this, he sent the cavalry.*
Cum agrōs vastāvissent, oppida oppūgnāvērunt,	*when* (or *after*, or *since*) *they had laid waste the fields* (or *after laying waste the fields*), *they attacked the towns.*
Cum mille passūs abesset, certior factus est . . . ,	*when he was a mile distant, he was informed . . . .*

Observation.—Formation of pluperfect subjunctive active of all conjugations (see Part III., section 29).[1] The subjunctive of **sum** (see Part III., section 41). The use and translation of **cum** and the subjunctive.[2] The difference between the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive after **cum.**[3] The position of the clause introduced by **cum.**

EXERCISE LX.

I.—1. Cum per eōrum fīnēs quattuor diēs iter fēcisset, ad flūmen pervēnit. 2. Caesar[4] cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim millia abesset, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur. 3. Ibi[4] cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī tēla ex locō superiōre conjicerent, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 4. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Cum appropīnquārent Britanniae, tempestās subitō coorta est. 6. Cum sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāvisset, castra erant angustiōra. 7. Eō[4] cum dē improvīsō vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt. 8. Nostrī[4] cum sē in castra recipērent, hostibus occurrunt. 9. Caesar[4] cum septimam legiōnem urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, equitēs subsidiō mīsit. 10. Cum jam nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent, et fossās complēre coepissent, Volusēnus ad eum accurrit, atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docet. 11. Tanta est equitum virtūs ut hostēs nōn parēs sint.

II.—1. When Cæsar was in hither Gaul in winter quarters he was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring. 2. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with a multitude of the enemy, they betook themselves to flight. 3. After he had ordered corn to be brought in, he was informed by scouts that all the Gauls had departed. 4. So great a storm arose that the rest of the ships were useless. 5. It happens that the nights are shorter. 6. When the Germans were marching into our province, they left three thousand men as a guard for[5] the baggage. 7. When he had

1. See footnote 1, page 88. 2. See footnote 2, page 88.

3. As both are often rendered by the same English tense, it is important to notice that with the imperfect the time of both verbs is the same, while the pluperfect refers to a time earlier than that of the principal verb.

4. See footnote 1, page 60. 5. See footnote 1, page 86.

approached nearer, he was ordered to throw away his arms. 8. So great is the scarcity of all things that we are in very great danger. 9. When he was a few days' march from their territories, ambassadors came to him. 10. When the Gauls saw that our legions were being hard pressed, they hastened towards the camp. 11. On learning that Cæsar was going to set out that night, they stationed an ambush in the woods. 12. It happened that the camp was smaller.

LESSON LXI.

Hæc facere possum,	*I am able to do this*, or *I can do this.*
Cum hæc facere nōn possent,	*when they were not able to do this*, or *when they could not do this.*
Dixit sē hæc facerĕ posse,	*he said that he could do this.*
Dixit sĕ hæc facere potuīsse,	*he said that he could have done this* (literally, had been able to do).
Hæc facere nōn potuĕrunt,	*they were unable to do this*, or *they could not do this.*
Submŏvērī nōn possunt,	*they cannot be driven back.*

Observation.—Translation of the various forms of **possum** with the present infinitive of another verb. (For the conjugation of **possum**, see Part III., section 42.) Position of the infinitive.[1]

EXERCISE LXI.

I.—1. Nūllī cīvitātī Germanōrum persuādēre potestis. 2. Vōbīs possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī. 3. Ab hīs sē dēfendere, trāditīs armīs, nōn possunt. 4. Minus facile eam rem cōnsequī poterunt. 5. Cum oppidum expūgnāre nōn potuissent, agrōs populātī sunt. 6. Nē ipse quidem spērat nostrum exercitum superārī posse. 7. Quid sine reliquīs legiōnibus efficere potestis? 8. Id efficere

1. The infinitive is used with *possum* in the same way as is illustrated in Lesson XIX.

nōn potuerant. 9. Cum iter in prōvinciam nostram facerent, ea impedīmenta, quae sēcum portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēposuērunt. 10. Tanta est Germānōrum virtūs ut nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint. 11. Cum ab proximīs Germānīs impetrāre nōn possent, ūlteriōrēs temptant. 12. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. 13. Nostrīs subsidiō venīre nōn poterāmus. 14. Oppidum oppūgnāre cōnātī, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem expūgnāre nōn potuērunt. 15. Haec quis patī potest?

II.—1. They cannot defend their own territories. 2. He thinks that he can do this without danger. 3. When they could not persuade these, they send ambassadors to us. 4. He was informed that they had not been able to hold out (any) longer. 5. They could not withstand the attacks of our men. 6. He has been unable to advance farther. 7. We had not been able to storm the camp. 8. We could not take up arms quickly. 9. Such a storm arose that we were not able to finish the work. 10. They did not think that even (*literally, they thought that not even*) their first attack could be withstood. 11. We can very easily prevent them. 12. So great was the alertness of our men that nothing could be accomplished. 13. You cannot be seen from the enemy's camp. 14. We have been so alarmed by these things, that we can less easily resist the enemy. 15. They could not pursue the enemy, because the cavalry had been unable to set out.

LESSON LXII.

(*a*) Study the formation of the perfect subjunctive active of all conjugations (Part III., section 29),[1] and of the subjunctive passive, all tenses (Part III., section 30).[2]

(*b*) **Rogat quis tibi persuāserit,** *he asks who has persuaded you.*
Rogāvit quis tibi persuāsisset, *he asked who had persuaded you.*

1. See footnote 1, page 88, and refer also to Part III., sections 41 and 42, for the perfect subjunctive of *sum* and *possum*.

2. See footnote 1, page 88, and compare also the subjunctive of the deponent verbs in Part III., section 40.

Quem ūsum bellī habeant quaerit,	*he inquires what experience of war they have.*
Quem ūsum bellī habērent cōgnōvit,	*he learned what experience of war they had.*
Quid vēnissētis nōn intellegēbam,	*I did not understand why you had come.*
Quanta facultās darētur dēmōnstrāvērunt,	*they pointed out what an opportunity was afforded.*

Observation.—The mood used in dependent sentences introduced by an interrogative.[1] Contrast the independent sentences given in Lesson LI. The translation of the different tenses of the subjunctive.[2]

EXERCISE LXII.

I.—1. Ab hīs quaesīvit quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 2. Rogat quās[3] in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 3. Ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. 4. Rogāvit cūr eōs ab officiō discēssūrōs jūdicārēmus. 5. Quibus[3] in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt. 6. Ostendit quae[4] in conciliō Gallōrum dē eō sint dicta. 7. Intellegēbat quantō[3] cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset. 8. Ējus reī quae causa esset mīrātus erat. 9. Caesar intellegēbat quā[3] dē causā ea dīcerent. 10. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit quae[4] in hostium castrīs gerantur. 11. Flūmen est incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, jūdicārī nōn possit. 12. Īnsidiās verēbātur quod quā dē causā discēderent hostēs nōndum perspexerat.

II.—1. He asked him why they were coming to him. 2. They asked in what[3] direction they were being led. 3. He could discover neither what (*literally, how great*) was the size of the island, nor what nations inhabited (it). 4. They know what[4] he does, with whom he converses. 5. They ask the merchants from what[3] districts they come, and what things they have learned there. 6. Although Cæsar understood for what[3] reason they had said this, he yet ordered him to come to him with two hundred hostages.

1. The verbs upon which these subjunctive clauses depend are verbs of asking, learning, knowing, telling, perceiving and deciding.

2. See footnote 2, page 88. 3. See footnote 3, page 75. 4. See footnote 4, page 75.

7. We had learned how great a number they had promised for (*use ad*) that war. 8. They compel the traders to declare what[1] they have heard or learned about these things. 9. He shows what[1] is being done in Gaul. 10. He could not discover what[1] was being done in our camp. 11. When Cæsar learned where (*literally, in what[2] place*) the enemy's forces had encamped, he left ten cohorts as guard for the ships. 12. They are unable to find out what (*literally, of what kind*) is the nature of the mountain.

LESSON LXIII.

Haec facere vult, *he wishes to do this.*

Haec facere nōlēbat, *he did not wish to do this*, or *he was unwilling to do this.*

Haec facere mālunt, *they prefer to do this*, or *they had rather do this.*

Observation.—Translation of **volō, nōlō** and **mālō**, with the present infinitive. For the conjugation of these verbs, see Part III., section 43.[3]

EXERCISE LXIII.

I.—1. Quās[2] in partēs vultis proficiscī? 2. Quae[1] vellet ostendit. 3. Servīre quam pūgnāre mālunt? 4. Quod fortūnam temptāre nōlēbat, posterō diē in prōvinciam revertī cōnstituit. 5. Mōns, quem Labiēnum occupāre voluistis, ab hostibus tenētur. 6. Respondit sē velle dē rē pūblicā cum eō agere. 7. Eōs interficiet quod haec facere nōlunt. 8. Rogāvit quid vellent. 9. Cum post tergum hostem relinquere nōllet, obsidēs sescentōs poposcit. 10. Praesidium quam amicissimum habēre volēbat. 11. Respondērunt sē aquilam hostibus prōdere nōluisse. 12. Pācem nōbīscum facere vult. 13. Certior factus est eōs obsidēs dare nōlle.

II.—1. He wishes war to be carried on. 2. He did this be-

1. See footnote 4, page 75. 2. See footnote 3, page 75.

3. Apart from the peculiar principal parts, these verbs are precisely like those of the third conjugation, except in the *present tense* and in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

cause he did not wish that place to be unoccupied. 3. They answered that they had been unwilling to come to him. 4. He asked why we were more willing to submit than to fight. 5. The Helvetians, whom we were unwilling to leave, had turned aside their line of march from the Arar. 6. He said that he wished to treat with him about these things. 7. You wish to settle in their territories. 8. As he wished the business to be finished, he set out at once. 9. They are so alarmed by his arrival, that they are unwilling to join battle. 10. We had rather be slain than betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He asked why they were unwilling to hold the place. 12. They said that they were unwilling to return. 13. When he had set out for Britain, because he wished to become acquainted with those regions, a sudden war arose in Gaul.

LESSON LXIV.

Hostēs lēgātum, quī missus erat, retinuērunt,	*the enemy have detained the ambassador who had been sent.*
Renūntiant hostēs lēgātum, quī missus esset, retinuisse,	*they bring back word that the enemy have detained the ambassador who had been sent.*
Lēgātum quem retinent interficient,	*they will put to death the ambassador whom they are detaining.*
Cōgnōscit lēgātum quem retineant eōs interfectūrōs esse,	*he learns that they will put to death the ambassador whom they are detaining.*
Existimābat lēgātum quem retinērent eōs interfectūrōs esse,	*he thought that they would put to death the ambassador whom they were detaining.*
Gallī commōtī sunt quod Germānī cōpiās coēgerant,	*the Gauls were alarmed because the Germans had collected forces.*
Certior factus est Gallōs commōtōs esse quod Germānī cōpiās coēgissent,	*he was informed that the Gauls were alarmed because the Germans had collected forces.*

Observation.—The difference between English and Latin usage in relative or other subordinate sentences when put in indirect narration.[1]

EXERCISE LXIV.

I.—1. Certior factus est lēgātōs ab omnibus nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ad sē venīre. 2. Respondet cum sōlā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitet, sē proelium commissūrum. 3. Nūntiāvērunt omnēs nāvēs afflictās esse quod nautae vim tempestātis patī nōn potuissent. 4. Respondērunt impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ab Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs esse, sē ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse. 5. Renūntiāvērunt Gallōs proelium eō diē nōn commissūrōs, quod amplīōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnissent, exspectārent. 6. Certiōrem Caesarem faciunt Venetōs nāvēs habēre plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre soleant. 7. Animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent. 8. Respondit miseriōrem et graviōrem esse fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam[2] reliquōrum quod sōlī querī nōn audērent. 9. Ex captīvīs cōgnōvit omnēs Gallōs ad oppidum quod circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset cōnfūgisse. 10. Per explōrātōrēs comperit Ariovistum omnēs cōpiās quās coēgisset trāns Rhēnum trādūxisse.

II.—1. These informed Cæsar that the Germans who dwell across the Rhine are in arms. 2. They think that they will recover the hostages which they have given to Crassus. 3. He perceived that our men were being thrown into great confusion, because they were unable to keep their ranks. 4. On the same day Cæsar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain, which was eight miles from his camp. 5. They promised to do what[3] he had commanded. 6. He was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring, because they did not wish a Roman army to winter in Gaul. 7. He thought[4] that they would not do what[3] they were promising. 8. He had learned that the Germans were awaiting the cavalry which had been sent

1. For the rendering of the various tenses of the subjunctive, see footnote 2, page 88. Notice that this subordinate clause in the subjunctive regularly depends on another clause whose verb is in the infinitive after a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

2. In translating this sentence supply the word *that*.

3. See footnote 4, page 75.

4. See footnote 3, page 82.

across the Rhine. 9. They answered that the leading men who had said this had fled to Britain, because they understood in what (*literally, how great*) danger they were. 10. Cæsar thought terms should not be received from those who, after seeking peace, had voluntarily made war.

LESSON LXV.

Turn to the conjugation of the verb **ferō**, Part III., section 44.

Observation.—The irregularities in the inflection of **ferō** and its compounds.[1]

EXERCISE LXV.

I.—1. Nocte clam ex castrīs exercitum dūcit et ad Caesarem auxilium fert. 2. Quae audīvērunt ad lēgātōs dēferunt. 3. Tanta erat mīlitum virtūs ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum hostēs ferrent. 4. Respondērunt impulsōs ā prīncipibus populō Rōmānō sē bellum intulisse. 5. Frūmentum ex agrīs in castra cōnferēbat. 6. Servitūtem perferre mālunt. 7. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. 8. In silvās ac palūdēs sē suaque omnia contulērunt. 9. Imperium populī Rōmānī nōn perferēmus. 10. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī pedem referre coepērunt. 11. Respondit nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 12. Tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nāvēs ad Galliam referrentur. 13. Commissō proeliō, nostrōrum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerant. 14. Multum ab reliquīs differtis. 15. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

II.—1. He was informed that all who could bear arms were assembling to one place. 2. The Aedui said that the corn was being collected. 3. Alarmed by these things the barbarians retreated. 4. They understand how great a disaster they have brought on the state. 5. He promised not to make war[2] on them

1. Apart from the peculiar principal parts, *fero* is irregular in the *present indicative, present infinitive, imperfect subjunctive* and the *imperative*, but in all the other forms is precisely like verbs of the third conjugation. Study carefully also the variations in form of the principal parts of compounds of *fero*.

2. See footnote 2, page 83, and footnote 3, page 61.

or their allies. 6. On this answer being brought back to Cæsar, he a second time sends ambassadors to him. 7. The report is carried with incredible speed to Labienus. 8. They found out what he had said and reported (it) to Cæsar. 9. The ambassadors denied that the Germans were making war on the allies of the Roman people. 10. All these differ from one another[1] in language and laws. 11. He explains how (*literally, in what*) these nations differ from one another.[1] 12. Galba is slain and his head brought back to the camp. 13. He attacked them when the Helvetians could not bring aid to their friends.[2] 14. Such was the strength of the ships that they easily withstood the storm. 15. He ordered the baggage to be collected to (*literally, into*) one place, and that (place) to be fortified.

LESSON LXVI.

(*a*) **Profectus est ut oppidum oppūgnāret,** — *he set out that* (or *in order that*) *he might attack the town*, or *he set out to attack the town.*

Portās claudī jubet, nĕ injūria accipiātur, — *he orders the gates to be closed, that* (or *in order that*) *injury may not be received*, or *lest injury be received.*

Observation.—The mood used to express purpose. The difference between **ut** and **nĕ**. The various translations. The tenses used in sentences of purpose.[3] The position of the clause of purpose.

(*b*) **Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī pācem peterent,** — *they sent ambassadors to seek peace* (literally, who were to seek peace, *or* who should seek peace).

---

1. *From one another*, literally, *among themselves.*

2. See footnote 2, page 64.

3. The present subjunctive is used where English would use *may*, *i.e.*, after the *primary* tenses (see footnote 1, page 82), the imperfect where English would use *might*, *i.e.*, after the *secondary* tenses. Notice also that in clauses of purpose the subjunctive is not to be translated, as is generally the case, by the English indicative (see footnote 2, page 88).

Observation.—The use and translation of the subjunctive denoting purpose with the relative pronoun.[1]

(*c*) **Mīlitēs cōhortātus est nē perturbārentur,** *he urged the soldiers not to be dismayed.*

Petere coepit ut in Gallliā relinquerētur, *he began to ask to be left in Gaul.*

Observation.—The use and translation of the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** after verbs of requesting, urging, etc.[2]

EXERCISE LXVI.

I.—1. Vadīs repertīs, cōpiās trānsdūcere cōnātī sunt ut oppidum expūgnārent et agrōs populārentur. 2. Cohortēs longiōre itinere circumductae sunt nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent. 3. Cicerōnem hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. 4. Tantae tempestātēs cōnsecūtae sunt ut nostrī opus perficere nōn possent. 5. Lēgātī ad eum missī sunt quī obsidēs sē datūrōs pollicērentur. 6. Suōs[3] intrā castra continet nē ea rēs ad hostēs perferrī possit. 7. Caesar omnium ex cōnspectū remōvit equōs ut spem fugae tolleret. 8. Lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī pācem peterent. 9. Equitēs nūntiet ut quam lātissimē pervagentur. 10. Ita perterritī sunt ut lēgātī statim ad Caesarem mitterentur. 11. Phalangem faciēmus ut celeriter perrumpere possīmus. 12. Nūntiōs praemittit quī Bōiōs dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut hostium impetum sustineant. 13. Caesar cum duābus legiōnibus et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Britanniam proficiscitur, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur.

II.—1. He left two legions in the camp that the enemy might not be able to surround our men. 2. The cavalry fought most bravely to wipe out the disgrace of the flight. 3. The Helvetians had left their homes to make war on the whole of Gaul. 4. He urges the Nervii not to lose the opportunity. 5. Ambassadors were sent to ask aid. 6. They decided to return home that they

1. This in Cæsar is chiefly used after verbs of *sending*.

2. The infinitive should not be used in Latin after verbs meaning to urge, ask, command (except *jubeo*), advise or persuade, or generally to express purpose.

3. See footnote 2, page 68.

might carry on the war in their own territories. 7. He urged him to remain in his allegiance. 8. They ask Cæsar (*literally, from Cæsar*) to come to them. 9. Such a storm arose that the work could not be finished. 10. He led the rest of the forces across that he might pursue the Helvetians. 11. He determined to lead the army across in order to punish the Germans. 12. That he may not be compelled to spend the summer in Gaul, he orders[1] him to come to him with two hundred hostages.

LESSON LXVII.

Turn to the conjugation of the verbs **eō** and **fīō**, Part III., sections 45 and 46.

Observation.—The irregularities in the inflections of **eō** and **fīō** and their compounds.[2]

EXERCISE LXVII.

I.—1. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque. 2. Explōrātōrēs jūssit quid fieret cōgnōscere. 3. Eās nātiōnēs adīre volēbat. 4. Īgnēs fierī jubet ut sīgnificātiō adventūs Caesaris fīat. 5. Quid fierī velit docet. 6. Ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 7. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāverant. 8. Pontem fierī jūssit ut minōre cum perīculō flūmen trānsīret. 9. His rēbus fīēbat[3] ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent. 10. Eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit. 11. Iter per Alpēs patefierī volēbat. 12. Captīvōs interfīcī jūssit. 13. Rhodanus vadīs trānsītur. 14. Hōc idem reliquīs fit[3] diēbus. 15. Locum duplicī fossā mūnīvit nē impetus ab hostibus fierī posset. 16. Rogāvit num hostēs palūdem trānsīrent. 17. Mīlitēs cohortātus ut fortiter pūgnārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. 18. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō.

---

1. This sentence may be translated in two ways, using *impero* or *jubeo* for order; see footnote 2, page 99.

2. Notice that *eo*, while very irregular, resembles verbs of the fourth conjugation, while *fio* is exactly like a verb of the fourth conjugation, except in the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive*. Notice also that while *fio* serves as the passive of *facio*, its forms are active.

3. In the third person singular *fio* often means *it comes about, happens*, generally with an *ut* clause of result following.

II.—1. He orders a sally to be made. 2. That river the Helvetians were crossing. 3. He declares that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 4. He did not wish that country to be unoccupied, lest the Germans should cross into the Helvetians' territories. 5. They will not allow the Helvetians to go through their territories. 6. In order that an attack might be made on the enemy from all sides at one time, he sent Labienus in advance with two legions and all the cavalry. 7. He ordered those through whose territories they had gone to bring the Helvetians back. 8. He declares that he knows what is being done. 9. The river can be crossed by a ford. 10. He showed what he wished done (*literally, to be done*). 11. He was informed that those who had crossed the river had not been able to bring aid to their friends. 12. The Helvetians are informed about his arrival. 13. That was being done at that time. 14. While crossing the river they are surrounded by our cavalry. 15. He thought that this could be done. 16. About fifteen thousand Germans have crossed the Rhine. 17. The enemy will not cross the river. 18. He is informed that the Germans who are crossing into Gaul have been invited by the Sequani.

LESSON LXVIII.

Oppūgnandī causā[1] convenīunt, *they come together for the purpose of attacking*, or *to attack.*

Dīmicandī facultātem habent, *they have an opportunity of fighting.*

Parātus ad proficīscendum, *ready for setting out*, or *ready to set out.*

Nāvēs inūtilēs erant ad nāvigandum, *the ships were useless for sailing.*

Observation.—Formation and translation of the gerund (see Part III., section 35). Voice of gerund. How may the gerund

1. *Causā, for the purpose* (or *sake*), always follows the genitive which depends on it.

be used to express purpose?[1] How does the gerund differ from the gerundive in its forms?

EXERCISE LXVIII.

I.—1. Reliquās nāvēs parātās ad nāvigandum invēnit. 2. Omnī spē impetrandī ademptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre coepit. 3. Cōgnōverat equitātum praedandī[2] causā trāns Rhēnum missum esse. 4. Caesar loquendī[2] fīnem facit. 5. Ulciscendī[2] Rōmānōs occāsiōnem dīmittere nōlēbant. 6. Hunc ad ēgrediendum[2] nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātur. 7. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, lēgātī dē pāce ad eum vēnērunt. 8. Ea, quae ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. 9. Equitēs frūmentandī[2] causā praemittendī erant. 10. Nostrī, dēpositīs armīs, in mūniendō occupātī sunt.

II.—1. They saw that our men were advancing into unfavorable ground in order to fight. 2. This was the reason for (*literally, of*) crossing the Rhine. 3. He had got suitable weather for sailing. 4. Time for (*literally, of*) hurling their javelins at the enemy is not given. 5. When they saw that our men had crossed the river, they left the camp in order to pillage. 6. They had made our men more eager for fighting. 7. Suddenly making a sally, they leave the enemy no opportunity of learning what was being done. 8. They had collected large forces for an attack (*literally, for attacking*). 9. They made an end of pursuing. 10. They made an attack so suddenly, that time for (*literally, of*) taking up arms was not given.

LESSON LXIX.

Praesidium pontis tuendī causā pōnit, *he stations a garrison for the purpose of protecting the bridge*, or *to protect the bridge* (literally, for the sake of the bridge to be defended).

1. Cæsar uses *ad* and the gerund to express *with regard to* rather than *for the purpose of*.

2. For the gerund of deponent verbs, see Part III., section 68, *c*.

Difficultās faciendī pontis,	*the difficulty of building a bridge* (literally, of, or as regards,[1] the bridge which is to be built).
Lēgātōs mīsērunt ad pācem petendam,	*they sent ambassadors to seek peace* (literally, for the peace which was to be sought).
In petendā pāce haec dīxērunt,	*in asking peace, they spoke thus.*

Observation.—The use of the gerundive instead of the gerund with an object.[2] How may purpose be expressed by the gerundive construction? How is this gerundive construction to be distinguished from the use of the gerundive given in Lesson XL.?

EXERCISE LXIX.

I.—1. Hīs rēbus coāctī, lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. 2. Nāvēs lātiōrēs facit ad multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam. 3. In agrīs vastandīs occupātī sunt. 4. Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur. 5. Gallī in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs sunt. 6. Spē expūgnandī oppidī adductus, mājōrēs cōpiās cōgere coepit. 7. Reditiōnis spē sublātā,[3] parātiōrēs ad omnia subeunda erunt. 8. Haec faciunt reciperandōrum suōrum causā. 9. Ibi discit Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum esse. 10. Nēminem bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant.

II.—1. They are assembling from all sides to defend the Remi. 2. Influenced by all these things, he set out for the province to ask aid. 3. Orgetorix is chosen to carry out these arrangements. 4. He gave the signal for (*literally, of*) joining battle. 5. Cæsar had set out to harass the enemy. 6. They promised a sufficiently large number of ships to transport two legions. 7. They hasten to Cæsar for the purpose of lending aid. 8. He sends a lieutenant in

1. The genitive is often to be rendered by *as regards* (or an equivalent expression), rather than by *of*.

2. See more fully Part III., section 104, 5. This gerundive construction is regularly preferred to the use of the gerund with an object in the accusative.

3. *Sublata* is from *tollo*.

advance to ascertain these (things). 9. He answered that the seventh legion had been sent to seek supplies. 10. Cæsar runs down to encourage the soldiers.

LESSON LXX.

Pontem rescindī jūssit nē quis flūmen trānsīret,	*he ordered the bridge to be cut down, lest any one should cross the river,* or *that no one might cross the river.*
Aliquōs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexērunt,	*they saw some leaving the ship.*
Quisque in cōnspectū Caesāris pūgnabat,	*each was fighting in Cæsar's sight.*
Comprehendunt utrumque,	*they seize each* (or *both*).
Nequo turpius quicquam habētur,	*nor is anything considered more disgraceful.*
Quīdam centuriō ad eum accurrit,	*a certain centurion runs up to him.*

Observation.—Use and translation of **quis, aliquis, quisque, uterque, quisquam, quīdam.** For the declension of these pronouns, see Part III., section 26. Which of the two words for *any* is used after **nē**? Which of the two words for *each* implies *each of two*?

EXERCISE LXX.

I.—1. Prīncipēs cūjusque cīvitātis ad sē vocat. 2. Proximō diē Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās dūxit. 3. Aliquem dē mōtū Gallōrum nūntium sē acceptūrōs existimābant. 4. Idōneum quendam hominem dēlēgit ex iīs quōs sēcum habēbat. 5. Cum Rōmānīs sē bellum gestūrōs dīxērunt, neque cūjusquam[1] imperiō obtemperātūrōs. 6. Mīlitēs ex oppidō exīre jūssit nē quam[1] injūriam acciperent. 7. Ab Ariovistō postulāvit nē quōs Rhēnum

1. *Neque quisquam*, literally, *and not* (or *nor*) *any one*, may often be well rendered by *and no one*. Similarly, *ne quis* may often be rendered by *that no one*, or (in agreement with a noun) *that no*.

trānsīre paterētur. 8. Uterque sē lēgibus creātum esse dīcit. 9. Quantam quisque multitūdinem ad[1] id bellum pollicitus esset cōgnōverant. 10. Ēruptiōnem subitō fierī jūssit nē quis[2] arma capere posset.

II.—1. Certain of (*literally, out of*) these came to him by night. 2. He orders each to return. 3. They have lands and villages on (*use ad*) each bank of the river. 4. He ordered all the horses to be removed, lest any hope remain (*literally, be left*) in flight. 5. The rest resist most vigorously, nor does any one turn his back. 6. Some opportunity will be given of crossing the river. 7. They inquire what each of them has learned about each matter. 8. He hopes that there will be some opportunity of fighting. 9. He requests him not to bring any large number of Germans into Gaul. 10. After selecting certain cohorts, he ordered both legions to follow him.

1. Translate *ad* by *for*. 2. See footnote 1, page 104.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

I.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXIII.*)

Ad initium silvārum Caesar pervēnit, et castra mūnīre īnstituit. Rōmānī in opere dispersī sunt. Subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae hostēs ēvolāvērunt et in mīlitēs impetum fēcērunt. Rōmānī celeriter arma cēpērunt hostēsque in silvās repulērunt et multōs interfēcērunt. Omnēs hostium agrī ā Rōmānīs vastātī sunt, vīcīque incēnsī. Caesar exercitum redūxit et in fīnitimīs cīvitātibus in hībernīs collocāvit.

—(*Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., III., 28, 29.*)

II.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXXII.*)

Britanniae ĭnterior pars ab iīs[1] incolitur, quī[2] nātī[3] sunt in īnsulā, maritima pars ab iīs, quī praedae causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt[4] et ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdo, crēberrimaque[5] aedificia. Loca[6] sunt temperātiōra quam[7] in Galliā. Īnsula nātūrā[8] est triquetra, cūjus[9] ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Ex hīs[10] omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī[11] Cantium incolunt. Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte[12] et carne vīvunt, pellibusque sunt vestītī.[13] Omnēs sē[14] Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod[15] caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc[16] horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā. Ūnā[17] ex parte est Hibernia, minor quam[7] Britannia, et complūrēs minōrēs subjectae sunt īnsulae. Breviōrēs sunt quam[7] in continentī noctēs.

—(*Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., V., 12-14.*)

---

1. = *Those.* 2. = *Who.* 3. *Nati sunt* = *have been born.* 4. From *transeo.* 5. Supply '*there are.* 6. = *The climate,* literally, *the regions.* 7. = *Than.* 8. = *In shape.* 9. = *Of which.* 10. = *These.* 11. = *Those who.* 12. Translate ablative by *on,* literally, *by means of.* 13. = *Clothed.* 14. = *Themselves.* 15. = *Which.* 16. = *Thus.* 17. *Una ex parte* = *on one side.*

III.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXXIX.)

Gallī, quī māgnās cōpiās peditātūs equitātūsque cōegerant et Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in fīnibus Aeduōrum hiemāverat, adorīrī[1] parābant, jam ab eō[2] millia passuum quīndecim aberant cum[3] adventum duārum legiōnum, quae ā Caesare missae erant, cōgnōscunt. Castra pōnunt et auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus, quī hostium cōgnōverat cōnsilium, praesidium sex cohortium impedīmentīs[4] relinquit atque cum vīgintī quattuor cohortibus et duōbus millibus equitum contrā hostēs prōcēdit, et circiter mille passūs ā locō in quō Gallī cōnsēderant, castrīs[4] idōneum locum dēligit. Sēdecim cohortēs in armīs esse[5] jūssit, octo reliquae castra commūniunt.

—*(Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., VI., 7, and I., 49.)*

IV.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XLVI.)

Hōrā circiter diēī quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ībi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Erat[6] ob hās[7] causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi[8] in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem,[9] māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs, ōrdinēs in fluctibus servandī erant; hostēs vērō[10] ab latere apertō tēla conjiciēbant. Nostrī, simul atque in āridō cōnstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt, atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.[11] Hostēs proeliō[12] superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt.

—*(Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., IV., 23-27.)*

---

1. = *To attack.* 2. = *Him.* 3. = *When.* 4. Translate the dative by *for.* 5. *In armis esse* = *to remain under arms.* 6. = *There was.* 7. = *These* (or *the following*). 8. *Nisi . . . . constituī non poterant* = *could be stationed only.* 9. = *While.* 10. = *Moreover.* 11. = *Put*, and translate *in* by *to.* 12. = *In battle.*

V.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LIII.)

His rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum millibus duōbus relictō, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et eōdem numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit. Omnēs nāvēs ad Britanniam accēssērunt circiter merīdiem, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed ut[1] posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, māgnae cōpiae, quae convēnerant, multitūdine nāvium perterritae ā lītore discēsserant ac sē in[2] superiōra loca abdiderant. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs[3] idōneō captō, cohortibus decem ad[4] mare relictīs et equitibus trecentīs, tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit. Millia passuum circiter duodecim prōgressus, hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.

—*(Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., V., 8, 9.)*

VI.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LVII.)

Caesar Avaricī[5] complūrēs diēs commorātus, summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nanctus, exercitum ex[6] labōre atque inopiā reficit. Jam prope hieme cōnfectā, lēgātī ad eum Aeduōrum veniunt, quī haec locūtī sunt: duo magistrātum gerere, et utrumque[7] eōrum sē lēgibus creātum esse dīcere; hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illustrem adulēscentum, alterum Cotum, antīquissimā familiā nātum, [illegible] ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātionis, cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs; dīvīsum[9] senātum, dīvīsum populum. Caesar, etsī ā bellō discēdere dētrimentōsum esse existimābat, tamen ipse in Aeduōs proficiscī statuit, senātumque omnem ad sē ēvocāvit.

—*(Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., VII., 32, 33.)*

---

1. = *As.* 2. = *In.* 3. Translate dative by *for.* 4. = *By* or *at.* 5. = *At Avaricum.* 6. = *After* or (literally) *from.* 7. = *Each* (*que* is part of the word, and does not mean *and*). 8. *Natus* with the ablative = *born of, descended from.* 9. *i.e., divisum esse.*

VII.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LXII.)

Caesar cum in Britanniam proficiscī cōnstituisset, māgnō sibi fore ūsuī arbitrābātur sī[1] reperīre posset quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, et quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, et quem ūsum bellī habērent. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, cum haec omnia ferē eīs essent incōgnita, Volusēnum praemittit et jubet eum, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum[2] revertī. Nāvibus interim circiter octōgintā coāctīs, ipse tertiā ferē vigiliā lēnī ventō[3] solvit. Cum nāvēs appropīnquārent Britanniae tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed permultae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae dējicerentur. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, ut[4] nōnnūllae nāvēs, ancorīs jactīs, aestū complērentur.

—*(Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., IV., 20-29.)*

VIII.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LXIX.)

Caesar, hīs rēbus administrātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs cohortātus ut suae[5a] prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proelī committendī[6] sīgnum dedit, atque in alteram partem[7] item cohortandī causā profectus est. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit.[8] Quae[9] prīma quisque[10] sīgna cōnspexit, ad[11] haec cōnstitit,[12] nē in quaerendīs suīs,[13] pūgnandī[6] tempus dīmitteret.

—*(Adapted from Cæsar, B. G., II., 21.)*

---

1. = *If.* 2. = *As soon as possible.* 3. Translate the ablative by *with.* 4. = *So that.* 5. = *Their.* 6. Translate the genitive by *for.* 7. = *Side.* 8. From *desum*; translate by the English past tense. 9. = *Whatever*; with *signa.* 10. = *Each.* 11. = *By.* 12. From *consisto.* 13. = *His comrades.*

REVIEW EXERCISES ON THE ACCIDENCE.[1]

I. *Decline the following combinations of a noun with an adjective in agreement:*

Duplex fossa, commūne cōnsilium, reliqua cohors, alia rēs, regiō fīnitima, omnis pars, longius iter, incrēdibilis virtūs (*s.*),[2] mājor pars, manus dextra, tōta aciēs (*s.*), omnis annus, Belgae sōlī (*p.*),[2] injūria vetus, ūlla nāvis, pūgna superior, nāvis longa, exercitus noster, vir fortis, rēs familiāris, idōneus locus, omnis cōpia, utra pars, ager ferax, locus superior, reliquī Belgae (*p.*), aciēs triplex (*s.*), vetus nāvis, tōta prōvincia, omne genus, proelium equestre, continēns impetus, prīmus ōrdō, complūrēs annī (*p.*), caput sōlum, homō nōbilis, omnia arma (*p.*), nūllus ager, omnis equitātus (*s.*), ūnum proelium, castra mājōra (*p.*), nūllus commūnis magistrātus, prīmum agmen, altera pars, equitātus noster (*s.*), omnis ōrdō, silva continēns, proxima nox, par bellum, tōta cīvitās, castra nāvālia (*p.*), latus apertum, omne tempus, altius vallum, rēs opportūna, commūne perīculum, silva dēnsior, alia pars, humilior nāvis, eques Rōmānus, reliqua legiō, ūnum latus, nūllus hostis, legiōnārius mīles, sīgnum mīlitāre, commūnis salūs (*s.*), locus dēclīvis, commūne perīculum, mājor cōpia, aliud tempus, pedestre iter, ingēns māgnitūdo (*s.*), continuī complūrēs diēs (*p.*), māgnum iter, omnis spēs (*s.*), ūllus diēs, cōpiae pedestrēs (*p.*), superior diēs, mīles integer ac recēns, summa spēs (*s.*).

II. *Give the other degrees of comparison of the following adjectives, in the same case, gender and number as the form given:*

Facillimō, ācrem, altissimae, breviōrum, mājōribus, optimārum,

1. These exercises are intended to be suggestive merely, for which reason the examples given to illustrate many of the most valuable kinds of drill are few in number, the teacher being left to add, as he easily can, further examples of the same nature.

2. The letters (*s*) and (*p*) mean that the combined phrase is to be declined in the singular or plural only, as the case may be.

fortis, crēbrīs, vēteris, multōs, dītissimī, humiliōrī, prīma, difficilia, dēnsissimā, superiōre, gravium, proximum, celerrimās, māgnae, ferōcissimam, potentēs, plēnō, antīquam, parvum.

III. *Change the following adjectives to agree with the nouns in parentheses:*

Omnis (rērum), complūrēs (annōrum), paucus (diēbus), māgnus (cōpiās), plūs (loca), ingēns (māgnitūdine), omnis (nōbilitātis), omnis (annōs), novus (rērum), māgnus (auctōritātis), plūrimus vetusque (nāvēs), noster (marī), reliquus (ōrdinēs), māximus (multitūdinī), fīnitimus (partem), inīquior (locum), dexter (cornū), alter (castra), summus (duce), omnis (hībernīs), singulāris (studiō).

IV. *Give the Latin numerals for the following numbers, in agreement with the nouns in parentheses:*

3 (hōrās), 200 (obsidibus), 2 (legiōnibus), 3rd (diē), 3 (diērum), 20 (vīcōs), 1000 (equitēs), 1000 (equitibus), 1500 (Belgās), 1 (proeliō), 1 (cohortis), 10th (legiōnem), 10 (legiōnum), 1st (aciē), 12 (annōs), 1st (impetū), 4th (nocte), 3 (millia), 2 (millibus), 13th (legiō), 4th (diem), 1892nd (annō).

V. *Decline the following combinations of a pronoun and noun in agreement:*

Nostra castra, utrumque latus, illa pars, hōc proelium, utraque castra, quīdam mīles, hīc locus, is collis, hōc ipsum flūmen, quodque tempus (*s.*), idem illud cōnsilium, quī diēs, qua legiō, meus fīlius, haec cīvitās, eadem rēs.

VI. *Write those forms of* hīc, is, suus, ille, quī, īdem, *which will agree with the following words:*

Legiōne, cōnsilium, loca, locum, rem, mīlitum, cohortī, diēbus, annōs, diē.

VII. *Give the other degrees of comparison of the following adverbs:*

Audācius, saepissimē, multum, minus, māximē, fortiter, ācrius, melius, mātūrē, facile, līberrimē, diū, satis.

VIII. Circumveniō, *surround;* collocō, *station;* dō, *give;* interficiō, *kill;* jubeō, *order;* mittō, *send;* accipiō, *receive;* relinquō, *leave;* veniō, *come;* videō, *see.*

Cōnor, *attempt;* experior, *try;* polliceor, *promise;* proficiscor, *set out;* prōgredior, *advance.*

1. *Write out the principal parts of these verbs.*

2. *Under each of the principal parts* (*a*) *of* mittō, (*b*) *of* cōnor, *write out the names of the moods and tenses which are formed from it.*

3. *Name and write out in full the tenses of the indicative whose first person singular means:*

I shall send, I have given, I am coming, I had left, I shall order, I receive, I was coming, I shall have seen, I station, I saw.

I was ordered, I shall be sent, I have been left, I used to be sent, I am ordered, I had been ordered.

I had promised, I shall attempt, I advance, I advanced, I shall set out, I have tried.

4. *Translate the following forms:*

Circumventī erant, interficit, accipiētur, vēnerāmus, dabunt, mittēris, vidēris, collocantur, jūssae estis, relinquar.

Pollicēbantur, prōgredimur, cōnātus est, experiēminī, profiscitur.

5. *Translate the following forms:*

We shall leave, they will station, he had sent, they come, they were killed, you shall have seen, we were giving, it has been received, you are being surrounded, I shall order.

We shall attempt, he tried, she had promised, I was setting out, they advance.

6. *Translate the following:*

Cum vīdisset, nē interficerēmur, cum collocārent, ut venīrēt, nē accipiātur, quod relīquerit, quis interfectus esset, cum jubeat, nē dētur.

Cum proficiscerētur, nē cōnantur, quod pollicitus sīs, ut experiāmur, cum prōgressī essent.

7. *Write out* (a) *the third singular imperfect subjunctive passive, the third plural present subjunctive active, and the first plural plu-*

perfect subjunctive active and passive, of mittō, circumveniō, dō, videō *and* interficiō ; *and* (b) *the third singular present and pluperfect subjunctive and the third plural imperfect subjunctive of* cōnor, experior, polliceor, proficiscor and prōgredior.

8. *Write out and name all the infinitives, active and passive, of* relinquō, accipiō, colloco, videō, circumveniō.

9. *Translate:*

(Dīcit eōs) mittere, relīquisse, interfectōs esse, collocārī, ventūrōs esse, profectūrōs esse, prōgredī, cōnātōs esse.

(Dīxit eōs) venīre, dedisse, circumventōs esse, mittī, acceptūrōs esse, cōnātūrōs esse, cōnārī, pollicitōs esse.

(Jūssus est) venīre, interficī, proficiscī.

10. *Write out and name all the participles, active and passive, of* jubeō, interficiō, collocō, mittō, circumveniō, cōnor, prōgredior, experior, polliceor, proficiscor.

11. *Write out the participles meaning* while coming, after advancing, after being surrounded, while attempting, *in agreement with the following words:* mīlitibus, Caesarem, legiōne, legiōnis, equitum, exercitui.

12. *Write out the genitive of the gerund of* dō, veniō, prōgredior, videō *and* relinquō ; *and all cases of the gerund of* proficiscor.

13. *Write out the following parts:*

Third singular pluperfect subjunctive active of dō, mittō.

Second plural present subjunctive active of veniō, collocō.

Third plural imperfect indicative passive of interficiō, relinquō.

First plural future indicative active of dō, veniō, videō

Perfect infinitive active of videō, veniō, interficiō.

Present infinitive passive of accipiō, dō, mittō.

Future participle active feminine plural accusative of videō, relinquō.

Gerundive ablative singular neuter of accipiō, dō, jubeō.

14. *Name fully the following forms:*

Viderēmur, accipiētis, relīquit, interficiendōs, cōnātī sunt, proficiscī, prōgressī, interfēcī, jubentem, data essent, det, vīderis.

15. *Write the corresponding active or passive form (as the case may be) of the following:*

Interfēcit, relinquam, relīquisset, datum est, vidētur, accipiēris, accipere, datum esse.

16. *Write the corresponding form in the indicative or subjunctive (as the case may be) of the following:*

Dabat, mīsisset, vēnērunt, circumveniātur, relictī essent, jūsserām, jubeō, interficitur.

17. *Translate:* He promises to come, he was ordered to come, he was asked to come, so terrified as to come, it is difficult to come, he did this in order to come; they said that he had come, so important that he had come, he did this that he might come; they attack the soldiers who are coming, he learns who are coming, they attack those who are coming, he learns that they are attacking the soldiers who are coming.

IX.—1. *Write out the principal parts of* sum, possum, ferō, eō, volō, nōlō, mālō, fīō.

2. *Write out in full the present indicative and subjunctive of these verbs.*

3. *Write out the following parts:*

First singular imperfect and future indicative of sum, possum, eō.

Third singular imperfect subjunctive of sum, possum, ferō, eō, volō, fīō.

Present participle, nominative and genitive singular, of possum, absum, eō.

Present imperative of ferō, eō, nōlō.

Genitive of gerund of ferō, eō.

4 *Write out the principal parts of the compounds of* ferō *with* in, ex, ab, ad, dis, sub, con, ob; *of* eō *with* prō *and* re; *and of* sum *with* ab *and* prō.

PART II.

PREPARATORY LESSONS IN CONTINUOUS READING.

1. A Brave General's Death.

Dux quīdam, proeliō cum Gallīs commissō, gravissimō vulnere afflictus erat, et humī moribundus jacēbat. Subitō ūnus ex iīs quī circumstābant mīlitibus clāmāvit: "Ecce fugiunt." "Quī fugiunt?" rogat dux. "Gallī," respondet mīles. Tum dux, "Jam moriar," inquit, "fēlix." Quae cum dīxisset, statim exanimātus est.

Notes.—1. **proelio commisso:** abl. absolute; render in English by the active voice. 2. **ex iis:** "of the"; with *militibus*; *ex* is often used for the partitive gen., especially after numerals. 4. **Quae:** to indicate more clearly the connection with the preceding words, Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is*, and places it before even a conjunction; so here *quae* is used for *haec* "this"; literally, "which things."

2. A Lesson from a Cockfight.

Bellō Persicō, cum Themistoclēs māgnō cum exercitū iter in hostēs faceret, duōs gallōs vīdit in viā dīmicantēs. Tum mīlitēs ad spectāculum convocāvit, et hanc ōrātiōnem habuit: "Hī gallī nōn prō patriā dīmicant, nōn prō dīs, nōn prō glōriā, nōn prō lībertāte, nōn prō līberīs; dē nūllā rē dīmicant nisi dē victōriā." Hāc ōrātiōne animōs mīlitum excitāvit, nec hostēs eōrum impetum sustinēre poterant.

N.—1. **Bello Persico:** in which the Greeks were repelling a Persian invasion. 2. **gallos:** this, notice, is not *Gallos*. 2. **dimicantes:** present participle, agreeing with *gallos*. Translate "fighting," not "while fighting." 3. **hanc....habuit:** freely, "addressed them as follows." 4. **non:** "nor." 4. **dis:** from *deus* (see Part III., section 9). 5. **liberis:** from *liberi*.

3. The Nemean Lion.

(The First of the Twelve Labors of Hercules.)

In valle Nemeae leō ingēns vīvēbat, et pecora hominēsque cotīdiē interficiēbat. Eurystheus, rēx Tirynthis, Hērculem ad sē advocāvit, eīque dīxit: "Jubeō tē hunc leōnem quam celerrimē inter-

ficere." Statim proficiscitur Hērculēs. Clāvā sagittīsque frūstrā ūsus, tandem impetū factō manibus interfēcit. Tum ad Eurystheum reversus est, mortuum leōnem umerīs impositum ferēns.

N.—1. **vivebat, interficiebat:** render the imperfect here by "used to." 5. **usus:** perfect participle of *utor*; translate, "when he had used." 6. **umeris impositum:** *umeris* is dative; literally, "placed-on with-reference-to-the-shoulders"; translate simply, "on his shoulders," omitting "placed."

4. The Happiest Man.

Ōlim Croesus Solōnem, virum sapientissimum, percontātus est: "Quem jūdicās omnium hominum beātissimum?" Solōn respondit: "Meō quidem jūdiciō, beātissimus fuit Tellus Athēniēnsis. Nam flōrente cīvitāte fīliōs habuerat, bonōs virōs honestōsque, eōsque omnēs superstitēs; īdemque vītae fīnem habuit praeclārissimum; nam in pūgnā, prō patriā fortissimē pūgnāns, repulsīs hostibus, interfectus est; tum Athēniēnsēs eum pūblicē sepelīvērunt, et māgnō in honōre semper habēbant."

N.—1. **Croesus:** king of Lydia in Asia Minor, and proverbial for his great riches. 1. **Solonem:** Solon was one of the "seven wise men" of Greece, who in his extensive travels once came to Crœsus' court. 3. **quidem:** best rendered by emphasis on the word "my." 4. **florente civitate:** abl. absolute; "while his country was prosperous." 4. **eosque:** English idiom would omit "those"; *eos* refers to the same persons as *filios* and *viros*. 5. **idem:** render, "he also"; literally, "he the same man." 8. **habebant:** "held."

5. The Death of Epaminondas.

Epamīnōndās nōn sōlum inter Thēbānōs, sed etiam inter omnēs Graecōs ējus temporis praeclārissimus fuit, et fortiter prō patriā animam dēposuit. Nam cum oppidum Mantinēam oppūgnāret, hostēs in eum impetū factō graviter vulnerāvērunt. Posteā cum in castra reportātus esset, et moribundum sē esse sēnsisset, rogāvit num scūtum salvum esset. Amīcī cum salvum esse respondissent, ad sē afferrī jussit. Tum rogāvit num victī essent hostēs. Acceptō respōnsō superātōs esse omnēs et in fugam conjectōs, "Jam satis est," inquit, "invictus enim morior." Tum extrahī tēlum ē vulnere jussit atque statim mortuus est.

N.—2. **temporis:** "age" or "period"; it was in 362 B.C. that he fell. 3. **Mantineam:** in apposition with *oppidum:* English idiom is "the town *of* Mantinea." 6. **Amici:** subject of *respondissent;* translate after *cum*. 6. **esse, afferri:** understand *id*, that is, *scutum*. 9. **enim:** is never the first word in its clause, as is the English "for."

6. Cæsar's Gallic Wars.

Jūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul factus est. Proximō annō dēcrēta est eī Gallia cum legiōnibus decem. Is prīmum vīcit Helvētiōs, deinde per bella gravissima ūsque ad Ōceanum prōcessit. Domuit annīs novem omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quī ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cōgnōverant; et eōs quoque, obsidibus acceptīs, stīpendiāriōs fēcit. Atque Germānōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus multīs proeliīs vīcit.

N.—2. **decreta est**: the governors of the Roman provinces were appointed by the Senate; the usual expression for this is *provincia decreta est*. 3. **per**: "by." 4. **annis novem**: 58 to 50 B.C. 5. **est**: "lies." 6. **ne quidem**: note the position.

7. The Rival Painters.

Zeuxis et Parrhasius pictōrēs fuērunt nōbilissimī. Hī quondam inter sē dē arte contendēbant. Zeuxis ūvās pinxit ita callidē ut avēs ad tabulam advolārent, ūvās comedere cupientēs. Tum Parrhasius linteum pinxit. Hōc cum Zeuxis vīdisset, exīstimāns vērum esse linteum, quō tabula occultārētur, dīxit: "Removē linteum et ostende pictūram." Mox cōgnitō errōre, victōriam dedit Parrhasiō, dīxitque: "Victus sum; nam ego avēs fefellī, tū autem ipsum Zeuxim."

N.—2. **inter se**: "with one another." 2. **uvas**: English idiom would add "some." 5. **esse, occultaretur**: in Zeuxis' own thoughts these would be *est* and *occultatur*. 7. **tu....Zeuxim**: understand *fefellisti*.

8. Not at Home.

Scīpiō Nāsīca ōlim ad poētam Ennium vēnit. Sed cum eum ab ōstiō quaesīvisset, ancilla dīxit eum domī nōn esse. Sēnsit autem Scīpiō illam dominī jussū dīxisse et illum intus esse. Paucīs post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius et eum ā jānuā quaesīvit. Exclāmat ipse Nāsīca sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid?" inquit, "ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem tuam?" Respondit autem Nāsīca: "Homō es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaererem, ancillae tuae crēdidī tē domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?"

N.—1. **eum....quaesivisset**: "asked for him at the door"; so in line 4. 3. **paucis post diebus**: literally, "afterwards (*or* later) by a few days." 7. **ancillae**: *credo* governs the dative instead of the accusative. 8. **ipsi**: dative, emphasizing *mihi*.

9. How Torquatus Received his Name.

Gallī contrā Rōmānōs pūgnābant. Interim Gallus quīdam, torque decorātus, quī et vīribus et māgnitūdine cēterōs praestābat, prōcessit et vōce māgnā fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad pūgnam prōvocāvit. Nēmō audēbat prōdīre, propter ējus māgnitūdinem. Deinde Gallus irrīdēre coepit Rōmānōs. Tum indīgnātus Titus Mānlius, nōbilissimus juvenis, prōcessit et contrā Gallum cōnstitit. Diū et ācriter, utrōque exercitū īnspectante, pūgnāvērunt. Tandem Mānlius Gallum occīdit, torquemque dētrāxit eamque in collum suum imposuit. Itaque ipse posterīque ējus Torquātī sunt appellātī.

N.—1. Gallī: in the fourth century B.C., hordes of Gauls invaded Italy, burned Rome, and only after years of fighting were driven back to the northern part of Italy, where they settled. 2. **vīribus:** see Part III., section 9; abl. of specification, defining "in what respect." 6. **nobilissimus:** referring to birth. 7. **utroque:** from *uterque;* render freely by "both"; abl. absolute.

10. Varus.

Quīntilius Vārus, dux Rōmānus, ab Arminiō in Germāniā proeliō victus est. Quī cum vīdisset jam nūllam esse spem salūtis, gladiō dēstrictō, sēsē occīdit. Caput ējus posteā ā prīncipe Germānōrum ad Augustum Rōmam missum est. Ea clādēs tantō dolōre Augustum affēcit, ut multōs posteā mēnsēs cotīdiē exclāmāret: "Redde mihi, Vāre, meās legiōnēs."

N.—1. Arminio: the Latin form of *Hermann.* It was Arminius who prevented the Romans from adding Germany to their empire. 2. **Quī:** see note on **1**, 5. 4. **Romam:** with the names of cities and towns motion towards is expressed by the accusative *without a preposition.*

11. Union is Strength.

Agricola senex cum mortem sibi appropinquāre sentīret, fīliōs convocāvit (quōs interdum inter sē discordāre sciēbat), et fascem virgārum afferrī jussit. Quibus allātīs, fīliōs hortābātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulīs singulās virgās; eīsque celeriter frāctīs, docuit fīliōs quam fīrma rēs esset concordia, quamque imbēcillis discordia.

N.—1. sibi: with *appropinquare.* English would omit the pronoun. 2. **inter se:** see note on **7**, 2. 3. **Quibus** and 4. **Quod:** see note on **1**, 5. 3. **ut:** after verbs of urging, asking, etc., Latin uses *ut* and the subjunctive where English uses the infinitive with "to." 4. **singulis singulas:** "one rod to each"; literally, "to single (sons) single rods." 5. **quam:** "how"; followed by the subjunctive *esset* of indirect question.

12. Alexander's War-horse.

Alexander rēx equum nōmine Būcephalum habēbat. Hīc equus, ubi ōrnātus erat armātusque ad proelium, nēminem sē cōnscendere, nisi rēgem, passus est. Bellō Indicō Alexander imprōvīsō in hostium multitūdinem incidit. Conjectīsque undique in rēgem tēlīs, equus vulneribus multīs in cervīce atque in latere perfossus est. Moribundus tamen ē mediīs hostibus rēgem citissimē rettulit; atque cum eum extrā tēla extulisset, statim concidit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā victōriā, oppidum in eīsdem locīs condidit, idque Būcephalam appellāvit.

N.—2. **ad**: "for." 6. **Moribundus**: add in the English "although." 6. **e mediis hostibus**: "out of the midst of the enemy." To express "the middle of," Latin uses an adjective, *medius*, in agreement; compare our "mid-stream," "mid-ocean." 8. **parta**: from *pario*. 8. **locis**: "spot."

13. The Legend of Corvinus.

Cōpiae Gallōrum māgnae agrum Rōmānum īnsēderant, cōnsulēsque Rōmānī aciem īnstruēbant. Dux intereā Gallōrum, vir ingentī prōcēritāte, venīre jussit et congredī, sī quis pūgnāre sēcum ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū audēret. Tum Mārcus Valerius adulēscēns, tribūnus mīlitum, sē obtulit. Sed cum prōcessisset armātus, corvus repentē advolat et suprā galeam īnsistit. Mox commissō proeliō, corvus in Gallī ōs atque oculōs pūgnāre coepit; manum unguibus laniābat, atque revolābat in galeam tribūnī. Sīc Valerius, suā virtūte nīxus et operā corvī adjūtus, ducem hostium ferōcissimum vīcit interfēcitque. Ita corvus nōn sōlum victōriam eī, sed etiam nōmen, dedit. Nam posteā Corvīnus est dictus.

N.—1. **Gallorum**: see note on **9**, 1. 2. **ingenti proceritate**: abl. of characteristic; translate by "of." 3. **si quis**: literally "if any one....he bade (him)," etc.; translate "bade any one who....to come." 7. **pugnare in**: "to attack." 8. **laniabat, revolabat**: render the imperfect by "would."

14. The Battle of Thermopylæ.

Cum Xerxēs bellum Graeciae īnferret, Graecī angustiās, nōmine Thermopylās, occupāre cōnstituērunt. Itaque octo mīllia mīlitum ad illum locum missa sunt. Hīs cōpiīs Leōnidam, rēgem Lacedaemoniōrum praefēcērunt. Is trecentōs Lacedaemoniōs contrā Persās ōdūxit, et cum cēterīs cōpiīs Graecōrum in Thermopylīs Persārum adventum exspectāvit. Xerxēs autem cum comperisset

quantae cōpiae angustiās dēfenderent, prīmō rīsit; tum lēgātum ad eōs mīsit, et jussit arma pōnere. Sed is rediit īnfectā rē. Nam cum Lacedaemoniīs dīxisset: "Sagittae nostrae lūcem sōlis obscūrābunt," respondērunt illī: "Itaque in umbrā dīmicābimus."

Quattuor diēs Xerxēs cum multīs suīs mīllibus hominum exspectāvit; quīntō diē, cum Leōnidās cōpiās nōn abdūxisset, proelium commīsit. Sed māgnus numerus Persārum aut vulnerātus aut interfectus est; reliquī fūgērunt. Tum decem mīllia ēlēctōrum mīlitum ā rēge in angustiās missa sunt. Sed etiam hī cessērunt. Cum rēx jam dē victōriā dēspērāret, prōditor inventus est. Ephialtēs enim, pecūniā corruptus, Persās certiōrēs fēcit viam esse quā trānsīre possent, et ā tergō impetum in Graecōs facere. Cum Leōnidās haec audīvisset, māgnam partem exercitūs remīsit. Ipse cum exiguīs cōpiīs mānsit. Accēperat enim hōc ōrāculum: "Aut dēlēbitur Sparta, aut rēx interficiētur." Trecentī igitur illī Lacedaemoniī et septingentī Thespiēnsēs Persārum impetum sustinuērunt, et cum diū fortissimē pūgnāvissent, multōsque hostēs interfēcissent, omnēs cecidērunt.

N.—1. **bellum**: the last attempt of Persia to conquer Greece, in 480 B.C. 7. **quantae**: "what small"; literally, "of what size," and generally, from the context, meaning "how great." 10. **Itaque**: "in that case." 17. **esse**: "that there was."

15. Pyrrhus and the Romans.

Bellō indictō, Tarentīnī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium poposcērunt. Is mox ad Ītaliam vēnit, tumque prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste dīmicāvērunt. Pūblius Valerius Laevīnus cōnsul, quī contrā eum missus est, cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, jussit eōs per castra dūcī. Cum omnem exercitum vīdissent, eōs dīmīsit ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānīs agerentur. Commissā mox pūgnā, Pyrrhus elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quī incōgnitī Rōmānīs erant. Sed nox proeliō fīnem dedit; Laevīnus per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mīlle octingentōs cēpit et occīsōs sepelīvit. Hōs cum adversō vulnere et trucī vultū etiam mortuōs jacēre vīdisset, sustulit ad caelum manūs et dīxit: "Tōtius orbis dominus esse potuī, sī tālēs mīlitēs habuissem."

N.—1. **Bello**: an unsuccessful attempt from 282-272 B.C., to prevent Rome from becoming mistress of Southern Italy. 2. **poposcerunt**: takes two accusatives, of the person asked and the thing asked for. 10. **adverso vulnere**: "with their wounds in front." 11. **mortuos**: "in death." 12. **esse potui, si habuissem**: "I might have been, if I had had."

16. The Story of Crœsus.

Croesus, rēx Lȳdōrum, māgnās sibi dīvitiās parāverat. Itaque fāma dīvitiārum ējus nōn sōlum Asiam sed etiam Eurōpam pervāserat, multīque vēnērunt ut rēgem vidērent. Inter eōs fuit Solōn Athēniēnsis, quī inter septem sapientēs numerābātur. Tum ex eō Croesus quaesīvit nōnne ipse omnium hominum fēlīcissimus esset. Solōn autem respondit: "Nēmō ante mortem beātus est jūdicandus." Hōc respōnsum rēgī tum displicuit; sed posteā sēnsit quam vērum esset.

Illīs enim temporibus Cȳrus Mēdōrum et Persārum rēgnum obtinēbat, et gentēs propinquae victōriīs ējus terrēbantur. Ut hunc impedīret et coercēret, Croesus bellum contrā eum parāvit. Eōdem tempore ōrāculum Delphicum per lēgātōs dē exitū bellī interrogāvit. Respondit deus: "Croesus trānsitū flūminis quod interest inter Persās et Lȳdōs, māgnum rēgnum dēlēbit."

Croesus, cum hōc respōnsum comperisset, victōriam certam spērābat, et cōpiīs suīs in Cȳrī rēgnum invāsit. Is autem cōpiīs māgnīs coāctīs Lȳdōs superāvit et Croesum ipsum cēpit.

Tum Croesus ā Cȳrō damnātus est ut īgnī cremārētur. Cum māgna cōpia lignōrum coacervāta esset, et Croesus, in rogum impositus, jam mortem exspectāret, māgnā vōce clāmāvit: "Ō Solōn, Solōn, Solōn!" Cȳrus autem, cum hōc audīvisset, quaesīvit quid illīs verbīs significārēt. Tum Croesus nārrāvit quid Solōn Athēniēnsis dē fortūnā hūmānā docuisset. Hīs verbīs Cȳrus ita commōtus est ut Croesum līberāret et amīcum appellāret.

N.—1. **Croesus**: see note on **4**, 1. 5. **ipse**: that is, Crœsus. 6. **est judicandus**: "should be considered." 7. **tum**: "at the time." 12. **oraculum Delphicum**: at Delphi in Greece was the famous temple of Apollo, who through his priestess was believed to foretell the future to those who came to consult the oracle. The answers were often, as on this occasion, ambiguous. 18. **ut cremaretur**: "to be burned."

17. The Story of Regulus.

Hōc proeliō superātī, Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petiērunt. Xanthippus ā Lacedaemoniīs missus est, et Rōmānōrum dux Rēgulus victus est māgnā cum caede. Nam vix duo mīllia ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū refūgērunt; quīngentī cum imperātōre Rēgulō captī sunt; trīgintā mīllia occīsa sunt, et Rēgulus ipse in catēnās conjectus est. Sed post quīnque annōs Carthāgini-

ēnsēs, māgnīs calamitātibus acceptīs, ā Rēgulō petiērunt ut Rōmam proficiscerētur, et pācem ā Rōmānīs impetrāret. Atque jūrejūrandō eum obstrinxērunt, nisi redditī essent Carthāginiēnsibus captīvī nōbilēs quīdam, sēsē ipsum Carthāginem reditūrum. Ille Rōmam cum vēnisset, senātum hortātus est nē pācem cum Poenīs facerent. Dīxit enim illōs, tot cāsibus frāctōs, nūllam spem habēre; neque dēbēre tot mīllia captīvōrum reddī propter ūnum sē et paucōs quī ex Rōmānīs captī essent. Itaque lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs dīmissī sunt īnfectā pāce. Rēgulum amīcī Rōmae tenēre cōnātī sunt. Sed ille uxōrem ā complexū remōvit, dīxitque sē illō diē, quō in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnisset, Rōmānum esse dēsiisse; neque in eā urbe mānsūrum in quā, postquam Āfrīs serviisset, dīgnitātem honestī cīvis habēre nōn posset. Regressus igitur ad Āfricam, omnibus suppliciīs necātus est. Neque vērō īgnōrābat sē ad crūdēlissimum hostem et ad exquīsīta supplicia proficiscī; sed jūsjūrandum cōnservandum esse putābat.

N.—1. proelio: this was in 255 B.C., in the first war between Rome and Carthage. 7. **petierunt:** "asked Regulus to proceed to Rome." 8. **jurejurando:** from *jusjurandum* (see Part III., section 9). 9. **redditi essent:** "should be (*or* were) restored;" literally, "should have been restored." Notice that *reditūrum*, in line 10, is from a different verb. 11. **hortatus est ne:** "urged the senate not to," etc. 14. **ex Romanis:** see note on **1**, 2; in translation connect it with *paucos*, not with *qui*. 15. **Romae:** the so-called locative case; "at Rome." 17. **quo:** "when"; literally, "on which." 20. **omnibus:** "all manner of." 22. **conservandum esse:** see note on **16**, 6.

18. Roman Discipline.

Disciplīna mīlitāris diū et ācriter retenta prīncipātum Ītaliae Rōmānō populō peperit; multās urbēs, māgnōs rēgēs, validissimās gentēs in diciōnem redēgit; urbemque Rōmam, ortam ē paryulā Rōmulī casā, tōtius terrārum orbis fēcit dominam.

N.—2. populo: dative; render by "for." 3. **ortam:** "which sprang."

19. Victory and Shipwreck.

Mārcus Aemilius Paulus, Servius Fulvius Nōbilior cōnsulēs ad Āfricam profectī sunt cum trecentārum nāvium classe. Prīmum Poenōs nāvālī certāmine superant. Aemilius cōnsul centum et quattuor nāvēs hostium dēmersit, trīgintā cum nautīs cēpit, quīndecim mīllia hostium aut occīdit aut cēpit, exercitum suum ingentī praedā dītāvit. Et subācta Āfrica tum esset, nisi tanta famēs

fuisset ut diūtius manēre exercitus nōn posset. Cōnsulēs cum victrīcī classe redeuntēs circā Siciliam naufragium passī sunt. Et tanta tempestās fuit, ut ex quadringentīs sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus, vīx octōgintā servārī possent; neque ūllō tempore tanta maritima tempestās audīta est. Rōmānī tamen statim ducentās nāvēs reparāvērunt, neque animus īnfrāctus fuit.

N.—1. **consules**: in 255 B.C. (the year when Regulus was taken prisoner), during the First Punic war. 6. **subacta esset, nisi fuisset**: "would have been subdued had there not been"; compare note on **15**, 12. 8. **redeuntes**: present participle of *redeo*. 10. **ullo**: that is, "any other."

20. An Honorable Foe.

Cum rēx Pyrrhus populō Rōmānō bellum intulisset, atque bis prōsperē pūgnāvisset, tum medicus Pyrrhī ad Cāium Fabricium cōnsulem clam nocte vēnit, eīque est pollicitus, sī praemium sibi dedisset, sē in Pyrrhī castra reditūrum et eum venēnō necātūrum. Hunc Fabricius vinctum redūcī jussit ad Pyrrhum, et monuit rēgem ut īnsidiās cavēret. Tum rēx, admīrātus eum, dīxit: "Fabricius difficilius ab honestāte, quam sōl ā cursū suō, āvertī potest."

N.—1. **bellum**: see note on **15**, 1. 4. **dedisset**: "gave" or "should give"; see note on **17**, 9. 5. **vinctum**: "in chains." 7. **difficilius**: compar. adverb.

21. A Dishonorable Trick.

Post Cannēnsem pūgnam Hannibal ex captīvīs decem Rōmam ad senātum mīsit ut permūtātiō captīvōrum fieret. Omnēs, priusquam proficiscerentur, jūrātī sunt sē in castra Poena reditūrōs, nisi dē captīvīs impetrāvissent. Cum Rōmam vēnissent, rēs senātuī nōn placuit. Tum ex decem illīs novem statim ad Hannibalem revertērunt; ūnus Rōmae remanet. Nam paulō postquam ēgressus erat ē castrīs, redierat, quasi aliquid esset oblītus. Itaque reditū in castra līberātum sē esse religiōne dīxit. Haec fraus et calliditās tam esse turpis exīstimāta est, ut ab omnibus cīvibus contemptus sit; atque senātus dēcrēvit ut vinctus ad Hannibalem redūcerētur.

N.—1. **Cannensem pugnam**: in 216 B.C., the third year of Hannibal's invasion of Italy, he inflicted on the Romans at Cannæ the most crushing defeat they ever suffered. It was his last important success, however. 1. **Romam**: see note on **10**, 4. 4. **impetravissent**: see note on **20**, 4. 4. **res**: "the proposal." 6. **Romae**: see note on **17**, 15. 9. **existimata est**: the singular verb is often used in Latin with two subjects which form one notion.

22. Hannibal's First Campaigns in Italy.

Dum haec geruntur, nūntius victōriae ad Cannās Carthāginem vēnerat Māgō Hamilcaris fīlius. Is rēs gestās in Ītaliā ā frātre Hannibale expōnit; cum sex imperātōribus, quōrum quattuor cōnsulēs, duo dictātor āc magister equitum fuerint, eum conflīxisse; occīdisse suprā ducenta mīllia hostium, suprā quīnquāgintā mīllia cēpisse. Ex quattuor cōnsulibus duōs occidisse; ex duōbus reliquīs saucium esse alterum, alterum tōtō āmissō exercitū vix cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effūgisse. Magistrum equitum fūsum fugātumque esse; dictātōrem, quia sē in aciem numquam commīserit, ūnicum habērī imperātōrem. Bruttiōs Āpulōsque et partem Samnītium āc Lūcānōrum dēfēcisse ad Poenōs; Capuam, quod caput nōn Campāniae modo sed post Cannēnsem pūgnam Ītaliae sit, Hannibalī sē trādidisse.

N.—1. **nuntius**: predicate nom., agreeing with *Mago;* literally, "as messenger *or* announcer"; translate freely, "had come with news." 1. **Cannas**: see note on **21**, 1. 2. **res gestas**: before Cannæ had come the victories at the Ticinus, Trebia and Lake Trasimenus. 5. **occidisse**: notice the difference in the quantity of *occidisse*, line 6. 7. **amisso**: abl. absolute; render freely "after the loss." 10. **haberi**: "was considered." 10. **Bruttios**, etc.: these tribes comprised practically all southern Italy. 11. **quod**: the relative, taking its gender from *caput*.

23. Hannibal Defeated at Nola.

Eādem aestāte Mārcellus, quī Nōlam praesidiō obtinēbat, crēbrās excursiōnēs in agrum Samnītium fēcit, omniaque ferrō atque īgnī vāstāvit. Itaque extemplō lēgātī ad Hannibalem missī sunt ā Samnītibus. Hannibal partem cōpiārum in agrum Nōlānum mīsit. Mārcellus, ubi hōc animadvertit, extemplō in aciem cōpiās ēdūxit; neque Hannibal certāmen dētrectāvit. Mīlle ferē passuum inter urbem erant castraque; eō spatiō concurrērunt. Proelium diū erat anceps; sunīmā vī et ducēs hortābantur et mīlitēs pūgnābant. Tandem terga Poenī dedērunt atque in castra compulsī sunt. Hostium quīnque mīllia caesa eō diē, vīvī captī sescentī et sīgna mīlitāria ūndēvīgintī et duo elephantī; Rōmānōrum vix mīlle interfectī.

N.—1. **aestate**: this was in 215 B.C., the year after Cannæ, when the war was beginning to turn in favor of the Romans. 6. **Mille passuum**: for the more usual *mille passus*. 8. **et....et**: "both....and"; but it is often more convenient, as here, to omit "both" in translating. 10. **caesa, capti**: supply *sunt*, as also with *interfecti*, line 12.

24. Babylon Taken by Cyrus.

Erat autem Babylōn urbs opulentissima et potentissima, ad Euphrātem flūmen sita. Ante mūrōs proeliō commissō, Cȳrus Babylōniōs prīmō impetū fugāvit. Sed cum urbem obsidēre coepisset, propter cōpiam cibōrum quam incolae prōvīderant et propter ingentēs mūrōs, māgna erat difficultās. Itaque Cȳrus dolum adhibuit. Fossam enim ab eō locō ubi flūmen ad urbem accēdēbat ad eam partem dūxit ubi flūmen ex urbe veniēbat. Id fēcit noctū nē Babylōniī sentīrent. Itaque cum fossa complēta esset, aqua in flūmine ipsō deerat, et per alveum vacuum mīlitibus Cȳrī via in urbem parāta est. Ita mīlitēs in urbem nocte ingressī sunt, et mūrōs portāsque occupāvērunt. Tanta autem urbs erat, ut, cum jam partēs mūrīs propinquae ā Cȳrī mīlitibus expūgnātae essent, eī quī in mediā urbe habitābant dē illā rē nūntium nōndum accēpissent. Cum urbem expūgnāvisset Cȳrus, Jūdaeōs quī ā rēgibus Babylōniōrum captī et abductī erant, in patriam remīsit.

N.—1. **autem**: "now." 1. **ad**: "on." 8. **ne sentirent**: "that they might not," etc.; subjunctive of purpose. 8. **completa**: does not mean "completed," which would be "confecta." 9. **deerat**: from *desum*. 9. **militibus**: dative; render by "for." 13. **media urbe**: see note on **12**, 6.

25. Scipio's Answer.

Mārcus Naevius, tribūnus plēbis, accūsāvit Scīpiōnem ad populum; dīxitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniam ut condiciōnibus mollibus pāx cum eō fieret. Tum Scīpiō "Memoriā," inquit, "Quirītēs, repetō diem esse hodiernum, quō Hannibalem Poenum māgnō proeliō in Āfricā vīcī, pācemque et victōriam vōbīs peperī praeclāram. Nōn igitur dēbēmus in deōs ingrātī esse. Relictō igitur nebulōne hōc, īre hinc dēbēmus ad deōs grātulandōs." Id cum dīxisset āvertit, et īre ad Capitōlium coepit. Tum cōntiō ūniversa, quae ad sententiam dē Scīpiōne ferendam convēnerat, relictō tribūnō, Scīpiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta est; atque inde ad aedēs ējus cum laetitiā et grātulātiōne prōsecūta est.

N.—1. **Scipionem**: who ended the Second Punic war by defeating Hannibal at Zama, in Africa, 202 B.C. 2. **Antiocho**: king of Syria, who, after two years' war, was conquered by the Romans in 190 B.C., and compelled to sue for peace. Scipio was one of the commissioners sent to fix the terms of peace. This accusation was brought by his political enemies at Rome five years later. 4. **diem**, etc.: "that this is the day"; literally, "that it is to-day." 7. **nebulone hoc**: that is, Nævius. 7. **ad gratulandos**: the gerundive construction, expressing purpose: so line 9.

26. The Defeat and Death of Pompey.

Pompēius, cum equitātum suum pulsum vīdisset, aliīs quoque diffīsus, aciē excessit, prōtinusque sē in castra contulit. Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relīctae, industriē dēfendēbantur. Neque diū multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt. Pompēius equum nactus decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ējēcit, prōtinusque equō citātō Lārissam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed nocturnō itinere ad mare pervēnit, nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit.

Caesar omnibus rēbus relīctīs persequī Pompēium cōnstituit, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset. Pompēius bīduum tempestāte retentus, tandem in Aegyptum pervēnit. Ibi ad rēgem Ptolemaeum mīsit ut Alexandriā reciperētur atque in calamitāte tegerētur; sed amīcī rēgis, timōre adductī, iīs quī erant ā Pompēiō missī palam līberāliter respondērunt, eumque ad rēgem venīre jussērunt; ipsī clam Achillam, singulārī hominem audāciā, et Lūcium Septimium, tribūnum mīlitum, ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt. Ab hīs līberāliter appellātus, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suīs: ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur.

N.—1. **Pompeius**: Cæsar and Pompey were the two foremost men of their day in Rome. Each aimed at supreme power in the state, and mutual jealousy led to civil war in 49 B.C. The following year Pompey was defeated at Pharsalia, in northern Greece. 1. **aliis**: "the others," that is, the infantry. 2. **acie excessit**: "left the battle-field." 3. **praesidio**: "on guard"; literally, "for a guard," dative case. 7. **Larissam**: see note on **10**, 4. 13. **Ptolemaeum**: it was largely through Pompey's influence that Ptolemy's father, seven years before, had been restored to the throne of Egypt, after a rebellion. Pompey, therefore, confidently appealed to the son for aid. 13. **Alexandria**: "in Alexandria." 17. **audacia**: see note on **13**, 2. 17. **ad interficiendum**: see note on **25**, 7.

27. A Skirmish for a Hill.

Inter oppidum Ilerdam et proximum collem, ubi castra Afrānius habēbat, tumulus erat. Hunc sī superāvisset Caesar, ab oppidō et commeātū omnī sē interclūsūrum hostēs cōnfīdēbat. Hōc spērāns legiōnēs trēs ex castrīs ēdūcit, et ūnam legiōnem prōcurrere atque eum tumulum occupāre jubet. Afrānī cohortēs brevīōre itinere ad eundem occupandum locum mittuntur. Proelium committunt, et quod prius in tumulum hostēs vēnerant, nostrī

repelluntur atque terga vertere sēque ad sīgna legiōnum recipere cōguntur. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, legiōnem nōnam subsidiō dūcit; hostem supprimit sēque ad oppidum Ilerdam recipere et sub mūrō cōnsistere cōgit.

N.—1. **Ilerdam**: in Spain, where Cæsar in 49 B.C. defeated Pompey's lieutenant, Afranius, before following Pompey himself to Greece. 2. **si superavisset**: "if he could gain"; literally, "if he should have gained." See note on **17**, 9. 3. **Hoc sperans**: "with this hope (*or* idea)." 5. **Afrani**: proper names in *-ius* have the genitive *-ii* contracted to *-i*. 7. **quod**: the conjunction. 9. **subsidio**: "to their support"; literally, "for a support"; compare **26**, 3.

28. How Horatius Kept the Bridge.

Tarquinius, ab Rōmānīs exāctus, ad Lārtem Porsenam, Clūsīnum rēgem, perfūgerat, ōrābatque nē sē in exsiliō vīvere paterētur. Porsena igitur Rōmam māgnō cum exercitū vēnit. Cum hostēs adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs dēmigrāvērunt; urbem ipsam praesidiīs fīrmāvērunt. Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit; sed ūnus vir, Horātius Cocles, quī forte in statiōne pontis positus erat, cum Jāniculum repentīnō impetū captum esse vīdisset, admonuit ut pontem ferrō atque īgnī interrumperent. Prōmīsit sē, quantum vir ūnūs posset, hostēs sustentūrum esse. Vādit inde ad prīmum aditum pontis; duōs tamen ex Rōmānīs pudor cum eō tenuit, Spurium Lārtium āc Titum Herminium. Cum hīs hostēs parumper sustinuit. Deinde eōs quoque ipsōs, exiguā parte pontis relictā, in tūtum cēdere coēgit. Circumferēns inde oculōs ad procerēs Etrūscōrum, nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc omnēs increpābat. Aliquamdiū cunctātī sunt; pudor deinde commōvit aciem, et clamōre sublātō undique in eum tēla conjiciunt. Cum nihilōminus obstinātus ille pontem obtinēret, jam impetū factō virum dētrūdere cōnābantur cum fragor ruptī pontis clāmorque Rōmānōrum pavōre subitō impetum sustinuit. Tum Horātius, "Tiberīne pater," inquit, "tē precor ut haec arma et hunc mīlitem propitiō flūmine accipiās." Inde armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit, multīsque superincēdentibus tēlīs, incolumis ad suōs trānāvit.

N.—1. **Tarquinius**: the last king of Rome, banished in 510 B.C., because of his tyranny and the cruel misdeeds of his family. 2. **ne pateretur**: "not to suffer." 6. **forte**: "as it happened." 8. **admonuit ut**: "advised them to," etc. 9. **quantum**: "so far as." 12. **exigua**: "only (*or* but) a small." 14. **provocabat, increpabat**: see note on **13**, 8. 18. **conabantur**: translate the tense carefully. 20. **pater**: the Romans believed that each river had its god or guardian spirit. 22. **multisque**, etc.: translate the abl. absolute by "although."

29. An Extraordinary Disaster.

Cum eae rēs agerentur, nova clādēs nūntiāta est, Lūcium Postumium in Galliā ipsum atque exercitum dēlētōs esse. Silva erat vāsta, quā exercitum trāductūrus erat. Ējus silvae arborēs circā viam Gallī ita incīdērunt ut immōtae stārent, mōmentō levī impulsae conciderent. Legiōnēs duās Rōmānās habēbat Postumius et quīndecim mīllia sociōrum. Gallī ōram silvae circumsedēbant; atque ubi intrāvit agmen saltum, tum extrēmās arborum succīsārum impellunt. Hae, alia in aliam incidentēs, tantā strāge arma, virōs, equōs obruērunt, ut vix decem hominēs effugerent. Nam exanimātī plērīque sunt arborum truncīs rāmīsque; et cēterōs, inopīnātō malō trepidōs, Gallī interfēcērunt; paucī quī pontem flūminis petēbant, interclūsī captīque sunt. Ibi Postumius omnī vī, nē caperētur, dīmicāns occubuit.

N.—2. **Gallia**: the northern part of Italy, having been settled by Gauls (see note on **9**, 1), was therefore called *Gallia Cisalpina* ("Gaul on this side of the Alps"). Their descendants joined Hannibal when he invaded Italy, and the incident here reported occurred in 215 B.C., a few months after the defeat at Cannæ. 3. **qua traducturus erat**: "through which he was intending to lead." 4. **immotae**: "while untouched." 4. **impulsae**: "but if pushed." 7. **succisarum**: "which had been cut." 8. **alia in aliam**: "one against another"; in apposition with *hæc*. 11. **trepidos**: "who were panic-stricken. 12. **fluminis**: "over the river." 12. **ne caperetur**: "to avoid capture."

30. D[illegible] and the Scythians.

Dārīus Persārum rēx bellum Scythīs intulit et cum omnibus cōpiīs in Eurōpam profectus est. Scythae autem proelium committere nōlēbant. Tandem Dārīus, missō lēgātō ad Scythārum rēgem, dīxit dēbēre eum aut pūgnāre aut terram et aquam ferentem in colloquium venīre. Ad haec Scythārum rēx respondit, nōlle sē pūgnāre, quod oppida nōn habēret quae dēfenderet; prō autem terrā et aquā, quās Dārīus postulāvisset, dōna alia missūrum. Posterō diē Scythae lēgātum mīsērunt quī dōna ferēbat, avem et mūrem et rānam et quīnque sagittās. Dīxitque lēgātus Persās, sī sapientēs essent, posse cōgnōscere, quid haec dōna significārent. Dārīus quidem putābat Scythās sēsē et terram et aquam trādere; quod mūs in terrā vīveret, rāna in aquā, avis autem similis esset equō; dēnique tēla trādere quibus sōlīs sē dēfendere possent. Gōbryas autem, ūnus ex prīncipibus quōs

sēcum habēbat Dārīus, putābat dōna haec sīgnificāre; nisi avēs factī Persae ēvolārent, aut in mūrēs conversī terram subīrent, aut rānārum modō in palūdēs īnsilīrent, sagittās Scythārum nōn effugere posse.

N.—1. **Darius**: became king of Persia eight years after the death of Cyrus the Great. The unsuccessful invasion of Scythia (now southern Russia) about 508 B.C., was a prelude to the invasion of Greece, which was repelled at Marathon, 490 B.C. 4. **terram et aquam**: these the Persians used to demand as a token of submission. 6. **oppida....defenderet**: "he had no towns to defend." 11. **quidem**: "for his part." 13. **equo**: the Scythians, like the modern Cossacks, were all expert horsemen.

31. Rome Taken by the Gauls.

[Rōmānī ā Brennō, rēge Gallōrum, ad flūmen Alliam superātī erant, et māxima pars exercitūs Vēiōs fūgerat.]

Gallī haud multō ante sōlis occāsum ad urbem Rōmam perveniunt. Equitēs praegressī nōn portās clausās esse, nōn statiōnem prō portīs excubāre, nōn armātōs esse in mūrō rettulērunt. Itaque īnsidiās veritī, extrā Rōmam cōnsēdērunt, et explōrātōrēs mīsērunt circā moenia. Rōmānī interim tōtam paene urbem lāmentīs complēbant, et cum dēfendī urbs nōn posset, tam parvā relictā manū, cum conjugibus āc līberīs in arcem concessērunt. Gallī, ingressī posterō diē urbem, in forum perveniunt. Inde, modicō relictō praesidiō, dīlābuntur ad praedam. Rōmānī interim ex arce plēnam hostium urbem cernēbant. Gallī, incēnsā urbe, impetum facere in arcem statuunt. Prīmā lūce, sīgnō datō, multitūdō omnis in forō īnstruitur; inde, clāmōre sublātō āc testūdine factā, subeunt. Rōmānī, ad omnēs aditūs statiōnibus fīrmātīs, scandere sinunt hostem. Mediō ferē clīvō restitērunt, atque indo ex superiōre locō, impetū factō, Gallōs māgnā strāge fūdērunt.

N.—1. **Gallorum**: see note on **9**, 1. 1. **Alliam**: the defeat at the Allia, in 390 B.C., leading to the capture of Rome, was always regarded as the blackest day in Roman history. 4. **non portas**, etc.: the accusative and infinitive construction depending on *rettulerunt*. 6. **insidias**: the real cause was the panic among the survivors in Rome. 9. **arcem**: on the Capitoline hill. 11. **ad**: "in quest of"; literally, "for." 15. **ad**: "at." 16. **Medio clivo**: "half way up the hill"; see note on **12**, 6.

32. The Capitol Saved by Geese.

Interim arx Rōmae, Capitōlium, in ingentī perīculō fuit. Namque Gallī, quī arcem obsidēbant, vestīgium notāvērunt hūmānum,

quā nūntius ā Vēiīs pervēnerat. Itaque nocte sublūstrī inermem Gallum, quī tentāret viam, praemīsērunt; inde reliquī tantō silentiō in summum ēvāsērunt, ut nōn custōdēs sōlum fallerent, sed nē canēs quidem excitārent. Ānserēs nōn fefellērunt, quī Jūnōnī sacrī erant. Namque clāmōre eōrum ālārumque crepitū excitus est Mārcus Mānlius, vir bellō ēgregius. Is, armīs arreptīs, Gallum quī jam in summō cōnstiterat, dēturbat. Ējus cāsus proximōs Gallōrum sternit; trepidantēs aliōs, quī, omissīs armīs, saxa manibus amplectēbantur, trucīdat Mānlius. Jamque aliī congregātī tēlīs saxīsque prōturbant hostēs. Lūce ortā, vocātīs ad concilium mīlitibus, Mānlius prīmum ob virtūtem laudātus est; tum vigilēs citātī sunt. Hīs omnibus culpam in ūnum vigilem conjicientibus, illum Quīntus Sulpicius, tribūnus mīlitum, approbantibus cūnctīs, dē saxō dējēcit.

N.—1. **Interim:** the Gauls, foiled in their first attempt (see **31**), laid siege to the citadel, while the greater number roamed about the country, pillaging it. 3. **nuntius:** he had come from the Romans who had escaped after Allia to Veii, to concert measures with the Romans in the citadel. 4. **qui tentaret:** "to make trial of." 5. **evaserunt:** "made their way." 6. **Junoni:** whose temple was on the Capitoline hill. 8. **bello:** see note on **9**, 2. 10. **omissis armis:** freely, "had dropped their arms and." 14. **His conjicientibus:** "as these laid." 15. **approbantibus cunctis:** "with the approval of all."

33. A Young Roman Girl.

(*From a letter of Pliny's.*)

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō. Fundānī nostrī fīlia minor dēfūnota est. Quā puellā nihil umquam erat fēstīvius, nihil amābilius nec longā vītā dignius. Nōndum annōs quattuordecim implēverat, et jam prūdentiam mātrōnālem gravitātemque praestābat, et tamen suāvitātem puellārem cum virginālī verēcundiā. Ut illa patris cervīcī inhaerēbat! Ut nōs amīcōs paternōs et amanter et modestē complectēbātur! Ut nūtrīcēs, ut praeceptōrēs dīligēbat! Quā illa temperantiā, quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit! Medicīs obsequēbātur, sorōrem patrem adhortābātur. Dūrāvit vigor animī illī ūsque ad extrēmum, nec aut spatiō valētūdinis aut metū mortis īnfrāctus est. Itaque plūrimās gravissimāsque nōbīs causās relīquit et dēsīderiī et dolōris. Ō trīste acerbumque fūnus! Jam dēstināta erat ēgregiō juvenī, jam ēlēctus nūptiārum diēs, jam nōs vocātī. Hōc gaudium maerōre mūtātum est. Nōn possum exprimere verbīs quantum animō

vulnus accēperim, cum audīvī Fundānium īpsum praecipientem, ut quod in vestēs, margarīta, gemmās fuerat ērogātūrus, hōc in tūs et unguenta et ǫdōres impenderētur.

N. Pliny, who wrote this and the following letter, lived from 61 A.D. to about 113 A.D. 1. **Fundani:** see note to **27**, 5. 1. **nostri:** "our friend." 2. **Qua puella:** "than this maiden"; abl. of comparison. 3. **vita:** abl. after *dignius*; render by "of." 4. **jam:** "already." 5. **Ut:** "how" (exclamatory). 6. **inhaerebat:** render this and the following imperfects by "would" or "used to." 7. **Qua:** "with what." 10. **illi:** "with her"; literally, "for her." 14. **maerore mutatum:** "changed to grief." The abl. of price is used of that for which anything is exchanged. 17. **ut quod fuerat erogaturus hoc impenderetur:** "that what he had intended to expend....should be devoted."

34. An Exemplary Old Age.

Māne Spūrinna lēctulō continētur, hōrā secundā calceōs poscit, ambulat mīllia passuum tria, nec minus animum quam corpus exercet. Sī adsunt amīcī, honestissimī sermōnēs explicantur; sī nōn, liber legitur. Deinde cōnsīdit, et liber rūrsus aut sermō; mox vehiculum ascendit, adsūmit uxōrem vel aliquem amīcōrum. Peractīs septem mīllibus passuum, iterum ambulat mīlle, iterum resīdit, vel sē cubiculō āc stilō reddit. Scrībit enim, et quidem utrāque linguā, doctissimē. Ubi hōra balineī nūntiāta est (est autem hieme nōna, aestāte octāva), in sōle, sī caret ventō, ambulat nūdus. Deinde movētur pilā vehementer et diū; nam hōc quoque exercitātiōnis genere pūgnat cum senectūte. Lōtus accubat et paulisper cibum differt; interim audit legentem remissius aliquid et dulcius. Appǫnitur cēna nōn minus nitida quam frūgī in argentō pūrō et antīquō. Hanc rēgulam Spūrinna cōnstantissimē servat. Inde illī post septimum et septuāgēsimum annum aurium et oculōrum vigor integer, inde agile et vīvidum corpus. Hanc ego vītam ingrediar avidissimē; interim mīlle labōribus conteror, quōrum mihi et sōlācium et exemplum est Spūrinna; nam ille quoque obiit officia, gessit magistrātūs, prōvinciās rēxit, multōque labōre hōc ōtium meruit.

N.—1. **Spurinna:** flourished in the latter half of the first century A.D. 1. **lectulo continetur:** "keeps his couch"; that is, for study and reflection. 3. **honestissimi:** devoid, that is, of scandal or vulgar gossip. 7. **cubiculo:** the *lectulus* of line 1. 7. **et quidem:** "and that, too." 8. **utraque:** Greek and Latin. 9. **caret:** the subject is *sol*. 10. **movetur pila vehementer:** "takes vigorous exercise at tennis." 12. **remissius:** the Latin comparative often means "somewhat" or "rather." 15. **illi:** dative; supply *est*, of which *vigor* (and *corpus*) will be the subject; render freely, "he possesses." 17. **quorum:** "in which."

35. The Helvetian War.

Helvētiī proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt; reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. Sed undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus; alterā ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus nostram prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs dē causīs Helvētiī nōn lātē vagārī potuērunt, nec facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandī cupidī, angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur. Hīs rēbus adductī, dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre cōnstituērunt et optimam partem tōtius Galliae occupāre. Itineribus omnīnō duōbus domō exīre poterant; quōrum ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Caesar, cui prōvincia Gallia eō annō dēcrētā erat, audīvit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Statim ab urbe proficiscitur et in Galliam pervenit.

Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam darē. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Mox Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiōs per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat perīculōsum prōvinciae fore, sī hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī, prōvinciae fīnitimī essent. Ob eās causās in Ītaliam contendit; duās ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs ex hībernīs ēdūcit; cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus in Galliam per Alpēs īre contendit. Helvētiī jam per fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aedu-ōrum fīnēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsūmerentur, Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit. Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant; reliquōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum concīdit, reliquī sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās cōnsequī posset, pontem facit, atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Tum per multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs īnsequitur, novissimumque agmen lacessit.

Tandem ut reī frūmentāriae prōspiceret, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum et cōpiōsissimum īre contendit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discēdere ā sē exīstimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs īnsequī āc

lacessere coepērunt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit, acieīque īnstruit. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnāvērunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Caesar Helvētiōs in fīnēs suōs, unde profectī erant, revertī jussit, et oppida vīcōsque restituere. Helvētiōrum trecenta et sexāgintā octo mīllia domō exierant; vix centum et decem mīllia domum rediērunt.

N.—1. **Helvetii**: Helvetia (the modern Switzerland) was reckoned part of Gaul. 2. **virtute**: see note on **9**, 2. 4. **una ex parte**: "on one side." 4. **altera**: "a second," but in line 12, *alterum* is "the other." 6. **provinciam**: since 118 B.C. the southern part of Gaul had been a Roman province. (Hence the modern name *Provence*.) 8. **cum essent**: "being." 13. **eō anno**: 59 B.C. 14. **decreta erat**: see note on **6**, 2. 15. **urbe**: that is, Rome. 17. **ulli**: dative; see Part III., section 14. 18. **relinquebatur**: "there was left." 18. **renuntiatur**: "word is brought"; literally, "it is reported." 21. **fore**: from *sum;* see Part III., section 41. 22. **essent**: "should (*or* were to) be." 27. **ne consumerentur**: see note on **24**, 8. 28. **pervenit ad**: "came up with." 30. **in**: takes the accus., because motion *into* is implied. English would say "in." Compare line 40. 45. **restituere**: for they had burnt them down on leaving home.

36. The Fox and the Grapes.

Famē coācta vulpēs altā in vīneā
Ūvam appetēbat, summīs saliēns vīribus;
Quam tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:
"Nōndum mātūra est, nōlō acerbam sūmere."

N.—2. **summis**: "all its"; literally, "its greatest." 3. **Quam**: see note on **1**, 5. 3. **ut**: "when," in which sense it is followed by the indicative. 4. **acerbam**: understand *uvam*.

37. Substance and Shadow.

Per pontem frūstum carnis cum ferret canis,
Lymphārum in speculō vīdit simulācrum suum;
Aliamque praedam ab alterō ferrī putāns,
Ēripere voluit; vērum dēcepta aviditās,
Et quem tenēbat ōre dīmīsit cibum,
Nec quem petēbat potuit adeō attingere.

N.—1. **Per**: "over." 4. **decepta**: understand *est*. 5. **quem**: the antecedent *cibum* should be translated first.

38. The Fox and the Goat.

Cum dēcidisset vulpēs in puteum īnscia,
Et altiōre clauderētur margine,
Dēvēnit hircus sitiēns in eundem locum;
Simul rogāvit, esset an dulcis liquor
Et cōpiōsus? Illa fraudem mōliēns:
Dēscende, amīce; tanta bonitās est aquae
Voluptās ut satiārī nōn possit mea.
Immīsit sē barbātus. Tum vulpēcula
Ēvāsit puteō, nīxa celsīs cornibus,
Hircumque clausō līquit haerentem vadō.

N.—2. **altiore margine**: "by the sides which were too high for her." The Latin comparative often means "too." 5. **Illa**: "the other." Understand *respondit* or *dixit*, which are often omitted in Latin. 10. **clauso vado**: "the deep-fenced pool."

39. Cupboard-Love.

Dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs;
Tempora sī fuerint nūbila, sōlus eris.
Aspicis, ut veniant ad candida tēcta columbae,
Accipiat nūllās sordida turris avēs?
Horrea formīcae tendunt ad inānia numquam;
Nūllus ad āmissās ībit amīcus opēs.

N.—1. **eris**: "you are"; literally, "you shall be." So, *fuerint*, "are"; literally, "shall have been." Latin is far more exact than English in indicating the relation in time of a principal and a dependent clause. 3. **ut**: "how"; with the subjunctive of indirect question. 6. **ībit**: "will come"; from *eo* (Part III., section 45).

40. The Circle of the Year.

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt jam grāmina campīs
Arboribusque comae;
Frīgora mītescunt Zephyrīs, vēr proterit aestās
Interitūra, simul
Pōmifer Autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
Brūma recurrit iners.

N.—1. **Diffugere**: for *diffugerunt*. (See Part III., section 27, footnote 1.) 2. **comae**: also subject of *redeunt*. 3. **ver**: acous. 4. **Interitura**: "itself doomed to perish"; literally, "about to perish." 4. **simul**: for *simul atque*. 5. **effuderit**: future perfect; freely, "has," etc.; see note on **39**, 1.

41. The Joys of Country Life.

Beātus ille quī procul negōtiīs,
  Ut prīsca gēns mortālium,
Paterna rūra bōbus exercet suīs,
  Solūtus omnī faenore,
Neque excitātur classicō mīles trucī
  Neque horret īrātum mare,
Forumque vītat et superba cīvium
  Potentiōrum līmina.

N.—2. **Ut**: "like." The Roman poets often speak of the early simple ages of the world as the happiest. 4. **faenore**: he has nothing to do with the money-lenders; as we might say with the stock-market. 5. **excitatur**: the subject is still *qui*, with which *miles*, "as a soldier," is in apposition. 6. **horret**, etc.: he is no trader by sea in search of wealth. 7. **Forum**, etc.: he is no politician or office-seeker.

42. The Death of the Pet Sparrow.

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
Passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
Quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
Nam mellītus erat, suamque nōrat
Ipsam tam bene quam puella mātrem;
Nec sēsē ā gremiō illius movēbat.
Sed circumsiliēns modo hūc, modo illūc,
Ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpilābat;
Quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
Illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.
At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
Orcī, quae omnia bella dēvorātis;
Tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis.
Ō factum male, iō miselle passer,
Tuā nunc operā, meae puellae
Flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

N.—2. **meae puellae**: "my lady's." 4. **illa**: "she." 4. **oculis**: abl. of comparison. 5. **suam ipsam**: "his own mistress." 5. **norat**: for *noverat*. 6. **puella**: the reference is general, not to the *puellae* of line 2. Understand *novit* from *noverat*. 10. **per**: "along." 11. **negant quemquam**: "they say no one." 12. **At**: "now"; marking a sudden outburst of passion. 13. **bella**: from *bellus*, adj. 17. **turgidulī rubent**: "are swollen and red." Notice the frequent diminutives in the concluding lines, to indicate tender sympathy.

PART III.

INFLECTION.

I. PARADIGMS OF INFLECTION.

(*A*) THE NOUN.[1]

1. First Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nominative.	mēnsa, F.	mēnsae
Genitive.	mēnsae	mēnsārum
Dative.	mēnsae	mēnsīs
Accusative.	mēnsam	mēnsās
Vocative.	mēnsa	mēnsae
Ablative.	mēnsā	mēnsīs

2. Second Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nominative.	servus, M.	servī
Genitive.	servī	servōrum
Dative.	servō	servīs
Accusative.	servum	servōs
Vocative.	serve	servī
Ablative.	servō	servīs

1. Generally speaking, the nominative represents a noun as subject, the accusative as direct object; the genitive denotes the relation expressed by *of*; the dative (the case of the indirect object) denotes the relation expressed by *to* or *for*, and the ablative that expressed by *with*, *by*, *from* or *in*; the vocative is used in direct address.

The genitive, dative, accusative and ablative are called the *Oblique Cases*.

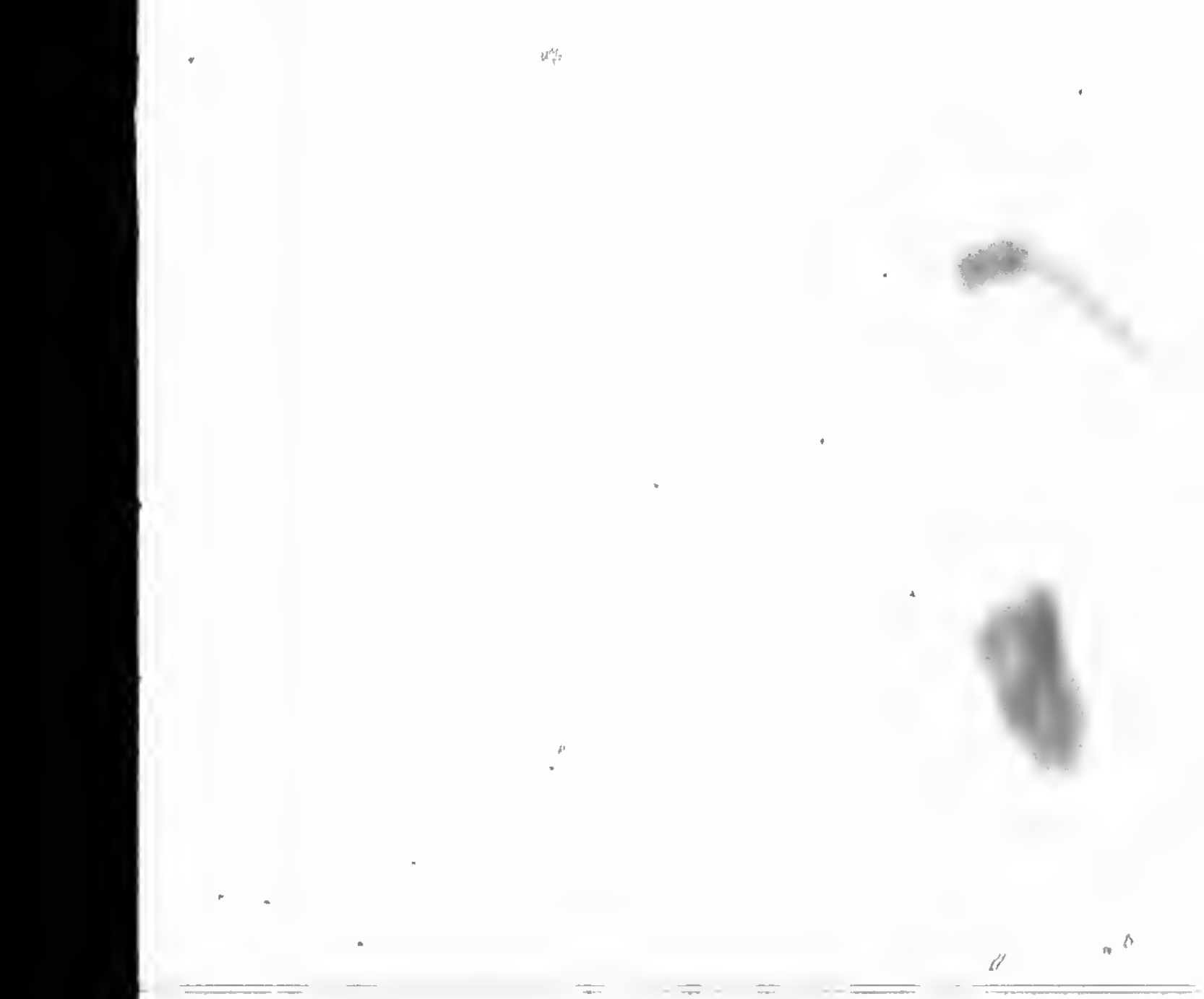
3. Second Declension (*continued*).

SINGULAR.				
Nom.	puer, M.	vir, M.	ager, M.	templum, N.
Gen.	puerī	virī	agrī	templī
Dat.	puerō	virō	agrō	templō
Acc.	puerum	virum	agrum	templum
Voc.	puer	vir	ager	templum
Abl.	puerō	virō	agrō	templō
PLURAL.				
Nom.	puerī	virī	agrī	templa
Gen.	puerōrum	virōrum	agrōrum	templōrum
Dat.	puerīs	virīs	agrīs	templīs
Acc.	puerōs	virōs	agrōs	templa
Voc.	puerī	virī	agrī	templa
Abl.	puerīs	virīs	agrīs	templīs

4. Third Declension—Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

SINGULAR.				
Nom.	rēx, M.	consul, M.	mīles, M.	pater, M.
Gen.	rēgis	cōnsulis	mīlitis	patris
Dat.	rēgī	cōnsulī	mīlitī	patrī
Acc.	rēgem	cōnsulem	mīlitem	patrem
Voc.	rēx	cōnsul	mīles	pater
Abl.	rēge	cōnsule	mīlite	patre
PLURAL.				
Nom.	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	patrēs
Gen.	rēgum	cōnsulum	mīlitum	patrum
Dat.	rēgibus	cōnsulibus	mīlitibus	patribus
Acc.	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	patrēs
Voc.	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	patrēs
Abl.	rēgibus	cōnsulibus	mīlitibus	patribus

ccusative
ative (the
the abla-
idress.



SINGULAR.				
Nom.	homō, M.	hiems, F.	virtūs, F.	regiō, F.
Gen.	hominis	hiemis	virtūtis	regiōnis
Dat.	hominī	hiemī	virtūtī	regiōnī
Acc.	hominem	hiemem	virtūtem	regiōnem
Voc.	homō	hiems	virtūs	regiō
Abl.	homine	hieme	virtūte	regiōne
PLURAL.				
Nom.	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
Gen.	hominum	hiemum	virtūtum	regiōnum
Dat.	hominibus	hiemibus	virtūtibus	regiōnibus
Acc.	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
Voc.	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
Abl.	hominibus	hiemibus	virtūtibus	regiōnibus

5. Third Declension—Neuter Nouns.

SINGULAR.				
Nom.	nōmen, N.	corpus, N.	opus, N.	iter, N.
Gen.	nōminis	corporis	operis	itineris
Dat.	nōminī	corporī	operī	itinerī
Acc.	nōmen	corpus	opus	iter
Voc.	nōmen	corpus	opus	iter
Abl.	nōmine	corpore	opere	itinere
PLURAL.				
Nom.	nōmina	corpora	opera	itinera
Gen.	nōminum	corporum	operum	itinerum
Dat.	nōminibus	corporibus	operibus	itineribus
Acc.	nōmina	corpora	opera	itinera
Voc.	nōmina	corpora	opera	itinera
Abl.	nōminibus	corporibus	operibus	itineribus

6. Third Declension—I-stems.

SINGULAR.				
Nom.	urbs, F.	ignis, M.	nūbēs, F.	mare, N.
Gen.	urbis	ignis	nūbis	maris
Dat.	urbī	ignī	nūbī	marī
Acc.	urbem	ignem	nūbem	mare
Voc.	urbs	ignis	nūbēs	mare
Abl.	urbe	ignī	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.				
Nom.	urbēs	īgnēs	nūbēs	maria
Gen.	urbium	īgnium	nūbium	marium
Dat.	urbibus	īgnibus	nūbibus	maribus
Acc.	urbēs[1]	īgnēs[1]	nūbēs[1]	maria
Voc.	urbēs	īgnēs	nūbēs	maria
Abl.	urbibus	īgnibus	nūbibus	maribus

7. Fourth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	frūctus, M.	frūctūs	cornū, N.	cornua
Gen.	frūctūs	frūctuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	frūctuī	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	frūctum	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Voc.	frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	frūctū	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus

8. Fifth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	rēs, F.	rēs	diēs, M.	diēs
Gen.	reī	rērum	diēī	diērum
Dat.	reī	rēbus	diēī	diēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs	diem	diēs
Voc.	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

9. Nouns Irregular in Declension.

(*The forms in parentheses should be avoided in writing Latin; the forms in italics are scarcely classical.*)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	vīs, F.	vīrēs
Gen.	(*vīs*)	vīrium
Dat.	(*vī*)	vīribus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs
Voc.		vīrēs
Abl.	vī	vīribus

1. The accusative plural of i-stems is also written *urbīs*, *nūbīs*, *ignis*.

SINGULAR.		
Nom.	deus, M.	bōs, M. *and* F.
Gen.	deī	bovis
Dat.	deō	bovī
Acc.	deum	bovem
Voc.	deus	bōs
Abl.	deō	bove

PLURAL.		
Nom.	dī (deī, *diī*)	bovēs
Gen.	deōrum, deūm	boum (bovum)
Dat.	dīs (deīs, *diīs*)	būbus (bōbus)
Acc.	deōs	bovēs
Voc.	dī (deī, *diī*)	bovēs
Abl.	dīs (deīs, *diīs*)	būbus (bōbus)

SINGULAR.		
Nom.	domus, F.	Juppiter, M.
Gen.	domūs (*locative* domī)	Jovis
Dat.	domuī (domō)	Jovī
Acc.	domum	Jovem
Voc.	domus	Juppiter
Abl.	domō (domū)	Jove

PLURAL.	
Nom.	domūs
Gen.	domuum (domōrum)
Dat.	domibus
Acc.	domōs (domūs)
Voc.	domūs
Abl.	domibus

Rēspūblica, gen. *reīpūblicae*, and *jūsjūrandum*, gen. *jūrisjūrandī*, are really compound words, consisting of a noun and an adjective in agreement, both of which are declined. *Rēspūblicā* is often, and *jūsjūrandum* sometimes, written as two words.

Paterfamiliās or *paterfamiliae*, and *māterfamiliās* or *māterfamiliae*, (literally, the father, or mother, of a household), have only the first part, *pater* and *māter*, declined. Occasionally, *familiārum* is found in the plural. The form *familiās* is an old genitive singular.

(*B*) THE ADJECTIVE.

10. First and Second Declensions.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SINGULAR.			
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL.			
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
SINGULAR.			
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Voc.	līber	lībera	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō
PLURAL.			
Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Voc.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
SINGULAR.			
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Acc.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
Voc.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.			
Nom.	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Gen.	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

11. Third Declension.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL.			
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrēs[1]	ācrēs[1]	ācria
Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

SING.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	fortis	forte	fēlīx	fēlīx
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fēlīcis	fēlīcis
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fēlīcī	fēlīcī
Acc.	fortem	forte	fēlīcem	fēlīx
Voc.	fortis	forte	fēlīx	fēlīx
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fēlīcī	fēlīcī
PLURAL.				
Nom.	fortēs	fortia	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia
Gen.	fortium	fortium	fēlīcium	fēlīcium
Dat.	fortibus	fortibus	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus
Acc.	fortēs[1]	fortia	fēlīcēs[1]	fēlīcia
Voc.	fortēs	fortia	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia
Abl.	fortibus	fortibus	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus

1. The accusative plural is also written *ācris*, *fortis*, etc., (compare section 6).

12. Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.

SING.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	fortior	fortius		plūs
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris		plūris
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī		
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius		plūs
Voc.	fortior	fortius		
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre		(*plūre*)
PLURAL.				
Nom.	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Voc.	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūribus	plūribus

Complūrēs, a compound of *plūrēs*, is declined like it.

All superlatives end in *us*, *a*, *um*, and are declined like *bonus* (section 10).

13. Comparison of Adjectives.

I. Adjectives are regularly compared by changing the ending (*ī*, or *is*) of the genitive singular to *ior*, *ius*, for the comparative degree, and to *issimus*, *a*, *um*, for the superlative degree (see Lesson XXVIII., page 43).

II. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative in *-er*: *e.g.*, *ācer*, *ācerrimus*; *miser*, *miserrimus*.

III. Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the superlative by changing *-ilis* to *-illimus*. These adjectives are *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *grācilis*, *humilis*.

IV. The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison:[1]

1. See further, section 60.

bonus	melior	optimus
dīves	dīvitior, dītior	dīvitissimus, dītissimus
māgnus	mājor	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
malus	pējor	pessimus
multus	plūs (neut.)	plūrimus
juvenis	jūnior	(minimus nātū)
senex	senior	(māximus nātū)
mātūrus	mātūrior	mātūrrimus
	citerior	citimus
	dēterior	dēterrimus
	interior	intimus
	prior	prīmus
	propior	proximus
	ūlterior	ūltimus
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
īnferus	īnferior	īnfimus, īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus, summus

14. Irregular Declension.

SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	neuter	neutra	neutrum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
Voc.	ūne	ūna	ūnum			
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō
PLURAL.						
Nom.	ūnī	ūnae	ūna	neutrī	neutrae	neutra
Gen.	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum	neutrōrum	neutrārum	neutrōrum
Dat.	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs
Acc.	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna	neutrōs	neutrās	neutra
Voc.	ūnī	ūnae	ūna			
Abl.	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs

The following adjectives of the first and second declensions have

their genitive singular in *-īus*,[1] and their dative singular in *ī*, in all genders.

alius, a, ud	tōtus, a, um	alter, era, erum	
nūllus, a, um	ūllus, a, um	neuter, tra, trum	
sōlus, a, um	ūnus, a, um	uter, tra, trum	

(N.B.—*Alius* has in the genitive singular, *alīus;* in the dative singular, *aliī*. The genitive *alīus* is, however, seldom found, *alterius*, or in the possessive sense, *aliēnus, a, um*, being used instead.)

15. List of Numerals.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1. ūnus, a, um, *one*	prīmus, *first*
2. du-o, -ae, -o, *two*	secundus, *second* (*also* alter)
3. trēs, tria, *three*	tertius, *third*
4. quattuor, *four*	quārtus, *fourth*
5. quīnque, *etc.*	quīntus, *etc.*
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octo	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī[2]	duodēvīcēsimus
19. ūndēvīgintī[2]	ūndēvīcēsimus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21. ūnus et vīgintī / vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsimus / vīcēsimus prīmus
28. duodētrīgintā[2]	duodētrīcēsimus
29. ūndētrīgintā[2]	ūndētrīcēsimus

1. In poetry the genitive often occurs in *-ius*, not in *-īus*, with many of these words. With *alter* this seems to have been the rule in prose as well.

2. Literally, *two* (*one*) *from twenty* (*thirty*), etc. The compound forms also occur, *e.g.*, *decem et octo, octodecim, etc.*

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī, ae, a	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī, ae, a	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī, ae, a	quīngentēsimus
600.	sescentī, ae, a	sescentēsimus
700.	septingentī, ae, a	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī, ae, a	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī, ae, a	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	duo mīllia (mīlia)	bis mīllēsimus

16. Declension of Numerals.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	NEUT.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīllia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mīllium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīllibus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria	mīllia
Voc.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīllia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīllibus

For the declension of *ūnus*, see section 14.

The hundreds, from *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*, section 10.

All the other cardinal numerals are indeclinable.

The ordinal numerals are all declined like *bonus*, section 10, except *alter*, for which see section 14.

(C) THE ADVERB.

17. Formation from Adjectives, and Comparison.

I. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives in the following manner:

(*a*) In the positive, by changing the ending of the genitive singular of adjectives of the first and second declensions to *-ē*, of adjectives of the third declension to *-iter* (or, in a few cases, to *-ter*).

(*b*) In the comparative, by taking the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective, that is, by changing *-or* of the comparative of the adjective to *-us*.

(*c*) In the superlative, by changing *-us* of the superlative of the adjective to *-ē*.

For examples, see Lesson LII., page 76.

II. In many cases the accusative singular neuter, or the ablative singular, is used as an adverb; *e.g.*:

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.	ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus	multum	plūrimus	plūrimum
facilis	facile	prīmus	prīmum
subitus	subitō	certus	certō
crēber	crēbrō	ūnus	ūnā

III. The following are irregular in formation or comparison:

bene	melius	optimē
parum	minus	minimē
[māgnopere]	magis	māximē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē

(D) THE PRONOUN.

	18. First Person.	19. Second Person.	20. Third Person Reflexive.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	ego	tū	
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)
Voc.		tū	
Abl.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)

PLURAL.			
Nom.	nōs	vōs	
Gen.	nostrūm, nostrī	vestrūm, vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē (sēsē)
Voc.		vōs	
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

21. Possessive Pronouns.

meus, a, um, *my, mine*	noster, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours*
tuus, a, um, *your, yours*	vester, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours*
suus, a, um, *his, her, hers, its*	suus, a, um, *their, theirs*

These are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, section 10, except that the vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mī*, rarely *meus*.

22. Third Personal, and Demonstrative Pronoun.

Is, *he, she, it,* etc.; *that.*

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	is	ea	id
Gen.	ējus	ējus	ējus
Dat.	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	eum	eam	id
Abl.	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL.			
Nom.	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

23. Demonstrative Pronouns.

	Hīc, *this.*			Ille, *that.*		
SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
PLURAL.						
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

The pronoun *iste, a, ud, that of yours,* is declined exactly like *ille.*

	Ipse, *-self.*			Idem, *the same.*		
SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL.						
Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	eīdem, iīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem, iīsdem[1]	eīsdem, iīsdem[1]	eīsdem, iīsdem[1]
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem, iīsdem[1]	eīsdem, iīsdem[1]	eīsdem, iīsdem[1]

1. For *iisdem* we often find *isdem.*

24. Relative Pronoun.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL.			
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

25. Interrogative Pronoun.

The Interrogative Pronoun differs from the relative pronoun in having *quis* in Nom. Sing. Masc., and *quid* in Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut. There is also the Interrogative Pronominal Adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, declined exactly like the Relative Pronoun.

26. Indefinite Pronouns.

The Indefinite Pronouns are compounds of *quis* or *quī*, and are for the most part declined like them.[1]

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod

(The neuter plural, as well as the feminine singular, has *-qua* for *-quae*.)

quis, quī	qua	quid, quod

(The neuter plural, as well as the feminine singular, has *qua* for *quae*.)

quisque	quaeque	quicque or quidque, quodque
quisquam		quicquam or quidquam

(The plural and the feminine singular are not used.)

1. In this list where a word has both *quis* and *qui*, or both *quid* and *quod*, the forms in *qui* and *quod* are generally used adjectively, the others substantively.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
quisquis	(quaeque)	quicquid or quidquid

(Only *quisquis*, *quicquid* or *quidquid* and *quōquō* are in common use.)

quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam

(*Quīdam* changes *m* to *n* before *-dam*.)

quīcunque	quaecunque	quodcunque
quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs, quodvīs
quispiam	quaepiam	quidpiam or quippiam, quodpiam
quīlibet	quaelibet	quidlibet, quodlibet
uterque	utraque	utrumque

Uterque has the first part declined like *uter*, section 14.

26a. Correlatives.

Of the pronouns which have corresponding forms, the commonest are the following:

INTERROGATIVE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
quis, *who?*	is (hīc, ille, iste)	quī	aliquis, quis, quisquam, quīvīs, quīdam
quālis, *of what sort?*	tālis	quālis	
quantus, *how great?*	tantus	quantus	aliquantus
quot, *how many?*	tot	quot	aliquot
uter, *which of the two?*	uterque, neuter, alter		

(*E*) THE VERB.

27. Indicative Mood, Active Voice.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	*First Conjug.*	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
1.	amō	moneō	regō	audiō
2.	amās	monēs	regis	audīs
3.	amat	monet	regit	audit
PLURAL.				
1.	amāmus	monēmus	regimus	audīmus
2.	amātis	monētis	regitis	audītis
3.	amant	monent	regunt	audiunt

Imperfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
2.	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	audiēbās
3.	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	audiēbat
PLURAL.				
1.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2.	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	audiēbātis
3.	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	audiēbant

Future Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amābō	monēbō	regam	audiam
2.	amābis	monēbis	regēs	audiēs
3.	amābit	monēbit	reget	audiet
PLURAL.				
1.	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	audiēmus
2.	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	audiētis
3.	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	audient

(*E*) THE VERB.

28. Indicative Mood, Passive Voice.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	*First Conjug.*	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
1.	amor	moneor	regor	audior
2.	amāris[1]	monēris[1]	regeris[1]	audīris[1]
3.	amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur
PLURAL.				
1.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
2.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī
3.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

Imperfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
2.	amābāris[1]	monēbāris[1]	regēbāris[1]	audiēbāris[1]
3.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	audiēbātur
PLURAL.				
1.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	audiēbantur

Future Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amābor	monēbor	regar	audiar
2.	amāberis[1]	monēberis[1]	regēris[1]	audiēris[1]
3.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur
PLURAL.				
1.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
2.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	audiēminī
3.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

1. For *-ris*, *-re* also is found, especially in the imperfect and future tenses.

27. Indicative Mood, Active Voice (*continued*).

Perfect Tense.

SINGULAR.	*First Conjug.*	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
1.	amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
2.	amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audīvistī
3.	amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audīvit
PLURAL.				
1.	amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
2.	amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
3.	amāvērunt[1]	monuērunt[1]	rēxērunt[1]	audīvērunt[1]

Pluperfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
2.	amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
3.	amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat
PLURAL.				
1.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
2.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
3.	amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

Future Perfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
2.	amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
3.	amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
PLURAL.				
1.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2.	amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
3.	amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

1. For *-ērunt*, *-ēre* also is found, especially in poetry.

28. Indicative Mood, Passive Voice (*continued*).

Perfect Tense.

	First Conjug.	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
SINGULAR.				
1.	amātus[1] sum	monitus[1] sum	rēctus[1] sum	audītus[1] sum
2.	" es	" es	" es	" es
3.	" est	" est	" est	" est
PLURAL.				
1.	amātī[1] sumus	monitī[1] sumus	rēctī[1] sumus	audītī[1] sumus
2.	" estis	" estis	" estis	" estis
3.	" sunt	" sunt	" sunt	" sunt

Pluperfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amātus[1] eram	monitus[1] eram	rēctus[1] eram	audītus[1] eram
2.	" erās	" erās	" erās	" erās
3.	" erat	" erat	" erat	" erat
PLURAL.				
1.	amātī[1] erāmus	monitī[1] erāmus	rēctī[1] erāmus	audītī[1] erāmus
2.	" erātis	" erātis	" erātis	" erātis
3.	" erant	" erant	" erant	" erant

Future Perfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amātus[1] erō	monitus[1] erō	rēctus[1] erō	audītus[1] erō
2.	" eris	" eris	" eris	" eris
3.	" erit	" erit	" erit	" erit
PLURAL.				
1.	amātī[1] erimus	monitī[1] erimus	rēctī[1] erimus	audītī[1] erimus
2.	" eritis	" eritis	" eritis	" eritis
3.	" erunt	" erunt	" erunt	" erunt

1. Instead of *amatus* and *amati*, *amata* or *amatum* are used in the singular and *amatae* or *amata* in the plural, if the subject is feminine or neuter instead of masculine. So in all conjugations.

29. Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	*First Conjug.*	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
1.	amem	moneam	regam	audiam
2.	amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
3.	amet	moneat	regat	audiat
PLURAL.				
1.	amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
2.	amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
3.	ament	moneant	regant	audiant

Imperfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
2.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audīrēs
3.	amāret	monēret	regeret	audīret
PLURAL.				
1.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audīrēmus
2.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audīrētis
3.	amārent	monērent	regerent	audīrent

Perfect Tense.

SINGULAR.				
1.	amāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	audīverim
2.	amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
3.	amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
PLURAL.				
1.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2.	amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
3.	amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

30. Subjunctive Mood, Passive Voice.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	*First Conjug.*	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
1.	amer	monear	regar	audiar
2.	amēris[1]	moneāris[1]	regāris[1]	audiāris[1]
3.	amētur	moneātur	regātur	audiātur
PLURAL.				
1.	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
2.	amēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	audiāminī
3.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	audiantur

Imperfect Tense.

SINGULAR.			
1. amārer	monērer	regerer	audīrer
2. amārēris[1]	monērēris[1]	regerēris[1]	audīrēris[1]
3. amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audīrētur
PLURAL.			
1. amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audīrēmur
2. amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	audīrēminī
3. amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audīrentur

Perfect Tense.

SINGULAR.			
1. amātus[2] sim	monitus[2] sim	rēctus[2] sim	audītus[2] sim
2. " sīs	" sīs	" sīs	" sīs
3. " sit	" sit	" sit	" sit
PLURAL.			
1. amātī[2] sīmus	monitī[2] sīmus	rēctī[2] sīmus	audītī[2] sīmus
2. " sītis	" sītis	" sītis	" sītis
3. " sint	" sint	" sint	" sint

1. For *-ris*, *-re* also is found. 2. See footnote 1, page 155.

29. Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice (*continued*).

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	*First Conjug.*	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
1.	amāvissem	monuissem	rēxissem	audīvissem
2.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	audīvissēs
3.	amāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	audīvisset
PLURAL.				
1.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	audīvissēmus
2.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	audīvissētis
3.	amāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	audīvissent

31. Infinitive Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT.	amāre	monēre	regere	audīre
PERFECT.	amāvisse	monuisse	rēxisse	audīvisse
FUTURE.	amātūrus esse[1]	monitūrus esse[1]	rēctūrus esse[1]	auditūrus esse[1]

33. Participle, Active Voice.

PRESENT.	amāns	monēns	regēns	audiēns
FUTURE.	amātūrus	monitūrus	rēctūrus	auditūrus

1. See footnote 2, page 81.

30. Subjunctive Mood, Passive Voice (*continued*).

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	First Conjug.	*Second Conjug.*	*Third Conjug.*	*Fourth Conjug.*
SINGULAR.				
1.	amātus[1] essem	monitus[1] essem	rēctus[1] essem	audītus[1] essem
2.	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs
3.	" esset	" esset	" esset	" esset
PLURAL.				
1.	amātī[1] essēmus	monitī[1] essēmus	rēctī[1] essēmus	audītī[1] essēmus
2.	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis
3.	essent	" essent	" essent	" essent

32. Infinitive Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT.			
amārī	monērī	regī	audīrī
PERFECT.			
amātus esse[2]	monitus esse[2]	rēctus esse[2]	audītus esse[2]
FUTURE.			
amātum īrī	monitum īrī	rēctum īrī	audītum īrī

34. Participles, Passive Voice.

PERFECT.			
amātus	monitus	rēctus	audītus
GERUNDIVE.			
amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus

1. See footnote 1, page 155.

2. The perfect infinitive is made up of the perfect participle passive in *-us* and the infinitive of *sum*, which is sometimes omitted. The participle will, of course, agree in gender, number and case with the person or thing it refers to, i.e., the subject.

35. Gerund, Active Voice.

	First Conj.	*Second Conj.*	*Third Conj.*	*Fourth Conj.*
Gen.	amandī	monendī	regendī	audiendī
Dat.	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō
Acc.	amandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum
Abl.	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō

36. Supine, Active Voice.

Acc.	amātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum
Abl.	amātū	monitū	rēctū	audītu

37. Imperative Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 2.	amā	monē	rege	audī
Plur. 2.	amāte	monēte	regite	audīte

FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 2.	amātō	monētō	regitō	audītō
3.	amātō	monētō	regitō	audītō
Plur. 2.	amātōte	monētōte	regitōte	audītōte
3.	amantō	monentō	reguntō	audīuntō

38. Imperative Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. 2.	amāre	monēre	regere	audīre
Plur. 2.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī

FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. 2.	amātor	monētor	regitor	audītor
3.	amātor	monētor	regitor	audītor
Plur. 3.	amantor	monentor	reguntor	audiuntor

39. Verbs in iō of Third Conjugation.[1]

	INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
		PRESENT TENSE.		
	Active Voice.	*Passive Voice.*	*Active Voice.*	*Passive Voice.*
Sing. 1.	capiō	capior	capiam	capiar
2.	capis	caperis	capiās	capiāris
3.	capit	capitur	capiat	capiātur
Plur. 1.	capimus	capimur	capiāmus	capiāmur
2.	capitis	capiminī	capiātis	capiāminī
3.	capiunt	capiuntur	capiant	capiantur
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		
Sing. 1.	capiēbam	capiēbar	caperem	caperer
2.	capiēbās	capiēbāris	caperēs	caperēris
3.	capiēbat	capiēbātur	caperet	caperētur
Plur. 1.	capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	caperēmus	caperēmur
2.	capiēbātis	capiēbāminī	caperētis	caperēminī
3.	capiēbant	capiēbantur	caperent	caperentur
		FUTURE TENSE.		
Sing. 1.	capiam	capiar		
2.	capiēs	capiēris		
3.	capiet	capiētur		
Plur. 1.	capiēmus	capiēmur		
2.	capiētis	capiēminī		
3.	capient	capientur		
		PERFECT TENSE.[2]		
Sing. 1.	cēpī	captus sum	cēperim	captus sim
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.[2]		
Sing. 1.	cēperam	captus eram	cēpissem	captus essem
		FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.[2]		
Sing. 1.	cēperō	captus erō		

1. For a list of the verbs belonging to this class, see section 67.

2. In the perfect tenses, *capio* is inflected exactly like the verbs of the four regular conjugations.

Infinitive Mood.

	Active Voice.	*Passive Voice.*
Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpissé	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

Participle.

Pres.	capiēns	*Perf.*	captus
Fut.	captūrus	*Gerun.*	capiendus

Gerund.

Gen.	capiendī
Dat.	capiendō
Acc.	capiendum
Abl.	capiendō

Supine.

Acc.	captum
Abl.	captū

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

Sing. 2.	cape	capere
Plur. 2.	capite	capiminī

Future Tense.

Sing. 2.	capitō	capitor
3.	capitō	capitor
Plur. 2.	capitōte	
3.	capiuntō	capiuntor

40. Synopsis of Deponent Verbs.

Indicative.

	First Con.	*Second Con.*	*Third Con.*	*Fourth Con.*	*Verbs in iō.*
Pres.	hortor	vereor	loquor	potior	patior
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	potiēbar	patiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	potiar	patiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	locūtus sum	potītus sum	passus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	locūtus eram	potītus eram	passus eram
Fut. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	locūtus erō	potītus erō	passus erō

Subjunctive.

Pres.	hortor	verear	loquar	potiar	patiar
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	potīrer	paterer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	locūtus sim	potītus sim	passus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	locūtus essem	potītus essem	passus essem

Infinitive.

Pres.	hortāri	verērī	loquī	potīrī	patī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locūtus esse	potītus esse	passus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse	passūrus esse

Participle.

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	loquēns	potiēns	patiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus	passūrus
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
Ger.	hortandus	verendus	loquendus	potiendus	patiendus

Gerund.

Gen.	hortandī	verendī	loquendī	potiendī	patiendī

SUPINE.

	First Con.	*Second Con.*	*Third Con.*	*Fourth Con.*	*Verbs in iō.*
Acc.	hortātum	veritum	locūtum	potītum	passum

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	hortāre	verēre	loquere	potīre	patere
Fut.	hortātor	verētor	loquitor	potītor	patitor

IRREGULAR VERBS.

41. Sum, esse, fuI, *to be.*

42. Possum, posse, potuI, *to be able, can.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT.		
Sing. 1.	sum	sim	possum	possim
2.	es	sīs	potes	possīs
3.	est	sit	potest	possit
Plur. 1.	sumus	sīmus	possumus	possīmus
2.	estis	sītis	potestis	possītis
3.	sunt	sint	possunt	possint
		IMPERFECT.		
Sing. 1.	eram	essem	poteram	possem
2.	erās	essēs	poterās	possēs
3.	erat	esset	poterat	posset
Plur. 1.	erāmus	essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
2.	erātis	essētis	poterātis	possētis
3.	erant	essent	poterant	possent
		FUTURE.		
Sing. 1.	erō		poterō	
2.	eris		poteris	
3.	erit		poterit	
Plur. 1.	erimus		poterimus	
2.	eritis		poteritis	
3.	erunt		poterunt	

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PERFECT.		
Sing. 1.	fuī	fuerim	potuī	potuerim
2.	fuistī	fueris	potuistī	potueris
3.	fuit	fuerit	potuit	potuerit
Plur. 1.	fuimus	fuerimus	potuimus	potuerimus
2.	fuistis	fueritis	potuistis	potueritis
3.	fuērunt	fuerint	potuērunt	potuerint
		PLUPERFECT.		
Sing. 1.	fueram	fuissem	potueram	potuissem
2.	fuerās	fuissēs	potuerās	potuissēs
3.	fuerat	fuisset	potuerat	potuisset
Plur. 1.	fuerāmus	fuissēmus	potuerāmus	potuissēmus
2.	fuerātis	fuissētis	potuerātis	potuissētis
3.	fuerant	fuissent	potuerant	potuissent
		FUTURE PERFECT.		
Sing. 1.	fuerō		potuerō	
2.	fueris		potueris	
3.	fuerit		potuerit	
Plur. 1.	fuerimus		potuerimus	
2.	fueritis		potueritis	
3.	fuerint		potuerint	
		INFINITIVE.		
Pres.	esse		posse	
Perf.	fuisse		potuisse	
Fut.	futūrus esse *or* fore			
		PARTICIPLE.		
Pres.			potēns	
Fut.	futūrus			
		IMPERATIVE.		
Pres. Sing. 2.	es			
Plur. 2.	este			
Fut. Sing. 2.	estō			
3.	estō			
Plur. 2.	estōte			
3.	suntō			

43. Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.[1]

Volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, will, wish.*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, will not.*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, *be more willing, prefer.*

Indicative.

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Impf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive.

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Impf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Infinitive.

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

1. See footnote 3, page 94.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	nōlī
	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō
	nōlītō
	nōlītōte
	nōluntō

44. Ferō.[1]

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry, endure.*

INDICATIVE.

	Active.		*Passive.*	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Impf.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
Plup.	tuleram		lātus eram	
Fut. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	feram	ferar
Impf.	ferrem	ferrer
Perf.	tulerim	lātus sim
Plup.	tulissem	lātus essem

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	ferēns	*Perf.*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	*Ger.*	ferendus

1. See footnote 1, page 97. For the compounds of ferō, see section 71, *b*.

GERUND.

Gen.	ferendī
Dat.	ferendō
Acc.	ferendum
Abl.	ferendō

SUPINE.

Acc.	lātum
Abl.	lātū

IMPERATIVE.

		Active.	*Passive.*
Pres.	*Sing.* 2.	fer	ferre
	Plur. 2.	ferte	feriminī
Fut.	*Sing.* 2.	fertō	fertor
	3.	fertō	fertor
	Plur. 2.	fertōte	
	3.	feruntō	feruntor

45. Eō.[1]

Eō, īre, iī, (īvī), itum, *go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fīunt
Impf.	ībam		fīēbam	
Fut.	ībō		fīam	
Perf.	iī		factus sum	
Plup.	ieram		factus eram	
Fut. P.	ierō		factus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	eam, eās, etc.	fīam
Impf.	īrem	fierem
Perf.	ierim	factus sim
Plup.	iissem	factus essem

46. Fīō.[1]

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, become, happen.*

1. See footnote 2, page 100.

Infinitive.

Pres.	īre		fierī
Perf.	iisse		factus esse
Fut.	itūrus esse		factum īrī

Participle.

Pres.	iēns, *Gen.* euntis	*Perf.*	factus
Fut.	itūrus	*Ger.*	faciendus

Gerund.

Gen.	eundī
Dat.	eundō
Acc.	eundum
Abl.	eundō

Supine.

Acc.	itum
Abl.	itū

Imperative.

Pres. Sing.	2. ī	*Pres. Sing.*	2. fī
Plur.	2. īte	*Plur.*	2. fīte
Fut. Sing.	2. ītō		
	3. ītō		
Plur.	2. ītōte		
	3. euntō		

II. INFLECTION: EPITOME OF RULES AND PECULIARITIES.

47. General Rules for Gender.

(*a*) Names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine.

(*b*) The gender of other words is to be determined not from their meaning, but by the rules for gender (according to the ending of the nominative singular) given under each declension.

(*c*) But as a rule, irrespective of endings, names of *rivers*, *winds* and *months* are masculine; names of *cities*, *islands*, *countries*, *trees*, *plants* and *abstract qualities* are feminine; and indeclinable nouns are neuter.

48. Nouns of the First Declension. (See also section 1.)

(*a*) The STEM[1] ends in **a**, and is like the nominative singular.

(*b*) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—
Genitive singular in **-āī**, archaic and found in poetry.
Genitive singular in **-ās**, in *familiās* (see section 9).
Genitive plural in **-ūm**, in words of Greek origin and in poetry.
Dative and ablative plural in **-ābus**, often in *deābus* and *filiābus*.

(*c*) GENDER.—Nouns of this declension are feminine. EXCEPTIONS: nouns denoting males are masculine, *e.g.*, *nauta*; *Belgae* (name of a tribe); *Cotta* (a man's name); so, also, *Hadria*.

(*d*) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These end in ē feminine, ās or ēs masculine. In the plural the regular Latin endings are used; in the singular, either the Latin endings or the following, borrowed from the Greek:

Nom. ē,	Gen. ēs,	Acc. ēn,	Voc. ē,	Abl. ē.
" ās,		" ān,	" ā,	
" ēs,		" ēn,	" ē, ā,	" ē.

(*e*) The LOCATIVE[2] case ends in **-ae**, *e.g.*, *Rōmae*, *mīlitiae*.

1. The stem of a word is the fundamental part, containing the meaning, to which the inflectional endings are attached.

2. The Locative is a survival from what was once a separate case, denoting the place where.

49. Nouns of the Second Declension. (See also sections 2, 3.)

(*a*) The STEM ends in **o**, and, except in quantity, is like the dative singular. This *o* is generally either weakened to *u* or lost.

(*b*) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—
Genitive singular in **ii** regularly contracted to **ī** (without affecting the accent).[1]
Vocative singular of *fīlius* and proper names in *-ius* regularly contracted from **-ie** to **-ī** (without affecting the accent).
Genitive plural in **-ūm**, in words denoting money and measures, in words of Greek origin, and in poetry.
For the declension of **deus** see section 9.

(*c*) GENDER.—Nouns ending in **us**, **er**, **ir**, are masculine, in **um** neuter. EXCEPTIONS: Feminine in *us* are names of cities, islands, trees, *e.g.*, *Corinthus*, *fāgus*; also *domus*, *humus*, *alvus*, *carbasus*; neuter are *vulgus*, *pelagus*, *vīrus*.

(*d*) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These end in **os** or **ōs** masculine, **on** neuter. In the plural the regular Latin endings are used; in the singular either the Latin endings or the following, borrowed from the Greek:

Nom. **ōs**,	Gen. **ō**,	Acc. **ōn**, **ō**,	Voc. **ōs**.
" **os**,		" **on**,	
" **on**,		" **on**,	" **on**.

(*e*) The LOCATIVE case ends in **-ī**, *e.g.*, *Corinthī*, *humī*, *domī*.

50. Nouns of the Third Declension. (See also sections 4-6.)

(*a*) The STEM ends either in a consonant or in **i**.[2] In most cases it may be obtained by dropping **-um** from the genitive plural.

(*b*) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—No exceptional endings occur, but a variation in certain cases is often found, due chiefly to confusion between the consonant-stems and the *i*-stems.[3] The latter originally had in the singular, accusative **-im**, ablative **-ī**; in the plural, genitive **-ium**, accusative **-is**, and, in neuters, nominative and accusative **-ia**. For **-is** in the accusative, **-ēs** may always be used, and is generally printed in Latin books. The other endings of the *i*-stems (**-im**, **-ī**, **-ium**, **-ia**) are regular in (*a*) *vīs*, *sitis*, *febris*, *puppis*, *secūris*, *turris*[4]; (*b*) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*; (*c*) some names of rivers and towns, *e.g.*, *Tamesis*, *Tiberis*, *Neāpolis*.

1. In many Latin texts *-ii* is retained except in *filius* and proper names in *-ius*.
2. There are also two words whose stem ends in *u*, *sus* and *grus*.
3. The tendency is for nouns to take the endings of the consonant-stems, and for adjectives to take those of the *i*-stems.
4. These, except *vis* and *sitis*, occasionally have *-em* also.

The following have **-ī** and **-ium** only: *īgnis*, *nāvis* and *continēns* (which also has **-e**).

The following have **-ium** only: (*a*) nouns in *-is* or *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive (except *canis*, *juvenis*, and often *mēnsis*); (*b*) nouns in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant (except *parēns* and nouns in *-ps*); (*c*) *nox*, *carō*, *imber*, *linter*.

For the declension of **vīs**, **bōs** and **Juppiter**, see section 9.

(*c*) GENDER.—The Gender endings and chief exceptions are as follows:

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
ō	*carō*, and nouns in *-dō*, *-gō* and *-iō* (except *ōrdō*)	
or	*arbor*	*aequor*, *cor*
ōs	*dōs*	*ōs* (*ōris*), also *os* (*ossis*)
er	*linter*	*iter*, also *vēr*
es	*seges*	*aes*
ēs increasing in gen.	*abiēs*, *quiēs*, *mercēs*	
ās, *vas* (*vadis*)	**as**, **ās**	*fās*, *nefās*, *vās* (*vāsis*)
	ēs not increasing in gen.	
nouns in *-nis*, also *collis*, *lapis*, *orbis*, *mēnsis*, *pulvis*, *sanguis*	**is**	
dēns, *fōns*, *mōns*, *pōns*	**s** preceded by a consonant	
most nouns in *-ex* (except *lēx*, *nex*)	**x**	
	us or **ūs**, with gen. in **-dis** or **-tis**	
lepus, *mūs*	*tellūs*	**us** or **ūs**, with gen. in **-ris**
sāl, *sōl*		**c**, **e**, **l**, **t**, **men**
lar, *vultur*, *fūr*		**ar**, **ur**

(*d*) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These frequently have the regular Latin endings; of the endings borrowed from the Greek, the commonest are: Singular, Gen. **os**, Acc. **a**; Plural, Nom. **es**, Acc. **as**. The other chief irregularities are as follows:

Nouns in **is** have Acc. **in**, as well as the Latin ending **im**.
" **ys** " Acc. **yn**.
" **ō** " Gen. **ūs**, Dat., Acc., Voc. and Abl. **ō**.
" **ēs** " Gen. **is** or **ī**, Acc. **em** or **ēn**.
" **eus** " Gen. **eos**, Dat. **eī** or **ī**, Acc. **eum**, Voc. **eu**, but these last more often take the endings of the second declension.

(*e*) The LOCATIVE case ends in **-ī**, *e.g.*, *rūrī*, *Carthāginī*.

51. Nouns of the Fourth Declension. (See also section 7.)

(*a*) The STEM ends in **u**, and, except in quantity, is like the ablative singular.

(*b*) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—
Dative singular in **-ū**, contracted for **-uī**.
Dative and Ablative plural in **-ubus**, found in dissyllabic words in *-cus* (*e.g.*, *lacus*), also in *artus*, *tribus*, *portus*, *genū*.
For the declension of **domus**, see section 9.

(*c*) GENDER.—Nouns ending in **us** are masculine, in **ū** neuter.
EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine in *us* are names of trees, *e.g.*, *laurus*; also *domus*, *manus*, *tribus*, *Īdūs* (plural only).

52. Nouns of the Fifth Declension. (See also section 8.)

(*a*) The STEM ends in **-ē**, and is like the ablative singular.

(*b*) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—
Genitive singular in **-ī** or **-ē** for **-ēī**.[1]

(*c*) GENDER.—All nouns end in **-ēs**, and are regularly feminine.
EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are *diēs*,[2] and its compound *meridiēs*.

53. Nouns Defective or Peculiar in Number.

(*a*) The *singular only* of the following nouns is ordinarily found:
1. Proper names of places or persons, *e.g.*, *Rōma*, *Juppiter*.
2. Single natural objects, *e.g.*, *lūna*, *tellūs*.
3. Names of materials (not ordinarily counted), *e.g.*, *aurum*, *aes*, *lāc*.
4. Names of abstract qualities, *e.g.*, *īra*, *siccitās*.
5. Collective nouns, *e.g.*, *equitātus*, *vulgus*.

(*b*) The *plural only* of the following nouns is ordinarily found:
1. Certain names of places, *e.g.*, *Athēnae*, *Pompēiī*.
2. Names of days and festivals, *e.g.*, *Calendae*, *Īdūs*, *Bacchānālia*.
3. Names of classes or groups, *e.g.*, *līberī*, *mājōrēs*, *posterī*.
4. Names of certain parts of the body, *e.g.*, *faucēs*, *praecordia*.

1. In the genitive and dative singular the regular ending *-ēī* is shortened to *eī* after a consonant.

2. *Dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular, chiefly in the sense of *a set day*.

5. Many other words, *e.g.*, *angustiae*, *arma*, *castra*, *dēliciae*, *dīvitiae*, *indūtiae*, *īnsidiae*, *moenia*, *nūptiae*, *reliquiae*, *tenebrae*.

(*c*) Many nouns found ordinarily in the singular only are used in a special sense in the plural:

1. Names of persons, to denote the family or individuals of the same type, *e.g.*, *Catōnēs*, the Catos, or men like Cato.
2. Names of single natural objects, in a transferred sense, *e.g.*, *sōlēs*, days.
3. Names of materials, to denote objects made of them, *e.g.*, *aera*, bronzes, coppers.
4. Abstract nouns, to denote various manifestations of the quality, *e.g.*, *īrae*, bursts of passion; *siccitātēs*, droughts.[1]

(*d*) Some nouns have a different meaning in the singular and plural, *e.g.*,

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aedēs, temple;	*aedēs*, house, palace.
auxilium, aid;	*auxilia*, auxiliary troops.
cōpia, abundance;	*cōpiae*, troops, stores.
fīnis, end;	*fīnēs*, territory.
impedīmentum, hindrance;	*impedīmenta*, baggage.
littera, letter (of the alphabet);	*litterae*, letter (of correspondence), literature.
mōs, habit, custom;	*mōrēs*, character.

54. Nouns Defective in Case.

(*a*) Used in but one case: *Noctū*, *jussū*, *injussū*, *nātū*.

(*b*) Used in but two cases: *Fors*, *forte*; *fās*, *nefās*, *instar*, *nihil*, *opus* (need), in nom. and acc. singular.

(*c*) Used in but three cases: *Nēmō*, *nēminī*, *nēminem*.

(*d*) Defective in both singular and plural: *Impetus* (found in nom., acc. and abl. singular, and nom. and acc. plural); [*diciō*] (lacking the nom. singular and all the plural).

(*e*) Defective in singular, regular in plural: *Vīs* (see section 9); [*ops*] (lacking the nom. and dat. singular).

(*f*) Defective in plural, regular in singular: All words of the fifth declension except *diēs* and *rēs* (many of these have no plural; *aciēs*, *spēs*, and a few others have the nom. and acc. plural); *rūs*, *jūs* have in the plural only nom. and acc.; *lūx*, *ōs* (*ōris*), *pūx*, *sōl*, and many other monosyllables of the third declension lack the gen. plural.

1. Sometimes the singular of a concrete noun is used as a collective, chiefly in poetry, *e.g.*, *mīles*, the soldiery. Again, the poets often use the plural for the singular in order to heighten the effect (the 'plural of majesty').

55. Heterogeneous Nouns.

Some nouns have the same stem, but vary in gender:

(*a*) Several nouns of the second declension have forms in both *-us* and *-um*, *e.g.*, *clipeus*, *clipeum*.

(*b*) Many nouns are of different genders in the singular and the plural, *e.g.*, sing. *epulum*, *ī*, N.; plur. *epulae*, *ārum*, F.; sing. *locus*, *ī*, M.; plur. *loca*, *ōrum*, N. (also *locī*, *ōrum*, M., chiefly in the sense of passages or topics in a book).

56. Heteroclite Nouns.

Some nouns have their forms partly of one declension and partly of another.

(*a*) Many nouns which follow the first declension have also certain forms (nom., acc., and abl. singular) of the fifth declension, *e.g.*, *māteria*, *māteriēs*.

(*b*) Many names of trees, generally of the second declension, have also forms of the fourth declension (chiefly the abl. singular, and nom. and acc. plural), *e.g.*, *laurus*, *pīnus*. For *domus*, also of both second and fourth declensions, see section 9.

(*c*) *Famēs* and *requiēs* of the third declension have respectively the abl. singular and the acc. and abl. singular of the fifth declension.

(*d*) *Jugerum*, *ī*, has in the plural generally *jugera*, *um*, of the third declension; while *vās*, *vāsis*, has in the plural *vāsa*, *ōrum*.

57. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. (See also sections 10 and 14.)

Of the adjectives of this declension ending in *-er*, the majority are declined like *aeger*; the exceptions are *asper*, *dexter*, *lacer*, *līber*, *miser*, *tener*, compounds in *-fer* and *-ger*, and sometimes *dexter*.

Adjectives in *-ius* do not contract the genitive ending *-iī*, or the vocative ending *-ie*, as do the nouns.

58. Adjectives of the Third Declension. (See also sections 11 and 12.)

(*a*) These are commonly divided into adjectives of *one*, *two* or *three* terminations, according to the number of forms used in the nominative singular for the different genders. Adjectives of three terminations end in *-er*, *-ris*, *-re*; those of two terminations in *-is*, *-e*, or *-ior*, *-ius* (comparatives); those of one termination in *-x*, *-s* (chiefly *-ns*), *-l* or *-r*.

(*b*) As a rule all adjectives of this declension have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural. The following are exceptions:

i. All comparatives; these have *-e*, *-ium*, *-a* (except *plūs*).

ii. Many adjectives of one termination, viz.:

With *-um:* all those which in the genitive singular have *-is* preceded by a short vowel and a single consonant; as *inopis*, *veteris*, but not *ferōcis* or *prūdentis*.

With *-e:* *vetus*, *pauper*, and adjectives in *-es*, gen. *-itis* or *-idis*, *e.g.*, *dīves*.

With *-a:* *vetus*.

(*c*) Present participles have *-ia* and *-ium;* when used as adjectives they have *-ī* in the abl. sing.; when used as participles, *-e*.

59. Defective and Indeclinable Adjectives.

Because of their meaning *ambō*,[1] *complūrēs*, *paucī* and *plērīque* are not in use in the singular. *Plūrēs*, too, is found as an adjective only in the plural, *plūs*, the singular, being a substantive.

The following adjectives are indeclinable: *frūgī*, *nēquam*, *necesse*, *tot*, *quot*, *aliquot*, and most cardinal numerals. (See section 16.)

60. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. (See also sections 13 and 17.)

To the instances of irregular comparison given in sections 13 and 17 the following may be added:

(*a*) Cases where deficiencies are supplied from other adjectives:

senex	*senior* or *mājor nātū*[2]	*māximus nātū*[2]
juvenis	*jūnior* or *minor nātū*[2]	*minimus nātū*[2]
vetus	*vetustior*	*veterrimus*
novus	*recentior*	*novissimus*

(*b*) Comparison can be expressed with words not themselves compared, by adding the adverbs **magis** (*more*) and **māximē** (*most*).

(*c*) *male*	*pējus*	*pessimē*
prope	*propius*	*proximē*
multum	*plūs*	*plūrimum*
matūrē	*matūrius*	*matūrissimē*, *maturrimē*
	potius	*potissimum*
	prius	*prīmum*
nūper		*nūperrimē*
secus	*sēcius* or *sētius*	

1. *Ambo* is declined like *duo*, section 16.

2. *Nātu* (literally *by birth*) is also often omitted.

61. Numerals. (See also sections 15 and 16.)

(*a*) In combining numerals up to 100, either the ten without *et*, or the unit with *et*, precedes.[1] But the forms expressing subtraction, *e.g.*, *duodēvīgintī*, are more common than those expressing union. In combining numerals above 100, the order is thousands (if present), hundreds, tens, units; with three numerals, *et* is regularly omitted.

(*b*) In compound ordinals *alter* is preferred to *secundus*.

(*c*) The distributive numerals are: 1. **singulī**, 2. **bīnī**, 3. **ternī**, 4. **quaternī**, 5. **quīnī**, 6. **sēnī**, 7. **septēnī**, 8. **octōnī**, 9. **novēnī**, 10. **dēnī**, 20. **vīcēnī**, 100. **centēnī**, etc. They are declined like the plural of *bonus* (see section 10), but often have *-ūm* for *-ōrum* in the genitive.

The distributives are numeral adjectives used (1) to signify (*so many*) *each*, or *apiece*, (2) in multiplication (*bis septēnī*, *twice seven*, not *bis septem*, except in poetry), (3) with nouns used in the plural only, in place of the cardinals (except that *ūnī* is used for *one*, and *trīnī*, not *ternī*, for *three*), (4) to express pairs or groups of objects, (5) in poetry often for the cardinal.

(*d*) The numeral adverbs are: 1. **semel**, *once*, 2. **bis**, *twice*, 3. **ter**, 4. **quater**, 5. **quīnquiēs**, 6. **sexiēs**, 7. **septiēs**, 8. **octiēs**, 9. **noviēs**, 10. **deciēs**, 20. **vīciēs**, 100. **centiēs**, 1000. **milliēs**. For the forms in *-ēs*, *-ēns* is also found.

(*e*) **Mīlle** in the singular is regularly an indeclinable adjective in agreement with its substantive; rarely (generally in the nominative or accusative) a neuter noun, followed by the genitive.

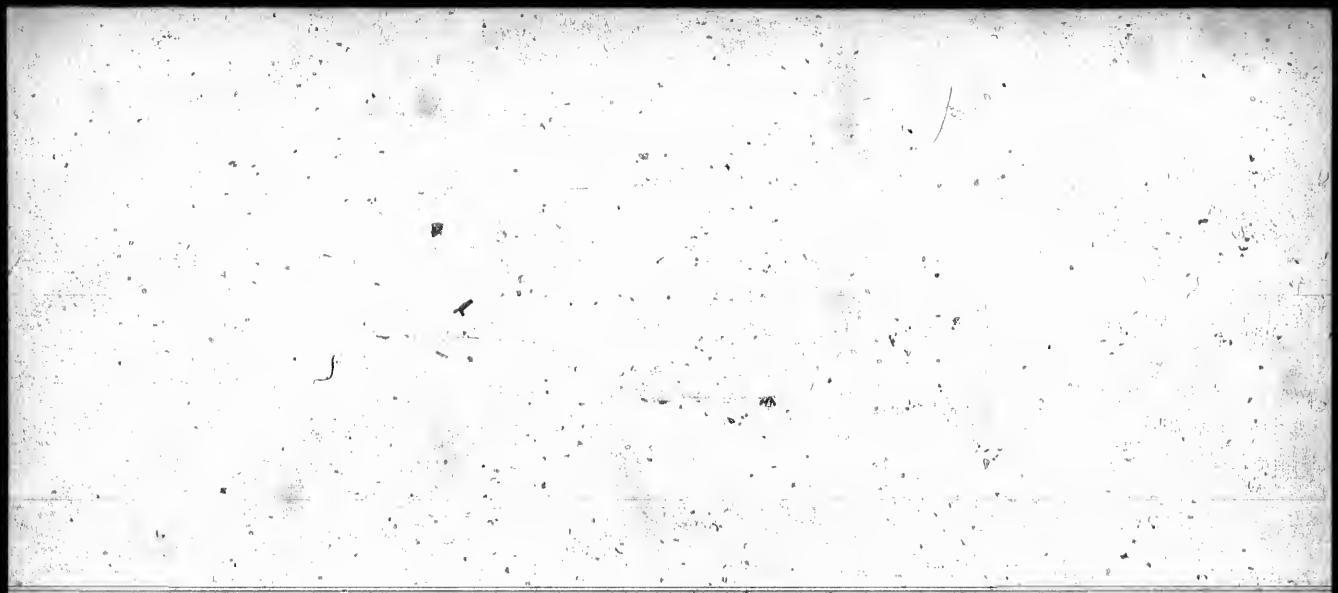
Mīllia (or **Mīlia**), the plural, is a neuter noun, followed by the genitive. If to *mīllia* is added some smaller number, a noun preceding the combination is in the genitive, but a noun following the combination is in the same case.

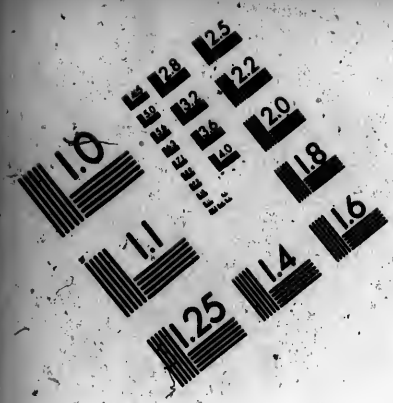
62. Personal, Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns. (See also sections 18-21.)

(*a*) In the partitive sense, the genitives **nostrūm** and **vestrūm** are used; in the objective sense, the genitives **meī**, **tuī**, **suī**, **nostrī** and **vestrī**; in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, **noster** and **vester**.

(*b*) With *ego*, *tū*, *suī*, the preposition *cum* is regularly suffixed to the ablative it governs, the accent being on the syllable preceding *-cum*.

1. Compare English *twenty-one* or *one and twenty*, but notice that the latter is unusual in ordinary prose English, while *unus et vīgintī* is good prose Latin.





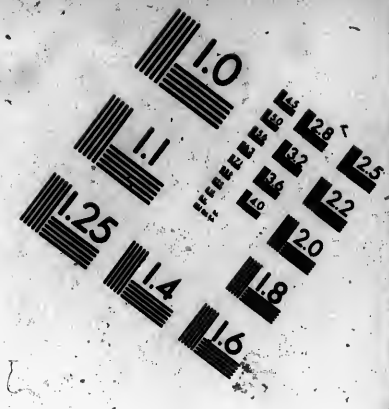
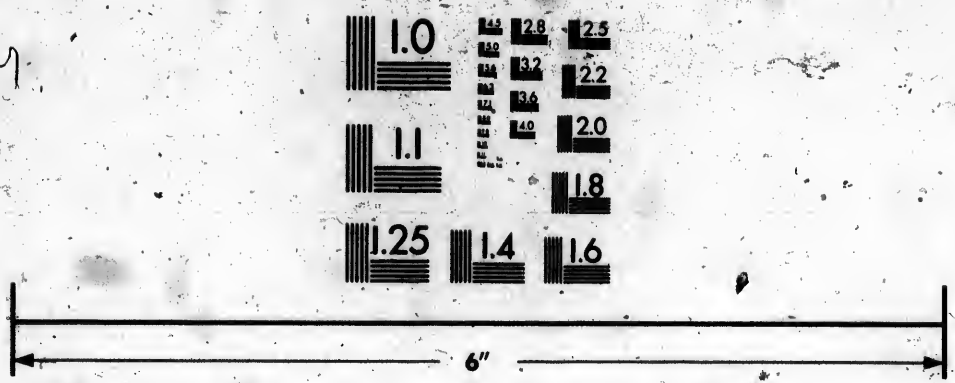
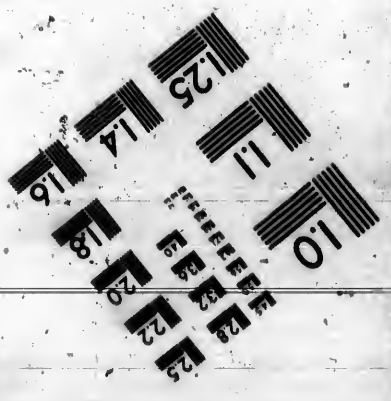


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

(*c*) For *mihi*, the contracted form **mI** also occurs. These pronouns are emphasized by the addition of certain particles, especially *-met* (added to all forms of *ego*, *tū* and *suī*, except *tū* and the genitive plural) and *-pte* (added to the ablative singular of the possessives). *Sēsē* in usage is interchangeable with *sē*; reduplication in other pronouns indicates emphasis.

(*d*) In the first and second persons, the personal pronouns serve also as the reflexive pronouns.

(*e*) The reflexive pronouns with *inter* are equivalent to the reciprocal *each other* or *one another* (including often the preposition governing these words), *e.g.*, *inter nōs amāmus*, *inter sē pūgnant*.

63. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See also sections 22 and 23.)

(*a*) *Hīc*, *ille* and *iste* are often emphasized by the addition of *-ce* (sometimes shortened to *-c*) to the various cases.[1] Of these forms, *istūc* is commoner than *istud*.

(*b*) For the dative singular and nominative plural of *ille*, **olli** is found (from an archaic *ollus*).

(*c*) Often in poetry the genitive singular of *ille* and *iste* is *illius* and *istius*, not *illīus* and *istīus*; and the dative singular of *is*, *eī*, not *ei*.

(*d*) Of the alternative forms given for the nominative, dative and ablative plural of *is* and *īdem*, those in *eī* are the rarer. *Iīdem* and *iīsdem* are often, and with greater correctness, written *īdem* and *īsdem*.

64. Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. (See also sections 24-26.)

(*a*) An ablative singular form **quI** occurs; as a relative it is used chiefly with *cum*[2]; as an interrogative it is an adverb, meaning *how?* **QuIs** occurs for the dative and ablative plural.

(*b*) With the relative and interrogative pronouns, the preposition *cum* is (except very rarely) suffixed to the ablative it governs, the accent being on the syllable preceding *-cum*.

(*c*) In the interrogative and indefinite pronouns, the distinction between adjective and substantive forms (sections 25 and 26) is less carefully observed in the masculine than in the neuter.

Quis indefinite has sometimes *quae* in the feminine singular and neuter plural.

---

1. The *-c* of *hīc*, *hunc*, *hoc*, *hāce*, is a remnant of this same suffix *-ce*.
2. Cicero prefers *quicum* to *quocum* or *quacum*.

The two parts of *quīcumque* are often divided by another word.

(*d*) The interrogative is often strengthened by the addition of *ec-* or *-nam*; *ecquis* (*ecquī*), etc., and *quisnam* (*quīnam*), etc.

65. Verb Stems and Principal Parts.

The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a Latin verb are the present indicative, present infinitive, perfect indicative and (except in deponent verbs) the supine.[1] These give the main stems from which, as starting points, all parts of a verb are formed, according to a fixed system.

The stems of an active verb may be found by omitting *-re*, *-ī* and *-um* respectively in the present infinitive, perfect indicative and supine of the principal parts. These stems are called respectively the present, perfect and supine stems.

The stems of a deponent verb may be found by omitting *-rī* of the present infinitive (but in the third conjugation by changing *-ī* to *-e*) for the present stem; and by omitting *-us sum* of the perfect indicative for the supine stem. The perfect stem does not occur.

66. Irregular Forms in the Conjugation of the Regular Verb.

(*a*) Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, and also **mōvī** and **nōvī** (from *moveō* and *nōscō*) often, before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-* drop *v* and contract the two vowels thus brought together to *ā*, *ē*, *ō* respectively; *e.g.*, *nōrat* for *nōverat*.

Perfects in **-ivī** also drop *v* before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-*, but the vowels thus brought together are contracted (to *ī*) only before *-is-*. Before *-er-* and *-ēr-*, *ī* is shortened to *i*.

But *eō* and its compounds, also *petō* and *dēsinō*, drop *v* also in the first and third singular and first plural of the perfect indicative.

(*b*) For *-ērunt* of the perfect indicative **-ēre** is used, especially in poetry.

For *-ris* of the second singular passive **-re** is used, but rarely in the present indicative.

The gerund and gerundive of the third and fourth conjugations have sometimes, especially after *i*, **-undī** and **-undus** for *-endī* and *-endus*.

(*c*) The imperative, second singular present active, of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*, is **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**. These forms are retained in compounds, except in those compounds of *faciō*, which change to *-ficiō*.

1. As the supine is a somewhat infrequent form, many books give the perfect participle passive instead of the supine.

(*d*) The archaic **-ier** for **-ī** of the present infinitive passive is used by the poets.

Sometimes in poetry *-is-*, *-iss-* or *-sis-* is dropped in forms from perfects in *-sī* or *-xī*; *e.g.*, *dixtī* for *dixistī*.

An archaic future perfect indicative in **-sō** and perfect subjunctive in **-sim** are found in poetry; *c.g.*, *faxō* (for *facsō*), *amassim*.

(*e*) In the compound tenses of the regular verb, *esse* is very often omitted, especially in the future infinitive active; so also *est* and *sunt*, but chiefly in poetry.

67. Verbs in -IŌ of the Third Conjugation. (See also section 39.)

In the tenses formed from the present stem, these verbs retain *-i* of the stem wherever in the fourth conjugation we have two successive vowels, *e.g.*, *capiunt;* in other cases (that is, before *i*, *ī* or *er*) they drop *-i* of the stem, *e.g.*, *capere.*

The verbs so conjugated are: **capiō, cupiō, faciō, fodiō, fugiō, jaciō, pariō, quatiō, sapiō; morior, patior;** and compounds (of rare or obsolete verbs) ending in **-gredior, -liciō, -spiciō.**

Orior also, though regularly of the fourth conjugation, has very commonly in the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive the forms of the third conjugation.

68. Deponent Verbs.

A synopsis of the conjugation of deponent verbs (which may be defined as verbs which no longer retain the active forms, but [illegible] the passive forms with an active meaning), is given in section [illegible].

(*a*) The PRINCIPAL PARTS of deponents necessarily differ from those of the regular active verb. (See section 65.)

(*b*) The forms of the ordinary deponent are not all passive, nor is the meaning of all its parts active. The deponent verb has regularly from the active voice the *present* and *future participles*, the *future infinitive*, the *gerund* and the *supine;* while again the *gerundive* is regularly passive in meaning.

(*c*) SEMI-DEPONENTS are certain verbs which are deponent in the perfect tenses only, viz.: **audeō, ēre, ausus sum; gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum; fidō, ere, fīsus sum** (and compounds); **soleō, ēre, solitus sum.**

Fīō, fierī, factus sum (section 46) is practically a semi-deponent; while *revertor, revertī*, perfect *revertī* (not *reversus sum*) is the converse.

(*d*) Several verbs otherwise active are deponent in the perfect participle, *e.g.*, *perōdī, perōsus; suēscō, suētus; adolēscō, adultus.*

Certain also of the impersonal verbs have in the perfect both active and deponent forms, *e.g.*, *placet* has *placuit* and *placitum est*; so *licet*, *pudet*, *piget*.

In a very few other verbs both active and deponent forms are in common use, *e.g.*, *mereō* (*mereor*) and *populō* (*populor*). In a larger number of verbs the perfect participle alone is passive in meaning, *e.g.*, *partior*, *dīmētior*, *tueor*.

69. The Periphrastic Conjugations.

All compound forms of the verb might strictly be called periphrastic, but the term is usually limited to two sets of forms:

(*a*) The *active* periphrastic conjugation, viz., the future participle active, in **-ūrus**, with the various parts of the verb **sum**, to denote intended or impending action.

(*b*) The *passive* periphrastic conjugation, viz., the gerundive, in **-ndus**, with the various parts of the verb **sum**, to denote necessary or obligatory action.

70. The Verb SUM and its Compounds. (See also sections 41 and 42.)

For the imperfect subjunctive, *essem*, etc., there occur also the forms **forem, forēs, foret** and **forent**.

Sum is compounded with many of the prepositions, in most cases with no irregularity: *absum* (perf. *āfuī*), I am absent, distant; *adsum*, I am present; *dēsum*, I am wanting; *īnsum*, I am in; *intersum*, I am between, differ, am present at (*interest*, impersonal, it concerns); *obsum*, I am against, hinder; *praesum*, I am over, command; *prōsum*, I am for, benefit; *subsum*, I am under, near (no perf.); *supersum*, I am left over, survive.

Prōsum has *prōd-*, not *prō-*, before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*.

Possum is a compound of *potis*, able, and *sum*, *t* of *pot-* being changed to *s* before another *s*.

A present participle occurs only in the compounds *absum* and *praesum* (**absēns, praesēns**). *Possum* has **potēns** used adjectively.

71. (*a*) The Verb EŌ and its Compounds.[1] (See also sec. 45.)

Some of the compounds of *eō* (*e.g.*, *adeō*, *circumeō*, *ineō*, *trānseō*, *praetereō*) are transitive and have passive forms, formed in the usual way from the active endings, *e.g.*, the present indicative of *adeō* is *adeor, adīris, aditur, adīmur, adīminī, adeuntur*. *Eō* itself

1. *Queo, nequeo* and *vēneo* are conjugated like *eo*.

also has passive forms in the third person used intransitively, *e.g.*, *ītur, īrī, eundum.*

In the perfect tenses *iī* is far commoner than *īvī*, and in the compounds is the almost invariable form.

(*b*) **The Verb FERŌ and its Compounds.** (See also sec. 44.)

The prepositions with which *ferō* is compounded often undergo changes to harmonize their final sound with the letters *f*, *t* and *l* of the three stems of *ferō*.

ab	**ā-ferō**	**au-ferre**	**abs-tulī**	**ab-lātum**
ad	**af-ferō**	**af-ferre**	**at-tulī**	**al-lātum**
con	**cōn-ferō**	**cōn-ferre**	**con-tulī**	**col-lātum**
dis	**dif-ferō**	**dif-ferre**	**dis-tulī**	**dī-lātum**
ex	**ef-ferō**	**ef-ferre**	**ex-tulī**	**ē-lātum**
in	**in-ferō**	**in-ferre**	**in-tulī**	**il-lātum**
ob	**of-ferō**	**of-ferre**	**ob-tulī**	**ob-lātum**
re	**re-ferō**	**re-ferre**	**ret-tulī**	**re-lātum**
sub	**suf-ferō**	**suf-ferre**	**sus-tulī**	**sub-lātum**[1]

(*c*) **The Verb FĪŌ and its Compounds.** (See also section 46.)

Fīō is compounded with verbal stems or with adverbs, *e.g.*, *patefierī* (*patefaciō*); *satisfierī* (*satisfaciō*); very rarely, and only in isolated forms, with prepositions, as *cōnfierī, dēfit, īnfit.* The passive of compounds of *faciō* with prepositions is formed regularly from the active, *e.g.*, *interficior, interficī; cōnficior, cōnficī.*

72. Defective Verbs.

(*a*) COEPĪ, I began, is used in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses only. (The other tenses are supplied by *incipiō.*) A passive form, *coeptus sum*, is used with the same force as *coepī*, when a passive infinitive follows. There is also a future participle, *coeptūrus.*

(*b*) MEMINĪ, I remember, and ŌDĪ, I hate, are used in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses only, with the meaning of the present, imperfect and future, respectively. *Meminī* has also the imperative second singular *mementō*, plural *mementōte; ōdī* has a perfect participle *ōsus*, and a future participle *ōsūrus.*

(*c*) ĀIŌ, I say, is scarcely found except in the forms, present indicative, *āiō, ais, ait, āiunt;* imperfect indicative, *āiēbam*, etc.

1. *Sustuli, sublatum*, however, on the score of meaning, are assigned in the vocabularies to *tollo*, not to *suffero.*

(*d*) INQUAM, I say, is scarcely found except in the forms, first person *inquam*, third person *inquit*.

(*e*) FĀRĪ, to speak, a deponent of the first conjugation, has in use the present indicative *fātur*, the future indicative *fābitur*, the perfect and pluperfect indicative and subjunctive, the infinitive *fārī*, the imperative *fāre*, the gerund *fandī*, etc., the participles *fātus*, *fandus* and (*fāns*) *fantis*.

(*f*) QUAESŌ, I beg, is used in the first person singular *quaesō*, and plural *quaesumus*.

73. Impersonal Verbs.

(*a*) Many verbs having no definite subject, and hence called *Impersonal*, are found only in the third person singular and in the infinitive. Of these, some refer to the weather (*e.g.*, *pluit*, *it rains*), and some express the existence of certain feelings, (*e.g.*, *miseret*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *piget*, *taedet*).

(*b*) Many other verbs are said to be used *impersonally* in the third singular when a clause or phrase furnishes a subject (*e.g.*, *licet haec facere*, *it is permissible to do this*). So *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, *accidit* (and other verbs of *happening*), *cōnstat*, *praestat*, *restat*, *superest*, *interest*, *rĕfert*, *juvat*.

(*c*) The passive of many intransitive verbs is used in the third singular *impersonally*, the subject being contained in the verb itself; *e.g.*, *pūgnātur*, *there is fighting going on*; *nōn dubitandum est*, *there must not be hesitation*.

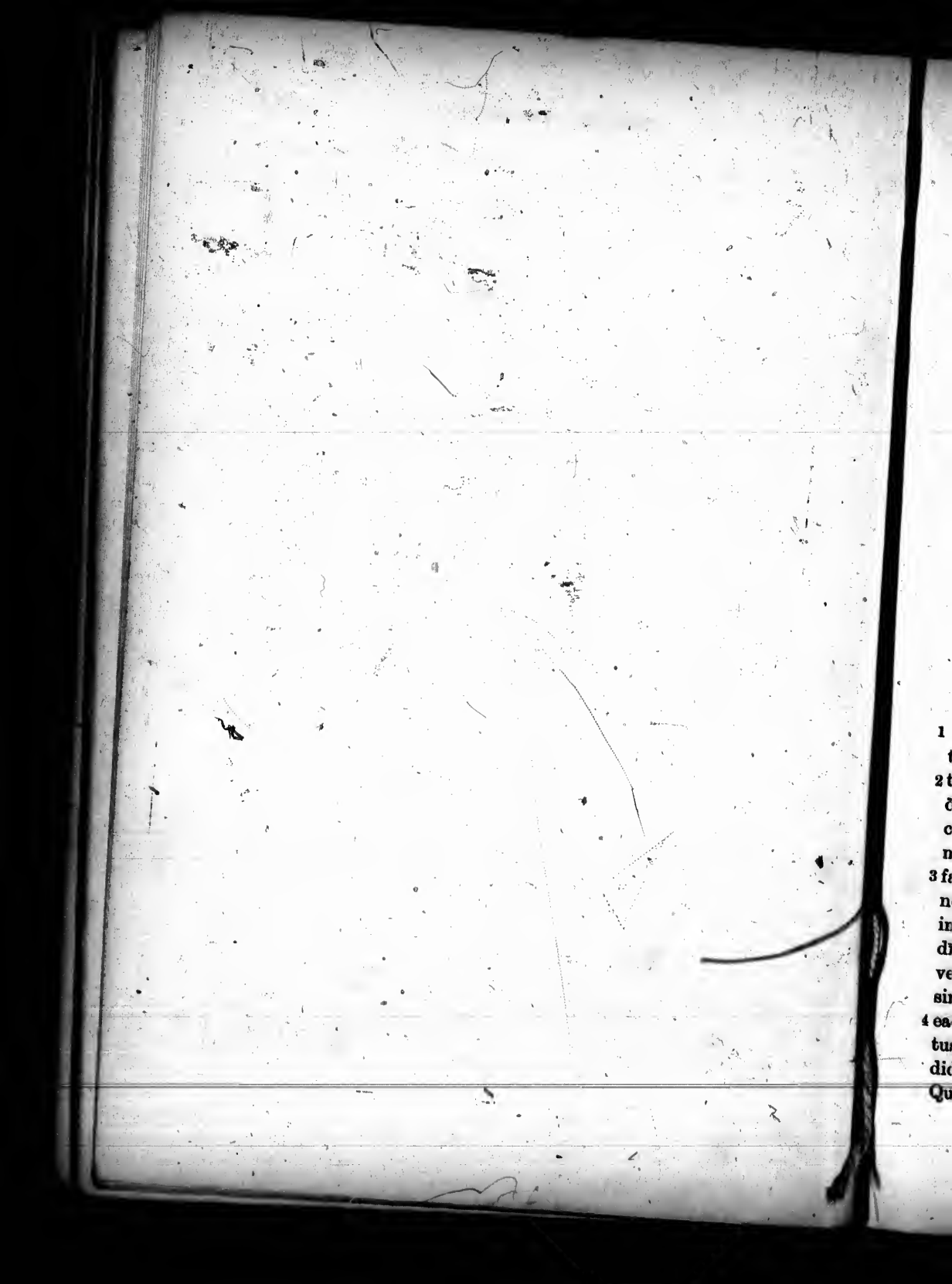
(*d*) In all compound tenses of impersonal verbs the participle is neuter.

74. Inceptives, Frequentatives and Desideratives.

(*a*) INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES are verbs of the third conjugation, ending in **-scō**, which denote the *beginning* of an action, or the *entrance* into a condition; as, **cōnsuĕscō**, *I become accustomed*. They are formed chiefly from the present stem of verbs, and are themselves used only in the present stem.

(*b*) FREQUENTATIVES, INTENSIVES or ITERATIVES are verbs of the first conjugation, ending in **-tō** or **-sō**, which denote *repeated* or *vigorous* action; as, **jactō**, *I brandish*, from **jaciō**, *I hurl*. They are formed generally from the supine stem of verbs.

(*c*) DESIDERATIVES are verbs of the fourth conjugation, ending in **-urīō**, which denote a *desire* to do something; as, **ēsurīō**, *I desire to eat*, *I am hungry*. They are formed from the supine stem.



PART IV.

SELECTIONS FROM NEPOS AND CÆSAR,

WITH ANNOTATIONS.

CORNELII NEPOTIS

VITAE.

I. THEMISTOCLES.

Themistocles' parentage. His ill-spent youth is followed by devotion to the public service and by early fame.

1 **1.** Themistoclēs, Neoclis fīlius, Athēniēnsis. Hūjus vitia ineu-
tis adulēscentiae māgnīs sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, adeō ut an-
2 teferātur huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initiō est
ōrdiendum. Pater ējus Neoclēs generōsus fuit. Is uxōrem Hali-
carnassiam cīvem dūxit, ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Quī cum
minus esset probātus parentibus, quod et līberius vīvēbat et rem
3 familiārem neglegēbat, ā patre exhērēdātus est. Quae contumēlia
nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit. Nam cum jūdicāsset sine summā
industriā nōn posse eam exstinguī, tōtum sē dēdidit reī pūblicae,
dīligentius amīcīs fāmaeque serviēns. Multum in jūdiciīs prīvātīs
versābātur, saepe in cōntiōnem populī prōdībat; nūlla rēs mājor
sine eō gerēbātur; celeriter quae opus erant reperiēbat, facile
4 eadem ōrātiōne explicābat; neque minus in rēbus gerendīs promp-
tus quam excōgitandīs erat, quod et dē īnstantibus, ut ait Thūcy-
didēs, vērissimē jūdicābat et dē futūrīs callidissimē conjiciēbat.
Quō factum est ut brevī tempore illūstrārētur.

By his advice the Athenians build a fleet and become a naval power. To these 'wooden walls' they retire in the Persian war.

1 **2.** Prīmus autem gradus fuit capessendae reī pūblicae bellō Corcȳraeō: ad quod gerendum praetor ā populō factus nōn sōlum praesentī bellō, sed etiam reliquō tempore ferōciōrem reddidit 2 cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs redībat, largītiōne magistrātuum quotannīs interīret, ille persuāsit populō 3 ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur. Quā celeriter effectā prīmum Corcȳraeōs frēgit, deinde maritimōs praedōnēs cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit. In quō cum dīvitiīs ōrnāvit, tum 4 etiam perītissimōs bellī nāvālis fēcit Athēniēnsēs. Id quantae salūtī fuerit ūniversae Graeciae, bellō cōgnitum est Persicō. Nam cum Xerxēs et marī et terrā bellum ūniversae īnferret Eurōpae, cum tantīs cōpiīs quantās neque ante nec posteā habuit 5 quisquam; hūjus enim classis mīlle et ducentārum nāvium longārum fuit, quam duo mīllia onerāriārum sequēbantur, terrestris autem exercitus septingenta peditum, equitum quadringenta mīllia 6 fuērunt. Cūjus dē adventū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et māximē Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pūgnam Marathōniam, mīsērunt Delphōs cōnsultum, quidnam facerent dē rēbus suīs. Dēlīberantibus Pȳthia respondit, ut moenibus līgneīs sē 7 mūnīrent. Id respōnsum quō valēret cum intellegeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit cōnsilium esse Apollinis, ut in nāvēs sē suaque cōnferrent: eum enim ā deō sīgnificārī mūrum līgneum. 8 Tālī cōnsiliō probātō addunt ad superiōrēs totidem nāvēs trirēmēs suaque omnia, quae movērī poterant, partim Salamīna, partim Troezēna dēportant: arcem sacerdōtibus paucīsque mājōribus nātū ad sacra prōcūranda trādunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

The Greek land-forces are defeated at Thermopylæ. The fleet engages the enemy at Artemisium, and then withdraws to a better position at Salamis.

1 **3.** Hūjus cōnsilium plērīsque cīvitātibus displicēbat et in terrā dīmicārī magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī cum Leōnidā, Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās occupārent longiusque barbarōs prōgredī nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuē- 2 runt eōque locō omnēs interiērunt. At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum nāvium, in quā ducentae erant Athēniēnsium, prī-

mum apud Artemisium inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiāriīs rēgiīs cōnflīxit. Angustiās enim Themistoclēs quae-
3 rēbat, nē multitūdine circumīrētur. Hīc etsī parī proeliō discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat perīculum, nē, sī pars nāvium adversāriōrum Euboeam superāsset, 5
4 ancipitī premerentur perīculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisiō discēderent et exadversum Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōnstituerent.

Xerxes takes Athens. Themistocles, fearing the other Greeks would return to defend their own cities, by a stratagem brings on an immediate engagement, in which the Greeks win.

1 **4.** At Xerxēs Thermopylīs expūgnātīs prōtinus accessit astu idque nūllīs dēfendentibus, interfectīs sacerdōtibus, quōs in arce 10
2 invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cūjus flammā perterritī classiārīī cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et ūniversōs parēs esse posse āiēbat, dispersōs testābātur peritūrōs, idque Eurybiadī, rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum sum- 15
3 mae imperiī praeerat, fore affīrmābat. Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servīs suīs quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit, ut eī nūntiāret suīs verbīs, adversāriōs ējus in fugā
4 esse: quī sī discessissent, mājōre cum labōre et longinquiōre tempore bellum cōnfectūrum, cum singulōs cōnsectārī cōgerētur; quōs 20 sī statim aggrederētur, brevī ūniversōs oppressūrum. Hōc eō
5 valēbat, ut ingrātiīs ad dēpūgnandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē audītā barbarus, nihil dolī subesse crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō sibi locō, contrā opportūnissimō hostibus adeō angustō marī cōnflīxit, ut ējus multitūdō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit. Victus 25 ergō est magis etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclis quam armīs Graeciae.

He then by a second stratagem induces Xerxes to retreat with his land army to Asia, and thus Themistocles saves Greece.

1 **5.** Hīc etsī male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat reliquiās cōpiārum, ut etiamtum iīs opprimere posset hostēs. Iterum ab eōdem gradū dēpulsus est. Nam Themistoclēs, verēns nē bellāre persevērāret, certiōrem eum fēcit id agī, ut pōns, quem ille in 30 Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur āc reditū in Asiam exclūderētur;

2 idque eī persuāsit. Itaque quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādem
minus diēbus trīgintā in Asiam reversus est sēque ā Themistocle
3 nōn superātum, sed cōnservātum jūdicāvit. Sīc ūnīus virī prū-
dentiā Graecia līberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit Asia. Haec est
altera victōria, quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tropaeō.
Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāviuni māxima post
hominum memoriam classis est dēvicta.

The jealous Spartans seek to prevent the rebuilding of the city walls. Themistocles undertakes an embassy to Sparta.

1 6. Māgnus hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit neque minor in pāce.
Cum enim Phalēricō portū neque māgnō neque bonō Athēniēnsēs
ūterentur, hūjus cōnsiliō triplex Pīraeī portus cōnstitūtus est iīsque
moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitāte aequiperāret,
2 ūtilitāte superāret. Īdem mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit praecipuō
suō perīculō. Namque Lacedaemoniī causam idōneam nactī prop-
ter barbarōrum excursiōnēs, quā negārent oportēre extrā Pelōpon-
nēsum ūllam urbem mūrōs habēre, nē essent loca mūnīta, quae
hostēs possīderent, Athēniēnsēs aedificantēs prohibēre sunt cōnātī.
3 Hōc longē aliō spectābat atque vidērī volēbant. Athēniēnsēs enim
duābus victōriīs, Marathōniā et Salamīniā, tantam glōriam apud
omnēs gentēs erant cōnsecūtī, ut intellegerent Lacedaemoniī dē
4 prīncipātū sibi cum iīs certāmen fore. Quārē eōs quam īnfīrmis-
simōs esse volēbant. Postquam autem audiērunt mūrōs struī,
lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī id fierī vetārent. Hīs praesentibus
5 dēsiērunt āc sē dē eā rē lēgātōs ad eōs missūrōs dīxērunt. Hanc
lēgātiōnem suscēpit Themistoclēs et sōlus prīmō profectus est:
reliquī lēgātī ut tum exīrent, cum satis altī tuendō mūrī exstrūctī
vidērentur, praecēpit: interim omnēs, servī atque līberī, opus
facerent, neque ūllī locō parcerent, sīve sacer, sīve prīvātus esset
sīve pūblicus, et undique, quod idōneum ad mūniendum pu-
tārent, congererent. Quō factum est ut Athēniēnsium mūrī ex
sacellīs sepulcrīsque cōnstārent.

By playing a bold game he succeeds in outwitting the Spartans.

1 7. Themistoclēs autem, ut Lacedaemonem vēnit, adīre ad magi-
strātūs nōluit et dedit operam, ut quam longissimē tempus dūceret,
2 causam interpōnēns sē collēgās exspectāre. Cum Lacedaemoniī

quererentur opus nihilō minus fierī eumque in eā rē cōnārī fallere, interim reliquī lēgātī sunt cōnsecūtī. A quibus cum audīsset nōn multum superesse mūnītiōnis, ad ephorōs Lacedaemoniōrum accessit, penes quōs summum erat imperium, atque apud eōs contendit falsa iīs esse dēlāta: quārē aequum esse illōs virōs bonōs nōbiscum mittere quibus fidēs habērētur, quī rem explōrārent: intereā sē obsidem retinērent. Gestus est eī mōs, trēsque lēgātī fūnctī summīs honōribus Athēnās missī sunt. Cum hīs collēgās suōs Themistoclēs jussit proficiscī iīsque praedīxit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātūs senātumque Lacedaemoniōrum adiit et apud eōs līberrimē professus est: Athēniēnsēs suō cōnsiliō, quod commūnī jūre gentium facere possent, deōs pūblicōs suōsque patriōs āc penātēs, quō facilius ab hoste possent dēfendere, mūrīs saepsisse, neque in eō quod inūtile esset Graeciae fēcisse. Nam illōrum urbem ut prōpūgnāculum oppositum esse barbarīs, apud quam jam bis classēs rēgiās fēcisse naufragium. Lacedaemoniōs autem male et injūstē facere, quī id potius intuērentur, quod ipsōrum dominātiōnī quam quod ūniversae Graeciae ūtile esset. Quārē, sī suōs lēgātōs recipere vellent, quōs Athēnās mīserant, sē remitterent, cum aliter illōs numquam in patriam essent receptūrī.

Themistocles becomes unpopular and is ostracized and afterwards condemned for treason. After many wanderings he comes to Ephesus, in Asia Minor.

8. Tamen nōn effūgit cīvium suōrum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timōrem, quō damnātus erat Miltiadēs, testulārum suffrāgiīs ē cīvitāte ējectus Argōs habitātum concessit. Hīc cum propter multās virtūtēs māgnā cum dignitāte vīveret, Lacedaemoniī lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī eum absentem accūsārent, quod societātem cum rēge Persē ad Graeciam opprimendam fēcisset. Hōc crīmine absēns prōditiōnis damnātus est. Id ut audīvit, quod nōn satis tūtum sē Argīs vidēbat, Corcȳram dēmigrāvit. Ibi cum ējus prīncipēs animadvertisset timēre, nē propter sē bellum iīs Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs indīcerent, ad Admētum, Molossūm rēgem, cuī quō eī hospitium erat, cōnfūgit. Hūc cum vēnisset et in praesentiā rēx abesset, quō mājōre religiōne sē receptum

tuērētur, fīliam ējus parvulam arripuit et cum eā sō in sacrārium, quod summā colēbātur caerimōniā, conjēcit. Inde nōn prius ēgressus est, quam rēx eum datā dextrā in fidem reciperet; quam praestitit. Nam cum ab Athēniēnsibus et Lacedaemoniīs exposcerētur pūblicē, supplicem nōn prōdidit monuitque ut cōnsuleret sibi: difficilē enim esse in tam propinquō locō tūtō eum versārī. Itaque Pydnam eum dēdūcī jussit et quod satis esset praesidiī dedit. Hīc in nāvem omnibus īgnōtus nautīs ēscendit. Quae cum tempestāte māximā Naxum ferrētur, ubi tum Athēniēnsium erat exercitus, sēnsit Themistoclēs, sī eō pervēnisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hāc necessitāte coāctus dominō nāvis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicēns, sī sō cōnservāsset. At ille clārissimī virī captus misericordiā diem noctemque procul ab īnsulā in salō nāvem tenuit in ancorīs neque quemquam ex eā exīre passus est. Inde Ephesum pervēnit ibique Themistoclem expōnit; cui ille prō meritīs posteā grātiam rettulit.

He writes to Artaxerxes recounting his services to his father, Xerxes, and asking for the Persian king's friendship.

9. Sciō plērōsque ita scrīpsisse, Themistoclem Xerxe rēgnante in Asiam trānsīsse. Sed ego potissimum Thūcȳdidī crēdō, quod et aetāte proximus dē iīs, quī illōrum temporum historiam relīquērunt, et ējusdem cīvitātis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxēn eum vēnisse atque hīs verbīs epistulam mīsisse: "Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē, quī plūrima mala omnium Grāiōrum in domum tuam intulī, quamdiū mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellāre patriamque meam dēfendere. Īdem multō plūra bona fēcī, postquam in tūtō ipse et ille in perīculō esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam revertī vellet proeliō apud Salamīna factō, litterīs eum certiōrem fēcī id agī, ut pōns, quem in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur atque ab hostibus circumīrētur: quō nūntiō ille perīculō est līberātus. Nunc autem cōnfugī ad tē exagitātus ā cūnctā Graeciā, tuam petēns amīcitiam: quam sī erō adeptus, nōn minus mē bonum amīcum habēbis, quam fortem inimīcum ille expertus est. Tē autem rogō, ut dē iīs rēbus, quās tēcum colloquī volō, annuum mihi tempus dēs eōque trānsāctō ad tē venīre patiāris."

The king receives him with kindness and grants him three cities for his support. He dies, some say by his own hand.

10. Hūjus rēx animī māgnitūdinem admīrāns cupiēnsque tālem virum sibi conciliārī veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus litterīs sermōnīque Persārum dēdidit: quibus adeō ērudītus est, ut multō commodius dīcātur apud rēgem verba fēcisse, quam iī poterant quī in Perside erant nātī. Hīc cum multa rēgī esset pollicitus grātissimumque illud, sī suīs ūtī cōnsiliīs vellet, illum Graeciam bellō oppressūrum, māgnīs mūneribus ab Artaxerxe dōnātus in Asiam rediit domiciliumque Māgnēsiae sibi cōnstituit. Namque hanc urbem eī rēx dōnārat, hīs quidem verbīs, quae eī pānem praebēret (ex quā regiōne quīnquāgēna talenta quotannīs redībant), Lampsacum autem, unde vīnum sūmeret, Myunta, ex quā obsōnium habēret.

Hūjus ad nostram memoriam monumenta mānsērunt duo: sepulcrum prope oppidum, in quō est sepultus, statua in forō Māgnēsiae. Dē cūjus morte multīs modīs apud plērōsque scrīptum est, sed nōs eundem potissimum Thūcȳdidem auctōrem probāmus, quī illum ait Māgnēsiae morbō mortuum neque negat fuisse fāmam, venēnum suā sponte sūmpsisse, cum sē, quae rēgī dē Graeciā opprimendā pollicitus esset, praestāre posse dēspērāret. Īdem ossa ējus clam in Atticā ab amīcīs sepulta, quoniam lēgibus nōn concēderētur, quod prōditiōnis esset damnātus, memoriae prōdidit.

II. ARISTIDES.

In spite of Aristides' reputation for uprightness, his rival, Themistocles, succeeds in having him banished for ten years.

1. Aristīdēs, Lysimachī fīlius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis ferē fuit Themistoclī, atque cum eō dē prīncipātū contendit; namque obtrectārunt inter sē. In hīs autem cōgnitum est, quantō antestāret ēloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat Aristīdēs abstinentiā, ut ūnus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nōs audierimus, cōgnōmine Jūstus sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle cōllabefactus testulā illā exsiliō decem annōrum multātus est. Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimī concitātam multitūdinem nōn posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scrībentem ut patriā

pellerētur, quaesīsse ab eō dīcitur, quārē id faceret aut quid Aristīdēs commīsisset, cūr tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē īgnōrāre Aristīdēn, sed sibi nōn placēre quod tam cupidē labōrāsset ut praeter cēterōs Jūstus appellārētur. Hīc decem annōrum lēgitimam poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit, sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus, populī scītō in patriam restitūtus est.

He returns to take part in the Persian war, and is instrumental in having the leadership in naval matters transferred from Sparta to Athens.

2. Interfuit autem pūgnae nāvālī apud Salamīna, quae facta est prius quam poenā līberārētur. Īdem praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās in proeliō, quō fūsus barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque interfectus est. Neque aliud est ūllum hūjus in rē mīlitārī illūstre factum quam hūjus imperiī memoria, jūstitiae vērō et aequitātis et innocentiae multa, in prīmīs quod ējus aequitāte factum est, cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā (quō duce Mardonius erat fugātus), ut summa imperiī maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trānsferrētur ad Athēniēnsēs: namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā Pausaniae et jūstitiā factum est Aristīdis, ut omnēs ferē cīvitātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium societātem sē applicārent et adversus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent sibi.

He fixes the amount of tribute to be paid by the several members of the Delian Confederacy. He dies poor.

3. Quōs quō facilius repellerent, sī forte bellum renovāre cōnārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūsque comparandōs quantum pecūniae quaeque cīvitās daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus est quī cōnstitueret, ējusque arbitriō quadringēna et sexāgēna talenta quotannīs Dēlum sunt collāta: id enim commūne aerārium esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō tempore Athēnās trānslāta est. Hīc quā fuerit abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium quam quod, cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset, in tantā paupertāte dēcessit, ut quī efferrētur vix relīquerit. Quō factum est ut fīliae ējus pūblicē alerentur et dē commūnī aerāriō dōtibus datīs collocārentur. Dēcessit autem ferē post annum quārtum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus.

III. HANNIBAL.

Hannibal, a military leader of unparalleled skill. But for his countrymen's jealousy he would never have been beaten.

1 **1.** Hannibal, Hamilcaris fīlius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est īnfitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat 2 fortitūdine cūnctās nātiōnēs; nam quotiēnscumque cum eō congressus est in Ītaliā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit ūnīus virtūtem.

3 Hīc autem velut hērēditāte relīctum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit, ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

Hannibal tells king Antiochus how, when he was a mere child, his father had him swear eternal hatred to the Romans.

1 **2.** Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī, ut ūsque ā rubrō marī 2 arma cōnātus sit īnferre Ītaliae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē ējus voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam cōnsiliīs clandestīnīs ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptum alia atque anteā sentīre, neque id frūstrā fēcissent īdque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus 3 cōnsiliīs sēgregārī vīdisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, elque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāsset, hōc adjūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpotē nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor profici- 4 scēns Carthāgine, Jovī optimō māximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre īnstituerat, eamque cēterīs remōtīs tenen-

tem jūrāre jussit numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego jūsjūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris, sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

Becoming commander-in-chief before twenty-five, he subdues all Spain, and marches through Gaul and over the Alps into Italy.

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cūjus post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus summam imperiī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum est. Sīc Hannibal, minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam cīvitātem, vī expūgnāvit, trēs exercitūs māximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Ītaliam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pyrēnaeum trānsiit; quācumque iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōnflīxit; nēminem nisi victum dīmīsit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Ītaliam ab Galliā sējungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Hērculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā elephantus ōrnātus īre posset, quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans in a series of battles.

4. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiī apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde āc fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō īdem Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum īīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī morbō afficitur oculōrum, ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamtum premerētur lectīcāque

ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centēnium
4 praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs, in iīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōnsul.

He outmanœuvres the Roman dictator, and wins such successes that no one ventures to take the field against him.

1 **5.** Hāc pūgnā pūgnātā Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātor
2 Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē objēcit. Hīc clausus locōrum angustiīs noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expedīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus juvencōrum dēligāta incendit ējusque generis multitūdinem māgnam dispālātam immīsit. Quō repentīnō objectō vīsū tantum terrōrem injēcit exercituī Rōmānōrum, ut ēgredī
3 extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multīs diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī āc dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in Lūcānīs absēns in-
4 īnsidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēns cōnsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hōc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit, quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in Ītaliā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem pūgnam in campō castra posuit.

Recalled to defend Carthage he is defeated by Scipio at Zama.

1 **6.** Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, fīlium ējus Scīpiōnis, quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugā-
2 rat. Cum hōc exhaustīs jam patriae facultātibus cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur.
3 In colloquium convēnit; condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id

factum paucīs diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibilĕ dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervē-
4 nit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīllia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īnsidiātī sunt eī; quōs nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī 5
reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novīs dēlēctibus paucīs diēbus multōs contrāxit.

Soon after peace is concluded, he is deposed from the military command and made a chief magistrate. Some years later, fearing Roman designs, he flees to Antiochus, king of Syria.

1 **7.** Cum in apparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sēcius exercitui posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit ūsque ad P. Sulpicium C. 10
2 Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent, ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs essent
3 captīvīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: 15
mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūjus operā susceptum bellum foret, inimīcissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrem ējus Māgō-
4 nem. Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum 20
et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vīcēsimō; ut enim Rōmae cōn-
5 sulēs, sīc Carthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit, āc fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset 25
pecūnia, quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam super-
6 esset, quae in aerāriō repōnerētur. Deinde annō post M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōnsulibus Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum 30
7 profūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōnsequī, mīsērunt; bona ējus pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disjēcērunt, ipsum exsulem jūdicārunt.

He induces Antiochus to make war on Rome, but fails to rouse Carthage also.

1 **8.** At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in fīnibus Cȳrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fīdūciāque indūcerentur, cui jam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliam proficiscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem 5
2 excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātrem, absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs āc vēlā ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsīus interfectum eum scrīptum relīquē- 10
3 runt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliīs ējus pārēre voluisset, quam in suscipiendō īnstituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperiī dīmicāsset. Quem etsī multa
4 stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā jussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iīsque adver- 15
sus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphȳliō marī cōnflīxit. Quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

After the defeat of Antiochus he flees to Crete, where by a trick he saves his gold from the covetous Cretans.

1 **9.** Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortȳniōs vēnit, ut 20
2 ibi, quō sē cōnferret, cōnsīderāret. Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in māgnō sē fore perīculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; māgnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat,
3 dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. 25
Has praesentibus prīncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidēī crēdere. Hīs in errōrem inductīs statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet
4 eāsque in prōpatulō domī abjicit. Gortȳniī templum māgnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille īnscien- 30
tibus iīs tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

He proceeds to the court of Prusias, king of Bithynia. There he plans to crush Eumenes of Pergamum, an ally of Rome.

1 **10.** Sīc cōnservātīs suīs rēbus Poenus, illūsīs Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Ītaliam neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit
2 et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticīs opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adjungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et
3 terrā. Sed utrobīque Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem. Quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī, quem sī remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc inter-
4 ficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās
5 serpentēs vīvās colligī ēāsque in vāsa fictilia conjicī. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiāriōs convocat iīsque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrōs.
6 Rēx autem in quā nāvī veherētur, ut scīrent, sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō iīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

His stratagem results in the defeat of Eumenes' fleet, though Eumenes himself escapes.

1 **11.** Tālī cohortātiōne mīlitum factā classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam sīgnum pūgnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs quō locō Eumenēs
2 esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāvī
3 dēclārātā suīs, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistulā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad irrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cūjus etsī causam mīrābātur neque reperiēbat,
4 tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithȳniī Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis

adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petit, quam cōnsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant collocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conjicī coepta sunt. Quae jacta initiō rīsum pūgnantibus concitārunt, neque quārē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōnspexērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī, cum, quid potissimum vītārent, nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sīc Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamē-nōrum superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiīs parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

The Romans demand his surrender from Prusias. Hannibal, finding himself surrounded by an armed force, takes poison.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīntium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent, lēgātōs in Bithȳniam mīsērunt, in iīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsiās negārē ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus jūs hospitiī esset: ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset, facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent āc multitūdine domum ējus circumdedissent, puer ab jānuā prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī, ut omnēs forēs aedificiī circumīret āc properē sibi nūntiāret, num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor prīsti-nārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

The date of his death is disputed. He had found time to devote to literature.

1 **13.** Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfūnctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimō. Quibus cōnsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōnsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scrīptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. 5
2 Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hīc tantus vir tantīsque bellīs districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot ējus librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōnfectī, in iīs ad Rhodiōs
3 dē Cn. Manliī Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Hūjus bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo, quī cum eō in castrīs 10 fuērunt simulque vīxērunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

C. IULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The organization and hardihood of the Suebi.

1 **1.** Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tenctērī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā 2 marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur.

3 Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum 4 omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs 5 singula mīllia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Relīquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūrsus invicem 6 annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac 7 sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō 8 in locō incolendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnā- 9 tiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, cum ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciant, et vīrēs alit et immānī 10 corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their lack of intercourse with other tribes and their skill in horsemanship.

1 **2.** Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint,
quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī
2 dēsīderent. Quīn etiam jūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallī dēlectan-
tur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn
ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec
3 cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestri-
bus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt āc pedibus proeliantur, equōs-
que eōdem remanēre vestīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter,
4 cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam
5 aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs
numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent.
6 Vīnum ad sē omnīnō importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem
ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

Their subjugation of their more civilized neighbors, the Ubii.

1 **3.** Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suīs
fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī māgnum numerum cīvitā-
2 tum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs
3 circiter mīllia passuum sescenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram
partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut
est captus Germānōrum, et paulō sunt ējusdem generis cēterīs
hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs
mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt
4 mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī
propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn
potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt, āc multō humiliōres
īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

Forced out of Germany, the Usipetes and Tencteri attack the Menapii and seize their lands on the Rhine.

1 **4.** In eādem [illegible]uērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā
2 dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad
extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et dīffūsīs locīs Germāniae triennium
vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant
et ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant;

3 sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs, quae
-trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositīs
4 praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī cum
neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre
propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs
5 regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rursus revertē-
6 runt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs
inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum dis-
cessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum
7 in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum
occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum
erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedi-
ficiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Cæsar distrusts the loyalty of the Gauls because of their fickleness.

1 **5.** Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum
veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērum-
2 que rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim
hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere
cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cō-
gnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat,
quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prō-
3 nūntiāre cōgant. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs
saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō poenitēre
necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant, et plērīque ad volun-
tātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

Fearing an alliance of the Gauls and Germans, he decides to make war on the new-comers.

1 **6.** Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occur-
2 reret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō
3 cum vēnisset ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit: missās
lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs,
utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore
4 parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur et in fīnēs
Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, perve-
5 nerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat,
dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīr-
mātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

As Cæsar's forces draw near, the Germans send envoys insolently justifying themselves.

1 **7.** Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea
2 loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vēnērunt,
3 quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā mājōribus trādita,
4 quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ējectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribu-
5 ant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dīī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Cæsar declines to allow them to remain in Gaul, but offers to settle them in the land of the Ubii.

1 **8.** Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit
2 ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint,
3 aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine injūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē, et dē Suēbōrum injūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

The Germans, expecting reinforcements, ask two days to consider his proposal.

1 **9.** Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā
post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs: intereā nē propius sē
2 castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī.
3 posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivarītōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ējus reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Description of the course of the rivers Meuse and Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō mīllibus passuum octōgintā in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

The German envoys returning ask further time for negotiations with the Ubii. Cæsar postpones his decision for one day.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim mīllibus abesset, ūt erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs āc senātus sibi jūrejūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīllibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū anteceserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacessserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The Germans make an unwarranted attack on Cæsar's advance cavalry and rout them with considerable loss.

12. At hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque millium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod ii, quī frūmentandī causā ierant

trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīs equīs complūribusque nostrīs dējectīs reliquōs in fugam conjēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūjus avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dējectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī jam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Cæsar determines to show no further consideration, and when the leading men of the Germans return to treat with him, he seizes them all.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque jam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse jūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum jam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatiī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ējus diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus mājōribusque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī jussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī jussit.

He at once attacks and captures the German camp.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter octō mīllium itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit, quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

The Germans are completely routed and many perish in the river.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interfierī vidērent, armīs abjectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trīgintā mīllium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

Cæsar, to overawe the Germans, decides to invade Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit jūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum

3 in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum iīs conjūnxerat. Ad
quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi
4 Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt; Populī
Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre: sī sē invītō Germānōs in Gal-
liam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse
5 imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem,
quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam
fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium
6 ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere
occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum
trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis
7 futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ējus exercitūs
Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās
Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī
8 tūtī esse possint. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum
exercitum pollicēbantur.

He proceeds to build a bridge over the Rhine.

1 **[17.** Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre
dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrā-
bātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat.
2 Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter
lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi
contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.]

He then leads his army against the Sugambri, who at once flee into the forests.

1 **18.** Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī
2 opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem
pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit.
3 Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus
pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondit obsidēsque
4 ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī
coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iīs, quōs ex Tencterīs
atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant sua-
que omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.

He learns that the Suebi also have fled into the interior. Having achieved his ends, Cæsar returns to Gaul.

1 **19.** Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēbīs premeren-
2 tur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre
3 possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: hīc Rōmānōrum
4 adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rēbus iīs cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum injiceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Cæsar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

1 **20.** Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs
2 bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē
3 Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōrām maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est.
4 Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad mājōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Cæsar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

1 **21.** Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idō-
neum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit.
2 Huīc mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum
3 revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur,
4 quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs
undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad
5 Venēticum bellum effēcerat classem jubet convenīre. Interim
cōnsiliō ējus cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā com-
plūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur
6 obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus
audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā per-
7 manērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem
ipse Atrebatibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūjus et virtū-
tem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur,
cūjusque aūctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit.
8 Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī
Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.
9 Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis
darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī āc sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret,
quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset re-
nūntiat.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Cæsar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.

1 **22.** Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur,
ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē
superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et
nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent,
2 sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar
satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum
hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus
facultātem habēbat neque hīās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Bri-
tanniae antepōnendās jūdicābat, māgnum iīs numerum obsidum
3 imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter
octōgintā onerāriīs coāctīs contrāctīsque, quot satis esse ad duās

trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium lon-
4 gārum habēbat, quaestōrī lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc
accēdēbant duodēvīgintī onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab
mīllibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem
5 portum venīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exer- 5
citum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in
Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī
6 nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum
cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre
jussit.

10

He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.

1 **23.** Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tem-
pestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum
2 prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum
paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā
cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus colli- 15
3 bus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūjus locī haec
erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex
4 locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgredien-
dum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō
5 convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim 20
lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cō-
gnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris
ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque
īnstābilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab
6 iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tem- 25
pore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlla
passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs
cōnstituit.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

1 **24.** At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō equitātū
et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, 30
2 reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat
ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem
nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem īgnōtīs locīs,

impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum
3 hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs au-
4 dācter tēla conjicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūjus omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte āc studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

Cæsar manœuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

1 **25.** Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī āc submovērī jussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs
2 fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum modo pedem
3 rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnīs aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret: "Dēsilīte," inquit, "mīlitēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum
4 reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre
5 coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admit-
6 terētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

1 **26.** Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnīs occur-
2 rerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs
3 paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla
4 conjiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās lon-

gārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī jussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetūm fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prosequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons sue for peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjēcerant, tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce ējus reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Interea suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

A portion of Cæsar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm and driven back to the mainland.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quārtum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suī cum perīculō dējicerentur; quae tamen ancōris jactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum profectae continentem petiērunt.

The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Cæsar, and causes much alarm in the camp.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs marit-
1 imōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id
2 erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancōrās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut
3 administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frac-
tīs reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancōris reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat,
4 accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod ōmnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proe-
1 lium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trāns-
2 portāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī inferendī
3 causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rursus conjūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Cæsar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen
1 et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermī-
2 serant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum

māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās
3 rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, cum
summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus
āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons. Cæsar goes to its relief.

1 **32.** Dum ea gerūntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmen-
tātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus
bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret,
pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in
statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem mājōrem, quam
cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter
2 fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs
initum cōnsilii, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam
partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere,
3 rēliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum paulō
longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē
sustinērе et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conjicī
4 animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frū-
mentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse
5 ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs
in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs
incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs
circumdederant.

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

1 **33.** Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Primō per omnēs partēs
perequitant et tēla conjiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et
strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter
equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus
2 proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque
ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur,
3 expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum,
stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, āc tantum ūsū cotidiānō
et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs
equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere et per tēmōnem per-
currere et in jugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere
consuerint.

On Cæsar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days in collecting larger forces.

1 **34.** Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ējus adventū 2 hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore 3 intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs 4 omnibus occupātīs, quī ērant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs 5 in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs 6 castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

When the Britons come against his camp, Cæsar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.

1 **35.** Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō 2 castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum 3 impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deindē omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Having received the enemy's submission, Cæsar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.

1 **36.** Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce 2 vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctii īnfirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subjiciendam 3 nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nanctus paulō post

4 mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the Morini, but is rescued by Cæsar.

1 **37.** Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē interficī 2 nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīllia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum 3 suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et 4 paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abjectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

After crushing this uprising Cæsar arranges his winter camps.

1 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, 2 mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē 3 in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cottа lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recē- 4 pērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae 5 neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs ex litteris Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

LIBER QUINTUS.

Cæsar orders more vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1 **1.** L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs
Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat,
quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme
2 nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum
fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque
paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuē-
vimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs
aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera āc
multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam
3 quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat
4 fierī, quam ad rem humilitās multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt
5 ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, con-
ventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyricum proficiscitur, quod
ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audi-
6 ēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in
7 locum convenīre jubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum
mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō,
sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē injūriīs
8 satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat
eōsque ad certam diem addūcī jubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō
9 cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductīs ut
imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poe-
namque cōnstituant.

Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

1 **2.** Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem
2 Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum
vēnisset, circuitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in
summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sescentās ējus generis, cūjus
suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās vīgintī octō, invenit īn-
strūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī
3 possint. Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant,

quid fierī velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trājectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīllium passuum trīgintā ā continentī; huic
4 reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relīquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quattuor et equitibus octingentīs in fīnēs Trēverōrum 5
proficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Two rival chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Cæsar.

1 **3.** Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōn-
2 strāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē con- 10
3 tendēbant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs, neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gere-
4 rentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, 15
iīsque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rōmōrum pertinet, bellum
5 parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōnnūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorigis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs 20
perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt, et dē suīs prīvātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indutiomarus lēgātōs ad Caesarem
6 mittit: sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis 25
7 discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque esse cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitātisque fortūnās ējus fidei permissūrum.

Cæsar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission of Indutiomarus.

1 **4.** Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur; quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in 30
Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indutiomarum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus
2 venīre jussit. Hīs adductīs, in iīs fīliō propinquīsque ējus omni-

bus, quōs nōmināt̄im ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indutiomarum hortā-
3 tusque est, utī in officiō manēret: nihilō tamen sēcius prīncipibus
Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorigī concili-
āvit: quod cum meritō ējus ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī
interesse arbitrābātur ējus auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum
4 valēre, cūjus tām ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id
tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī,
et quī jam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc
dolōre exārsit.

Coming to the seaport Cæsar finds the fleet and army ready.

1 **5.** Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus
2 pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae
erant, tempestāte rējectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque
eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad
3 nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem
equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit numerō mīllium quattuor, prīn-
4 cipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in
sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō
sēcum dūcere dēorēverat, quod cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae
verēbātur.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, causes trouble.

1 **6.** Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quo ante ab
nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat,
quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī
2 animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat
hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dīxerat sibi ā Caesare
rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant,
neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere
3 audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille
omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerē-
tur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret; partim quod
4 religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi
negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā prīncipēs Galliae
sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī
5 remanērent; metū territāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia, omnī
nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in

cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam
6 trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, jūsjūrandum pos-
cere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō
administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Cæsar delays his departure in order to check disaffection. Dumnorix flees, but is overtaken and slain.

1 **7.** Quā rē cōgnitā, Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae dīgnitā-
tis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus
2 posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius ējus āmentiam prō-
gredī vidēbat prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi āc reī pūblicae nocēre
3 posset. Itaque drēs circiter vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commo-
rātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam
partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam,
ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcius omnia
4 ējus cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem īdōneam nactus tempestātem
5 mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere in nāvēs jubet. At omnium im-
pedītīs animīs, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs
6 īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar
intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs māgnam
partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit, retrahīque imperat;
7 sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī jubet, nihil hunc sē absente
prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset.
8 Ille enim revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque
fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse
9 cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque
interficiunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Cæsar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

1 **8.** Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus
et equitum mīllibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem
frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnō-
2 sceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīn-
que legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī reli-
querat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus
mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius
dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit.
3 Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut

eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre
4 aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs
laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmi-
5 gandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum
est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque
6 in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs
cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium
perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque
commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā
lītore discesserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

1 **9.** Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex
captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohor-
tibus decem ad mare relictīs et equitibus trecentīs, quī praesidiō
nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus
veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad
ancoram relinquēbat; et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium prae-
2 fēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīllia passuum circiter duodecim
3 hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī, equitātū atque essedīs ad
flūmen prōgressī, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium
4 committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdi-
dērunt locum nactī ēgregiē et [illegible] et opere mūnītum, quem
domesticī bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā jam ante praeparāverant;
5 nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī.
6 Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs in-
7 gredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et
aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adjectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs
8 expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius
Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, et quod
māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī
volēbat.

As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

1 **10.** Postrīdiē ējus diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in
expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. His

aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum jam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītore ējectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Cæsar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again sets out against the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter quadrāgintā nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī jubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, iīs legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, tamen commodissimum essè statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne conjungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs decem cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relīquit: ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, mājōrēs jam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūjus fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīllia passuum octōgintā. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant: sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab iīs, quī praedae āc bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē iīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque

4 aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere] aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus
5 exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ējus exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūjusque generis, ut in Galliā,
6 est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

The geography of Britain.

1 **13.** Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūjus ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūjus lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter mīllia passuum quīn-
2 genta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor, ut aestimātur, quam Britannia; sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in
3 Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subjectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā
4 sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in con-
5 tinentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūjus est longitūdō lateris, ut fert
6 illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum mīllium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cuī partī nūlla est objecta terra, sed ējus angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīllia passuum octin-
7 genta in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīllium passuum.

The manners and customs of the Britons.

1 **14.** Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā
2 differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc
3 horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō,

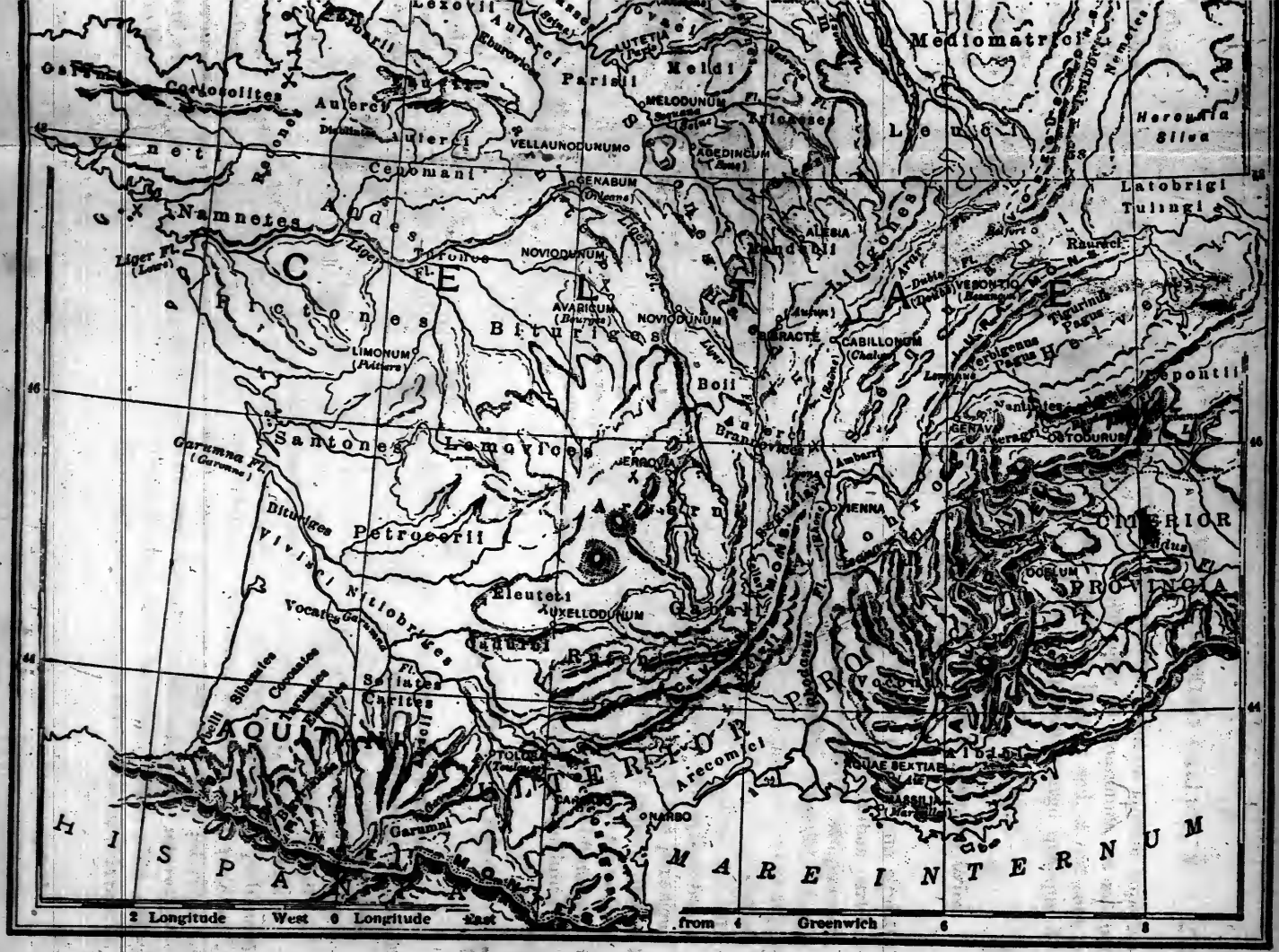
numerus. Ūtun-
ad certum pondus
lbum in mediter-
exigua est cōpia ;
eris, ut in Galliā,
gallīnam et ān-
animī voluptātis-
liā, remissiōribus

est contrā Gal-
ntium, quō ferē
sōlem, īnferior
passuum quīn-
identem sōlem ;
stimātur, quam
x Galliā est in
quae appellātur
sulae exīstiman-
ntinuōs trīgintā
tiōnibus reperi-
se quam in con-
lateris, ut fert
est contrā sep-
d ējus angulus
passuum octin-
s īnsula est in

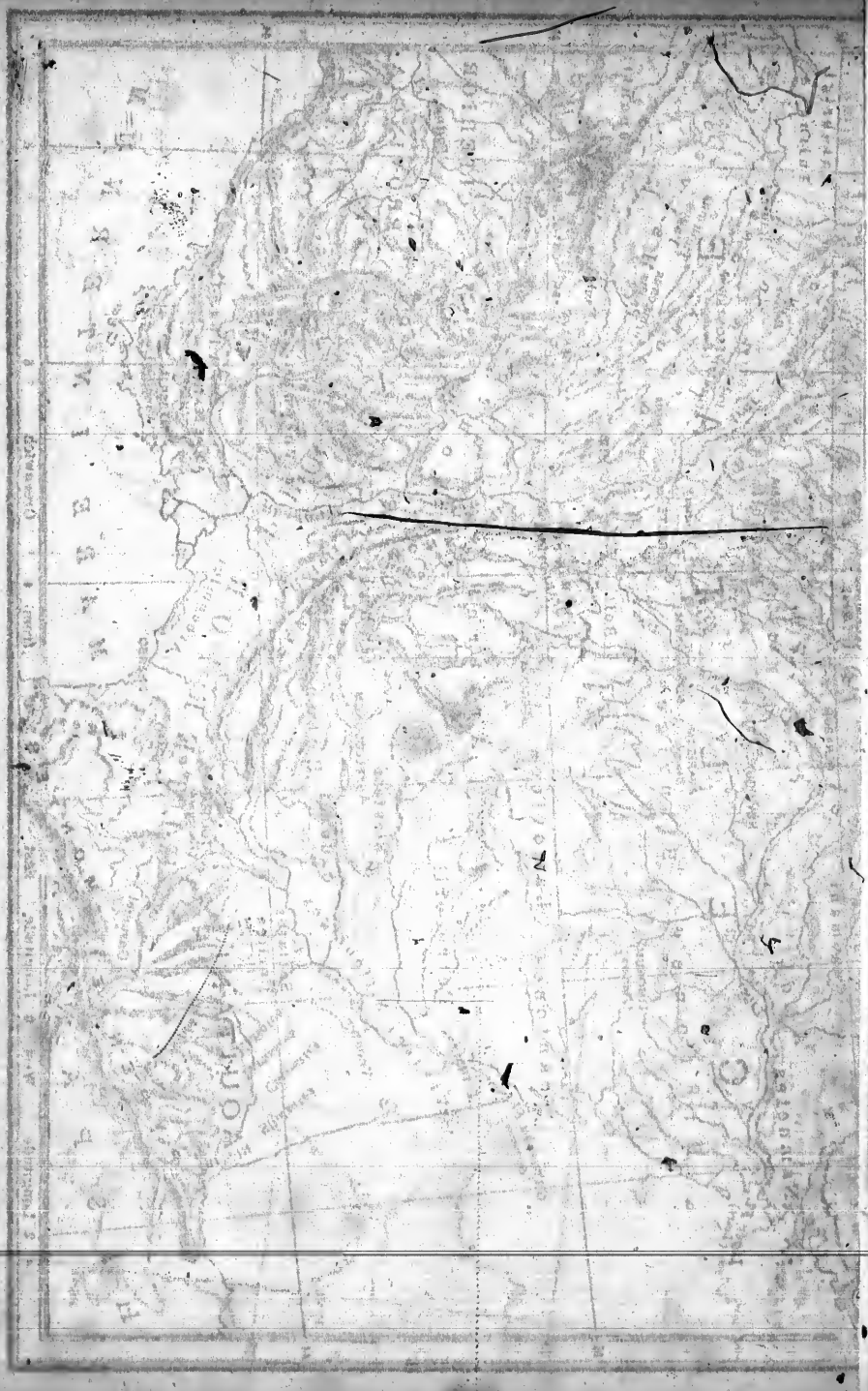
s.

Cantium inco-
tum ā Gallicā
a, nōn serunt,
Omnēs vērō sē
em, atque hōc
unt prōmissō,

ANCIENT GAUL
AND
BRITAIN
ROMAN MILES
ENGLISH MILES
BRITANNIA
Trinobantes
LONDINIUM
(London)
Tamesis Fl.
(Thames)
Cantium
(Dover)
ITIUS PORTUS
(Boulogne)
Calais
Morini
Menapii
Grudii
Levaci
Batavi
(Meuse)
(Scheldt)
(Rhine)
Usipetes et Tencteri
Sugambri
Rhenus Fl.
Mosa Fl.
ADUATUCA
(Tongres)
Atrebates
Ambiani
Nervii
Aduatuci
Condrusi
Paemani
Caeroesi
Eburones
Sugambri
Silva
Ubii
Cubeni
Bacenis Silva
Caleti
SAMAROBRIVA
(Amiens)
Viromandui
Sequana Fl.
Rouen
Veliocasses
(Seine)
Bellovaci
NOVIODUNUM
(Soissons)
BIBRAX
Lexovii
Aulerci
Eburovices
LUTETIA
(Paris)
Parisii
Meldi
MELODUNUM
Sequana
Tricasses
Vangiones
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Heruinia Silva
Coriosolites
Aulerci
Diablintes
Aulerci
Cenomani
VELLAUNODUNUM
AGEDINCUM
(Sens)
Leuci
GENABUM
(Orleans)
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Rauraci
Namnetes
Andes
Liger
NOVIODUNUM
ALESIA
Mandubii
Belfort



Lexovii
Aulerci
Eburovices
Parisii
Meldi
LUTETIA
Mediomatrici
Coriosolites
Aulerci
Aulerci
Cenomani
VELLAUNODUNUM
MELODUNUM
AGEDINCUM
Tricasses
Leuci
Herculia Silva
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Namnetes
Andes
Turones
GENABUM
NOVIODUNUM
ALESIA
Mandubii
Lingones
Rauraci
Liger Fl.
Pictones
Biturigs
AVARICUM
NOVIODUNUM
BIBRACTE
CABILLONUM
VESONTIO
Tigurinus Pagus
Verbigenus Pagus
Helvetii
LIMONUM
Boii
Lepontii
Santones
Lemovices
Brannovices
GENAVA
OSTODURUS
Garumna Fl.
Bituriges
Petrocorii
Arverni
VIENNA
CITERIOR PROVINCIA
Vivisci
Nitiobriges
Eleuteti
UXELLODUNUM
Gabali
Vocates
Cadurci
Rutenii
Sotiates
Carites
AQUITANIA
Sibuzates
Cocosates
Tarusates
Elusates
Tolosa
Arecomici
AQUAE SEXTIAE
MASSILIA
NARBO
Garumni
HISPANIA
MARE INTERNUM
2 Longitude West 0 Longitude East from 4 Greenwich 6 8



atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.
4 Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs, et māximē
5 frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed, sī quī sunt ex hīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive off the enemy.

1 **15.** Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint;
2 sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suīs
3 āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ējēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī,
4 ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde
5 incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.

1 **16.** Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem;
2 equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent, et pedibus
3 disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proelī ratiō et
4 cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.

1 **17.** Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō
2 lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolā-
3 vērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs
4 vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs
5 dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Cæsar forces a passage across the Thames.

1 **18.** Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō
2 pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās
3 hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs mūnīta, ējusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegē-
4 bantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar prae-
5 missō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī jussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent, rīpāsque dīmitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Cæsar's line of march.

1 **19.** Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīllibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat, paulumque ex
2 viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus

noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ējēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum iīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Cæsar.

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūjus pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Many other tribes now submit, and Cæsar captures the 'town' of Cassivellaunus.

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum injūriā prohibitīs, Cenimāgnī, Segontiacī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ējēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and Cassivellaunus sues for peace.

1 **22.** Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra 2 nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. 3 Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. 4 Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit; 5 interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cæsar returns to the mainland.

1 **23.** Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit 2 refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Āc sīc accidit, utī ex 3 tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; 4 at ex iīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō sexāgintā, perpaucae locum caperent; 5 reliquae ferō omnēs rējicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs 6 collocāvit, āc summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

ANNOTATIONS ON THE SELECTIONS.[1]

CORNELIUS NEPOS.

Cornelius Nepos was born about the year 100 B.C., in Cisalpine Gaul, north of the Po. His birthplace has been variously given as Verona and Ticinum (the modern Pavia), the latter by the German historian Mommsen. There is also an old tradition that names Hostilia, now Ostiglia, as the favored place, and the citizens of that town erected a statue to his memory in 1868. Nepos probably removed to Rome in his youth, and spent the greater part of his life in that city. He was the contemporary and friend of the scholar Atticus, the orator Cicero, and the poet Catullus. Being a student of literature, rather than a man of action, he took no part in military or political affairs. His death occurred probably about 25 B.C., during the reign of Augustus.

He wrote several works, of which there still remain Lives of Atticus and Cato the Censor, and a work entitled *Vitae Excellentium Imperatorum*, or more fully, *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium*, from which the three selections contained in this book are taken. In all the manuscripts, however, this last work is ascribed to a certain Æmilius Probus, who lived in the time of Theodosius, at the end of the fourth century of the Christian era. But the general opinion among the scholars of the present day is that Cornelius Nepos is undoubtedly the author of all the works that go under his name.

As his principal object was, in all probability, to convey moral instruction to his fellow-countrymen, not much reliance can be placed upon him as an historian. His biographies, however, contain a considerable amount of human interest, although he is apt to be too one-sided in his treatment of the characters of his heroes.

1. The references in the Notes are to Parts III. and V. of "The Primary Latin Book," edition of 1900.

Cf. = *compare*; *fn.* = *footnote*; *sc.* = *understand*; *lit.* = *literally*; *trans.* = *translate* or *translation*.

They are, as a rule, either models of excellence or examples of unredeemed baseness. The gray light of history seems to have nothing to recommend it in his eyes.

In style he is generally simple, elegant and lively, and in construction commonly pure; but sometimes he grows careless, and falls into anacolutha, that is, broken or unfinished constructions, or into constructions not strictly classical. At times, too, he indulges in certain syntactical mannerisms, and in the disagreeable repetition of the same words, where a change of expression would be quite practicable without injury to the sense. In his choice of single words, Nepos is, in the main, classical, but occasionally we meet with colloquial and archaic forms which are not found in the best prose writers of the Augustan age.

NOTES ON THEMISTOCLES.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

Themistocles is born	B.C. 514 (?)
Is Archon Eponymus	" 481
Takes part at Salamis	" 480
Is expelled from Athens	" 471
Flees to Asia	" 466
Dies at Magnesia	" 449 (?)

CHAP. 1.

1. **Hujus**: governed by the phrase *vitia ineuntis adulescentiae*, trans. 'his faults in early youth,' 'his youthful excesses.' **anteferatur**: subjunctive of result, so *putentur* (V. 29). **huic**: indirect object after *anteferatur* (V. 78, v. *c*). The *huic* is rather awkward after *hujus*. **pares**: for case see V. 12, *b*.

2. **ab initio est ordiendum**: 'we must start at the beginning,' lit.? For impersonal use of gerundive see V. 120, ii. **duxit**: 'married,' lit. 'led home *or* into matrimony,' sc. *domum* or *in matrimonium*. **Qui cum**: 'when he'; to indicate more clearly the connection with the preceding words, Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is* (V. 172). **parentibus**: dat. of reference, 'found approval in the eyes of' (V. 80, *b*, ii.). It is also explained as dat. of the agent, 'was approved by' (V. 80, *d*).

3. **Quae**: 'this'; see note on *Qui cum*, preceding section. **judicasset**: = *judicavisset* (III. 66, *a*). **totum**: adj., 'wholly.' **eam**: *i.e.*, *contumeliam*, subject of *posse*. **serviens**: 'devoting

himself.' **judiciis privatis**: either (*a*) 'private arbitrations' as opposed to ordinary law-suits, or, perhaps better, (*b*) 'law-suits,' 'cases in the courts,' where private interests only are concerned, as opposed to *contio populi*, where affairs of state are discussed. **prodibat**: from *prodeo*. **major**: 'of unusual importance,' lit. 'of more consequence (than usual)' (V. 98, vi.). **opus**: pred. nom. The more usual construction would be *quibus* (abl.) *opus erat* (V. 99, ii.).

4. **in rebus gerendis**: gerundive construction (V. 119). **excogitandis**: *i.e.* (*in rebus*) *excogitandis*. **instantibus**: 'the present.' Notice the imperfect tenses in this sentence and the preceding one, to describe the course of conduct pursued by Themistocles for a series of years (V. 180, *b*). **Quo factum est**: 'the result of this was,' lit. 'from which (*or* whereby) it was brought about, abl. of cause. **ut . . . illustraretur**: a substantive clause of result, forming the subject of *factum est* (V. 31).

CHAP. 2.

1. **capessendae rei publicae**: 'in (lit. of) the management of public affairs,' gerundive construction with *gradus* (V. 119). **bello Corcyraeo**: this is a mistake, the war was with Ægina. *Bello* is abl. of time (V. 130). **ferociorem**: pred. acc., goes with *praesenti bello* and *reliquo tempore*; 'more high-spirited, not only in the war which was then being waged, but for all time to come.' For case of *tempore* see V. 131, i.

2. **metallis**: the silver mines at Laurium, in the south-eastern part of Attica. They were very valuable and belonged to the State. **redibat**: 'was derived,' 'came in.' **largitione magistratuum**: 'distribution made by the magistrates' out of the public treasury. **magistratuum**: subjective gen. (V. 84). **ut . . . aedificaretur**: substantive clause of purpose, object of *persuasit* (V. 27), trans. by *active* infinitive with 'to.'

3. **Qua**: its antecedent is *classis*. **maritimos praedones**: another historical error. **consectando**: see V. 114, *d*. **In quo**: 'by this means,' lit. 'in which (proceeding).' **cum . . . tum**: 'both . . . and.' **belli**: for case see V. 90.

4. **Id**: what is the antecedent? **saluti, Graeciae**: for these datives see V. 81. **fuerit**: subjunctive in indirect question (V. 35). **cognitum**: with what does this word agree? **Persico**: the second Persian war, in which Salamis was fought, 480 B.C. **Nam cum**, etc.: this sentence is never finished, a parenthetical clause comes in at *hujus enim*, and a fresh start is made at *Cujus de adventu*, the author forgetting to complete his original construction. **mari et terra**: usually *terra marique*. For case see V. 127. **neque . . . nec . . . quisquam**: 'no one . . . either . . . or.'

5. **hujus**: 'his.' **navium**: gen. of characteristic in pred. (V. 87, iii.). **fuit**: 'was composed.' **fuerunt**: the subject is *exercitus*, but the verb is attracted to the number of the pred. noun *millia*.

6. **adventu**: 'advance,' 'approach,' not 'arrival.' **peti**: 'to be the objects of attack.' **dicerentur**: observe the personal construction, which is the usual one. For mood see V. 151. **consultum**: supine in *um*, denoting purpose (V. 116). **facerent**: 'what they were to do.' For subjunctive see V. 186, 1, *b*, i. **deliberantibus**: 'to the inquirers,' the participle is here used substantively (V. 44, i, *a*). **munirent**: 'that they must (*or* should) defend'; for mood see V. 186, 1, *c*, i.

7. **quo valeret**: 'what it meant,' lit. 'in what direction it had force.' **persuasit**: sc. *iis*. **esse**: for the construction with *persuadeo*, see V. 28, v., and note on section 2 above. **ut . . . conferrent**: substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *consilium* (V. 196). **eum enim**, etc.: 'for that was the wooden wall which the god meant,' lit. 'for that was meant by the god, as the wooden wall.' **eum**: has for its antecedent *naves*, but is attracted from *eas* to gender and number of *murum* (V. 13, i.). **significari**: governed by notion of saying in *persuasit* (V. 191).

8. **Tali**: nearly = *hoc*. **superiores**: 'those which they had before.' **sua omnia**: 'all their belongings,' here including women and children. **Salamina**: a Greek acc., so *Troezena* (III. 50, *d*); for case see V. 125. **majoribus natu**: 'elders,' lit. 'greater in respect of birth.' **reliquum oppidum**: 'the rest of the town'; *reliquus*, like *summus*, *medius*, etc., regularly agrees with its noun (V. 86, iv. *b*).

CHAP. 3.

1. **Hujus**: 'his,' *i.e.*, Themistocles's. His plan was to make the war a naval one. **dimicari**: impersonal infin., subject of *placebat* (V. 56). Trans. 'they were rather in favor of having the battle fought.' **qui . . . occuparent**: 'to seize' (V. 26). **non paterentur**: 'to prevent,' lit. ? **non sustinuerunt**: trans. 'could not withstand.' **omnes**: can refer only to the Spartans and Thespians, the others having been sent away.

2. **classis**: this word governs *Graeciae* and *navium*. Trans. 'the common fleet of Greece, consisting of three hundred ships.' **apud**: 'off.' **continentem terram**: 'the mainland.' **quaerebat**: notice the tense.

3. **pari proelio**: 'after a drawn battle,' lit. 'the battle being equal' (V. 49). **adversariorum**: here = *hostium*. *Adversarius* is properly 'an opponent in a court of justice.' **superasset**: = *superavisset* (III. 66, *a*), 'doubled,' 'sailed around.' This is a

subjunctive in virtual indirect narration (V. 177), and represents a future perf. indic. of the direct (V. 187, *b*, i.), hence lit. 'should have,' etc. **premerentur**: subjunctive after *erat periculum*, an expression of *fearing* (V. 138).

4. **Quo . . . discederent**: see notes on ch. 1, 4. **exadversum**: 'over against,' an archaic and colloquial form found in comedy.

CHAP. 4.

1. **Thermopylis expugnatis**: 'after carrying Thermopylæ.' **astu**: *i.e.*, Athens. The construction of *accedere* with a simple acc. is not found in the best prose writers, and should not be imitated. The usual construction is *ad* with the acc. **nullis defendentibus**: 'since it had no defenders,' lit. ? (V. 46).

2. **Cujus flamma**: 'by its burning.' It is not likely that they saw the blaze. Herodotus says, 'the Greeks were thrown into consternation when the news was brought them.' **domos**: for case see V. 125. The plural is used of a number of people who have different homes. **discederent**: for mood see V. 27. **mocnibus**: abl. of means. **universos**: 'if they kept together.' **pares esse**: sc. *eos*, representing *vos* of the original, 'be a match (for the enemy).' **dispersos**: 'if separated.' **id**: 'this,' its antecedent is the substance of the preceding statement. **regi**: 'admiral,' Eurybiades was not king. **summae imperii praecrat**: 'held the chief command,' lit. 'was in charge of (with respect to) the highest position of command.' **summae**: is a substantive; for its case see V. 78, v. c. Notice the variety of expression in *aiebat, testabatur, affirmabat*, and the force of the imperfect.

3. **vellet**: assimilated in mood to *moveret*. See V. 177, i. **de servis**, etc.: 'the most trusty slave he had.' **fidelissimum**: for position of this word see V. 173, *c*, iii. **regem**: the Persian king. **suis verbis**: 'in his (Themistocles's) name.' **in fuga**: 'on the point of flight.'

4. **qui si discessissent**: 'and if they departed,' lit. 'should have departed.' *discessissent* represents future perfect indicative of direct narration. See V. 187, *b*, i. **confecturum (esse)**: supply *eum*, *i.e.*, the Persian king. Themistocles said *conficies* (V. 187, *a*). Translate freely, 'it would require greater effort and a longer time to finish the war.' **cogeretur**: represents future indicative in direct speech (V. 187, *b*). **quos si**: = *sed si eos*. **aggrederetur**: see V. 192. **oppressurum**: do not translate 'oppress.' **Hoc eo valebat**: 'the purpose of this was,' see on ch. 2, 7, above. **eo**: an adverb. **omnes**: 'while all together.'

5. **barbarus**: sc. *rex*. The Greeks called all non-Greeks *barbari*, which, however, meant rather foreigners than savages.

dŏli: partitive gen. with *nihil* (V. 86, i.). **opportunissĭmo**: goes with *loco*. **angusto mari**: 'narrow part of the sea.' **potuerit**: we should look for an imperfect here, but Nepos is fond of the perfect, as being more vivid (V. 33, iii.). **consilio**: 'cleverness,' 'sagacity.'

CHAP. 5.

1. **Hic**: adverb, 'here,' 'in this instance.' **male**: 'unsuccessfully.' **tantas reliquias copiarum**: 'so many troops left,' lit. ? **iis**: 'with them,' abl. of means (V. 99, i.). **eodem**: Themistocles. **gradu depulsus**: 'compelled to give way,' 'forced from his position,' *i.e.*, the position of advantage which his numbers gave him. **ne**: 'that,' 'lest' (V. 138). **certiorem fecit**: 'informed,' followed by infin. *agi* (V. 18, ii.). **id agi . . . excluderetur**: trans. 'a plan was on foot to destroy the bridge . . . and cut off his retreat,' lit. ? **ut . . . dissolveretur**: substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *id*. **fecerat**: for mood see V. 175, i. **in Asiam**: the preposition here connects two substantives, a construction seldom met with in Latin (V. 85, v. fn.). **idque ei persuasit**: 'and convinced him of the truth of this,' lit. ? (V. 55, i.). **id**: cognate acc. (V. 72).

2. **qua . . . reversus est**: trans. 'in less than thirty days he reached Asia by the same route by which it had taken him six months to make the march (into Greece).' **qua . . . eadem**: as often in Latin, the rel. comes first; *via* (abl. of means) may be supplied with each of these words. **diebus**: not governed by *minus*, but abl. of 'time within which'; *quam* is omitted (V. 98, iv.). **reversus est**: the perfect of this verb is usually *reverti*. **se**: subject of *superatum* (*esse*) and *conservatum* (*esse*).

3. **Europae**: dat., governed by *succubuit* (V. 78, v. *c*). **Marathonio**: 'of (*or* at) Marathon.' Latin regularly uses a proper adjective where English has a preposition and a proper noun. **possit**: subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic (V. 32). **tropaeo**: lit. 'trophy,' here used poetically for *victoria*. It is an example of the figure metonymy, the sign being used for the thing signified. **pari modo**: abl. of manner (V. 103). **numero**: abl. of means (V. 99). **post hominum memoriam**: 'within the memory of man,' or perhaps 'of which history has left any record.' The comparison in this clause is somewhat defective. The sentence might be completed thus: *Nam* [*quo modo apud Marathona parvo numero militum maximus exercitus devictus est*], *pari modo*, etc.

CHAP. 6.

1. **bello**: for case see V. 130. **minor**: 'less great.' **Phalerico**: the harbor of Phalerum was the one first used by the Athenians. It was open and unprotected. **triplex**: it consisted of three harbors or basins, Piræus proper, Munychia and Zea. **Piraei**:

gen. of definition (V. 89), *cf.* 'city of London,' *or* perhaps locative (V. 127, i.). **iis**: here=*talibus*, 'such.' **dignitate**: 'in grandeur,' abl. of specification. So *utilitate* (V. 102).

2. **Idem**: 'he likewise' (V. 162). **restituit**: *i.e.*, after their destruction by the Persians. **praecipuo suo periculo**: 'at special risk to himself,' abl. of manner or accompaniment. For *suo* see V. 85, iii. **qua**: abl. of cause. What is the antecedent? **qua negarent . . . ullam**: 'for saying that . . . no.' Relative clause of characteristic (V. 32). **oportere**: 'ought,' the subject of *oportere* is the infinitive phrase *ullam . . . habere, urbem* being the subject of *habere*. **munita**: an adjective here. **quae possiderent**: 'for the enemy to occupy.' For mood of *possiderent* see V. 26. **aedificantes**: 'in their building.' The participle implies action already begun, which would not be the case with *aedificare prohibere*.

3. **Hoc . . . volebant**: 'This had a far different object from what they wished to appear,' lit. 'looked in a direction far other than.' For *ac*='than,' see V. 168, i. **sibi . . . fore**: 'they would have a struggle with them,' lit.? (V. 80, *e*). Before this time the Spartans were the recognized leaders of the Greek confederacy, in case of war against a common foe.

4. **quam infirmissimos**: 'as weak as possible' (V. 174, i.). **struī**: note the tense (V. 15). **qui . . . vetarent**: 'to forbid that being done' (V. 26). **His praesentibus**: 'as long as these were present,' abl. absolute (V. 46). **desierunt**: from *desino*. For form see III. 66, *a*. **eos**: *i.e.*, *Lacedaemonios*.

5. **reliqui . . . exirent**: depends on *praecepit*. The indirect speech runs to *congererent*. In direct speech the subjunctives would probably be *exite, videbuntur, facite, parcite, est, putatis* (or *putetis* in clause of characteristic) and *congerite* respectively (V. 186); or, instead of the imperatives the direct may have jussive subjunctives in the third person plural. **ut tum . . . cum**: 'not . . . until,' lit.? **satis alti tuendo**: 'high enough for safety.' *tuendo* is dat. of the gerund depending on *satis alti* (V. 114, *b*). **neque**: 'and not' (V. 28, ii.). **quo factum est**: see on ch. 1, 4, above. **ex sacellis sepulcrisque**: somewhat exaggerated. Thucydides, whom Nepos here follows loosely and inaccurately, merely says that many columns from tombs, and wrought stones were incorporated into the walls.

CHAP. 7.

1. **ut**: 'when,' with this meaning it takes indic. (V. 152, *b*). **magistratus**; *i.e.*, the Ephors, five in number and elected annually. They exercised great power, controlling even the kings. **ducēret**: 'spin out.' **causam interponens**, etc.: 'alleging as an excuse that,' etc.

2. **Cum**: 'while.' **quererentur**: for mood see V. 151. **nihilo minus**: 'all the same,' lit. 'the less by nothing' (V. 101). **non multum**: 'but little.' **munitionis**: 'of the work of fortification' (V. 86). **superesse**: 'remained unfinished.' **imperium**: here = *potestas, i.e.*, 'civil jurisdiction,' and not the military command, which belonged to the Spartan kings. **falsa iis esse delata**: 'that false reports had been brought to them' (V. 203, *d*). **aequum esse**: for infinitive see V. 191. **illos**: subject of *mittere*, of which *viros* is the object. **quibus**: dative (V. 55, iv.). **haberetur, explorarent, retinerent**: what forms would these verbs have respectively in direct speech? (V. 32; 26; 186, 1, *c*). **obsidem**: 'as a hostage': pred. acc. (V. 12, *c*). **retinerent**: 'let them detain.'

3. **Gestus est ei mos**: 'his advice was followed.' **ei**: dat. of interest with force of possessive (V. 80, *b*). **praedixit**: = *praecepit*, 'enjoined.' **ut ne**: 'not to,' 'that . . . not,' for the usual *ne* (V. 28, vii.). **prius**: connect closely with *quam*. **esset remissus**: for mood and tense see V. 156, *a*; 187, *b*, i.

4. **senatum**: the Senate at Sparta was called the 'Gerusia,' and was composed of thirty members, including the two kings. They held office for life, but had no great influence. **liberrime professus est**: 'made a clean breast of the matter,' 'avowed his trickery with the utmost frankness.' **suo**: 'his,' *i.e.*, Themistocles's. **quod**: has for its antecedent the clause *deos . . . saepsisse*. In the English translation of this sentence the antecedent clause will come first; 'they had enclosed, etc., a thing which, etc.' **quo facilius**: see V. 28, iii. **in eo**: 'therein,' 'in so doing'; *eo* is not the antecedent of *quod*. **esset**: subjunctive in subordinate clause in indirect narration, showing that the clause is part of the speech of Themistocles (V. 175).

5. **Nam . . . barbaris**: either (*a*) 'their city was a rampart thrown up in the way of the barbarians,' *or* better, (*b*) 'their city was opposed to the barbarians as a bulwark.' If (*b*) is the proper rendering, then *oppositum* is attracted from the gender of *urbem* to that of *propugnaculum*. **apud**: 'in the neighborhood of.' Marathon was twenty-five miles from Athens. **regias**: 'of the (Persian) king.' **fecisse naufragium**: 'had suffered defeat.' The expression is used figuratively, as the battle of Marathon was fought on land. For infin. *fecisse*, see on *aequum esse* in section 2 above.

6. **qui . . . intuerentur**: 'inasmuch as they were regarding,' relative clause expressing cause. The present subjunctive would be used in the direct speech (V. 171). **ipsorum**: indirect reflexive, referring to a subject not that of the principal verb. **universae**: 'as a whole.' **miserant**: for indicative see V. 175, i. **se**: referring to the subject of the principal verb, *i.e.*, Themistocles.

remitterent: 'let them (*or* they must) send back,' for mood see V. 186, 1, *c*. **cum**: 'for.' **essent recepturi**: 'would get (them) back.'

CHAP. 8.

1. **civium**: subjective gen. (V. 84). **eundem timorem**: they feared he would become too powerful, and establish himself as a tyrant. **testularum suffragiis**: 'by ostracism,' lit. 'votes of the potsherds.' When an Athenian citizen became so powerful that he was considered a danger to the safety of the state, he might be 'ostracized'; that is, banished for a term of ten years without loss of citizenship or property. The votes of the citizens were given in on shells or small potsherds (ostraka), and six thousand votes given against a man ensured his banishment. **Argos**: acc. of limit of motion (V. 125). **habitatum**: 'to reside,' the supine, expressing purpose (V. 116).

2. **magna cum dignitate**: 'in great honor.' **absentem**: 'in his absence.' **accusarent**: subjunctive of purpose (V. 26). **fecisset**: subjunctive in virtual indirect narration. The accusation was also part of the message (V. 177). **Hoc crimine**: 'on this charge,' abl. of accompaniment (V. 103). **proditionis**: for gen. see V. 91, *c*.

3. **ut**: 'when.' **tutum**: pred. sc. *esse*. **videbat**: the indicative shows the reason is that given by Nepos (V. 146). **Corcyram**: for case see V. 125. **propter se**: 'on his account.' **iis**: = the Corcyreans, indirect object of *indicerent*. **Molossum**: = *Molossorum*, see III. 49, *b*. **ei**: dat. of possessor (V. 80, *e*).

4. **in praesentia**: 'at the time.' **quo**: introduces clause of purpose (V. 28, iii.). **majore religione**: 'by a stronger obligation.' **receptum**: 'when received,' = *cum receptus esset* (V. 43). **caerimonia**: 'veneration.' **in fidem**: 'under his protection.' **reciperet**: for mood see V. 156, *b*. **quam**: = *et eam* (*fidem*), translate freely 'and he kept his word.'

5. **cum**: 'although.' **exposceretur**: 'a demand for his extradition was made.' What is the subject of *exposceretur?* **-que**: 'but.' **consuleret**: for mood see V. 27. **sibi**: 'for his own safety' (V. 79). **esse**: governed by notion of 'saying,' in *monuit* (V. 191). **tam propinquo**: 'so near (Athens).' **tuto eum versari**: 'for him to live in safety.' The introductory 'for' of the English infinitive clause has no equivalent in Latin (V. 110, fn.). **Pydnam**: of course, the king did not intend him to remain at Pydna. **esset**: subjunctive in virtual direct narration, representing the view of Admetus (V. 177). **praesidii**: partitive gen. governed by *quod* (V. 86, i.).

6. **Hic**: 'here.' **nautis**: for case see V. 78, ii. Thucydides says 'to those on board the vessel.' **Quae cum**: 'when it,' *i.e.*,

the ship. **pervenisset**: Themistocles's thought would be *si eo pervenero* (V. 187, *b*, i.). **sibi esse pereundum**: 'that he must perish.' **sibi**: dat. of apparent agent (V. 80, *d*). **esse pereundum**: used impersonally (V. 120, ii.). **quis sit aperit**: 'reveals his identity.' **sit**: subjunctive in indirect question (V. 35; 37). **multa pollicens**: 'making many promises.' *multa* is a cognate acc. (V. 72); see also V. 203, *d*. **conservasset**: in virtual indirect narration, representing fut. perf. indic. of direct (V. 177).

7. **clarissimi viri**: 'for so distinguished a man,' objective gen. (V. 85). **diem noctemque**: 'a day and a night.' **neque . . . quemquam**: 'and . . . no one.' **exponit**: historical present (V. 179, *c*). **cui**: *i.e.*, the captain. **gratiam rettulit**: 'bestowed a recompense,' 'rewarded.'

CHAP. 9.

1. **ita**: 'as follows.' **Xerxe regnante**: 'it was in the reign of Xerxes that,' see V. 205, *a*. Xerxes reigned from 485 to 465 B.C. **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.' **aetate**: 'in point of time' (V. 102). **de iis**: 'of those,' *i.e.*, he was nearest to the times of which he wrote. **fuit**: 'belonged to.' **autem**: 'now,' indicating transition. **Artaxerxen**: surnamed Longimanus; for form of acc. see III. 48, *d*. **atque**: 'and also.' **his verbis**: 'couched in these terms,' a peculiar example of the abl. of characteristic (V. 105); it modifies *epistulam*.

2. **Themistocles**: for case see V. 10, ii. **Graiorum**: partitive gen. with *qui*. **domum**: 'house' = 'family.'

3. **Idem**: 'but I also,' 'I however,' introducing a contrast. **multo plura**: 'many more,' lit ? (V. 101). **ipse**: understand *esse coepi*. **in tuto**: 'in a position of safety.' **proelio . . . facto**: 'after the battle,' lit. ? **litteris**: 'by a letter,' *cf.* the meaning of *litteris* in ch. 10, 1. *littera* in the sing. means a letter of the alphabet. **fecerat**: see on ch. 5, 1, above. **circumiretur**: subject is *ipse*, *i.e.* Xerxes, understood. **quo nuntio**: 'and by this message,' abl. of means. **periculo**: abl. of separation (V. 93).

4. **a**: 'from,' 'out of.' **Quam si ero adeptus**: 'and if I win it'; for tense see V. 62. **habebis**: 'will find,' 'will have in.' **ille**: Xerxes. **de**: 'with regard to.' **quas**: in the best writers *de quibus*, and not the direct object, would be used with *colloqui*. **annuum tempus**: 'a year's time.' **des**: from *do*, for mood see V. 27. **eoque transacto**: 'and when this time has elapsed.' For future time denoted by perfect participle see V. 41. **venire**: subject is *me*, understood from *mihi* (V. 18, x.).

CHAP. 10.

1. **Hujus**: Themistocles. The gen. is governed by *animi magnitudinem*. **virum . . . conciliari**: for construction see V, 21.

veniam dedit: 'complied with his request,' 'granted the favor sought.' **litteris**: 'literature,' *cf.* the meaning of this word in ch. 9, 3. It here refers to reading, *sermoni* to speaking, Persian. **quibus**: instrumental abl. (V. 99); translate 'in which.' **adeo eruditus est**: 'he became so well versed.' **dicatur**: personal construction (V. 18, vii.), but trans. 'it is said that he,' etc. The present tense indicates a result continuing to the writer's time. **quam ii poterant**: an obvious exaggeration, unless he is referring to Asiatic Greeks.

2. **Multa**: see on ch. 8, 6. **gratissimumque illud**: 'and the following the most acceptable,' more freely, 'of which the following was the most welcome of all.' *illud* is in the same construction as *multa*, and is explained by the infin. clause *illum . . . oppressurum (esse)* (V. 195). **uti**: 'follow,' 'adopt.' **vellet, oppressurum (esse)**: in direct speech these verbs would be *voles* and *opprimes* (V. 62). **illum**: *i.e.*, Artaxerxes. **donatus**: for constructions with *dono* see V. 78, vi. **Asiam**: Asia Minor. **Magnesiae**: for case see V. 127, i. **sibi**: dat. of reference, here nearly = possessive 'his' (V. 80, *b*, i.).

3. **donarat**: for the form see III. 66, *a*. **his quidem verbis**: 'in these very words,' 'on exactly these terms,' abl. of accompaniment (V. 103). *Quidem* emphasizes the word it follows. **quae**: the antecedent is *urbem*. **praeberet**: representing *praebeat* in a rel. clause of purpose; so *sumat* and *habeat* (V. 26). **redibant**: indicative because in an explanatory note of the author. For force of the tense see V. 180, *b*. **ad nostram memoriam**: 'to our time.' **sepulcrum**: '(namely) a tomb.' **oppidum**: Magnesia. **quo**: the antecedent is *sepulcrum*.

4. **cujus**: 'his.' **scriptum est**: best turned by the active, 'many writers vary in their accounts' (V. 56). **nos**: 'I,' = the 'editorial we,' which is commoner in Latin than in English. **eundem**: agrees with *Thucydidem*, trans. 'on this point also.' **auctorem**: 'as an authority.' **morbo mortuum**: 'died a natural death.' **neque negat**: '*but* does not deny,' 'though he admits.' **sumpsisse**: for construction see V. 18. ii. **cum**: 'because.' **se . . . posse**: 'of being able.' **quae**: 'what,' for *ea quae*. **pollicitus esset**: would be *pollicitus sum* in the mind of Themistocles. Notice that *quae pollicitus esset* may be briefly translated 'his promise' (V. 37).

5. **Idem . . . memoriae prodidit**: 'he also has left it on record,' 'informed us,' lit. ? **ossa . . . sepulta (esse)**: the direct object of *prodidit*. **legibus**: 'by law,' abl. of accompaniment, 'in accordance with the laws,' rather than abl. of means. **concederetur, esset damnatus**: subjunctives in virtual indirect narration, as quoting the reasons assigned by Thucydides. The subject of *concederetur* is *ut ossa ejus in Attica sepelirentur* understood.

NOTES ON ARISTIDES.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

Aristides commands his tribe at Marathon.	B.C.	490
Is Archon Eponymus	"	489
Is ostracized	"	483
Returns to fight at Salamis . . .	"	480
Is recalled from banishment . . .	"	480
Acts as general at Platæa	"	479
Organizes the Athenian confederacy . .	"	477
Dies	"	468 (?)

CHAP. 1.

1. **aequalis**: 'contemporary.' **Themistocli**: gen. or dat., according as *aequalis* is noun or adjective. For form see III. 50, *d*. **obtrectarunt inter se**: 'proved (*or* became) rivals.' For the form of *obtrectarunt* see III. 66, *a*. **inter se**: Latin has no convenient form for 'each other' (III. 62, *e*).

2. **In his**: 'in the case of these men.' **quanto**: abl. of difference, modifying the comparative notion in *antestaret*. **antestaret**: for mood see V. 35; for tense see V. 36, fn. 1, *b*. **innocentiae**: for case see V. 78, v. *c*. **unus**: 'alone.' **audierimus**: 'have heard of,' subjunctive in a restrictive relative clause of characteristic (V. 32, ii.). For form of *audierimus* see III. 66, *a*. **sit appellatus**: 'has been called'; the perfect, as extending down to the writer's time. **testula**: referring to the vote of ostracism. See note on Themistocles, ch. 8, 1. **exsilio**: abl. of means. **annorum**: for gen. see V. 87. Translate 'was condemned to ten years' exile.'

3. **intellegeret**: 'felt.' **cedens**: 'as he was retiring,' *i.e.*, going away from the place where the votes were being cast. **animadvertisset**: distinguish force of tense from that of *intellegeret*. **quendam**: from *quidam*. **ut . . . pelleretur**: the object of *scribentem*. For mood of *pelleretur* see V. 28, v. Plutarch's version has more point; that an illiterate voter asked a bystander to write Aristides' name on his shell. The bystander was Aristides himself, who, on asking the man what harm Aristides had done him, was told that he was simply tired of hearing him called 'The Just.' **cur**: 'that,' lit.? **duceretur**: 'should be thought,' subjunctive, not in an indirect question, but in a relative clause of characteristic (V. 32).

4. **laborasset**: for mood see V. 175; for form, III. 66, *a*. The clause *quod . . . laborasset* forms the subject of *placere* (V. 198). **appellaretur**: for mood see V. 24.

5. **legitimam**: 'legal.' **pertulit**: what is the force of *per* here? **postquam**: 'as soon as.' **in . . . descendit**: 'came down upon,' *i.e.*, from the interior of Asia. **sexto fere**: 'about the sixth,' really the *fourth*, as he was banished in 483, and returned in 480 B.C. **quam**: = *postquam*, as often, the omission here being probably partly due to the presence of *postquam* in the preceding line, although Nepos is not always so particular. **erat expulsus**: pluperfect, a definite interval being specified (V. 152, *b*, ii.).

CHAP. 2.

1. **Interdum**: not with the Athenian fleet, but as a free-lance. **pugnae**: for case see V. 78, v. *c*. **liberaretur**: we should expect the imperf. here, as the clause denotes mere priority of time (V. 156, *a*.). **idem**: 'also.' **praetor**: 'a general.' At Athens ten generals were chosen every year, one from each tribe. **apud**: 'near.' **est**: goes with *fusus* also.

2. **hujus**: *i.e.*, Aristides. **re militari**: 'war.' **factum**: a noun here. **aliud . . . quam**: 'except,' lit. 'other than.' **hujus imperii memoria**: 'record of this command,' for the deeds performed during the command, *res gestae in imperio*. **justitiae, aequitatis, innocentiae**: depend on *illustria facta* (understood with *multa*), but translate freely 'many instances of.' **quod**: conjunction, 'that,' 'the fact that.' The subject of *factum est* is the result clause *ut . . . transferretur* (V. 197). **communi**: 'united,' 'joint.' **quo duce**: abl. absolute (V. 49), trans. 'under whose leadership.' **erat fugatus**: note mood. **summa imperii maritimi**: 'leadership in naval matters.' See note on Themistocles, ch. 4, 2. **duces**: *e.g.*, Eurybiades at Salamis, Pausanias at Platæa, Leotychides at Mycale.

3. **intemperantia**: 'arrogance' (V. 96). **civitates**: *i.e.*, the maritime states engaged in the war, except the Peloponnesians. **hos duces sibi**: 'these (as) their leaders,' *duces* is in predicative agreement with *hos* (V. 69, v.). **sibi**: for case see V. 80, *b*, i.

CHAP. 3.

1. **quo**: see V. 28, iii. **conarentur**: virtual indirect discourse (V. 177). **quantum pecuniae**: 'how much money,' lit.? (V. 86, i.). **quaeque**: from *quisque*. **daret**: 'should give' (V. 186, 1, *b*, i.). The clause *quantum . . . daret* is governed by *constitueret*. **quadringena et sexagena**: for the distributives see III. 61, *e*. **Delum**: acc. owing to idea of 'motion to' in *collata*. **id**: attracted to gender of *aerarium* (V. 13, i.). **voluerunt**: 'determined,'

'appointed.' **Quae omnis pecunia**: *i.e.*, the accumulated amount. **postero tempore**: 'at a later date.'

2. **Hic**: Aristides. **qua . . . abstinentia**: abl. of characteristic; freely, 'how disinterested he was' (V. 105, i.). **fuerit**: subjunctive in indir. question governed by *est indicium* which is equivalent to a transitive verb, 'shows.' See V. 18, ii. **quod**: 'the fact that'; *quod decessit* is a noun clause subject of *est indicium* understood. **cum**: concessive 'although' (V. 65, *a*). **tantis rebus**: 'such immense resources.' For case see V. 78, v. *c.* **praefuisset**: 'had controlled,' 'administered.' **qui efferretur**: 'the wherewithal to bury him,' lit. '(that) wherewith he might be buried.' **qui**: abl. case (III. 64, *a*). **efferretur**: final subjunctive (V. 26). **reliquerit**: for tense see V. 33, iii.

3. **publice**: 'at the expense of the state.' **de communi . . . collocarentur**: 'were married off by dowries being provided from the public treasury.' **dotibus datis**: abl. absolute. The *dos* was a very necessary consideration in arranging an Athenian marriage. **post annum quartum quam**: 'three years after,'=*anno quarto postquam; post* coming before *anno quarto* is felt to have the force of a preposition, and governs the acc. Observe that the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. **erat expulsus**: for tense see last note on ch. 1, 5, above.

NOTES ON HANNIBAL.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

Hannibal is born	B.C.	247
Is taken to Spain	"	238
Becomes commander-in-chief	"	221
Lays siege to Saguntum	"	219
Crosses the Alps	"	218
Wins a victory at Trasymene	"	217
Crushes the Romans at Cannæ	"	216
Withdraws to Africa	"	203
Is defeated at Zama	"	202
Goes to the Court of Antiochus	"	193
Commits suicide	"	183 (?)

CHAP. 1.

1. **verum**: for gender see V. 194, i. **quod**: =*id quod*, 'a thing which' (V. 173, *d*). **ut . . . superarit**: a substantive clause of

result, subject of *verum est*, for the regular acc. and inf. (V. 197, fn.). **tanto . . . quanto**: 'as much as' (V. 101). **antecedat**: for mood see V. 175.

2. **eo**: *i.e.*, *populo Romano*. **discessit superior**: 'came off victor.' **Quod nisi**: 'and if . . . not,' 'unless, then.' **Quod**: a conjunction here, but originally a rel. pronoun, meaning 'with respect to which.' **civium**: subjective gen.: so *multorum*; see V. 84. **videtur**: sc. *Hannibal* as subject. Latin prefers the personal construction (V. 18, vii.). Translate 'it seems that he.' **potuisse**: represents *potuit* (V. 64, *a*.). Translate 'could (*or* might) have conquered.'

3. **Velut . . . paternum**: 'the hatred inherited from his sire,' lit. 'the hatred of his father, left as it were by inheritance' (V. 203, *a*). **hereditate**: abl. of manner. **ut . . . deposuerit**: 'that he laid it aside only with his life,' lit. (somewhat illogically) 'that he laid down his life before he laid that aside.' **deposuerit**: this verb, by a figure called zeugma, is used with both *animam* and *id* (sc. *odium*), in a slightly different sense. For tense see V. 33, iii. **qui quidem**: 'since (in fact) he.' **pulsus esset, indigeret**: distinguish these tenses. For mood see V. 65, *a*. **opum**: for case see V. 91, *f*. **destiterit**: subj. in a causal rel. clause (V. 171). **animo**: 'in his heart.'

CHAP. 2.

1. **ut omittam**: 'to say nothing of.' **Philippum**: Philip V., king of Macedon. **absens**: 'without meeting him in person.' Hannibal never saw the king, but arranged an alliance with him by ambassadors in B.C. 215. **Antiochus**: the Great, king of Syria. **fuit**: we should expect *Nam Antiochum, qui potentissimus fuit, incendit*. **bellandi**: obj. gen. **rubro mari**: by Red Sea the Greeks meant also the Persian Gulf and the Indian Ocean. **arma . . . inferre Italiae**: 'to carry the war into Italy.'

2. **consiliis clandestinis**: 'by intrigues,' lit. 'secret communications.' **regi**: dat. of reference, 'in the eyes of the king.' **adducerent**: subjunctive of purpose after *darent operam*. **tamquam**: 'on the ground that,' lit. 'just as if,' with *corruptum* (V. 44, iii.). **corruptum**: sc. *eum* (*i.e.*, *Hannibalem*), subject of *sentire*. **alia atque antea sentire**: 'held different views from formerly' (V. 168, i.). The infinitive depends on the idea of thinking in *suspicionem* (V. 191). **fecissent, comperisset, vidisset**; with *cum*, l. 16. **segregari**: 'was being excluded.'

3. **tempore dato**: 'when opportunity offered.' **inquit**: repeating *adjunxit*; regularly used parenthetically as here. **puerulo me**: abl. absolute. **utpote . . . nato**: 'for I was not more than nine years of age'; for *utpote* see V. 44, iii. **annos**: for case see

V. 129 and 98, iv. **nato**: agrees with *me*. **Jovi**: *i.e.*, to Baal, the great divinity of the Carthaginians.

4. **conficiebatur**: the best writers would use the pres. ind. here (V. 153). **vellemne**: see V. 35, i. **dubitaret**: 'to hesitate' (V. 27). **dederis**: for tense see V. 62. **eam**: obj. of *tenentem*, which agrees with *me*. **numquam**: emphatic position. **in amicitia . . . fore**: 'be friends.' **fore**: see V. 17.

5. **nemini . . . quin**: 'no one should doubt that.' **quin . . . futurus**: substantive clause, subject of *debeat* (V. 139, *b*). **reliquo tempore**: 'for the rest of my life' (V. 131, i.). **eadem mente**: see V. 105, i.

6. **quid . . . cogitabis**: 'have any friendly intentions towards,' etc., lit.? for tense see V. 178, ii. **non . . . celaris**: 'you will act not unwisely in concealing them from me,' lit.? (V. 184, i.). **me**: acc. after *celaris*, the acc. of the thing (*id*) being understood (V. 69, vi.). **celaris**: = *celaveris*. **in eo**: = *in bello parando*. **me principem posueris**: 'put me in the chief place.'

CHAP. 3.

1. **qua diximus**: freely 'which I have mentioned'; complete the sentence thus, *qua* (*aetate*) *diximus* (*eum profectum esse*). **obitum**: in 229 B.C. **praefuit**: 'was placed in command of.' **Id**: *i.e.*, his appointment. **Carthaginem**: see on *Delum*, Aristides, ch. 3, 1. **delatum**: 'when reported' (V. 43).

2. **annis**: after *minor* (V. 98); with *natus*, the acc. as in ch. 2, 3, is usual. **triennio**: see V. 131. **Saguntum**: a corruption of the Greek Zacynthus (Zante), now Murviedro, a corruption of *muri veteres*. **foederatam civitatem**: 'a city in alliance (with Rome).' Notice the absence of connectives (*asyndeton*) in this sentence, and, indeed, in the whole chapter.

3. **Ex his**: 'of these'; see V. 86, iii. **omnibus**: scarcely correct, as many of the Gauls were friendly. **nisi victum**: 'without having first defeated him,' lit.? (V. 44, iii.).

4. **Herculem**: referring to the story that Hercules brought the oxen of the triple-bodied monster Geryon from some distant island in the west, over the Pyrenees and the Alps. **quo facto**: 'from which exploit,' causal abl. The name was really of local origin. **conantes**: 'when (*or* who were) endeavoring.' **transitu**: see V. 93. **loca**: 'district,' 'country.' **munit**: 'built,' 'constructed.' **ut . . . posset**: substantive clause of result, object of *effecit*; trans. 'made it possible for.' **ea . . . qua**: '(there) . . . where.' Notice the contrast between *elephantus* and *unus homo*, *ornatus* and *inermis*, *ire* and *repere*.

CHAP. 4.

1. **Conflixerat, pepulerat**: pluperfect because Nepos looks forward to the more important action denoted by *decernit*. **Scipione**: father of the great Scipio. Scipio was really not present at this skirmish. **Clastidii**: locative (V. 127, i.).

2. **Tertio**: 'a third time,' adv. **utrosque**: for the usual *utrumque*. **Inde**: 'after that.' **petens**: 'on his way towards.'

3. **Hoc itinere**: see V. 130. **dextro**: sc. *oculo*. According to Livy he lost one eye altogether. **circumventum occidit**: best translated by two co-ordinate verbs, 'surrounded and killed,' lit.? (V. 43). **post**: adv. **occupantem**: 'while (*or* who was) attempting to seize.'

4. **Huic**: from here to ch. 5, 3, there is great confusion in the order of events. **ei**: for dat. see V. 52. **proelio**: the battle of Cannæ, the most signal defeat ever sustained by the Roman arms. **Paulum**: *i.e.*, *L. Aemilium Paulum*.

CHAP. 5.

1. **pugna**: represents a cognate accusative in the active. **profectus est**: it was really not until five years later. **nullo resistente**: 'without anyone offering resistance,' lit.? **habuisset, reverteretur**: distinguish the tenses.

2. **Hic**: adverb. **exercitus**: 'to his army,' objective gen. See V. 85. **callidissimo imperatori**: 'shrewd commander as he was,' lit.? **dedit verba**: a colloquial expression, 'fooled,' 'tricked,' lit. 'gave words (only).' **obducta nocte**: 'under cover of night,' lit.? **deligata incendit**: 'he fastened . . . and set fire to' (V. 43). **ejus generis**: 'tricked out in this fashion,' *or* 'of these,' lit.? **dispalatam immisit**: 'let loose to straggle in all directions,' 'sent straggling off' (V. 44, ii.). **Quo . . . visu**: 'by the unexpected appearance of this sight,' or 'by causing this unexpected sight to be presented to them,' abl. absolute. **terrorem injecit exercitui**: see V. 78, v. *c*.

3. **rem gestam**: 'exploit.' **ita**: 'so very.' **magistrum equitum**: 'master of the horse.' This officer was usually next in command to the Dictator. **pari ac dictatorem imperio**: 'with an authority equal to that of the Dictator' (V. 105). **dictatorem**: attracted to the case of *magistrum*. **dolo . . . fugavit**: 'lured into an engagement and routed.' **iterum consulem**: for *bis consulem*; 'who had been twice consul,' lit.? **absens**: 'though he himself was not there.' **paucis modo**: *i.e.*, by an ambuscade.

4. **Longum est**: see V. 136, *a*, i. **satis**: predicate adjective. **dictum**: 'statement,' referring to *quamdiu . . . posuit*. **possit**:

see V. 32. **restitit**: 'successfully opposed.' **in campo**: 'in the open field,' or 'on level ground,' the Roman generals preferring to keep to the hills.

CHAP. 6.

1. **defensum**: see V. 116. **Scipionem**: the greatest of the Scipios, afterwards called Africanus.

2. **exhaustis . . . facultatibus**: abl. absolute, denoting cause. **Quo**: see V. 28, iii. **valentior**: 'with stronger forces.' **In colloquium**, etc.: 'a conference was agreed on; the terms were not agreed upon,' (or freely, 'they could not come to terms'). Notice *in*, 'with a view to,' and the change from the impersonal to the personal use of *convenio*, unless, as is possible, the first clause means 'he met him in conference' (V. 127, iii.).

3. **Post id factum**: 'after that was done.' **incredibile dictu**: referring to *biduo . . . pervenit*; for *dictu*, see V. 117. The feat is absurdly impossible.

4. **Numidae**: for gender see III. 48, *c*. **acie**: 'the field.' **ipsos**: *i.e.*; instead of being crushed by the Numidians, he crushed *them*. **Hadrumeti**: locative.

CHAP. 7.

1. **Cum**: 'although.' **occupatus**: adj. **nihilo**: see V. 101. **gessit**: what is the force of the tense? (V. 182, *b*.) **usque ad . . . consules**: 'down to the consulship of,' merely to mark the date.

2. **His . . . magistratibus**: abl. absolute, 'under these magistrates.' **iis**: *i.e.*, the Carthaginians; *secum* might have been used (as *suos* for *eorum*, l. 14), since the *legati* represented the Carthaginians. **fecissent**: for the subjunctive see V. 147, ii. **eos**: the Romans. **Fregellis**: see V. 127. **essent, redderentur**: see V. 27.

3. **His**: indirect object of *responsum est*. Trans. 'this answer was given them.' For the direct form of the answer see V. 193. **acceptum**: adj., 'welcome,' because *gratum*, 'pleasing.' **remissuros**: sc. *se*. **foret**: = *esset* (III. 70). **nomini**: here = *populo*. **cum imperio haberent**: 'kept in command.'

4. **domum**: see V. 125. **ut**: 'when' (V. 152, *b*). **rex**: the usual term is 'suffete.' **fuerat**: 'had become,' 'had been chosen' (V. 152, *b*, ii.). **Romae**: locative. **annui**: pred. adj. with *creabantur*, 'were elected (to hold office) for a year.' **bini**: for the force of the distributive see III. 61, *c*, 1 and 4.

5. **pari diligentia . . . ac**: 'as painstaking as,' here with the force of an acc. pred. adj. (V. 105, i.); for *ac* see V. 174. **quae**

penderetur: 'to pay,' lit.? relative clause of purpose, so *quae reponeretur* (V. 26). **foedere**: the treaty concluded at the end of the second Punic war.

6. **anno post**: 'a year after,' lit.? (V. 101). **consulibus**: 'in the consulship of,' lit.? (V. 49). **Roma**: abl. of place from which (V. 126). **ratus**: 'thinking' (V. 44, ii.). **sui exposcendi gratia**: 'to demand his surrender,' gerundive expression denoting purpose (V. 119). **missos**: sc. *esse* (V. 18, iii.). **senatus**: 'an audience with the senate.' **daretur**: 'could be given,' for the mood see V. 156, *b*. **in Syriam**, etc.: 'to Antiochus in Syria'. (V. 125, iv.).

7. **possent**: virtual indirect narration (V. 177), for *quae comprehenderent miserunt* implies a command, in direct speech *comprehendite*. **ipsum**: contrasted with *bona* and *domum*. **exsulem**: pred. acc.

CHAP. 8.

1. **domo**: see V. 126. **profugerat**: for tense see V. 152, *b*, ii. **consulibus**: in 193 B.C. **Africam**: see on Themistocles, ch. 4, 1. **in finibus**: we should expect *in fines*. **si . . . inducerentur**: 'in hopes of the Carthaginians being incited,' etc.; virtual indirect narration (V. 177). **Antiochi**: 'in Antiochus,' objective gen. (V. 85). **persuaserat**: as a matter of fact Antiochus did not invade Italy. **Huc**: to Cyrene.

2. **qua**: 'as' (V. 174). **absentem**: with *Magonem*. **illi**: the two brothers. **desperatis rebus**: 'in despair of success,' lit.? **solvissent . . . dedissent**: 'had weighed anchor and set sail.' **duplex memoria**: 'two accounts.' **interfectum**: strictly only with *a servulis* (a case of zeugma): with *naufragio* supply *periisse*. **scriptum reliquerunt**: 'have left it on record'; *scriptum* is a pred. acc., modifying *interfectum* (*esse*) *eum*.

3. **autem**: 'now.' **tam . . . voluisset . . . quam**: 'had been as ready . . . as,' for mood and tense see V. 61. **ejus**: = *Hannibalis*, passing over the somewhat careless parenthesis about Mago. **suscipiendo**: sc. *bello*. **instituerat**: 'had been at the outset,' sc. *parere*. **Tiberi**: dat. after *propius* (V. 78, ii.). **Thermopylis**: as a rule, the same construction follows *quam* as precedes it. This battle of Thermopylæ was fought in 191 B.C. **de summa imperii**: 'for the world's supremacy,' lit.? **Quem**: *i.e.*, Antiochus. **etsi videbat**: see V. 65. *a*. **multa stulte conari**: 'formed many foolish projects' (V. 203, *d*). **videbat, deserit**: sc. Hannibal. The change of tense is due to the negative (= 'in no single case').

4. **Asiam**: Asia Minor. **iis**: abl. of means. **Quo**: 'in this battle'; sc. *proelio*, from *conflixit*. **cum**: 'while' (V. 151, fn.). **sui**: 'his troops'; *suus* by no means always refers to the sub-

ject of its own clause. **quo cornu** : = *eo cornu quo*, 'on the wing where' (V. 173, *c*, i.). **rem gessit** : 'commanded,' 'had charge.'

CHAP. 9.

1. **fugato** : at Magnesia, 190 B.C. **verens** : to avoid ambiguity, trans. 'Hannibal fearing.' **ne** : 'that *or* lest' (V. 138). **quod** : 'which'; the antecedent is found in *dederetur*. **sui . . . potestatem** : 'had put himself in his power,' lit. ? **sui** : objective gen. (V. 85). **Cretam** : 'in Crete' (V. 125, ii.). **quo se conferret** : 'whither to retreat' (V. 186, 1, *b*, i.).

2. **vir omnium callidissimus** : 'being the shrewdest of men,' lit. ? **nisi quid providisset** : 'unless he took some precautions.' His thought would be *ero . . . nisi providero* (V. 187, *a*, *b*, i.). For *quid*, see V. 166, *a*. **exisse** : for the form see III. 66, *a*.

3. **capit** : 'forms.' **tale** : 'the following.' **summas** : 'the tops,' an adjective; sc. *amphoras* (V. 86, iv. *b*). **praesentibus** : 'in the presence of,' etc., lit. ? (V. 46). **statuas aeneas** : 'certain bronze statues.' **domi** : 'at his house,' locative. **abjicit** : 'threw carelessly down.'

4. **a, ab** : 'against.' **ne** : "that . . . not" (V. 24). **inscientibus iis** : 'without their knowledge' (V. 49). **tolleret, duceret** : sc. *amphoras*.

CHAP. 10.

1. **Poenus, Cretensibus** : both races had a reputation for cunning. **in Pontum** : 'in Pontus' (V. 125, ii.). **apud quem** : 'at his court.' **animo** : see V. 105, i. **neque . . . egit quam armavit** : 'and had no other aim than to arm.' See on *Thermopylis*, ch. 8, 3.

2. **opibus** : see V. 102. **minus** : 'not very.' **conciliabat** : 'proceeded to win over' (V. 180, *d*). **eo** : *i.e.*, Prusias.

3. **utrobique** : *i.e.*, *et mari et terra*. **Romanorum** : see V. 84. **Quo magis** : 'so . . . the more,' lit. ? **quem si removisset** : 'for if he once had him removed from his path'; cf. on *providisset*, ch. 9, 2.

4. **erant decreturi** : see V. 124. **Superabatur** : 'Hannibal was the weaker,' 'was overmatched.' **multitudine, armis** : see V. 102. **erat pugnandum** : 'he had to fight' (V. 120, ii.). **colligi** : for the infinitive passive with *impero*, see [illegible] 22, vii. **vasa** : for declension see III. 56, *d*.

5. **effecisset** : 'had got together.' **ipse** : 'very,' **unam . . . navem** : 'the [illegible] of Eumenes only'; **omnes**, like *omnes*, in emphatic position (V. 3, *a*). **a** : 'against.' **[illegible]um** : with *defendere*. **satis habeant** : 'to be content,' lit. 'should regard it sufficient.'

id: *i.e.*, their defence. **illos**: see V. 188. **consecuturos, facturum**: sc. *esse;* the notion of saying is supplied from *praecipit* (V. 191).

6. **ut scirent facturum**: 'would see that they knew'; for subjunctive see V. 33, v. **cepissent, interfecissent**: see V. 187, *b*, i. **iis praemio fore**: see V. 81; freely, 'they should be well rewarded'; the subject of *fore* is the notion of capturing or slaying. On this whole passage see V. 193.

CHAP. 11.

1. **militum**: see V. 85. **utrisque**: 'both sides'; note the force of the plural. **Quarum**: *i.e.*, *classium.* **pugnae**: 'for engaging'; objective gen. **daretur**: for mood see V. 156, *b*. **palam faceret**: 'make it clear'; *palam* with the force of a pred. adj. **caduceo**: equivalent to a modern flag of truce. **ut faceret, mittit**: for sequence of tenses with historical pres., see V. 28, iv., and cf. *concurrant*, ch. 10, 5.

2. **quin . . . scriptum**: 'that there was some written proposal,' lit. ? For *quin* with subjunctive see V. 139, *b*. **suis**: dat. **eodem**: adverb.

3. **quae . . . pertinerent**: 'such remarks as served to make sport of him.' For mood see V. 32. **neque reperiebat**: 'and failed to discover it'; cf. last note on ch. 8, 3. **committere dubitavit**: cf. construction after *dubitabat* in section 2.

4. **Horum**: the opposing fleets. **praecepto**: for the abl. = 'in accordance with,' see V. 103, iii. **universi adoriuntur**: 'concentrate their attack on.' **quam**: 'but . . . it,' *i.e.*, *salutem.* **consecutus esset, recepisset**: see V. 61. **praesidia**: the *castra nautica* of section 6. **proximo**: 'neighboring.'

5. **acrius**: 'with considerable vigor,' lit. ? (V. 98, vi.). **coepta sunt**: 'began'; for the passive form see V. 22, iii. **Quae jacta**: 'the throwing of these,' more lit. 'these when thrown.' **pugnantibus**: 'in the combatants' (V. 44, i. *a*); for dat. see V. 80, *b*. **poterat intellegi**: trans. freely by active (V. 56).

6. **nova re**: 'novel device,' 'unusual spectacle.' **vitarent**: see V. 186, 1, *b*, i. **puppes verterunt**: after the analogy of *terga vertere.* Cf. 'to turn tail.' **castra nautica**: formed by drawing the ships up on shore and throwing ramparts about them.

7. **consilio**: 'strategy.' **alias**: adverb. **pari prudentia**: 'with a like cunning,' see V. 103. Note the alliteration in the last line.

The fact of his dealing at such length with the silly episode of the serpents, while dismissing in a few lines Hannibal's famous campaigns in Italy, goes to show that Nepos was singularly lacking in the sense of historical perspective.

CHAP. 12.

1. **geruntur**: for tense see V. 153. **cenarent, dicerent**: see V. 31. **apud**: 'at the house of.' **Id**: what is the antecedent?

2. **Patrēs conscripti**: the regular name for 'members of the senate'; for *patres et conscripti*, *i.e.*, the heads of patrician families, and the plebeians afterwards enrolled. **Hannibale vivo**: 'as long as Hannibal was alive' (V. 49). **sine**: 'free from.' **existimarent**: causal subj. (V. 171). **in**: 'among.' **suum, sibi**: indirect reflexives (V. 164). **secum**: direct reflexive. **-que**: 'but'; sc. *ut*, from *ne*.

3. **His negare**: 'to refuse their request,' lit.? **ausus est**: see III. 68, *c*. **illud . . . postularent**: 'but this he did object to, their asking him to do'; for the use of *ne* and subj. (here in apposition with *illud*), see V. 139, fn. **esset**: see V. 175. **ipsi comprehenderent**: 'let them seize him themselves' (V. 186, 1, *c*). **inventuros**: sc. *eos* and *esse*. For *comprehenderent* and *inventuros* following *recusavit*, see V. 191. **muneri**: 'as a gift' (V. 81). **idque**: 'and which'; for *id*, not *quod*, see V. 170, iv. **aedificarat**: 'had arranged.' **ne . . . accidit**: 'lest that should happen which did happen'; for the indic. see V. 175, i. **usu veniret**: lit. 'come as an experience,' *usu* being dat. of purpose=*usui* (III. 51, *b*), or perhaps, 'come about in experience,' *usu* being abl. of accompaniment.

4. **puer**: 'slave.' So in South Africa a native servant is called 'boy,' without reference to age. **plures praeter consuetudinem**: 'more than usual' or 'an unusual number,' lit.? A somewhat pleonastic expression. **Qui**: 'Hannibal.' **num . . . obsideretur**: indirect question; for force of *num* see V. 35, i.

5. **quid esset**: 'how matters stood.' **occupatos, factum**: sc. *esse*. **se peti**: 'he was the person they were seeking,' lit.? (V. 205, *a*). **sibi**: see V. 80, *d*. **retinendam**: trans. by 'could,' as often in the case of a gerundive with a negative or *vix*. **quam . . . dimitteret**: 'that he might not give this up at another's bidding,' *i.e.*, he wished to die free, and not to be dragged in triumph through the streets of Rome and then put to death. **arbitrio**: see V. 103, iii. **consuerat**: for the force of the pluperfect see V. 182, *e*.

CHAP. 13.

1. **-que**: omit in trans. (V. 205, *f*.) **laboribus**: see V. 54. **acquievit**: a very appropriate word after *perfunctus laboribus*. **Quibus consulibus**: 'in what consulship,' 'in what year' (V. 49); notice the indirect question introduced by abl. absolute.

The dates are 183, 182 and 181 B.C. respectively, so *septuagesimo* cannot be correct. **mortuum . . . reliquit**: cf. on ch. 8, 2.

2. **Atque**: 'I may add.' **hic tantus**: regularly used instead of *hic magnus*. **-que**: omit in trans. **districtus**: 'though busy' (V. 42). **nonnihil . . . litteris**: 'devoted considerable time to literary pursuits.' **temporis**: for gen. see V. 86, i. **confecti**: 'written.' **ad Rhodios**: the title of the work; sc. *liber ad Rhodios scriptus*. Trans. 'among them one dedicated to the Rhodians.'

3. **Hujus . . . gesta**: 'Hannibal's achievements in war.' **duo**: sc. *prodiderunt*, but trans. freely 'there were two.' **simul**: not= *eodem tempore*, but=*cum eo* of the preceding line. **usus est doctore**: 'had as his teacher' (V. 55, v.).

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

Caius Julius Cæsar was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in B.C. 59. The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles; Cæsar, the leader of the popular party; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Cæsar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him, after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul. In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

After the conquest of Gaul, which engaged the attention of Cæsar from 58 to 51 B.C., civil war arose between him and Pompey, his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Cæsar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., 'The foremost man of all this world' fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

We are told that in personal appearance Cæsar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly 'Roman,' his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

The genius of Cæsar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest. He was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey.

The Commentaries[1] of Cæsar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the Commentaries on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Cæsar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Cæsar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of Cæsar's Commentaries: "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments."

1. *Commentarii* (sc. *libri*), meaning *sketches, jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

In the choice of single words Cæsar is pure and classical, as we should expect that writer to be, who, according to Aulus Gellius, the Roman grammarian, has left us the invaluable advice "to shun an uncommon or out of the way word as a ship would a rock."

NOTES ON CÆSAR, BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1.

1. **qui fuit,** etc.: 'which was the year when . . . were consuls,' lit. 'Pompey and Crassus (being) consuls' (V. 49). The consuls are named merely to fix the date, 55 B.C. For the agreement of *qui* see V. 13, i. **Germani**: the larger division to which Usipetes and Tencteri both belonged. **multitudine**: almost abl. of manner (='in large numbers'), as it is really included in the subject. **mari**: 'that part of the sea.' **quo**: adverb, 'into which.'

2. **Causa transeundi**: 'the reason for crossing'; contrast with the meaning and order of *bellandi causa* in section 4. **quod**: 'that,' lit. 'because' (V. 198). **annos**: with *exagitati* (V. 129). **bello**: with *premebantur*. **premebantur**: Cæsar's reason (V. 146). **agricultura**: see V. 93.

3. **omnium**: in emphatic position (V. 3, *a*).

4. **Hi**: the Suebi. **ex quibus singula millia**: 'from each of which a thousand'; lit. 'from which . . . one thousand each.' For the distributive see III. 61, *c*.

5. **manserunt**: 'remain,' lit.? For tense see V. 182, *c*. **illos, illi**: 'the others.' **Hi**: refers to *reliqui*. **anno post**: 'the next year' (V. 101).

7. **agri . . . nihil est**: 'there is no . . . land' (V. 86, i.). **longius anno**: 'longer than a year' (V. 98). **licet**: 'they are allowed,' lit.? (V. 143).

8. **multum**: adverb. **frumento**: trans. by 'on,' lit. 'by means of.' **maximam partem**: 'for the most part' (V. 72, i.). **sunt in venationibus**: 'are engaged in hunting,' lit. 'hunts.'

9. **quae res**: 'this fact,' *i.e.*, the frequent hunting; subject of *alit*. To indicate more clearly the connection with the preceding words, Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is* (V. 172). **genere**: 'from (*or* because of) the character' (V. 96). **cum . . . faciant**: explaining *libertate vitae*; trans. by a parenthetic clause with 'for'; lit. 'since.' **nullo . . . assuefacti**: 'as they are not accustomed to any obedience or discipline'; for the abl. see V. 99.

faciant: for mood see V. 148. **alit**: 'increases.' **immani**, etc.: 'of huge stature,' lit.? Understand *eos*, *homines* being a factitive pred. acc. **magnitudine**: see V. 105.

10. **Atque**: 'moreover' **in eam . . . adduxerunt**: lit. 'have brought themselves to that (=such a) custom,' freely, 'have so accustomed themselves.' **locis frigidissimis**: 'although the climate is very cold,' lit.? (V. 49). **neque vestitus quicquam**: 'no clothing,' lit.? (V. 86, i.). **haberent**: for the mood see V. 29. Here to be translated exceptionally by the *present* tense, so *lavarentur*. See V. 36, fn. 1, *b*. **quarum**: trans. after *exiguitatem*, **lavarentur**: for the voice see V. 203, *f*. i.

CHAP. 2.

1. **Mercatoribus est aditus**: 'traders are admitted,' lit.? **eo**: adv., 'for this purpose,' explained by *ut . . . habeant*; omit in trans. **quibus vendant**: '(persons) to whom to sell,' freely, 'purchasers for' (V. 26). The object of the verb is (*ea*) *quae bello ceperint*. For the omission of the antecedents see V. 173, *a*. **habeant**: see V. 24. **ceperint**: for the mood see V. 177. **quo**: 'that *or* because.' **ad**: 'among.' **desiderent**: for mood see V. 147, iii.

2. **Quin etiam**: 'nay even.' **jumentis**: here 'horses,' generally beasts of burden. *Jumentis importatis* is governed by *utuntur* (V. 54); to keep the Latin order, trans. freely, 'as for horses . . . use imported ones.' **quibus**, etc.: 'in which . . . take particular pleasure,' 'for which . . . have a special fancy'; lit. 'with which.' **quaeque**: two words; trans. 'and for which they pay a high price,' lit.? **pretio**: for case see V. 100. **quae . . . haec**: trans. *haec* before the relative clause (V. 5, i.). **haec quae . . . parva**: may be freely rendered 'the native ones, which are small,' etc. **summi . . . efficiunt**: trans. 'they make capable of the utmost toil,' lit. 'render so that they are of the utmost endurance' (V. 87, iii.). **ut sint**: for construction see V. 33, v.

3. **pedibus**: 'on foot.' **eodem vestigio**: 'on the same spot' (V. 127, ii.). **assuefecerunt**: trans. by the present perfect. **quos**: 'and . . . them.' **cum usus est**: 'when there is need'; for mood and tense see V. 149.

4. **moribus**: abl.; trans. by 'according to' (V. 103, iii.). **turpius**: pred. nom., agreeing with *quicquam*. **habetur**: 'is regarded.' **ephippiis**: governed by *uti*. The saddle proper was a much later invention.

5. **quemvis**: from *quivis*, with *numerum*. **adire ad**: 'advance against.' **quamvis pauci**: 'however small their numbers.' Notice the case of *pauci* (V. 66, ii.).

6. **quod**: conjunction. **ea re**: 'by it,' 'by that means,' lit.? **homines**: acc.

CHAP. 3.

1. **Publice**: not 'publicly,' but 'as a state,' 'as a community.' **quam latissime**: 'as far as possible' (V. 174, i.). **vacare agros**: 'for the country to be unoccupied,' subject of *esse* (V 195). **hac re significari**: 'that this indicates,' lit.? The clause *magnum numerum . . . posse* forms the subject of *significari*.

2. **ex**: 'on' (V. 127, v.). **a Suebis**: with the following words. **millia**: see V. 128. **agri**: nom., not gen.

3. **Ad alteram**, etc.: 'on the other side the Ubii adjoin them,' lit.? There would doubtless be some unoccupied country between them. **fuit**: 'has been,' not 'was'; see section 4. **ut est captus Germanorum**: freely, 'according to German standards,' lit. 'as the capacity of the Germans is,' *i.e.*, 'as far as German ideas go.' *Captus* is a noun **et sunt**: contrasted with *fuit*, 'and who even now are.' **ceteris**: 'than the rest' (V. 98). **multum ventitant ad**: 'often visit.' Both *ventitant* and *sunt* depend on *quod*. For the frequentative form *ventitant* see III. 74, *b*. **moribus**: for the case cf. on ch. 1, 9. **sunt assuefacti**: 'have been brought up according to,' etc.

4. **Hos**: with *expellere*. **cum**: 'although.' **finibus**: see V. 93. **potuissent**: for mood see V. 65, *a*. **vectigales**: pred. acc. with *eos* understood. **multo**: see V. 101. **humiliores infirmioresque**: 'less important and powerful,' lit.

CHAP. 4.

1. **causa**: 'situation.' **annos**: for case see V. 129; so *triennium*, section 2.

2. **Ad extremum**: 'at last,' with *pervenerunt* only, not with *expulsi* or *vagati*. **agris**: cf. on *finibus*, ch. 3, 4 **multis locis**: 'through many parts,' lit. 'in many districts' (V. 127, ii.). **quas**: 'these'; meaning the districts near the Rhine. **incolebant**: trans. here by past indefinite, 'inhabited'; so *habebant* by 'had.' **ad**: 'on.'

3. **adventu**: 'by,' not 'on.' **fis**: 'the.' **trans, eis**: from Cæsar's point of view. **dispositis praesidiis**: abl. absolute; trans. 'by placing,' etc. (V. 48). **transire**: 'from crossing.' **prohibebant**: for force of imperfect see V. 180, *d*.

4. **Illi**: 'the latter,' marking a change of subject. **omnia experti cum**: 'tried every device, but when,' etc. **possent**: for mood see V. 151. **vi contendere**: 'force a passage,' lit. 'make their way by force.' **reverti se**: 'to return,' lit.? (V. 18, iv.).

5. **tridui viam**: 'a three days' journey,' lit.? for the gen. see V. 87, for the acc. V. 128. **itinere . . . confecto**: 'having covered . . . distance.' **equitatu**: trans. by 'with,' lit. 'by means of.'

6. **qui . . . facti**: 'for when these learned . . . they'; more lit. 'who, on learning.' **per exploratores**: see V. 99, i.

7. **priusquam . . . certior fieret**: 'before . . . could be informed,' depending on *transierunt* (V. 156, *b*). **partem**: for case see V. 129. **eorum copiis**: 'on their stores,' lit. 'by means of.'

CHAP. 5.

1. **veritus**: 'fearing' (V. 44, ii.). **capiendis**: 'forming.' **novis rebus**: 'political changes,' 'changes in the government,' lit.? For dat. see V. 52. **Nihil committendum**: sc. *esse*: impersonal passive (V. 120, ii.). *Nihil* = 'not at all' (V. 72). *His* is dat. Trans. 'that no confidence should be put in them,' lit.?

What Cæsar feared was that the Gauls, soon wearying of Roman rule, would combine with these new-comers and revolt.

2. **Est enim**, etc.: lit. 'for this is of (*i.e.*, belongs to) Gallic custom'; trans. 'for it is a Gallic custom.' **uti . . . cogant**: in apposition with *hoc* (V. 197); trans. by infin. with 'to.' So *quaerant*, etc. **et . . . et**: in trans. omit 'both.' **audierit** := *audiverit* (III. 66, *a*). For the mood see V. 35; so *veniant*. **et . . . vulgus circumsistat . . . cogant**: 'and for a crowd to surround . . . and compel.' For the change of number see V. 13, N.B. **quibusque**: two words, so *quasque*.

3. **rebus**: 'statements.' **summis**: 'most important.' **quorum eos**, etc.: 'which they have to repent of at once.' **paenitere**: with object, not subject, *eos* (V. 91, *d*). **necesse est**: lit. 'it is necessary,' with infin. as subject (V. 141, *b*). **cum**: 'since.' **serviant**: 'follow blindly,' 'are slaves to' (V. 148). **plerique**: *i.e.*, of the traders and travellers. **ad voluntatem eorum**: *i.e.*, of the Gauls, 'to suit (lit. with a view to) their pleasure,' *i.e.*, 'to please them.' **ficta respondeant**: 'invent answers,' more lit. 'give answers invented.'

CHAP. 6.

1. **graviori**: 'too serious,' lit. 'more serious (*i.e.*, than he could manage')' (V. 98, vi.). **ne . . . occurreret**: see V. 24. **consuerat** := *consueverat* (III. 66, *a*). For force of tense see V. 182, *e*. **exercitum**: the army had been stationed during the winter in the north-west of Gaul.

2. **Eo**: adverb; 'to it.' **ea quae**: each word is subject of an infin. Trans. 'what.' **fore** := *futura esse*, 'would be the case.' **erat**: for mood see V. 175, i. **facta**: sc. *esse*, 'had happened.'

3. **missas, invitatos**: sc. *esse*, depending on *cognovit*, and explaining *ea . . . facta*. **uti . . . discederent**: 'to leave the Rhine,' *i.e.*, to come farther into Gaul. For mood see V. 27. **postulassent**: = *postulavissent* (III. 66, *a*); 'they asked,' lit. 'they should have asked,' not 'they had already asked.' For the mood see V. 175; for the tense (in the original words fut. perf.) see V. 187, *b*, i. **fore parata**: depending on an idea of promising easily supplied from *invitatos*; 'with the promise that everything would be made ready.'

4. **Qua spe**: strictly a condensed expression for *cujus rei spe*. (V. 205, *c*.) The English has the same idiom. **vagabantur, pervenerant**: *i.e.*, at the time of Cæsar's arrival. Observe the difference in tense.

5. **dissimulanda sibi**: sc. *esse* (V. 120, i.). **animis**, etc.: 'having calmed and reassured their hearts.' **imperato**: this verb when used transitively means 'demand.' **constituit**: the context requires the meaning 'announced his resolve,' not simply 'resolved.'

CHAP. 7.

1. **in ea loca . . . quibus in locis**: 'towards the district where,' lit. ? see V. 173, *b*. **audiebat**: 'heard'; the imperfect implies that he continued to hear this during his march.

2. **A quibus**: sc. *locis*. **ab his**: sc. *Germanis*. **paucorum dierum iter**: 'but a few days' journey,' cf. on *tridui viam*, ch. 4, 5. **quorum haec**, etc.: 'who spoke as follows,' lit. ? **haec**: feminine sing. (V. 13, i.).

3. For all the subjunctives in sections 3, 4 and 5, except those specially mentioned, see V. 186, 2. For the primary tenses (to be translated as though secondary), see V. 187, *b*; see also V. 193. **neque priores**, etc.: 'were not the aggressors in making war,' etc., lit. 'were not making war the former (of the two parties).' **neque . . . neque**: here, as often, trans. 'not . . . and not.' **recusare quin . . . contendant**: 'object (*or* refuse) to,' etc. For *quin* and subjunctive, see V. 139, *a*. **quicumque**: sc. *iis* as antecedent (governed by *resistere*); trans. 'if any,' lit. ?

4. **Haec**: 'this much.' **dicere**: sc. *se*. **venisse, posse**: sc. *se*; in apposition with *haec* (V. 195). **attribuant, patiantur**: trans. 'let them (*i.e.*, the Romans),' etc. The imperative (or jussive subjunctive) would have been used by the speakers themselves (V. 186, 1, *c*). **eos**: *i.e.*, *agros*. **armis**: 'in war,' lit. ?

5. **dii**: from *deus* (III. 9). **reliquum**: 'besides,' 'else,' lit. 'remaining.' **quidem**: adding emphasis, but, as often, untranslatable by any word. **in terris**: 'in the world,' *or* 'on earth.' **possint**: for the mood see V. 32.

CHAP. 8.

1. **quae visum est**: 'what seemed proper'; *quae* (=*ea quae*) is cognate acc. after *respondere*, which is understood as subject with *visum est*. **Sibi nullam**, etc.: for the verbs in the rest of the chapter cf. on ch. 7, 3. For the change in section 2, from secondary to primary sequence see V. 190, vi. **sibi . . . cum his**: lit. 'to him with them'; trans. 'between him and them' (V. 80, *e*).

2. **neque**: 'and further . . . not.' **verum**: 'fair,' 'reasonable.' **suum**: 'their own.' **qui . . . occupare**: sc. *eos*, 'for those who . . . to seize' (V. 110, fn.). **alienos**: 'those of others'; understand *fines*. **neque ullos**: 'no,' lit.?

3. **licere**: 'they might,' lit.? (V. 143). **apud**: 'with.' **se**: *i.e.*, Cæsar. **hoc . . . imperaturum**: 'that he would order the Ubii to do this,' more lit. 'would give this order,' viz., to allow them to settle among them.

CHAP. 9.

1. **post diem tertium**: 'two days later,' lit.? The Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. **ne . . . moveret**: 'not to move' (V. 27).

2. **id**: *i.e.*, the proposed delay. **ne . . . quidem**: 'not . . . either'; he had already refused the request of ch. 7, 4. **impetrari**: trans. by the active voice. **se**: Cæsar.

3. **aliquot diebus ante**: 'a few days before,' lit.? (V. 101), cf. *post diem tertium*, section 1. **trans Mosam**: *i.e.*, towards the west. **exspectari, interponi**: trans. by active voice. **ejus rei causa**: 'for that reason.'

CHAP. 10.

1. **ex monte**, etc.: freely 'from that part of the Vosges mountains which is,' etc.; *qui* restricts instead of defining. **parte**: 'branch.' **quadam**: from *quidam*. **insulam efficit**: the island is thus formed by the Rhine, Meuse, Vacalus, and the Ocean.

2. **neque longius**, etc.: 'and at a distance of not more than,' etc. **millibus**: see V. 98. **eo**: *i.e.*, the Vacalus (where it enters the Meuse).

3. **autem**: 'on the other hand.' **ex**: 'in the country of,' lit.? (V. 127, v.). **longo spatio**: 'in (lit. by) a long course.' **citatus fertur**: 'flows rapidly,' lit.?

4. **appropinquavit**: notice the tense. English would use the present. **plures**: 'several,' lit. 'more (than one).' **-que**: omit in trans. (V. 205, *f*).

5. **ex quibus sunt qui**: 'among whom are the people who.' **piscibus**: for abl. cf. ch. 1, 8. **capitibus**: 'mouths,' lit.? *Caput* is generally the source, just as we say 'head-waters.'

CHAP. 11.

1. **millibus**: may be abl. of comparison (cf. ch. 10, 2) or abl. of measure of difference (V. 101, i.) uninfluenced by *amplius* (V. 98, iv.). **ut erat constitutum**: 'as had been arranged' (ch. 9, 1); with the following words. **in itinere**: *i.e.*, while he was on his march towards them. **ne progrederetur**: cf. on ch. 9, 1. **orabant**: for tense see V. 180, *b*. So *petebant*.

2. **impetrassent**: see III. 66, *a*. **petebant uti . . . praemitteret**: 'asked him to send on' (V. 27). **antecessissent**: see V. 175. **pugna**: for case see V. 93. **sibi . . . mittendi**: 'and to give them permission to send,' etc.

3. **fidem fecisset**: 'pledged their word,' lit. 'should have made a pledge.' The verb agrees in number with the nearer of its two subjects. For the mood see V. 187, *b*, i. **ea condicione . . . usuros**: 'would agree to the terms which were (being) offered,' see ch. 8, 3. For the abl. see V. 54. **daret**: cf. on *attribuant*, ch. 7, 4. Trans. 'let him give,' or '(they asked) him to give' (V. 186, 1, *c*).

4. **eodem illo pertinere**: 'looked in that same direction,' more freely, 'had the same object,' *i.e.*, as that mentioned in ch. 9, 3. This object is explained more fully by the *ut* clause. *Eodem* and *illo* are both adverbs. **ut interposita . . . reverterentur**: freely 'that a delay might intervene and their cavalry return' (V. 48). **qui**: refers to *equites*, not to *eorum*. **abessent**: for mood see V. 175. **millibus**: cf. on ch. 10, 1.

5. **quam frequentissimi**: 'in as large numbers as possible' (V. 174. *i*). **convenirent**: 'they were to come' (V. 186, 1, *c*). **cognosceret de**: 'inquire into.'

6. **mittit qui nuntiarent**: 'he sends (men) to tell' (V. 173, *a*); for sequence see V. 28, iv. **ne lacesserent**: see V. 28, v. **proelio**: 'to (lit. by) battle.' *Proelio lacessere*, to take the offensive; *sustinere*, to keep on the defensive, to hold one's ground. **et**: 'but.' **exercitu**: often of the legions only (the regular army) as opposed to the cavalry (native auxiliaries); so also *milites*. **accessisset**: 'approached'; lit. 'should have,' etc. The direct form would be *accessero* (V. 187, *b*, i.).

CHAP. 12.

1. **ubi primum**: 'as soon as,' lit.? **quorum**, etc.: 'who numbered,' etc., lit.? **millium**: see V. 87, iii. **cum**: 'while'

(V. 151, fn.). **amplius octingentos**: 'more than eight hundred'; for case see V. 98, iv., and cf. *millibus*, ch. 11, 1. **nihil timentibus nostris**: 'while our men felt no fear,' explained by *quod . . . petitus* (V. 48). **Nihil**: cf. on ch. 5, 1. **is dies . . . petitus**: freely 'a truce for that day had been asked by them,' lit.? For the dat. *indutiis* see V. 81.

2. **rursus**: *i.e.*, after the first confusion. **resistentibus**: understand *nostris* from the preceding *nostros*. **consuetudine sua**: for abl. = 'according to,' see V. 103, iii. **compluribus nostris**: 'several of our men.' **ita**: with *perterritos*. **egerunt**: 'drove them before them.' **fuga**: see V. 93. **prius . . . quam**: 'until,' lit. 'at an earlier time than.' **conspectum**: for case see V. 127, iii. **venissent**: see V. 156, iv.

4. **in**: 'among.' **Aquitanus**: not part of the man's name. **genere natus**: 'belonging to (lit. born from),' etc. For the abl. see V. 95. **amicus**: an honorary title bestowed by the Roman Senate on distinguished foreigners. **appellatus**: freely 'and had been called.'

Before translating sections 5 and 6, study carefully V. 43 and 48.

5. **cum**: 'while' (V. 151). **illum**: 'him,' emphatic; to bring out the contrast with *ipse*, trans. 'while he himself.' **equo vulnerato**: the cause of *dejectus*.

6. **id**: 'this,' referring to *cecidisset*. **proelio**: see V. 93. **obtulit**: sc. *frater*. **atque**: 'and so.'

CHAP. 13.

1. **neque jam . . . neque**: 'no longer either . . . or.' **sibi**: see V. 80, *d*. **ab iis qui**: 'from men who.' **intulissent**: see V. 32.

2. **exspectare vero**: 'while to wait'; *exspectare* is subject of *esse*. **dum . . . augerentur**: 'until . . . should,' etc. (V. 155, *b*). **summae dementiae esse**: 'was the height of folly,' lit. 'was of the highest folly' (V. 86, v.). Cf. our expression, 'was a piece of folly.'

3. **quantum auctoritatis**: 'how much prestige' (V. 86, i.); so *spatii*. **hostes**: nom. **essent consecuti**: see V. 35. **quibus**: 'so (that) . . . to them.'

4. **consilio cum**, etc.: 'having announced his decision to,' etc., more lit. 'having shared it with.' **ne quem**, etc.: explains *consilio*, 'not to miss any chance of fighting,' lit. 'pass over any day of battle' (V. 196). **quod**: 'namely that'; the clause *quod . . . venerunt* being in apposition with *res* (V. 198). **postridie ejus diei**: 'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day.'

eadem: *i.e.*, as narrated in ch. 12, 1. **usi**: 'displaying'; for tense see V. 44, ii. **majoribus natu**: 'elders' (V. 102).

5. **simul . . . simul**: 'both . . . and at the same time,' lit.? **ut dicebatur**: 'as was alleged.' **sui purgandi causa**: 'to clear themselves,' see V. 119, iv. **quod . . . commisissent**: 'from the charge of having,' etc.; for mood see V. 147. **contra . . . dictum**: 'contrary to what had been agreed upon'; more lit. 'otherwise than' (V. 168, i.). **esset, petissent, possent**: for mood see V. 177. **petissent** := *petiissent* (III. 66, *a*). **si quid possent**: freely, 'whatever they could,' lit. 'if they could (obtain) anything'; *quid* depends on *impetrare* understood. **de**: 'in the matter of,' with *impetrarent*. **fallendo**: 'by deceit' (V. 114, *d*).

6. **Quos**: 'these'; subject of *oblatos (esse)* (V. 22, ii.). **gavisus**: 'rejoicing' (V. 44, ii.); for semi-deponents see III. 68, *c*. **castris**: see V. 93. **quod**: conjunction. **perterritum esse**: sc. *equitatum*.

CHAP. 14.

1. **triplici**: the legion was usually drawn up for battle in three lines, four cohorts in the first and three in each of the others. **millium**: sc. *passuum* (V. 105). **prius . . . quam**: as in ch. 12, 2. **quid ageretur**: 'what was going on,' lit.? **possent**: see V. 156, *b*.

2. **omnibus rebus**: 'by the whole state of affairs'; explained by the appositive phrases *et . . . suorum*. **discessu**: freely, 'absence.' **suorum**: referring to the *principibus majoribusque natu* of ch. 13, 4. **neque . . . dato**: freely 'and having no time.' **consilii habendi**: 'for holding a council.' Notice the change from gerundive to gerund; probably due to desire for euphony. **perturbantur**: 'are at a loss,' lit. 'are (so) confused (as to be in doubt).' **-ne . . . an . . . an**: 'whether . . . or . . . or' (V. 38). The three infinitives are subjects of *praestaret*.

3. **cum**: 'as.' **pristini dici**: 'of the day before' (V. 87).

4. **Quo loco**: 'there,' referring to *castra* (V. 127). **qui**: 'those who' (V. 173, *c*). **nostris**: for dat. see V. 52.

5. **suis**: masc. 'their families.' **domo excesserant**: 'had left home' (V. 126). This showed that it was not an inroad for plunder, but a migration. Plutarch tells us that this treachery on Cæsar's part was severely censured at Rome.

CHAP. 15.

Before translating sections 1 and 2, study carefully V. 43 and 48.

1. **Germani**: those of ch. 14, 4. **audito, cum viderent**: 'when they heard . . . and saw.'

2. **reliqua**: 'further,' lit.? **interfecto**: giving the reason for *fuga desperata* (V. 50, vi.). **timore, lassitudine, vi**: with *oppressi*. **perierunt**: from *pereo*.

3. **ad unum**: 'to a man,' lit.? **ex . . . timore**: 'after all their dread of a formidable war,' lit.? Explained by *cum . . . fuisset*. **numerus . . . millium**: *cf.* on ch. 12, 1. **cum**, etc.: trans. by a parenthetic clause beginning with 'for.'

4. **iis**: the envoys of ch. 13, 4-6. **discedendi . . . fecit**: 'gave permission to depart.'

5. **supplicia cruciatusque**: 'vengeance and cruelty,' or more freely 'a cruel punishment.' **veriti**: 'fearing' (V. 44, ii.). **libertatem concessit**: *i.e.*, he kept them with him, but no longer as prisoners.

CHAP. 16.

1. **sibi . . . transeundum**: 'that he would have to,' etc. **illa fuit justissima**: 'this was the most cogent,' *or* 'the strongest was.' **quod**: 'that'; *quod . . . voluit* is in apposition with *illa*. **cum videret**: 'seeing.' **ut . . . venirent**: (V. 27). **rebus . . . timere**: 'be anxious for . . . safety (interests)' (V. 79). **cum intellegerent**: 'if they understood,' lit. 'when they should understand'; for fut. indic. of Cæsar's own thought (V. 150; 175). **et posse et audere**: 'was both powerful and daring enough,' 'had both the power and the courage.'

2. **Accessit etiam quod**: 'besides this,' lit. 'there was added the fact that' (V. 198). **quam commemoravi**: 'which, as I have stated, had crossed,' lit.? (V. 18, vi.). **transisse** = *transiisse* (III. 66, *a*). **proelio**: for dat. see V. 78, v. *c*. **se cum iis conjunxerat**: 'had joined them,' lit.?

3. **quos**: the Sugambri. **intulissent**: see V. 175. **sibi dederent**: 'that they should surrender to him'; for mood see V. 186, 1, *c*, i.

4. **se invito**: 'against his wish,' 'without his leave,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling' (V. 49). **Germanos . . . transire**: subject of *esse* understood with *aequum*. **existimaret**: for an original pres. indic. (V. 60). **cur sui . . . postularet**: 'why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under (lit. belonged to) his sway or power?' For the subjunctive see V. 186, 1, *b*; for the gen. V. 83, i.

5. **qui uni**: 'who alone,' subject of all three pluperfects. **ex**: see V. 86, iii. **premerentur**: for mood see V. 147.

6. **id facere**: 'from doing so' (V. 22, i.). **occupationibus rei publicae**: 'by the pressure of state affairs.' **prohiberetur**: see V. 192. **modo**: distinguish from *modō*. **transportaret**:

'let him take across' (V. 186, 1, *c*). For the two accusatives see V. 69, iv. **ad**: lit. 'with a view to'; trans. 'to give assistance, and hope for the future.' **temporis**: see V. 85, ii.

7. **ejus**: *i.e.*, Cæsar's. **ad**: 'among.' **possint**: 'they could'; for the change to primary sequence see V. 190, vi.

[CHAP. 17.

1. **neque . . . statuebat**: 'nor did he regard it consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people' (V. 83, ii.).

2. **proponebatur**: 'presented itself.' **id sibi contendendum**: 'he must devote all his energies to that end.']

CHAP. 18.

1. **Diebus decem, quibus**: 'within ten days after,' lit. 'within the ten days within which' (V. 131). **coepta erat**: 'had begun' (V. 22, iii.). **opere**: the bridge described in ch. 17. **opere . . . traducitur**: 'the work is finished and the army is led across.'

2. **ad utramque partem**: 'at each end.'

3. **quibus . . . petentibus**: 'on their asking for,' 'to their request for,' etc. This may be dat. of indirect object or abl. absolute.

4. **ex eo tempore quo**: 'ever since,' lit. ? **fuga comparata**: 'had prepared for flight,' lit. ? **hortantibus iis**: modifying *fuga comparata* (V. 50, vi.); 'at the instigation of those of the Tencteri whom,' etc., lit. ? **ex Tencteris**: with *quos* (V. 173, *c*, iii.). **in . . . silvas**: 'in the solitude of the forests,' lit. ? For case see V. 127, iii.

CHAP. 19.

1. **frumentis**: 'the crops.' **si**: 'in case.' **premerentur**: for an original fut. indic. (V. 62; 175). **haec**: 'as follows'; with *haec* sections 2 and 3 are in apposition.

2. **fieri**: 'was being built.' **more suo**; see V. 103, iii.; with *concilio habito*. **in . . . partes**: 'in . . . directions,' lit. ? **uti . . . demigrarent**: following on the idea of *telling* implied in *nuntios dimisisse* (V. 191). Trans. 'instructing them to remove.' **possent**: see V. 32.

3. **hunc**: sc. *locum*. **medium**: 'in the centre'; predicate adj., agreeing with *hunc* (*locum*), and governing *regionum* (V. 86). **exspectare**: depending on *constituisse*. **ibi**: = *hic* of line 9; omit in trans.

4. **confectis, consumptis, arbitratus**: trans. by active verbs introduced by 'as.' *Rem conficere*, to attain an object. **quarum**

rerum causa: 'for which' (V. 173, *b*). **ut . . . injiceret**: 'namely, to inspire the Germans with fear'; for dat. see V. 78, v. *c*. The ut clauses are in apposition with and explanatory of *rebus* (V. 196). **profectum**: distinguish *prŏfectum* from *profectum*. **et ad laudem**, etc.: 'for (lit. with a view to) both prestige and actual advantage.'

CHAP. 20.

1. **exigua**: emphatic from position. **parte reliqua**: equivalent to an *etsi* clause (V. 48); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Cæsar made an effort.' **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **ad septentriones vergit**: 'lies towards the north. **hostibus subministrata**: sc. *esse*; 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. **si**: 'even if.' **deficeret**: 'did not enable him,' lit.? **usui**: see V. 81. **fore**: the subject is contained in the clause *si modo cognovisset*. **adisset**: for *adiisset* (III. 66, *a*). For the mood and tense see V. 187, *b*, i. **genus hominum**: 'the character of the inhabitants.' **quae omnia**: 'all of which,' lit.? (V. 86, iv. *a*). **fere**: with *omnia*.

3. **neque . . . quisquam**: 'no . . . one,' lit.? **illo**: adverb. **iis**: sc. *mercatoribus*. **Gallias**: 'Gaul.' The plural with reference to the division of Gaul among the Belgæ, Galli and Aquitani, with which Cæsar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War: *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*.

4. **vocatis**: trans. by 'although.' **quanta esset . . . portus**: depending on *reperire poterat*. **belli**: 'in war' (V. 85). **uterentur**: 'they had.' **qui essent . . . portus**: 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' **maiorum**: 'larger than usual'; the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. **poterat**: for the imperfect see V. 180, *b*.

CHAP. 21.

1. **Ad haec cognoscenda**: with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum*. **priusquam faceret**: 'before making' (V. 156, *b*). **idoneum**: 'a suitable person.'

2. **ut exploratis . . . revertatur**; 'to find out . . . and return' (V. 48).

3. **Inde**: the straits of Dover are meant.

4. **quam . . . classem**: 'the fleet which.' **ad**: 'for.' **Veneticum bellum**: the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.

5. **dare**: irregularly used for *se daturos esse* (V. 17). **imperio**: see V. 52.

6. **Quibus, eos**: both referring to *legati* (V. 50, iii. fn.). **liberaliter pollicitus**: '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit. ? (V. 203, *d*). **domum**: see V. 125. **una**: adv.

7. **superatis**: referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people the Atrebates were allied. **constituerat**: 'had made.' **ibi**: *i.e.*, among the Atrebates. **his**: of Gaul, not Britain. **magni habebatur**: 'was valued highly'; for *magni* see V. 88, i.

8. **quas . . . civitates**: 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can'; sc. *adire*. **possit**: see V. 175. **adeat**: with the same force as *ut adeat;* so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* (V. 186, 1, *c*, i.). **fidem sequantur**: 'embrace the alliance,' depending on *hortetur*.

9. **regionibus**: 'country.' **quantum**, etc.: 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one'; for *tantum facultatis quantum*, 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' **auderet**: for mood see V. 32.

CHAP. 22.

1. **moratur**: for tense see V. 153. **de . . . consilio**: 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Cæsar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. **quod**, etc.: 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis**: see V. 90. The 'custom' was, as Virgil, the Roman poet, expressed it:

'The ways of peace to proclaim,
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

fecissent: for mood see V. 147. **-que**: joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*. **imperasset**: see on *postulassent*, ch. 6, 3.

2. **satis**: 'quite.' **post tergum**: 'behind him.' **has tantularum**, etc: 'attention to such trifling matters' (V. 85). **Britanniae**: dat. (V. 78, v. *c*); meaning the expedition against Britain. **iis imperat**: 'requires (*or* demands) of them' (V. 55, iii.). **Quibus**: the hostages. **eos**: the Morini. **in fidem**: 'under his protection.'

3. **coactis contractisque**: the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot**: 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as.' **quod**, etc.: 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit.? (V. 86, i.). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit*.

4. **Huc accedebant**: 'besides this there were,' lit. 'to this were added. **ab**: 'at a distance of,' with *millibus;* or used adverbially ='away.' **tenebantur quo minus**, etc.: 'were detained . . .

and prevented from being able,' lit.? *Quo minus* may also be written as one word. **possent**: see V. 139, *a*.

5. **ducendum**: for the gerundive with *do*, here agreeing with *exercitum*, see V. 121.

CHAP. 23.

1. **tertia vigilia**: the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. **solvit**: sc. *naves*. **ulteriorem**: 'farther,' *i.e.*, up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. **A quibus . . . administratum**: 'as these carried out their instructions too slowly,' lit.? For *tardius* see V. 98, vi. The result was that Cæsar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus*. **expositas copias armatas**: 'the armed forces displayed.'

8. **haec**: 'as follows'; more fully explained by *atque . . . continebatur*. **Ita anguste**, etc.: 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), meaning 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.']

4. **dum convenirent**: depending on *exspectavit*; 'till . . . should,' etc. (V. 155, *b*). **ad**: 'until.'

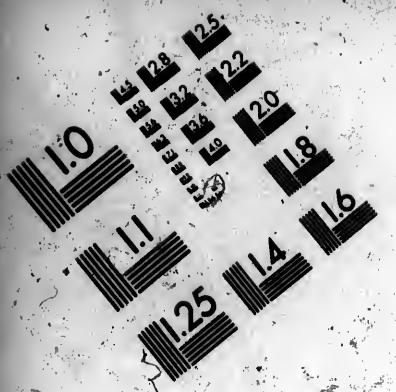
5. **quae fieri vellet**: 'what he wished done' (V. 21). **monuit . . . administrarentur**: 'instructed them to do everything (promptly) at the signal and at the (proper) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' **ut ratio . . . ut res**: *ut* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. **postularent**: for mood see V. 170, i. and 175. **ut quae**: sc. *maritimae res*; 'inasmuch as these'; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (V. 171, i.). **monuit administrarentur**: with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur*; cf. ch. 21, 8 (V. 186, 1, *c*. i.). **ad nutum et ad tempus**: the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. **litore**: abl. absolute; trans. by 'off.'

CHAP. 24.

1. **quo genere**: 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind (*i.e.*, of warriors),' referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis* (V. 173, *c*, ii.). **consuerunt**: cf. on ch. 6, 1. **copiis**: see V. 103, ii. **egredi prohibebant**: see on ch. 4, 3.

2. **has**: referring to what follows. **nisi . . . non**: 'only,' lit.? **militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat**: 'while the sol-



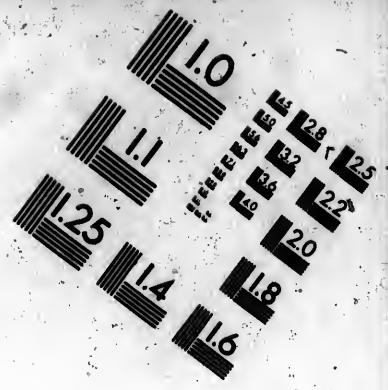
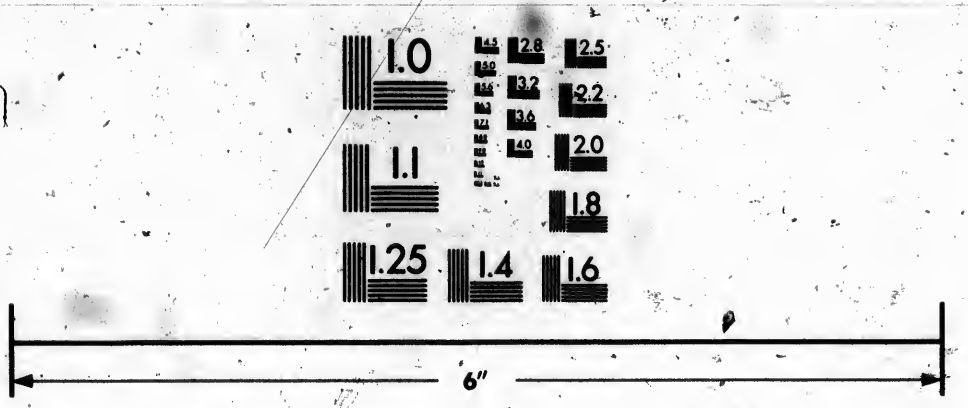
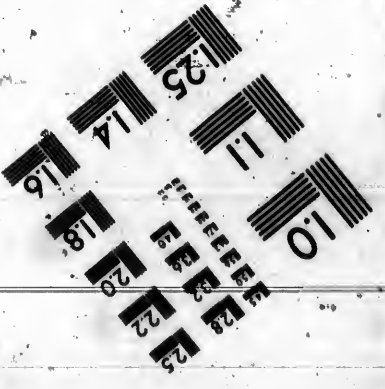


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

diers had to leap down' (V. 120). For the dative see V. 120, i. **ignotis locis**: 'who were unacquainted with the ground'; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown'; abl. absolute (V. 49). So *impeditis manibus*. **oppressis**: dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. **cum illi**: 'whereas the enemy.' **ex aridо**: modifies *conjicerent*. **notissimis locis**: 'being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit.? Cf. on *ignotis locis*, section 2. **insuefactos**: 'who were trained (to this).' **conjicerent, incitarent**: see V. 151, fn.

4. **generis**: see V. 90. **eadem . . . quo**: for agreement see V. 11; for *quo* = 'as' see V. 174. **uti, utebantur**: 'display' *or* 'show.'

CHAP. 25.

1. **naves**: subject of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui*. **quarum**: 'whose.' **inusitatior**: 'less familiar,' *i.e.*, than that of the *naves onerariae*. **et motus**, etc.: 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service.' **ad**: 'on.' **apertum latus**: *i.e.*, the right side, unprotected by shields. **quae res**: 'a manœuvre which,' lit.? **usui**: see V. 81.

2. **remorum motu**: the Britons used sails only with their large vessels. **paulum modo**: 'but only a little.'

3. **atque**: 'and now.' **qui aquilam ferebat**: 'the eagle-bearer' (V. 173, *a*). **ut . . . eveniret**: see V. 27. **ea res**: 'his (lit. that) undertaking.' **legioni**: see V. 79. **inquit**: 'cried'; for position and use see V. 18, vi. **Desilite**: see III. 37. **vultis**: see III. 43. **praestitero**: trans. freely by future; for force of future perfect see V. 184, i.

4. **voce magna**: 'in a loud voice' (V. 103).

5. **inter se**: 'one another,' lit.? (III. 62, *e*). **ne . . . admitteretur**: 'not to incur,' lit.? (V. 27). **dedecus**: *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle. **universi**: 'in a body'; section 6 shows that he is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. **Hos item**, etc.: 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.'

CHAP. 26.

1. **Pugnatum est**: see V. 56. **alius alia ex navi**: 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see V. 168, *a*. **quibuscumque . . . occurrerat**: 'whatever . . . they fell in with.' For dat. see V. 78, v. *c*. For tense see V. 183, *b*. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. **vero**: 'while.' **ubi**: 'whenever.' **adoriebantur**: trans. by 'would' (V. 180, *b*). So *circumsistebant* and *conjiciebant*. **plures**: not 'more.'

3. **universos**: 'the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. **item**: '(and) also.' **quos . . . his**: freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,' without transposing. **jussit, submittebat**: notice the change of tense.

5. **simul**: = *simul atque*. **suis consecutis**: 'with their comrades following' (V. 50, ii.). **neque**: 'but . . . not.' **longius**: 'any distance' (V. 98, vi.). **ad pristinam**, etc.: 'to complete Cæsar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see V. 80, *b*.

CHAP. 27.

1. **proelio**: see V. 99. **daturos**: sc. *se* (V. 18, x.). **quaeque**: two words. **imperasset**: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. **quem supra**, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc., lit.? Cf. ch. 16, 2. **demonstraveram a Caesare**: notice that Cæsar the *writer* (first person) is always distinguished from Cæsar the *commander* (third person). For tense see V. 183, iii.

3. **Hunc, illi**: object and subject respectively of *comprehenderant*. **egressum**: modifying *hunc*. **cum deferret**: 'although (he was) bearing' (V. 65, *a*). **modo**: 'in the capacity of'; or freely, 'as.'

4. **rei**: 'act.' **imprudentiam**: *i.e.*, their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. **ut ignosceretur**: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (V. 57; see also V. 203, *d*).

5. **quod . . . intulissent**: see V. 147. **cum . . . missis . . . petissent**: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (V. 65, *a*). **ignoscere**: sc. *se*: notice the tense (V. 15, *a*). **imprudentiae**: for dat. see V. 52.

6. **arcessitam . . . daturos**: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturos* (V. 41).

7. **suos**: subject of *remigrare*. **agros**: 'the country,' *i.e.*, their lands or homes.

CHAP. 28.

1. **His rebus**: 'by this means,' lit.? **post diem . . . ventum**: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam; post* coming before *die quarto* is felt to have the force of a preposition, and governs the acc. **quartum**: see on ch. 9, 1. **est ventum**: see

V. 56. **naves**: subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. **demonstratum est**: 'mention has been made.' **superiore**: in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem*. **vento**: see V. 103.

2. **viderentur**: 'were in sight.' **posset**: see V. 29. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. **inferiorem**: *i.e.*, towards the S.W. **propius occasum**: cf. on ch. 9, 1. **sui**: 'to themselves' (V. 85).

3. **quae tamen**, etc.: 'and as these had nevertheless (*i.e.*, in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceding, 'however as these.' **necessario . . . profectae . . . petierunt**: 'they were compelled to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? **adversa nocte**: 'in spite of the darkness,' lit. 'the night meeting them' (V. 46).

CHAP. 29.

1. **nocte**: that of August 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. **esset**: 'there was' (V. 31). **qui dies**: 'a time which.' **maritimos**: 'on the sea.' **aestus maximos**: 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. **consuevit**: 'is wont,' or trans. by 'usually.' **incognitum**: the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 30 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. **uno**: 'one and the same.' **naves . . . complebat**: to keep the Latin order trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias . . . afflictabat*. **quibus**: 'in (lit. with) which.' **transportandum . . . curaverat**: 'he had had . . . brought over' (V. 121). **ad**: 'at.' **neque ulla**: 'and no,' lit.? **administrandi, [illegible]liandi**: the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. **administrandi**: sc. *naves*.

3. **magna**, etc.; 'great alarm inevitably (*or* as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.; lit.? **id quod**: lit. 'a thing which'; *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*, and *quod* is subject of *accidere* (V. 173, *d*). **exercitus**: for case see V. 25.

4. **neque aliae**: trans. by 'no other.' **possent**: see V. 32. **omnibus constabat**: 'it was generally agreed'; more lit. 'agreed among all'; for dat. see V. 80, *b*, ii. **hiemari oportere**: 'that they must winter' (V. 56). **in hiemem**: 'for the winter.'

CHAP. 30.

1. This long sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., at *collocuti*, *transportaverat* and *producere*; trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt; intellegebant et cognoscebant; itaque duxerunt; nam confidebant*. **principes**: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. **inter se**: 'with one another.' **Romanis deesse**: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? **quae**: referring to *castro-*

rum. **hoc angustiora**: 'all the smaller'; more lit. 'more contracted for this reason' (V. 101, ii. *c*).

2. **optimum factu**: 'the best thing to do'; for supine see V. 117. **duxerunt**: 'concluded.' **prohibere, producere**: subjects of *esse*. **rem**: 'the campaign.' **superatis**: trans. by 'if' (V. 48). So *interclusis*. **confidebant**: see V. 146.

3. **rursus**: not 'a second time,' but referring to the change of attitude. **agris**: as in ch. 27, 7. **deducere**: 'to bring down,' *i.e.*, to the coast.

CHAP. 31.

1. **ex eventu navium**: 'from what had happened to his ships,' lit.? **ex eo, quod**: 'from the fact that' (V. 198). **fore**, etc.: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' **accidit**: for mood see V. 175, i. **ad**: 'for *or* against.' **subsidia**: 'resources.' **comparabat**: 'he proceeded to secure' (V. 180, *d*).

2. **quae . . . naves, earum**: = *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which'; see V. 173, *c*, i. **quae**: sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari*. **res**: 'purpose.' **erant**: for mood see V. 175, i.

3. **cum . . . administrarentur**: 'as the soldiers worked,' lit.? Cf. ch. 23, 2. **studio**: see V. 103. **amissis**: trans. by 'although.' **reliquis . . . effecit**: freely, 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' lit. 'he brought it about (*or* managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. **navigari**: see V. 56. **posset**: see V. 33, v. **effecit**: notice the change of tense (V. 180, *c*).

CHAP. 32.

1. **geruntur**: see V. 153. **ex consuetudine**: 'as usual.' **frumentatum**: the supine (V. 116). **ad**: 'up to.' **interposita**: *i.e.*, between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum**: 'as' *or* 'for,' explaining the preceding words. **hominum**: 'of the natives.' **ventitaret**: 'kept coming' (III. 74, *b*) **quam consuetudo ferret**: 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (V. 175). **in ea . . . partem**: 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see V. 173, *b*.

2. **id, quod erat**: 'as was actually the case,' lit.? *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid . . . consilii*. **aliquid consilii**: see V. 86, i. **initum**: sc. *esse*. **in stationibus**: 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. **in stationem succedere**: 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. **reliquas**: there were ten cohorts in a legion. **armari**: 'to arm themselves' (V. 164, iv.).

3. **paulo longius**: 'some little distance' (V. 98, vi.). **conferta**: trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. **erat reliqua**: 'remained,' lit. ?

5. **dispersos**: sc. *nostros*; trans. by a 'when' clause; so *depositis, occupatos*. **incertis ordinibus**; giving the reason for *perturbaverant*. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Cæsar's arrival in section 3.

CHAP. 33.

1. **hoc**: 'as follows.' **ex essedis pugnae**: 'of chariot fighting'; see V. 85, iv. fn. **per omnes partes**: 'in all directions.' **ipso terrore equitum**: 'by the very (*or* mere) terror caused by their horses'; for gen. see V. 84. **ordines**: *i.e.*, of their opponents. **equitum**: *i.e.*, their own. Cæsar had no cavalry with him. **insinuaverunt**: see V. 182, *c*.

2. **ita**: 'in such a way.' **illi**: *i.e.*, those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **habeant**: see V. 29.

3. **tantum efficiunt**: 'become so expert,' lit. ? **loco**: 'ground.' **per**: 'along.'

CHAP. 34.

1. **quibus rebus**: abl. of means. **perturbatis nostris**: may be dative with *auxilium tulit*, or abl. absolute. **novitate**: trans. by 'because of' (V. 96). **adventu**: see V. 130.

2. **quo facto**: 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done' (V. 48). **ad**: 'for,' depending on *alienum*. **suo loco**: 'on his own ground' (V. 127, ii.). **brevi . . . intermisso**: 'after a short interval,' lit. ?

3. **haec**: referring to the whole incident. **occupatis**: trans. by 'while.' **qui erant reliqui**: 'those who remained,' *i.e.*, the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (V. 173, *a*). **discesserunt**: *i.e.*, from their homes to their strongholds.

4. **secutae sunt**: 'there followed' (V. 12, iv.). **continerent, prohiberent**: for mood see V. 32.

5. **quanta**: 'what' *or* 'how favorable.' **sui liberandi**: see on ch. 13, 5. **expulissent**: cf. on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

CHAP. 35.

1. **idem . . . fore**: 'that the same thing would happen.' **ut . . . effugerent**: 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (V. 197). **si**: 'even if.' **essent pulsi**: for mood and tense cf. on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2. **dictum est**: see V. 56.

2. **diutius**: 'any longer,' *i.e.*, than the beginning of the battle. (V. 98, vi.)

3. **secuti . . . occiderunt**: sc. *nostri*. **tanto spatio**: freely, 'as far,' lit. 'within (*i.e.*, over) as great a space' (V. 127). **quantum . . . efficere**: 'as their speed and strength allowed,' *or* 'as their running powers held out' (a case of hendiadys), lit.? *Cursus* =rate of running, *vires*=powers of endurance.

CHAP. 36.

2. **His numerum duplicavit**: 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. **die**: 'the time,' *or* 'the season'; for gender see III. 52, *c*. fn. 2. **propinqua . . . navibus**: trans. by 'as.'

3. **mediam noctem**: 'midnight' (V. 86, iv. *b*).

4. **quae**: 'the ships.' **ex . . . duae**: we should say 'two of the transports,' lit.? **quos reliqui**: 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense construction (V. 13, N.B.). **infra**: *i.e.*, towards the S.W.

CHAP. 37.

1. **Quibus navibus**: the two just mentioned. **castra**: that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. **proficiscens**: 'on setting out' (V. 41). **primo**: adverb. **non ita magno**: 'with not a very large,' lit.? **si . . . nollent**: 'if they did not wish to be killed' (V. 175); for *sese*, see V. 22, v.

2. **ad clamorem**: 'in answer to the shouting.' **hominum**: as in ch. 32, 1. **suis auxilio**: 'to aid his men,' lit.? (V. 81.)

3. **amplius horis**: 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (V. 98), or the abl. of time within which (V. 131), uninfluenced by *amplius*; cf. on ch. 11, 1. **paucis**: 'but a few."

4. **Postea quam**: answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

CHAP. 38.

2. **siccitates**: trans. by singular; the plural is, according to Latin idiom, due to the plural *paludum* (III. 53, *c*, 4). **quo . . . haberent**: 'had no place to which to retreat,' more lit., 'had not whither to retreat' (V. 26, i.). **quo . . . usi**: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* see V. 13, i. **perfugio**: 'as a place of refuge' (V. 55, v.). **fuerant usi**: see V. 182, i. **in potestatem venerunt**: 'fell into the hands,' lit.?

3. **omnes**: nom. **in silvas**: cf. on ch. 18, 4.

4. **neglexerunt**: add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus**: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris**: 'in consequence of despatches from Cæsar.' **dierum**: see V. 87. **supplicatio**: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples at Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Cæsar had written, "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."

NOTES ON CÆSAR, BOOK V.

CHAP. 1.

1. **consulibus**: see V. 49. **discedens ab**: 'on leaving.' **Italiam**: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Cæsar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **quam plurimas possent**: sc. *aedificare*; 'as many as they could' (V. 174, i.). For mood of *possent* see V. 175. **uti aedificandas curarent**: 'to have built' (V. 121).

2. **Ad**: 'for.' **onerandi**: trans. by 'in.' **facit humiliores**: sc. *eas*. **quam quibus**: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (V. 98, iii.). **nostro mari**: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. **id eo magis**: 'all the more so'; lit. '(he does) that the more because of this.' **minus magnos**: 'smaller.' **transportandam**: for agreement see V. 12, *b*, ii. **reliquis maribus**: the various parts of the Mediterranean were given separate names by the Romans.

3. **actuarias**: pred. adj.; *naves actuariae* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. **fieri**: for infin. pass. with *impero* see V. 22, vii. **quam ad rem**: 'for which purpose,' *or* 'to which end.'

4. **Ea quae sunt**: 'what is.' **Hispania**: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. **Ipse**: in contrast with the doings of the *legati* of section 1. **conventibus**: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. **Illyricum**: another of Cæsar's three provinces. **finitimam**: *i.e.*, to the *Pirustæ*. **audiebat**: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

6. **imperat**: cf. on Bk. IV. 22, 2.

7. **nihil**: 'none,' lit.? **publico consilio**: as opposed to the work of irresponsible individuals. **demonstrant**: coordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. **omnibus rationibus**: 'in every way.'

8. **ad**: 'by.' **diem**: for gender see on Bk. IV. 36, 2. **fecerint**: 'they do,' lit.? For mood and tense see V. 192.

9. **ad diem**: 'by the day (specified),' **dat**: 'he appoints.'

CHAP. 2.

2. **circuitis . . . invenit**: 'he visits . . . and finds.' **studio**: with *instructas*. **in summa inopia**: '(although) amidst,' or freely, 'although there was,' etc. **cujus**: sc. *generis naves*; trans. freely 'which,' as though the object of *demonstravimus*. **longas**: sc. *naves*. **neque multum**, etc.: 'and that they are almost ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this that,' etc. (V. 139, *c*). **diebus**: see V. 131.

3. **Collaudatis**: more emphatic than *laudatis*. **negotio**: see V. 78, v. *c*. **quid fieri velit**: cf. on Bk. IV. 23, 5. **omnes**: sc. *naves*. **portum Itium**: the exact locality is unknown. **millium**: see V. 87. **huic rei**: 'for this purpose,' *i.e.*, for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. **satis militum**: 'a sufficient force,' lit.? (V. 86, i.)

4. **concilia**: Cæsar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. **veniebant, parebant**: see V. 180, *b*. **imperio**: see V. 52.

CHAP. 3.

1. **plurimum**: adverb. **supra**: Bk. III. speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he dwells on their position here.

2. **inter se**: 'with each other,' lit.? (III. 62, *e*.)

3. **alter**: here 'the latter,' lit.? **cognitum est**: see V. 56. **se . . . futuros**: with *confirmavit*. **in officio**: 'true to their allegiance,' lit.? **populi**: objective gen. (V. 85); trans. by 'with,' not 'of.'

4. **cogere**: depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*iis*)*que* with *parare*. **per**: 'by reason of.' **ingenti magnitudine**: modifying *quae* with the force of an appositive adj.; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. **medios**: see V. 86, iv. *b*.

5. **Cingetorigis**: cf. on *populi*, section 3. **de suis privatim rebus petere**: 'to seek their own private advantage,' lit.? **privatim**: the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. **civitati**: see V. 79; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. **possent**: for mood see V. 147.

6. **sese noluisse**: sc. 'saying' or 'who say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (V. 191). **idcirco**: explained by *quo . . . laberetur*. **quo**

. . . **contineret**: see V. 28, iii. **discessu**: abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. **sese**: with *permissurum*. **suas, civitatis**: both modifying *fortunas*.

CHAP. 4.

1. **qua de causa**: 'why.' **instituto**: 'original,' lit. ? **omnibus . . . comparatis**: modifying the preceding words; trans. by 'after.'

2. **evocaverat**: sc. Cæsar. **consolatus**: sc. *est*; because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. **principibus, hos**: the same persons; see V. 50, iii. fn. **quod**: conjunction. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' **merito . . . fieri**: 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' lit. ? **magni interesse**: see V. 53, *b*, ii.; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. **ejus . . . cujus . . . perspexisset**: 'of one whose,' etc.; for subj. = 'seeing that he had observed,' see V. 171. **suos**: referring to *ejus* (V. 165, ii.). **tam**: omit in trans.

4. **factum**: noun. **suam . . . minui**: in apposition with *id factum*; 'that . . . should be lessened.' **qui fuisset**: 'whereas (*or* while) he had been' (V. 171). **animo**: see V. 105. **hoc dolore**: 'at this grievance' (V. 96). Cf. on *qua spe*, Bk. IV. 6, 4.

CHAP. 5.

2. **factae erant, erant profectae**: for mood see V. 175, i. **eodem**: adverb. **omnibus rebus**: 'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. **numero**: modifying *millium*; for abl. see V. 102. **millium**: modifying *equitatus* (V. 87); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. **obsidum loco**: 'as hostages.' **cum abesset**: 'while he was absent,' for fut. ind. of the actual thought (V. 187, *b*; 178, ii.).

CHAP. 6.

1. **ante . . . dictum est**: 'we have spoken before.' Bk. I. tells how four years before Dumnorix had stirred up hostility to Cæsar among the Ædui. Cæsar had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. **eum**: sc. *esse*. **animi**: 'pride'; for case see V. 87.

2. **Accedebat huc quod**: 'besides this'; more lit. 'to this there was added the fact that' (V. 198). **deferri**: notice the tense (V. 15, *a*). **dictum**: 'statement.' **neque**: 'but yet . . . not.'

3. **factum**: sc. *esse*. **Ille**: 'Dumnorix.' **omnibus**: 'all manner of.' **petere contendit**: 'sought earnestly,' lit ? **quod . . . timeret**: 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for mood see V. 177. **diceret**: for mood see V. 177, ii.

4. **id**: the request to be left behind. **sibi**: 'him'; indirect object.

5. **territare**: historical infin. (V. 112); for form see III. 74, *b*. **fieri**: in trans. supply 'saying' from *territare* (V. 191). **ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret**: see V. 197 and 196. **nobilitate**: see V. 93. **quos**: trans. after its antecedent *hos* (V. 5, i.). **ut . . . traductos necaret**: 'to carry over . . . and kill them' (V. 43).

6. **interponere, poscere**: cf. on *territare*, section 5. **quod**: 'whatever.' **intellexissent**: for mood and tense see V. 187, *b*, i. **administrarent**: see V. 196. **deferebantur**: not once only, hence imperf.

CHAP. 7.

1. **tantum dignitatis**: see V. 86, i. **coercendum**: sc. *esse*. **quibuscumque . . . posset**: 'by whatever means he could'; for mood see V. 175.

2. **longius**: 'still farther,' *i.e.*, than at present. **prospiciendum**: sc. *esse statuebat* (V. 56). **quid nocere**: 'to do any harm'; for acc. see V. 72. **sibi**: *i.e.*, Cæsar.

3. **commoratus**: 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see V. 44, ii. **omnis**: omit in trans. **ut . . . contineret**: see V. 27; so *cognosceret*.

4. **milites**: *i.e.*, belonging to the legions; cf. on Bk. IV. 11, 6.

5. **impeditis**: 'while . . . were occupied.' **insciente Cæsare**: 'without Cæsar's knowledge' (V. 49). **domum**: 'for home' (V. 125).

6. **omnibus rebus**: 'everything else.' **retrahi**: cf. on *fieri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. **faciat**: 'offers'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (V. 187, *b*). **se absente**: 'in his (*i.e.*, Cæsar's) absence.' **qui . . . neglexisset**: 'seeing that he,' etc.; for subj. cf. on *perspexisset*, ch. 4, 3. **praesentis**: 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.'

8. **enim**: 'in fact.' **clamitans**: for form see III. 74, *b*. **liberum, liberae civitatis**: both predicates of *se esse*; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (V. 86, v.).

9. **ut**: 'as.' **imperatum erat**: see V. 57.

CHAP. 8.

1. **continente**: for form see III. 50, *b*; elsewhere in Cæsar, *continenti*. **pro tempore et pro re**: 'as time and circumstances suggested,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. **pari quem**: 'the same as' (V. 174). **ad**: 'about.' **provectus**, etc.: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. **longius**: 'too far' (V. 98, vi.). **orta luce**: 'at sunrise,' lit.? **sub sinistra**: the current had carried his vessels out of the channel into the North Sea. **relictam**: 'behind him.'

3. **qua**: 'where'; adv. See Bk. IV. 23, 6. **egressum**: a noun.

4. **admodum laudanda**: 'deserving of great praise' (V. 118). **vectoriis . . . navigiis**: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' **non intermisso**: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause coordinate with *adaequarunt*.

5. **Accessum est navibus**: 'the ships reached,' lit.? (V. 56). *Navibus* is abl. of means. **neque hostis**: 'but no enemy.'

6. **cum**: 'although.' **quae cum annotinis**, etc.: 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see V. 86, iv. *a*. **quisque**: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. **sui commodi**: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (V. 83, i.), here expressing purpose. **amplius octingentae**: for case cf. on Bk. IV. 12, 1.

CHAP. 9.

1. **castris**: for dat. see V. 78, ii., or 81. **qui . . . essent**: 'to protect the ships,' lit.? (V. 81). **de tertia vigilia**: 'in the third watch'; *de* suggests a portion of the watch being taken. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. **eo minus**: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. **navibus**: see V. 79. **relinquebat**: notice the tense. **et**: omit in trans. **praesidio**: for dat. see V. 78, v. *c*.

3. **equitatu**: see V. 103, ii. **ex loco superiore**: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. **nostros prohibere**: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. **egregie munitum**: 'well protected.' **opere**: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. **ut videbantur**: 'as it seemed,' lit.? (V. 18, vii.)

6. **ingredi prohibebant**: cf. on Bk. IV. 4, 3.

7. **testudine**: a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a

continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' **aggere**: this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. **ad**: 'close to.' **paucis**: 'but a few.'

8. **eos**: *i.e.*, *milites*, subject of *prosequi*. **fugientes**: object of *prosequi*; see V. 44, i. *a*. **longius**: cf. on ch. 8, 2. **munitioni**: see V. 81.

CHAP. 10.

1. **postridie**, etc.: cf. on Bk. IV. 13, 4. **in**: 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' **expeditionem**: strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. **aliquantum itineris**: 'some distance,' lit.? **extremi**: 'only the last (*or* rearguard),' *i.e.*, of the troops sent out. **neque subsisterent**: 'would (lit. did) not hold'; for mood see V. 175; for tense see V. 180, *b*.

3. **eo concursu**: 'the collision thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

CHAP. 11.

1. **revocari**: *i.e.*, from pursuing the enemy.

2. **quae**: 'as' (V. 174). **sic**: 'to the extent,' limiting the previous words *eadem . . . perspicit*. **amissis**, etc.: 'with the loss of,' etc. **reliquae posse viderentur**: 'the rest, it seemed, could,' lit.? (V. 29; 18, vii.)

4. **scribit ut instituat**: see V. 28, v. **iis legionibus**: 'with the aid of,' etc. (V. 99, i.). **posset, sunt**: for the mood see V. 175, i. For the change of tense see V. 190, vi.

5. **multae**: for the agreement see V. 11. **operae ac laboris**: see V. 87, iii. **commodissimum**: 'the best plan.' **naves**: see V. 110, fn.

6. **ne nocturnis**, etc.: freely 'not allowing the soldiers' work to cease even at night,' lit.? **ad**: 'with respect to.'

7. **quas ante**: sc. *reliquerat*.

8. **summa imperii**, etc.: 'the chief command and oversight of the war,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the direction of the war.' **summa**: a noun. **divisit**: trans. by changing the voice. **a mari**: *i.e.*, from the south shore where Cæsar had landed.

9. **Huic cum reliquis civitatibus**: 'between this man and the other states'; for dat. see V. 78, v. c; similarly *bello imperioque*.

CHAP. 12.

1. **quos . . . dicunt**: *quos* is subject of *natos (esse)*; *proditum (esse)* depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos (esse)*. Trans. freely, 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' etc. **memoria**: abl. of means.

2. **pars**: sc. *incolitur*. **quī omnes**: 'all of whom' (V. 86, iv. *a*). **īs**: 'the.' **quibus . . . pervenerunt**: freely 'from which they have sprung and have come there.' **cīvitatibus**: see V. 173, *b*.

3. **aedificia**: sc. *sunt*. **consimilia**; appositive, not predicative. **Gallicis**: sc. *aedificiis*; 'those of the Gauls.'

4. **aut . . . aut**: 'partly . . . partly.'

5. **mediterraneis**: the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to, Cæsar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an inland district. **maritimis**: iron was once mined in the south of England, now chiefly in the north. **ejus**: *i.e.*, iron, which, being a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native tribes, even where it is abundant. **importato**: in emphatic position, 'the bronze they use is imported' (V. 3, *a*). **cujusque**: 'every.' **praeter**, etc.: an error on Cæsar's part.

6. **fas**: sc. *esse*. **haec**: neut. plur. referring to the animals just mentioned. **animi**: 'amusement.' **Loca**: 'the climate.' **remissioribus**: 'less severe' (V. 44, i. *b*); for case see V. 49.

CHAP. 13.

1. **natura**: 'in shape' (V. 102). **triquetra**: sc. *est*. **cujus**: 'of it.' **alter**: 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. **ad**: 'at.' **quo**: adverb.

2. **alterum**: sc. *latus*; 'the second side.' **ad Hispaniam**: as the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant places. **qua ex parte**: see V. 127, v. **dimidio**: see V. 101. **pari spatio**, etc.: freely 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain'; lit. 'of the same extent of distance across as is (the distance across) from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see V. 105; with *est* sc. *transmissus*; for *atque* see V. 174.

3. **hoc medio cursu**: 'the middle of this passage,' *i.e.*, to Ireland. **Mona**: this name was afterwards given to Anglesea, but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. **subjectae**: sc. *esse*. **insulae**: the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. **nonnulli**: though Cæsar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. **sub**: 'at the time of.' **esse**: the subject is *noctem*.

4. **Nos**: contrasted with *nonnulli*. **reperiebamus**: trans. by

'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Cæsar's stay. **nisi**: 'except that.' **ex aqua**: 'by water,' *i.e.*, with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. **ut . . . opinio**: 'as their belief goes'; freely 'as they believe.' **illorum**: referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. **millium**: sc. *passuum*; for case see V. 87, iii.

6. **Tertium**: sc. *latus*. **angulus**: the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. **in**: 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. **vicies centum**: 'two thousand.' **millium**: for case cf. on section 5.

CHAP. 14.

1. **qui**: see V. 173, *a*. **quae regio**: see V. 173, *c*. ii. **omnis**: 'entirely.'

2. **Interiores plerique**: 'most of those in the interior'; *plerique* an adj. modifying *interiores* used as a substantive. **lacte**: cf. on Bk. IV. 1, 8. **hoc**: 'thus,' lit. 'this' (V. 101, ii. *c*). **aspectu**: see V. 102.

3. **sunt**: freely 'they have.' **capillo, parte**: see V. 105, i.

4. **Uxores communes**: acc. Cæsar is probably in error on this point. **deni duodenique**: 'in groups of ten or twelve'; see III. 61, *c*, 4. **-que**: lit. 'and (in other cases).' Cf. in English 'three and four times a day.'

5. **si qui**: sc. *liberi*; 'if any' (V. 166, *a*). **habentur**: 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (V. 12, *c*). **quo**: adv. = *ad quos*; 'to whom.'

CHAP. 15.

1. **tamen ut**: 'yet so that.' **omnibus partibus**: 'everywhere.' **fuerint, compulerint**: for tense see V. 33, iii.

2. **compluribus**: *i.e.*, of the Britons. **cupidius**: see V. 98, vi.

3. **spatio**: *i.e.*, of time; cf. section 4. **castrorum**: a camp was made at the end of each day's march.

4. **duabusque**: trans. by 'when.' **subsidio**: 'to their aid' (V. 81). **atque his**: 'and these too.' **primis**: apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. **cum**: 'although.' **intermisso loci spatio**: 'leaving an interval.' **inter se**: with *intermisso*. **perterritis**: trans. by 'as.' **per medios**: 'between them,' *i.e.*, through the *perexiguum spatium*. **seque . . . receperunt**: not meaning 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that they charged back again through the open space to their original position.

CHAP. 16.

1. **dimicaretur**: see V. 56. **nostros**: the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse*. **cedentes**: acc.; see V. 44, i. *a*. **possent**: see V. 175. **ab signis discedere**: they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. **minus**: 'not well.'

2. **autem**: 'while.' **proelio**: see V. 99. **illi**: 'the enemy.' **cederent**: see V. 175. **cum**: 'whenever.' **removissent**: for the mood and tense see V. 149 and 186, 2. **nostros**: here = *equites*.

3. **Equestris**: with *proelii*. **ratio**: 'regular method,' *or* 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in section 2. **cedentibus**: either dat. of the participle used substantively, as in section 1, and referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood; cf. on *resistentibus*, Bk. IV. 12, 2. In either case Cæsar is thinking of the danger to his own men. **inferebat**: 'brought' (V. 180, *b*).

4. **Accedebat huc ut . . . proeliarentur**: cf. on ch. 6, 2; for mood see V. 197. **intervallis**: see V. 103. **alios alii**: 'one another' (V. 168, *a*). **-que**: 'and thus.'

CHAP. 17.

1. **rari**: 'here and there.' **lenius**: 'with less vigor.'

2. **tres**: an unusually large force; cf. Bk. IV. 32, 1. **cum**: 'under.' **ad . . . advolaverunt**: see V. 78, v. *b*. **sic uti . . . absisterent**: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit. 'They were not afraid to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers.

3. **subsidio**: for abl. (= 'in') with *confisi* see V. 107, ii. **praecipites**: acc. **egerunt**: see V. 155, *a*.

4. **sui colligendi**: see V. 119, iv.

5. **Ex**: 'after.' **quae . . . auxilia**: the *majores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. **discesserunt**: 'disbanded.' **summis copiis**: 'with their full force' (V. 103).

CHAP. 18.

1. **consilio**: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. **Tamesim**: for form see III. 50, *b*. **in fines**: see V. 127, iv. **hoc**: 'here,' 'at this'; sc. *loco*.

2. **animum advertit**: also written *animadvertit*, as in Bk. IV. 32, 3. **ad**: 'on.'

3. **praefixis**: driven into the face of the bank. **defixae**: driven into the bed of the river.

5. **ea, eo**: 'such' (V. 161). **cum . . . exstarent**: 'although only their heads were above water,' lit.? (V. 101). **-que**: 'but.'

CHAP. 19.

1. **ut . . . demonstravimus**: with *deposita spe*. **supra**: ch. 17, 5. **amplioribus copiis**: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit.? **relictis**: trans. freely by 'keep.' **servabat**: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see V. 180, *b*. **quibus**: 'where,' more lit. 'through which' (V. 99, ii. *a*).

2. **cum**: 'whenever.' **ejecerat**: for mood and tense see V. 149. **liberius**: with *ejecerat*; for meaning see V. 98, vi.; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. **vilis**: see V. 99, ii. *a*. **periculo equitum**: 'danger to cavalry'; for gen. see V. 85. **hoc metu**: 'through fear of this,' lit.? (V. 205, *c*.)

3. **Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur**: 'the only course left was for Cæsar not to allow his men to leave,' etc. For *ut . . . pateretur* as subject clause see V. 197, fn.; for *discedi* see V. 56. **tantum noceretur**: freely 'to do as much harm' (V. 72; 57). **in**: 'in the way of.' **labore atque itinere**: 'laborious marching' (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids.

CHAP. 20.

1. **Trinobantes**: with *mittunt*, section 2. **ex qua . . . vitaverat**: this parenthesis may be translated after *legatos . . . mittunt*, section 2, and broken at *cujus pater*, thus: 'The Trinobantes send, etc.; from this state, etc.; his father, etc.; they promise, etc.' **fidem secutus**: 'attaching himself to.' lit.? **continentem Galliam**: 'the mainland of Gaul' (V. 89, i.). **obtinuerat**: *obtineo* does not mean 'obtain' (V. 203, *f*, iii.). **ipse**: 'while he himself,' or 'but who himself' (V. 170, iv.).

2. **sese dedituros**: sc. *se* as subject, *sese* here being object.

3. **Cassivellauni**: 'on the part of C.' *or* 'at the hands of C.' (V. 84). **mittat qui praesit**: 'to send (some one) to govern'; cf. on Bk. IV. 11, 6.

4. **exercitui**: see V. 79. **ad numerum**: 'to the required number.' Note the asyndeton in the last sentence, and also *hi, eos* and *illi* of the same persons.

CHAP. 21.

1. **defensis**: *i.e.*, against Cassivellaunus. **militum**: cf. on *Cassivellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. **his**: sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. **quo**: adverb. **satis magnus**: 'a considerable.' **convenerit**: for mood and tense see V. 186, 2; 187, *b*.

3. **oppidum vocant**: 'call it a town'; the object of *vocant* is found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other

hand, had regular towns in which they dwelt. **silvas impeditas**: 'a piece of woods difficult of access.' **munierunt**: see V. 149.

4. **opere**: cf. on ch. 9, 4. **ex**: 'on' (V. 205, *b*). **hunc**: 'it'; lit. 'this (place).'

5. **morati**: 'after holding out.' **non tulerunt**: 'could not withstand.'

6. **repertus**: sc. *est*. **multi**: 'many (of the enemy).'

CHAP. 22.

1. **quibus regionibus . . . praeerant**: 'over which . . . ruled' (V. 78, v. *c*). **his**: *i.e.*, the kings. **navalia castra**: see ch. 11, 5.

2. **incolumes**: acc. with *suos*, which is identical with *nostri*.

3. **per**: 'through the mediation of' (V. 99, i.).

4. **repentinos motus**: see Bk. IV. 5. **neque multum**: 'and little.' **in annos singulos**: 'yearly,' lit. 'for the years one by one.' **vectigalis**: see V. 86, i. **penderet**: 'should pay'; for mood see V. 186, 1, *b*, i.

5. **interdicit atque imperat**: emphatic repetition; 'he absolutely forbids . . . to harm,' *or* 'he expressly orders . . . not to harm.' **neu**: 'or,' lit. ? (V. 28, ii.)

CHAP. 23.

2. **commeatibus**: for abl. see V. 103.

3. **tanto numero**: see Bk. IV. 22, 3 and 4, and Bk. V. 2, 2, and 8, 6. **tot navigationibus**: 'although there were so many passages' (V. 49). **portaret**: 'had on board'; the subj. may be by attraction (V. 177, i.) (so *remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curaverat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or may perhaps be characteristic (V. 32).

4. **et . . . et**: dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply; trans. 'both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,' etc. **prioris commeatus**: sc. *navibus* (V. 87). **postea**: *i.e.*, after Cæsar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. **faciendas curaverat**: cf. on ch. 1, 1. **numero**: for abl. see V. 102. **sexaginta**: acc. agreeing with *quas*. **locum caperent**: 'reached their destination.' **caperent, rejicerentur**: sc. *sic accidit uti*.

5. **quod**: 'for.' **necessario collocavit**: cf. on Bk. IV. 28, 3.

6. **consecuta**: see V. 50, ii. **cum solvisset**; freely, 'he set sail . . . and.' **inita vigilia**: 'at the beginning of the watch.'

PART V.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND TRANSLATION AT SIGHT.

I. RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.[1]

I. Order of Words.

1. Because of its wealth of inflections, Latin admits much greater freedom of order than English does, without a corresponding loss of clearness.

The order of words in Latin is not, however, purely haphazard although no invariable rules exist for their position in a sentence; there are certain arrangements which are normal or usual, and which should be varied only for some definite purpose, such as to secure emphasis or to promote euphony.

2. In the normal arrangement of a simple sentence, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first; the verb comes last, preceded by its modifiers or objects; as,

All these differ from one another in language: **HI omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.**

3. This order is often changed, especially in the case of:

1. As the contents of this chapter are intended chiefly for reference, and find their application in all the exercises that follow, no special exercise has been based upon it.

(*a*) EMPHASIS.—This is often secured by putting words other than the subject at the beginning of a sentence, or words other than the verb at the end; as,

Greece was freed by the sagacity of one man: **Ūnīus virī prūdentiā Graecia līberāta est.**

Other route had they none: **Aliud iter habēbant nūllum.**

Often, too, emphasis is secured by separating two words in agreement. Antithesis (or emphatic opposition) is generally expressed by reversing in the second clause the order of the first (*Chiasmus*).

(*b*) CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.—At the beginning of a sentence are regularly placed words or phrases which refer to the previous sentence or some part of it, and which thus serve as a connecting link, leading from the known to the unknown;[1] as,

Within those woods (just mentioned) *the enemy kept themselves in hiding*: **Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant.**

The same day envoys came to Cæsar: **Eōdem diē lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt.**

4. (*a*) **The modifiers of a noun.**—i. Cardinal numerals, adjectives denoting size and weight, and pronominal adjectives commonly precede; as, *Four days*: **Quattuor diēs.** *Large forces*: **Māgnae cōpiae.** *This part*: **Haec pars.** *After their custom*: **Suō mōre.**

ii. Ordinal numerals, other adjectives (unless emphatic), genitives and words in apposition commonly follow; as, *The third year*: **Annus tertius.** *The Roman people*: **Populus Rōmānus.** *Part of the summer*: **Pars aestātis.**

iii. Where a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the preferred order is adjective, genitive, noun; as, *Immense size of frame*: **Ingēns corporum māgnitūdō.** This does not apply to the partitive genitive, however; as, *A large part of Gaul*: **Māgna pars Galliae.**

iv. When two adjectives or two genitives connected by a conjunction modify a noun, it is commonly placed either before both or after both.

When an adjective or genitive modifies two nouns connected by a conjunction, it commonly precedes both.

(*b*) **The modifiers of a verb.**—Either the direct object or an adverb directly qualifying the action of the verb is, as a rule,

1. To mark this connection Latin constantly uses *qui* (the so-called coordinate relative) for *hic* or *is*; see section 172.

placed immediately before a verb; the indirect object commonly precedes the direct object; and farthest removed of all are adverbial expressions of place, time, cause or means.

(*c*) **Pronouns.**—i. Relative and interrogative pronouns are regularly the first words in their clause, preceding even a conjunction and (if used adjectively) a preposition; as, *When Cæsar was informed of these things:* **Quibus dē rēbus cum Caesar certior factus esset.**

ii. Personal pronouns are apt to be placed in emphatic positions, and where two personal or possessive pronouns occur in the same clause they are generally placed close together.[1]

(*d*) **Adverbs** commonly precede the words they modify. But *quoque* and *quidem* always, and *ferē* generally, follow.

(*e*) **Prepositions.**—i. These precede the words they govern, with the exception of *cum*, which is regularly suffixed to the ablative of the personal, reflexive and relative pronouns.

ii. A preposition is often separated from its noun by a modifier of that noun; as, *Into the land of the Æduī:* **In Aeduōrum fīnēs.**

iii. A monosyllabic preposition is often placed between an adjective and its noun; as, *On the other side:* **Alterā ex parte.**

(*f*) **Negatives** are regularly placed before the word modified. When the whole sentence is negatived, the negative is either connected with the verb, or more often comes at the beginning of the sentence (so regularly when *neque* can be substituted for *and* followed by a negative).

Nē . . . quidem enclose the word or words modified; as, *Not even the first attack:* **Nē prīmus quidem impetus.**

(*g*) **Verbs.**—i. The Copula or link verb *esse* is seldom placed at the end of its clause; it is generally followed by some important word or words belonging to the predicate; as, *One side is opposite Gaul:* **Ūnum latus est contrā Galliam.**

ii. A dependent infinitive, as a rule, precedes the verb on which it depends; as, *The river can be crossed:* **Flūmen trānsīrī potest.**

iii. *Inquam, inquit* follow one or more words of the quotation.

(*h*) **Conjunctions.**—i. These are the first words in their own clauses. But they are regularly preceded by a relative pronoun, sometimes by other emphatic or connecting words; as, *If this were done:* **Id sī fieret.**

ii. *Autem, enim* and *vērō* never, and *igitur* very seldom, come first in a sentence.

iii. The particles *que, ne* (interrogative), *ve* are enclitics,[2]; as, *The senate and people of Rome:* **Senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

1. The same is true of *quisque* with the reflexive, and of *alius* when doubled.

2. Enclitics are unaccented words which are always appended to some other word.

II. Order of Clauses.

5. **Noun and Adjective clauses** are, as a rule, in the position a noun or adjective of similar value would have.

i. A relative clause however very frequently, especially when emphatic, precedes a general antecedent, such as *is* or *hīc*; as, *He spoils what he alters:* **Quae mūtat, ea corrumpit.**

ii. Indirect questions generally follow the verb on which they depend. So also does the accusative and infinitive construction when extended to any length.

6. **Adverbial clauses** are placed, as a rule, as corresponding adverbial phrases would be.

i. Adverbial clauses that are preparatory to the thought of the principal clause, or express some attending circumstance, regularly either precede the principal clause, or very frequently are inserted in it. Such are the temporal, conditional, causal and concessive clauses.

ii. Adverbial clauses that are explanatory of, or complementary to, the thought of the principal clause regularly follow. Such are the consecutive clauses, and causal sentences where the emphasis lies on the reason advanced.

Final or purpose clauses, on the whole, more frequently follow than precede, the general principle being to place last the clause on which the emphasis falls.

7. **Participial clauses** generally precede, or are inserted in, the principal sentence, and very seldom follow it as in English; as, *After settling this affair, he set sail, having met with suitable weather:* **His cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, solvit.**

8. In narrative prose the *order of time* is almost invariably observed in the arrangement of the various clauses of a sentence; as,

The Germans threw away their arms when they saw that their comrades were being slain, and rushed out of the camp: **Germānī, cum suōs interfīcī vidērent, armīs abjectīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt.**

9. **The periodic structure** is much commoner in Latin than in English. A period is a complex sentence, whose subordinate clauses are inserted in the principal clause in such a way that the sense and grammatical construction of the whole are incomplete without the final words, upon which also the chief emphasis rests. The example given in section 8 above is a period in the Latin, but not in the English.

In the Latin period, the subject of the principal and subordinate clauses should as far as possible be the same. In such cases it should be placed at the beginning of the period, and thus do duty for both clauses; as, *When Cæsar learned that the Suebi had retired to the forest, he determined not to advance farther:* **Caesar postquam comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius.**

But where the subordinate clause is introduced by a coordinate relative (see section 3, *b*, footnote), this holds the first place; as, *When Cæsar learned this, he withdrew to Gaul:* **Quod ubi Caesar comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit.**

III. Concords.

The following are the general rules of agreement:

10. Apposition.—A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case; as,

He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus: **Dumnorigī, frātrī Dīvitiacī, persuādet.**

The city of Rome: **Urbs Rōma.**

i. The possessive may have an appositive in the genitive, especially with *ipse;* as, *My own fault:* **Mea ipsīus culpa.**

ii. The appositive word may agree with an unexpressed subject; as, *I, Themistocles, have come to you:* **Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē.**

11. Attributive Words.—An adjective (including the numerals), a pronoun or a participle agrees in gender, number and case with the word to which it belongs.

If it belongs to more than one word, it regularly agrees with the nearest; as, *It was a matter requiring great effort and labor:* **Rēs erat multae operae ac labōris.**

12. The Predicate.—(*a*) The *verb* agrees with its subject in number and person.

i. Where compound or periphrastic forms of the verb are used, the participle follows the rules for predicate adjectives (see *b*).

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the verb may be plural, or may agree with the nearest, being understood with the others; as, *The Matrona and Sequana separate the Gauls from the Belgians:* **Gallōs ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit.**

The verb may also be singular when two singular subjects form but one notion; as, *A loud din and shouting arose:* **Clāmor fremitusque orīrētur.** (*Cf.* 'The tumult and the shouting dies.') So regularly with **Senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

iii. Where the subjects are of different persons and the plural is used, the first person takes precedence, then the second; as, *Cicero and I are well:* **Ego et Cicerō valēmus.**

iv. For the unemphatic introductory word *there*, and also for *it* when used as an impersonal or representative subject, Latin has no equivalent; as, *And there were no other ships:* **Neque nāvēs erant aliae.** *It is dangerous to enter:* **Intrāre est perīculōsum.**

(*b*) A *predicate adjective* (or a participle in the compound tenses of the verb) agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case; as,

The supply is small: **Exigua est cōpia.**
Everything was unknown: **Omnia erant incōgnita.**
He was informed that the ascent was easy: **Certior factus est facilem esse ascēnsum.**

i. Predicate adjectives are used with the verb *sum*, verbs of *seeming, becoming*, and passive verbs of *making, thinking, calling.*

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the predicate adjective may be either singular or plural, following the number of the verb (see *a*, ii.).

If it be singular, it will agree in gender with the nearest subject; as, *The cavalry and charioteers were sent forward:* **Praemissus est equitātus et essedārii.**

If it be plural, with subjects of different genders, it will be masculine when the subjects refer to living beings, otherwise neuter; as, *Father and mother are dead:* **Pater et māter mortuī sunt.** *The city and temple were taken:* **Urbs templumque capta sunt.**

(*c*) A *predicate noun* agrees with its subject in case; as,

He found that now Galba was king: **Reperiēbat nunc esse rēgem Galbam.**
Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the senate: **Ariovistus rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat.**

i. Predicate nouns are used with the verb *sum*, verbs of *seeming, becoming*, and passive verbs of *making, thinking, calling.*

ii. The dative of purpose is used with much the force of a predicate noun (see section 81).

13. Pronoun and Antecedent.—A relative or demonstrative pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the word (termed the antecedent) to which in sense it refers; as,

For many reasons, of which this was the strongest: **Multīs dē causīs, quārum illa fuit jūstissima.**

i. But these pronouns by preference agree with a predicate

noun rather than their antecedent; as, *To Vesontio, which is the largest town:* **Ad Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum.**

N.B.—By a **sense construction**, the number or the gender of predicates and relative pronouns is often determined by the meaning, not the form, of the words to which they refer; as, *A great throng was hurling weapons:* **Māgna multitūdō tēla conjiciēbant.** *He sends forward the cavalry to see:* **Equitātum praemittit, qui videant.** *Six thousand men left the camp at nightfall:* **Hominum millia sex primā nocte ē castrīs ēgressī sunt.**

CHAPTER I.

The Accusative and Infinitive.

14. After verbs meaning *to say, think, believe, know, perceive, feel,* and such like (*verba sentiendī et dēclārandī*), Latin uses the infinitive with a subject accusative, where in English we have a noun clause introduced by *that*; as,

They bring back word that the ascent is easy: **Renūntiant facilem esse ascēnsum.**

They perceive that the strongest nations have been conquered: **Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.**

15. Rules for the Use of Tenses are as follows:

(*a*) When the time of the infinitive is the *same* as that of its principal verb, use the *present* infinitive;

(*b*) When the time of the infinitive is *prior* to that of its principal verb, use the *perfect* infinitive;

(*c*) When the time of the infinitive is *subsequent* to that of its principal verb, use the *future* infinitive; as,

(*a*) *He was informed that the legion was being hard pressed:* **Certior factus est legiōnem premī.**

He will see that the legion is being hard pressed: **Vidēbit legiōnem premī.**

(*b*) *They will think that the Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Exīstimābunt Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

He learned that the Helvetians had moved their camp: **Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

(*c*) *They think that Cæsar will make peace:* **Exīstimant Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

He answered that Cæsar would make peace: **Respondit Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

Or, *to put* the rule in another way: let the student imagine himself using the very words uttered or thought, and then use the corresponding tense of the infinitive (the perfect infinitive doing duty for the imperfect,[1] perfect or pluperfect of the original words).

In the above examples, for instance, the words actually uttered or thought would be: (*a*) *The legion is being hard pressed:* **Legiō premitur;** (*b*) *The Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Helvētiī castra mōvērunt;** (*c*) *Cæsar will make peace:* **Caesar pācem faciet.**

16. (*a*) As the infinitive is without personal endings, the subject accusatives *mē, nōs, tē, vōs,* will be used for *I, we, you.*

For *he, she, they,* when denoting the same person as the subject of the verb of *saying, thinking,* etc., *sē* will be used; but when denoting a different person the accusative of *is,* or for greater emphasis *ille*;[2] as,

They answered that they would make peace with him: **Respondērunt sēsē cum eō pācem esse factūrōs.**

Cæsar had decided to keep Dumnorix with him, because he had discovered that he was eager for power: **Caesar Dumnorīgem sēcum habēre cōnstituerat, quod eum cupīdum esse imperiī cōgnōverat.**

(*b*) In the compound forms of the infinitive containing esse, care must be taken to have agreement with the subject accusative in gender, number and case. (See *superātās* in section 14 above.)

17. After verbs signifying *to hope, promise, threaten,* and such like, English generally uses the simple infinitive instead of a noun clause introduced by *that.* In Latin the subject accusative with the *future* infinitive is used in accordance with the above rules (15, *c*); as,

These tribes promise to give hostages: **Hae nātiōnēs sē obsidēs datūrās (esse) pollicentur.**

1. For instance, **Dico urbem obsessam esse,** *I tell you that the city was being besieged,* for an original *obsidebatur.*

2. This distinction applies to all uses of the words *him, them,* etc.; for *his* and *their, suus* or *ejus* and *eorum* respectively are used.

18. i. In English *that* is often omitted; as, *He says he will go.*

ii. Not only single verbs, but also phrases, *sentiendī et dēclārandī* occur; as, *certiōrem faciō, memoriā teneō, fāma est, spem habeō.*

iii. *Esse* is very often omitted in the compound or periphrastic forms of the infinitive.

iv. Verbs of *pretending* are regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive, not, as often in English, by the simple infinitive; as, *They pretend to return home:* **Domum revertī sē simulant.**

v. Instead of *dīcō* followed by a negative, Latin prefers *negō*; as, *He says he can grant no one the right of passing through the province:* **Negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare.**

vi. Verbs of saying and thinking (except *inquam* and *crēdō*) are not used parenthetically in Latin as in English; as, *You are, I maintain, mistaken:* **Errāre vōs dīcō.** *He sends messengers to Kent, which, we have already said, is on the sea:* **Ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nūntiōs mittit.**

vii. With passive verbs of *saying, thinking,* etc., the personal construction is used in Latin (but chiefly with *videor*, and the third person of the present, imperfect and future of other verbs); as, *It was said that the Germans had been invited:* **Germānī arcessītī esse dīcēbantur,** not **Germānōs arcessītōs esse dīcēbātur.**

viii. *Would have* is expressed by the future participle with *fuisse*; as, *He answered that if there had been any need, he would have come to Cæsar:* **Respondit, sī quid opus esset, sēsē ad Caesarem ventūrum fuisse.**

ix. For the future infinitive after verbs of *hoping, posse* with the present infinitive is common.

x. The subject accusative is not infrequently omitted when easily understood from the context; but this should not be imitated by the beginner in Latin.

EXERCISE 1.

A.

1. He replied that Cæsar had conquered Gaul. 2. He thinks that the Roman leader will easily vanquish the Belgians. 3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent. 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Cæsar, and promised to give hostages. 5. Word was brought to Cæsar that the hill was held by the Roman soldiers. 6. To these envoys Cæsar replied that the Gauls had been conquered by the Roman army. 7. The general hears that the enemy are hurling javelins at the soldiers. 8. The enemy, he answered, had been hurling javelins at Cæsar's cavalry. 9. He learned from the scouts that all the Belgians had

encamped on the other side of that river. 10. It is said that Cæsar set out for Gaul, and defeated the Helvetians on the other side of the river Rhone. 11. To that embassy he replied that he would come to the enemy's camp. 12. Some even reported to Cæsar that the soldiers would not advance.

B. (*Themistocles, 1, 2.*)

1. He said that he was aiming at the magistrates especially. 2. The answer was given that he would speedily crush the pirates and render the rest of Europe safe. 3. A report is brought that the Athenians are going to abandon their fleet and betake themselves to their walls. 4. They promised to make war by land and sea. 5. It is said that they devoted themselves wholly to naval warfare. 6. They thought that no one was (their) equal. 7. He had learned that a thousand war vessels were following these transports. 8. He was informed that the Athenians had not been crushed, but would build a fleet of four hundred vessels. 9. They perceived that the citadel had been handed over to a few magistrates, and that the rest of the town was being abandoned.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1.*)

1. Cæsar said that a large number of men had crossed that river. 2. It is said that this tribe leads forth a thousand armed men every year. 3. These promise to remain at home in their turn. 4. We were informed that there was no interruption in the practice of war that year, 5. The Suebi said they had been harassed for a large part of the winter. 6. The Germans hoped to cross the Rhine the year after. 7. We understand that the character of the food and the daily exercise make the Germans very warlike. 8. He hears that the children had milk and corn. 9. He answered that this tribe was the largest, but that the Suebi had been the most warlike.

CHAPTER II.

Complementary Infinitive.

19. The present infinitive (active or passive) is often used like the infinitive with *to* in English, to complete the meaning of certain verbs, whose reference would otherwise be incomplete. These verbs are often called *modal* verbs, and the infinitive when so used the *complementary* infinitive.

20. (*a*) With modal verbs the *simple infinitive* (*i.e.*, without any subject expressed) is used to denote another action or condition of the *same* subject; as,

They attempt to cross the river: **Flūmen trānsīre cōnantur.**
The wind began to be violent: **Saevīre ventus coepit.**
They are able to defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere possunt.**
The river can be crossed: **Flūmen trānsīrī potest.**
He was unwilling to leave: **Discēdere nōlēbat.**
They were compelled to give hostages: **Obsidēs dare coāctī sunt.**

i. A predicate noun or adjective with the complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the modal verb; as, *We can be useful friends:* **Possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī.**

21. (*b*) With modal verbs the *infinitive with a subject accusative* is used to denote the action or condition of a *different* subject; as,

They allow the Helvetians to go: **Helvētiōs īre patiuntur.**
He ordered the gates to be closed; **Portās claudī jussit.**
He wished the Germans to be alarmed: **Germānōs timēre voluit.**
He did not wish that place to be unoccupied: **Nōluit eum locum vacāre.**

22. i. *Prohibeō* takes the accusative and complementary infinitive; as, *They prevent the Germans from crossing:* **Germānōs trānsīre prohibent.**

ii. Some verbs expressing *emotion*, such as *doleō* (*grieve*) and *gaudeō* (*rejoice*) often take the accusative and complementary infinitive. (See also section 147, ii.)

iii. Where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is used in place of *coepī*, with the same force; as, *Javelins began to be hurled:* **Tēla conjicī coepta sunt.**

iv. With *jubeō* the subject accusative is sometimes omitted, when obvious from the context; as, *He gives orders to fortify a camp:* **Castra mūnīre jubet.**

v. *Volō*, *nōlō* and *mālō* often take the accusative and infinitive even when the subject is the same, chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive; as, *They did not wish to be put to death:* **Sēsē interfĭcī nōlēbant.**

vi. *Polliceor* and *spērō* are sometimes treated as modal verbs.

vii. Many of the verbs of *will* and *desire* are followed by *ut* and the subjunctive; so regularly the verbs of *ordering*, except *jubeō*. *Imperō* also may be used with the passive infinitive; as, *He orders him to be brought back:* **Eum retrahī imperat.** (See section 27.)

viii. This construction is more restricted in Latin than in English. (See especially sections 23 and 27.) But in poetry Latin more nearly approaches English usage.

Verbs which Take the Complementary Infinitive.

Allow, **patior, sinō.**
Am able (*can*), **possum.**
Am accustomed, am wont, **cōnsuēvī, soleō.**
Am unwilling, **nōlō.**
Am willing, **volō.**
Attempt, **cōnor.**
Begin, **incipiō, instituō.**
Began, **coepī.**
Cease, **dēsinō, dēsistō.**
Compel, **cōgō.**
Dare, **audeō.**
Decide, determine, **cōnstituō, dēcernō, statuō.**
Desire, **cupiō.**
Forbid, **vetō.**
Hasten, **contendō, mātūrō, properō.**
Hesitate, **dubitō.**
Order, **jubeō.**
Ought, **dēbeō.**
Permit, **patior, sinō.**
Prefer, **mālō.**
Prepare, **parō.**
Prevent, **prohibeō.**
Resolve, see *decide*.
Strive, **contendō, nītor.**
Try, **cōnor.**
Venture, **audeō.**
Wish, **volō.**

EXERCISE 2.

A.

1. The troops began to storm the town. 2. The Helvetians are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages. 3. Stones had begun to be hurled from all sides against the rampart. 4. Cæsar will not permit the Gauls to be crushed. 5. The enemy were unwilling to depart from the Rhine. 6. The cavalry had prevented fires

from being made. 7. They will not attempt to cross the rivers. 8. The Germans did not hesitate to engage in battle. 9. The soldiers were ordered to return to the camp. 10. The Romans compelled the enemy to give hostages. 11. He determined to pass the winter there. 12. The Britons will not dare to make war. 13. Cæsar was not able to set out. 14. The soldiers were compelled to make a promise to remain at home. 15. We wish him to be a soldier, but he prefers to be a merchant.

B. (*Themistocles, 3, 4.*)

1. The king will permit them to attack immediately. 2. The Spartans were unable to withstand the double peril. 3. The seamen wished to engage off Eubœa, but Themistocles prevented them from being surrounded in the narrow strait. 4. Xerxes will not dare to put the priests to death and burn the citadel. 5. We shall attempt to seize Thermopylæ and quickly crush the barbarians. 6. They were compelled to prepare to defend the walls. 7. He resolved to leave for home by night. 8. Most of the states were unwilling to be conquered one at a time. 9. He hesitates to compel the seamen to look for a more suitable place.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 2.*)

1. They prefer to use small and scrubby beasts. 2. He will not permit the merchant to sell wine at all. 3. By daily practice the cavalry are able to leap down and fight on foot. 4. They begin to train these horses to endure toil. 5. He will order the Germans to betake themselves to their horses with all speed. 6. They are unwilling to be captured. 7. Wine cannot be sold nor beasts of burden imported. 8. They are wont to consider this base and unmanly. 9. He does not wish this merchant to be admitted.

CHAPTER III.

Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose).

23. In English the purpose or end of an action is commonly expressed either by the infinitive with *to*, or by a clause introduced by *that* or *lest*; as, *They remained to avoid suspicion*, or *They remained that they might avoid suspicion.*

But in Latin prose the infinitive should never be used to express purpose.

24. Pure Final Clauses.—One of the commonest modes of expressing purpose in Latin is by *ut* (or *utī*) with the *subjunctive*—in negative clauses *nē*; as,

They remained in order to avoid suspicion: **Ut suspicionem vītārent, remanēbant.**

He is setting out to attack the enemy's camp: **Proficiscitur ut castra hostium oppūgnet.**

In order that they may not be (or *in order not to be*) *surrounded by the enemy, they will make a sally:* **Nē ab hostibus circumveniantur, ēruptiōnem facient.**

Outposts are stationed lest a sally be made: **Statiōnēs pōnuntur nē ēruptiō fiat.**

25. Rules for the Sequence of Tenses are as follows:

(*a*) *Primary* tenses—viz., present, future, future perfect, and perfect (when translated by English present perfect, with *have*)—are followed by the *present* subjunctive.

(*b*) *Secondary* (or historical) tenses—viz., imperfect, pluperfect, and perfect (when translated by English past indefinite)—are followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive.

Thus the present subjunctive is used where English could use *that . . . may*; the imperfect subjunctive where English could use *that . . . might.*

(For examples see the sentences given in section 24 above.)

26. Relative Clauses of Purpose.—After certain verbs, especially those of *sending* and *appointing*, relative clauses of purpose are found, *ut* being replaced by *quī*; as,

He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for the camp: **Explōrātōrēs praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant** (literally *who are to choose*).

1. Purpose clauses may be introduced also by relative adverbs, such as *ubi, unde, quō;* as, *Nor had they any place to which to retreat:* **Neque quō sē recīperent habēbant.**

27. SUBSTANTIVE FINAL CLAUSES.—After verbs of *urging, asking, commanding, advising, persuading, striving* (verbs of *will* and *aim*), Latin does not use the infinitive; it regards the following clause as expressive of the end desired, and therefore uses the subjunctive of purpose with *ut* (*utī*) and *nē;* as,

He urges them to take up arms: **Hortātur ut arma capiant.**
He induced Casticus to seize the chief power: **Persuāsit Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret.**
They begged of him not to do that: **Ab eō petēbant nē id faceret.**

Jubeō and *cōgō* are important regular exceptions to this rule; so also verbs of *striving* and *resolving*, when the subject of both verbs is the same (where English also has the infinitive).

28. i. In clauses of purpose *ut* is not followed by a negative, *nē* being used instead. Hence where *not, no one, nothing, no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use **nē, nē quis, nē quid, nē quī** (or **quis**) and **nē umquam**; as, *He ordered the gates closed that the townspeople might receive no hurt:* **Portās claudī jussit nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent.** *He asked him to allow none to cross:* **Postulāvit nē quōs trānsīre paterētur.**

ii. A second final clause, if negative, is connected by **nēve** (or **neu**), not by **neque**; as, *He issues orders that they are to hurl their weapons from a distance, and not approach nearer:* **Prōnūntiat ut procul tēla conjiciant neu propius accēdant.**

iii. When the clause of purpose contains a comparative, **quō** is commonly used in place of **ut**; as, *They ask for reinforcements, that they may more easily withstand the enemy:* **Subsidium rogant, quō facilius hostēs sustinēre possint.**

iv. After the historical present either primary or secondary sequence may be used.

v. Certain verbs are used both in the construction given in section 27, and as *verba dēclārandī* with the accusative and infinitive: as, *He writes to Labienus to build the vessels:* **Labiēnō scribit ut nāvēs īnstituat.** *He writes that he has set out:* **Scribit sē profectum esse.** So also *moneō* and *persuādeō*.

vi. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding* the subjunctive sometimes occurs without *ut*. This should not be imitated by the beginner in prose.

vii. Sometimes *ut nē* is found for *nē*, but not in Cæsar.

viii. Other modes of expressing purpose exist in Latin, the most important being by means of the gerund and gerundive. (See sections 114 and 119.)

ix. For verbs of *causing*, see section 33, v.

Verbs which Take Substantive Final Clauses.

Advise, **monĕō, admonĕō.**
Ask, **petō, rogō.**
Beg, beseech, **ōrō, obsecrō.**
Command, **imperō, praecipiō, mandō.**
Commission, **mandō.**
Determine, **cōnstituō, dĕcernō, statuō.**
Exhort, **hortor, adhortor, cohortor.**
Incite, instigate, **impellō.**
Instruct, **praecipiō.**
Permit, **concĕdō, permittō.**
Persuade, **suādeō, persuādeō.**
Prevail on, **impetrō.**
Request, require, **petō, rogō, postulō.**
Resolve, see *determine*.
Strive, **contendō, nĭtor**; so **id agō, operam dō.**
Urge, **hortor, adhortor.**
Warn, **monĕō, admonĕō.**

EXERCISE 3.

A.

1. They sent Cæsar into Gaul to carry on war with the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Cæsar to ask for peace and to beg him not to storm their town. 3. He instructed the cavalry to take possession of the camp, and not to pursue the enemy. 4. In order to defeat the enemy, he sent forward the cavalry and the slingers to attack them in the rear. 5. Cæsar exhorted the soldiers to fight valiantly, lest they should suffer the enemy to cross the river. 6. The Gauls sent a messenger to warn their allies that the Roman troops had built a bridge over the river in order to pursue the enemy more easily. 7. He persuaded the Helvetians to go forth from their territories with all their forces. 8. They ordered the bridge to be destroyed in order that no one might be able to cross the river. 9. He warned the soldiers that the Gauls were at hand, and advised them not to leave the camp. 10. He replied that Cæsar had praised the soldiers that they might

fight the more valiantly. 11. He sent messengers to announce that Cæsar had determined that Labienus should not return. 12. Cæsar ordered (*imperō*) his soldiers to press forward and not to hurl any weapon whatever at the enemy.

B. (*Themistocles, 5, 6.*)

1. He did this, not to save the king, but to free Greece. 2. Envoys were sent to advise the Athenians not to restore their walls or defend their city. 3. In order to crush the Athenians he instructs his forces to build a bridge. 4. And there will be no fortified cities for them to defend. 5. He urges them to destroy the bridge in order that Xerxes may be unable to return to Asia. 6. That they might gain greater glory, they resolved that an embassy should set out for Asia. 7. In order that the Athenians may be as weak as possible, the Spartans will send envoys to forbid their constructing a harbor. 8. He will persuade the king to return, that Greece may not submit to Asia. 9. Lest the enemy should be informed that they were cut off from returning, he declared that the bridges had not been destroyed.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 3.*)

1. They drive out the Ubii that the country may be unoccupied. 2. They strove to be more civilized than the Germans. 3. The Ubii were made tributaries that they might be rendered weaker. 4. They begged not to be driven from their lands. 5. He urged them to withstand the power of the Suebi. 6. These lands lie waste that the Germans may not become accustomed to the manners of this state. 7. He exhorted them not to think the state insignificant or weak. 8. The others were sent to advise the same merchants to come often. 9. We shall drive out the traders, lest we become (=be made) refined.

CHAPTER IV.

Consecutive Clauses (Clauses of Result).

29. Pure Consecutive Clauses.—Dependent clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that* or *as to*, following *so* or *such*. In Latin result or consequence is expressed by *ut* (or *utī*) with the subjunctive—in negative clauses, *ut nōn*; as,

They advanced with such swiftness that the enemy took to flight: **Eā celeritāte iērunt ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent.**

I am not so uncivilized as not to know this: **Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam.**

30. Rules for the Use of Tenses are as follows:

The rules for the sequence of tenses in final clauses (section 25) do not apply to sentences of result. As a rule the English tense will be a sufficient guide; the Latin imperfect, however, is generally used for the English past (indefinite) tense, as in the first example in section 29.

31. Substantive Consecutive Clauses.—After certain verbs, chiefly those of *happening* and *resulting*, clauses introduced by *that* are rendered by Latin consecutive clauses with *ut* or *ut nōn* and the subjunctive; as,

It happened that there was a full moon: **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.**

The result was that the Germans were summoned: **Factum est utī Germānī arcesserentur.**

32. Relative Clauses of Characteristic.—The subjunctive of result is often found in clauses introduced by the relative pronoun. In these clauses the antecedent is referred to as belonging (or not belonging) to a class characterized by a certain quality, and the relative may generally be replaced by the phrase *such as* or *such that*; as,

Nor was there anyone who was intent on looting: **Neque fuit quisquām quī praedae studēret.**

But I am not the man to be frightened by danger: **Neque is sum quī perīculō tenear.**

There were two roads by which they could leave home: **Erant itinera duo quibus domō exīre possent.**

i. This subjunctive of characteristic is especially common after such general phrases of existence as *sunt quī, nēmō est quī, ūnus est quī, sōlus est quī, quis est quī? nōn is est quī, nōn habeō quod;* also after *dīgnus, indīgnus* and *idōneus;* and after comparatives with *quam;* as, *He will not be a fit person to be sent:* **Nōn erit idōneus quī mittātur.** *The stones are too large to be moved:* **Mājōra sunt saxa quam quae movērī possint.**

ii. The relative clause of characteristic has sometimes a *restrictive* force; as, *So far as I know:* **Quod sciam.**

33. i. As *that not* in clauses of result is *ut nōn*, so where *no one, nothing, no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nūllus, ut numquam;* as, *He put the enemy so speedily to flight that no one held his ground at all:* **Tam celeriter hostēs in fugam dat ut omninō resisteret nēmō.**

ii. *Quīn* is often found instead of *quī nōn* in relative clauses of characteristic after negative phrases; as, *No one is so brave as not to be disturbed:* **Nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.**

iii. Sometimes the *perfect* subjunctive instead of the imperfect is found corresponding to our past (indefinite) tense. In such cases either (1) the writer is calling attention to the independent fact rather than dwelling on the relation of cause and effect; or (2) the action is summed up as a single whole, and not regarded as continuing; as, *Our men boarded the vessels, so that very few reached land:* **Nostrī nāvēs expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ad terram pervēnerint.**

iv. A common use of the consecutive clause is to form with a preceding *fore* (or *futūrum esse*) a substitute for the future infinitive passive, and sometimes also for the future infinitive active, especially with verbs that lack the supine stem; as, *He hoped that Ariovistus would abandon his obstinacy:* **Spērābat fore utī Ariovistus pertināciā dēsisteret.**

v. Verbs of *causing* are followed sometimes by a clause of purpose, sometimes by one of result. Hence the negative is sometimes *nē*, sometimes *ut nōn*.

EXERCISE 4.

A.

1. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to join battle with the enemy. 2. It happened that no ship reached its destination. 3. We are not so inexperienced as to believe that the Roman people can be conquered by our forces. 4. There is

no one but knows that the commander was worthy of being loved by the soldiers. 5. Such was the valor of the soldiers that not a man withdrew from the ramparts. 6. We have been so taught by our ancestors that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 7. Cæsar said that from these circumstances it had resulted that they roamed about less widely. 8. He was the only man who had not been induced to take the oath. 9. He had judged this cavalryman a suitable person to send to Cæsar to ask assistance. 10. There are some who say that the Helvētians are too brave to be conquered by the Romans. 11. The messengers made answer to Cæsar that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that no portion of the army had been able to cross. 12. There followed such storms as prevented the enemy from attempting to attack the camp.

B. (*Themistocles, 7; 8.*)

1. So great was the storm that he was compelled to land all the sailors. 2. It happened that they were awaiting the king, and were unwilling to keep their promise. 3. There is no one in whom we feel confidence. 4. He is acting so unjustly that the rest of his colleagues complain that they are being deceived, and are taking thought for their own safety. 5. The result was that he was driven from the state and condemned in his absence. 6. There are three ships on which they can send back the hostages to Athens. 7. Athens was so near that he saw he could easily reach it. 8. It is so difficult to defend the city that it is useless to declare war on the king.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 4.*)

1. They advanced so rapidly that they completed the whole march in three days. 2. It happened that they were returning to the same parts of Germany. 3. He is not the man to cross the river secretly and return to his own village. 4. So vast was the host of the Usipetes that the Menapii were driven out from the rest of the district. 5. So great is the scarcity of boats that we cannot cross. 6. Who is there who has not been informed of both matters (*rēs*)? 7. He brought it about that no one was prevented from wandering on this side of the river. 8. He crossed the river with such a large body of cavalry that the Germans were terrified.

CHAPTER V.

QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

34. A DIRECT QUESTION is a principal clause introduced by

(*a*) An interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective or adverb, or

(*b*) One of the interrogative particles: *ne*, *nōnne*, or *num*; as,

What do they seek? **Quid petunt?**
Whither are we setting out? **Quō proficiscimur?**
Do you not see? **Nōnne vidēs?**

i. **-Ne, Nōnne, Num.**—*Ne* is an enclitic, appended to an emphatic word, which is regularly at the beginning of the question.

-Ne asks for information,[1] and is impartial or non-committal; as,
Is he writing? **Scribitne?**

Nōnne asks for confirmation of belief, and expects the answer *yes*; as,

Is he not writing? (or *He is writing, is he not?*) **Nōnne scribit?**

Num asks for confirmation of disbelief, and expects the answer *no*; as,

Surely he is not writing? (or *He is not writing, is he?*) **Num scribit?**

35. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—A subordinate clause introduced by any of the interrogative words mentioned above is called a *dependent or indirect question*, and always has its verb in the subjunctive; as,

He asked what they sought: **Quaesīvit quid peterent.**
He wonders what the reason is: **Quae causa sit, mīrātur.**

In English we do not usually consider the clause as a dependent question unless the principal verb is of an interrogative nature, but in Latin it may be a verb meaning *to learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see* or *decide*; as,

He learns what is being done: **Cōgnōscit quae gerantur.**
He reported what he had seen: **Quae perspexisset renūntiāvit.**
They cannot decide in which direction it flows: **In utram partem fluat, jūdicāre nōn possunt.**

i. *-Ne* and *num* in dependent questions express *whether* without any difference of meaning; as, *He asked whether they were happy:* **Quaesīvit num beātī essent (or beātine essent).**

1. *Ne* must not be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word.

36. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows:

In indirect questions as a rule the English tenses will be a sufficient guide.[1] The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (see Part III. 69, *a*).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Primary Sequence.

He asks, learns, / *He will ask, learn,*	**Quaerit, cōgnōscit.** / **Quaeret, cōgnōscet,**
what they are doing: / *what they have done:* / *what they will do:*	**quid faciant.** / **quid fēcerint,** / **quid factūrī sint.**

Secondary Sequence.

He was asking, learning, / *He asked, learned,* / *He had asked, learned,*	**Quaerēbat, cōgnōscēbat.** / **Quaesīvit, cōgnōvit,** / **Quaesīverat, cōgnōverat,**
what they were doing: / *what they did:* / *what they had done:* / *what they would do:*	**quid facerent.** / **quid fēcissent.** / **quid fēcissent.** / **quid factūrī essent.**

37. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, English abstract nouns such as *size*, *number*, *character*, *reason*, *time*, *place*, and many verbal nouns such as *opinion*, *intention*, are best rendered into Latin by dependent interrogative clauses; as,

You see the extent of the danger: **Vidētis quantum sit perīculum.**

He could not discover their intentions: **Quae factūrī essent, cōgnōscere nōn poterat.**

38. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.—Where two questions are connected by *or*, involving an alternative choice, we have a *disjunctive*, *alternative* or *double* question as opposed to a *simple* question. The first alternative is in Latin regularly introduced by **utrum** (*whether*) or **-ne**, the second by **an** (*or*). Such questions when dependent are of course in the subjunctive; as,

1. The chief exceptions are: (*a*) After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect; as, *I know what he was doing:* **Scio quid fecerit.**
(*b*) After the perfect tense secondary tenses are used, even where we should expect primary tenses; as, *I have shown what resources you have:* **Quae subsidia haberes, exposui.** (This last peculiarity is found sometimes also in clauses of result.)

Does duty or fear weigh more with them? **Utrum apud eōs officium an timor plūs valet?**

They were debating whether it was best to lead their forces against the enemy or to defend the camp. **Dēlīberābant cōpiāsne adversum hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere praestāret.**

39. i. *Or not*, in the direct disjunctive question, is *annōn*; in the indirect, *necne*.

ii. *Utrum* is often omitted in disjunctive questions, in which case *-ne* is sometimes used for *an* in indirect questions. In simple direct questions also *-ne* is sometimes omitted, especially in passionate questions.

iii. *Yes* and *no* in answers are usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question (with or without *nōn*), or by some other emphatic word.

iv. In indirect questions, *nōnne*, *whether not*, is used only after *quaerō*.

v. It is of great importance, but not always easy, to distinguish the dependent interrogative from the dependent relative clause, the latter being regularly in the indicative. For instance, in *They could not prevent what had been done*, and *I can go where they can go*, *what* and *where* are to be taken as relatives; in *They could not tell what had been done*, and *I can find out where they can go*, as interrogatives. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, however, doubtful clauses will generally be interrogative; after other verbs, generally relative.

EXERCISE 5.

A.

1. He asks who is leading the army into our territories and what he wishes to accomplish. 2. He told the general who had persuaded the soldiers to leave the camp. 3. Cæsar had sent horsemen in advance to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. 4. Did you not know that he had asked whether the Roman people would make peace with the enemy? 5. Of whom shall I ask the date of his return to the city? 6. He sent scouts across the river to ascertain what was going on in the enemy's camp. 7. Are you a Roman soldier or not? What is your reason for coming into our territories? 8. Surely he did not ask whether the Roman people had made peace with the Helvetians or not? 9. He could not find out what villages the Gauls had beyond the Rhone, or their size. 10. They wished to learn the strength and the position of the enemy's forces. 11. Did Cæsar inquire why

the officers had not led the troops against the enemy to prevent their crossing the river? 12. He sent spies in order that he might be able to know with whom the leader of the Gauls held communication.

B. (*Themistocles, 9, 10.*)

1. They asked why he did not believe you. 2. Surely they did not bury him secretly near the market-place? 3. We know what city will provide him with bread and whence he will obtain wine. 4. He explained the character and extent of the bridge he had constructed. 5. Did he wish to do evil or good to the Persians? 6. He asked whether they were promising to crush Greece. 7. Did they not fight a battle with me off Salamis? 8. I believe what Thucydides has written concerning those times. 9. To whom has the king presented these gifts? 10. We wished to know whether or not the bridges had been broken down.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 5.*)

1. From what districts do you come and what have you heard or learned there about these matters? 2. He asked what plans they were adopting. 3. The merchants were compelled against their will to declare whether they favored a change of government. 4. Is he the slave of a doubtful rumor or has he been compelled to come? 5. Surely they do not fear this custom, do they? 6. We shall ascertain the reason for the Gauls' eagerness for political changes. 7. We asked whether or not they had informed Cæsar of this rumor. 8. Cæsar compelled the Gauls to declare what plans they would adopt. 9. Do not most people fear the mob?

CHAPTER VI.

The Present and Perfect Participles.

40. The participle is a verbal adjective. In Latin, like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive, while, like the verb, it has distinctions of voice and tense, and has the same case relations as the verb from which it is formed.

The Present Participle has active force, whether formed from active or deponent verbs; the Perfect Participle when formed from active verbs has passive force, but when from deponents, active force.

41. The *time of the participle* is in Latin relative to that of its principal verb.

(*a*) The *Present* Participle denotes the *same* time as that of its verb.

(*b*) The *Perfect* Participle denotes time *prior* to that of its verb.

Hence whenever the English, as is so often the case, uses the present participle to denote something that takes place *before* the action expressed by its main verb, the present participle must not be used in Latin, but either the perfect participle or some equivalent; as,

Returning to the harbor, he found the ships ready: **Ad portum reversus (or cum ad portum rediisset), nāvēs parātās invēnit.**

Being defeated in battle, they sent envoys: **Proeliō superātī, lēgātōs mīsērunt.**

42. The Appositive or Circumstantial Participle.—The most important use of the participle in Latin is its use in the appositive relation to its substantive to define the circumstances of an action, expressing the relation of *time* or *cause* or (less frequently) of *condition* or *concession;* as,

(*a*) Present Participle:—*He is slain while fighting bravely:* **Fortissimē pūgnāns interficitur.**

They slew Roscius while returning home: **Domum redeuntem Roscium occidērunt.**

(*b*) Perfect Participle Passive:—*Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid in the woods:* **Repulsī ab equitātū, sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

He brought aid to his brother, when hemmed in by the enemy: **Frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium tulit.**

Though thrown into confusion, they did not retreat: **Perturbātī, tamen pedem nōn rettulērunt.**

He will come if asked: **Rogātus veniet.**

(*c*) Perfect Participle Deponent:—*Having encouraged the soldiers, he leaped down:* **Cohortātus mīlitēs, dēsiluit.**

Fearing a scarcity of provisions, he returned: **Inopiam frūmentī veritus, rediit.**

Notice that although the English participle is frequently preceded by such words as *while, when, if, though*, the corresponding Latin words are not used.

43. It is generally advisable to render this Latin participle more freely into English, using either (*a*) a dependent clause introduced by *while, when, after, as, because, if, although;* or (*b*) the prepositions *on, after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing;* or (*c*) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but;* or (*d*) a relative clause.

And conversely all such expressions are commonly best rendered into Latin (where possible) by the circumstantial participle.

For instance, in place of the English sentences given in section 42, we may have, corresponding to the same Latin sentences:

They slew Roscius while he was returning home, or, *They slew Roscius, who was returning home.*

On being repulsed by the cavalry (or, *After their repulse by the cavalry*), *they hid in the woods.*

He brought aid to his brother when he had been hemmed in by the enemy, or, *who had been hemmed in by the enemy.*

Though they were thrown into confusion, they did not retreat, or, *They were thrown into confusion but did not retreat.*

He will come if he is asked.

After he had encouraged the soldiers (or, *After encouraging the soldiers*) *he leaped down*, or, *He encouraged the soldiers and leaped down.*

He returned, because he feared a scarcity of provisions, or, *As he feared a scarcity of provisions, he returned.*

44. i. Other uses of the Participle are:

(*a*) As a *substantive*, chiefly in the oblique cases and especially in the plural; as, *He followed up the fugitives:* **Fugientēs prō-**

secūtus est. *Opportunity for resting is given to the wounded:* **Vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur.**

Note that *those fleeing, those wounded* is not in Latin **ii fugientēs** or **ii vulnerātī.**

(*b*) As an *adjective;* as, *This state was large and flourishing:* **Haec cīvitās fuit ampla atque flōrēns.** *They thought they were ready:* **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt.**

Parātus and many other participles are in fact compared like adjectives.

(*c*) As a *predicative complement* of certain verbs, especially (*a*) the present participle with *videō, audiō, faciō,* and other verbs of *perceiving* or *representing;* as, *He noticed a certain man writing:* **Animadvertit quendam scrībentem** ; and (*b*) the perfect participle passive with *habeō,* very like the English perfect with *have;* as, *He sends forward the cavalry which he had collected from the whole province:* **Equitātum, quem ex omnī prōvinciā coāctum habēbat, praemittit.** (See section 182, *e.* ii.)

ii. The perfect participle of many deponent verbs appears often to have the force of the present; for instance, there is no appreciable difference between *arbitrātus* and *exīstimāns.* Other words so used are *veritus, diffīsus, suspicātus, ūsus;* as, *Suspecting that this would happen, Labienus was advancing, employing the same pretence:* **Quae fore suspicātus, Labiēnus eādem ūsus simulātiōne prōgredīēbātur.** In most cases the perfect is defensible as specifying the cause which leads to subsequent action.

iii. The participle occasionally has its force defined more exactly by the use of *nisi* (*except*), *ut* or *tamquam* (*as if*), *etsī* or *quamquam* (*although*), *utpote* (*inasmuch as*).

iv. The lack of a present participle passive is supplied by a subordinate clause with *dum, cum,* or *quī;* that of the perfect participle active (where a deponent verb is not available) by a subordinate verb with *cum, sī, etsī,* etc., or by the ablative absolute construction (see Chapter VII.).

EXERCISE 6.

A.

1. They threw the ambassador into chains while he was attempting to speak. 2. The envoys, after being dismissed, returned home. 3. The cavalry made an attack upon the Gauls, who were scattered and in despair. 4. Thinking the ambassadors would not return, Cæsar crossed the river. 5. After encouraging the cavalry the tribunes returned to Cæsar. 6. He replied that the Germans would come if asked. 7. Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number of them. 8. Promising to return in a short time,

he followed up the fugitives. 9. He comes upon the soldiers, who are fighting bravely. 10. On his return he found the soldiers engaged in the work. 11. The cavalry, being ordered to cross the river, brought aid to our men, who were resisting with the utmost bravery. 12. He said that the cavalry, though thrown into confusion, would not retreat.

B. (*Aristides, 1-3.*)

1. As they were withdrawing, they inquired of him what he was writing. 2. After being called the Just for many years, Aristides was banished by an excited mob. 3. Although freed from this penalty, they will be driven from their country. 4. Fearing (*vereor*) the barbarians, the states transferred the maritime supremacy to the Athenians. 5. He will be restored to his country and chosen general of the Athenians. 6. Being repelled, the barbarians attempted to build a fleet. 7. They slew a certain man who was attempting to get together an army. 8. Returning (*revenior*) in the fourth year to Greece, he routed the army of the Spartans. 9. On attempting to make a descent on this state, they were driven back.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 6.*)

1. As Cæsar was setting out for the army he learned of this custom. 2. Suspecting that they would send embassies to the Eburones, he summoned their leading men to him. 3. On the invitation of Cæsar, he will carry on war against the Treveri. 4. Having set out earlier than usual, they learned that some states were not ready. 5. After wandering far (*longè*) and wide, the Germans reached the Rhine. 6. Thinking that the cavalry which had been requisitioned by Cæsar was withdrawing, we determined to set out. 7. Embassies have been sent by this state, and are coming to Cæsar with all the leading men. 8. While they are waging war with the Eburones, they will reach the territories of the Germans. 9. This vassal, suspecting that Cæsar would take his departure, had determined to arouse their spirits.

CHAPTER VII.

The Ablative Absolute.

45. In translating into Latin participial phrases (or their equivalents), such as have been described in Chapter VI., two difficulties often arise :

(*a*) The participle required is a perfect participle *active*, which does not exist in Latin (except in the case of deponents) ; as, *Having heard this, he departed. After receiving hostages, he made peace. They made an attack and drove the enemy back.*

(*b*) The subject of the verb in the English subordinate clause cannot be brought into direct relation with any single word in the main sentence ; as, *When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace. Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town.*

46. In such cases recourse may generally be had to the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE construction, in which a substantive (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement are used, in the ablative case ; as,

Having heard this, he departed : **His rēbus audītīs, discessit.**
After receiving hostages, he made peace: **Obsidibus acceptīs, pācem fēcit.**
They made an attack and drove the enemy back: **Impetū factō, hostēs reppulērunt.**
When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace : **Trāditīs armīs, pācem fēcit.**
Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town : **Paucīs dēfendentibus, oppidum expugnāre nōn potuit.**

47. There is a similar nominative absolute construction in English ; as, *Their arms having been surrendered, he made peace.* But the English construction is of comparatively rare occurrence, and seldom furnishes a suitable translation for the Latin ablative absolute, which should rather be rendered according to the methods suggested in section 43.

48. In the cases described in section 45, we may also have in place of the ablative absolute, *dependent clauses* expressing *time*, *cause*, etc. ; for instance, in place of the present participle, *cum*

with the imperfect subjunctive or *dum* with the present indicative (sections 151; 153), and in place of the perfect participle, *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive or *ubi* or *postquam* with the perfect indicative (sections 151; 152, *b*); as, *On learning this, he departed:* **Cum haec audīvisset, discessit.** *Being unable to cross, they returned:* **Cum trānsīre nōn possent, revertērunt.**

49. Instead of the participle in the absolute construction, we often find a predicate noun or adjective, without any copula, as the verb *esse* has no present or perfect participle; as,

They attempt to cross against his will: **Eō invītō trānsīre cōnantur.**

He formed a conspiracy in the consulship of Messala and Piso: **Messālā atque Pisōne cōnsulibus conjūrātiōnem fēcit.**[1]

50. i. The ablative absolute construction is not used with the perfect participle passive of intransitive verbs, that is, of verbs which in the active do not govern an accusative; as, *Having reached the Rhine, they plunged into the river:* **Cum ad Rhēnum pervēnissent, sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt.** *Having pardoned the prisoners, he returned:* **Cum captīvīs ignōvisset, rediit.**

ii. In the case of the perfect participle of deponent verbs with active force, the ablative absolute is somewhat sparingly used, and chiefly with intransitive verbs; as, *A great storm arose, and almost all the ships were wrecked:* **Māximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictae sunt.** So also *mortuus, profectus, secūtus.*

iii. It is contrary to Latin usage to have the substantive in the ablative absolute denote the same person or thing as is mentioned in the principal clause; as, *When Commius landed they seized him* is not **Commiō ē nāvī ēgressō, eum comprehendērunt,** but **Commium ē nāvī ēgressum comprehendērunt.**[2]

iv. For *nisi, ut,* etc., with the abl. absolute see section 44, iii.

v. An ablative absolute with the negative is often equivalent to a phrase introduced by *without;* as, *Without losing any time he sets out:* **Nūllō tempore intermissō proficīscitur.**

vi. One ablative absolute may define the circumstances of another; *e.g., As the ranks were in confusion from hearing the shouting, the rest took to flight:* **Reliquī, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus, terga vertērunt.** An ablative absolute may be connected by a conjunction (*e.g., et, -que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) construction.

1. Literally *He (being) unwilling; Messala and Piso (being) consuls.*

2. Yet Cæsar has several instances of the ablative absolute in such a case, often apparently to secure emphasis; *e.g.,* B. G., III. 14, 4; IV. 12, 1; 21, 6; V. 4, 3; 44, 6; VI. 4, 4; 43, 1; VII. 4, 1; 27, 2; 29, 1; 76, 3. This should not be imitated.

EXERCISE 7.

A.

1. Having settled these matters, he returned. 2. After encouraging the soldiers and giving the signal, he ordered an attack to be made. 3. He set out against Cæsar's will, after promising to return shortly. 4. As no enemy prevented (him), he led the legion back in safety. 5. On this being done, the Roman soldiers, drawing their swords, made an attack upon the enemy. 6. In the consulship of Marius many were put to death without a hearing. 7. After that assembly had been dismissed, the chief men returned to Cæsar. 8. After he heard the prisoner, he dismissed him. 9. When this battle was fought, the enemy, being impressed by the bravery of our soldiers, sent envoys to Cæsar. 10. Having reached their territories, he set fire to all their villages and then returned to the camp.

B. (*Hannibal, 1, 2.*)

1. After Hannibal was banished the Romans ceased to carry on war with the Carthaginians. 2. Leading the son to the altar, the father bade him swear to conquer the Romans. 3. While the citizens were sacrificing, he was attempting to bribe the general. 4. When Hannibal was a little boy, Hamilcar was making war on Spain. 5. When Hannibal was a little boy, Hamilcar took him with him to the camp. 6. After the victims are sacrificed he will set out. 7. While Philip was absent, the others began to act unwisely. 8. They bribed the king and inflamed him with hatred towards the Romans.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 7.*)

1. While the Romans were offering resistance, the cavalry secured a supply of corn. 2. After conquering the Germans he heard that ambassadors were coming from the Suebi. 3. He drove out the Suebi, and assigned lands to the Germans. 4. Without anyone offering resistance, they will set out against Cæsar's wish. 5. Being unable to conquer the Suebi, they made war on the Germans. 6. Although they begged for mercy, he nevertheless drove the Suebi from their lands. 7. As we have secured cavalry, we shall be a match for the Romans. 8. After making war they will seize these lands by force.

CHAPTER VIII.

VERBS COMPLETED BY THE DATIVE, GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE —THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

51. Many verbs followed by a direct object in English are represented in Latin by verbs that take, not the accusative, but some other of the oblique cases; as,

They forget the disagreement: **Dissēnsiōnis oblīviscuntur.**
He persuades the state: **Cīvitātī persuādet.**
He used the timber and bronze: **Māteriā atque aere ūtēbātur.**

Thus while the English verb is transitive, the Latin equivalent is intransitive.

52. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE.

Many verbs, chiefly denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage* or *disposition towards*, are followed by the dative. Of these the most important are:

Aid, assist, **subveniō, succurrō.**
Believe, **crēdō.**
Benefit, **prōsum.**
Command (=order), **imperō, mandō.**
Command (=am in charge of), **praesum.**
Displease, **displiceō.**
Distrust, **diffīdō.**
Envy, **invideō.**
Favor, **faveō, studeō.**
Heal, **medeor.**
Indulge, **indulgeō.**
Injure, **noceō, obsum.**
Interrupt, **intervenīō.**
Marry (a man), **nūbō.**
Meet, **occurrō**; so **obviam eō.**
Obey, **pāreō, obtemperō.**
Oppose, **resistō, repūgnō, obsistō, occurrō.**
Pardon, **ignōscō.**
Persuade, **persuādeō, suādeō.**
Please, **placeō.**
Relieve, succeed, **succēdō.**
Satisfy, **satisfaciō.**
Serve, **servīō.**
Spare, **parcō.**
Surpass, **praestō.**
Threaten, **minor.**
Trust, **fīdō, cōnfīdō.**

53. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE GENITIVE.

(*a*) Some verbs meaning to *pity*, *remember* or *forget* are followed by the genitive; namely:

Pity, **miserēor**, and **miseret** (for which see section 91, *d*).
Bear in mind, remember, **meminī.**
Call to mind, recollect, **reminiscor.**
Forget, **oblīviscor.**

(*b*) Two impersonal verbs, **interest** and (rarely) **rĕfert**, meaning *it concerns, it interests* (*it is of importance to*), take the genitive of the person interested; as,

It concerns the state: **Rei pūblicae interest.**

i. But instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns, the ablative feminine of the possessives is used, namely, **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā**; as, *This concerns me:* **Hŏc meā interest** (or **rĕfert**). In this usage *rĕfert* is common.

ii. The *thing which is of importance* is expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive (with or without a subject accusative) or a clause. The *degree of importance* is expressed by an adverb or by the genitive of price (see section 88); as, *Your safety is of great importance to me:* **Māgnī meā interest ut salvus sīs.**

54. Verbs which take the Ablative.

The following verbs (with their compounds) are followed by the ablative:

Use, **ūtor**. *Enjoy*, **fruor**. *Perform*, **fungor**.
Gain, obtain, **potior**. *Eat*, **vescor**.

Also verbs of *lacking*, **egeō, careō**.

55. i. That in the case of such verbs the irregularity is only apparent may be seen by observing the exact meaning of the verb; for instance, *serviō, am a slave (to); persuādeō, make it acceptable (to); satisfaciō, do enough (for); pāreō, am at hand (for); resistō, stand in opposition (to); praesum, am at the head (with reference to); ūtor, benefit myself (by means of); potior, become powerful (by means of); careō, be cut off (from); oblīviscor, become dark (as regards) i.e., become forgetful (of).*

ii. Accordingly it is not necessary that all verbs having the same English equivalent should take the same case. Thus *jubeō (command, order), sublevō, juvō (aid), laedō (injure), dēlectō (please), offendō (displease), miseror (pity)*, and *recordor (recollect)*, regularly take the accusative.

iii. Some of the verbs given in sections 52-54 are sometimes followed by a different case, especially when used in a different sense. Thus *imperō (command)* takes the dative, but *imperō (demand, require)* takes the accusative, both being united in, *He demands hostages of the enemy*, **Hostibus imperat obsidēs.** *Meminī*, of *recalling a person one has known*, takes the accusative. *Potior, gain sovereignty over*, takes the genitive, chiefly in the phrase *rērum potīrī, to obtain control of affairs.* And the verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* regularly have the accusative in the case of neuter pronouns or neuter adjectives used substantively.

iv. Certain phrases, having the value of verbs which take the dative, have the same construction, *e.g., fidem habeō = cōnfidō.*

v. *Ūtor* may take a second ablative used predicatively; as, *He used these men as guides:* **His ducibus ūtēbātur.**

vi. *Interdīcō* takes a dative (or sometimes an accusative) of the person debarred, the ablative of the thing forbidden.

56. **The Impersonal Passive.**—In English only the active voice of an intransitive verb may be used. But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*ie.*, such as do not govern a direct object in the accusative), the passive may be used impersonally, that is, in the third person singular, and (in the compound tenses) in the neuter. The impersonal passive denotes merely the occurrence of an action without reference to the doer; as, **Pūgnātur**: *Fighting takes place,*[1] or *there is a fight.* **Ventum est**: *Coming took place.* The usual English equivalent is the active voice, the subject being obtained from the context; as, **Ventum est**: *He* (or *we* or *they*, etc.) *came.*

57. In Latin all intransitive verbs, if used in the passive, must be used impersonally, and this impersonal passive construction is used to render into Latin the passive of the verbs which take the dative[2] (section 52); as,

Cæsar is obeyed: **Caesarī pārētur** (*i.e., obedience is rendered to Cæsar*).[1]

They asked to be spared: **Ōrābant ut sibi parcerētur** (*i.e., that mercy might be shown to them*).

I had not been pardoned: **Mihi nōn erat ignōtum** (*i.e., forgiveness had not been granted to me*).

Thus where a verb takes the dative in the active voice, that dative is retained in the passive, and cannot become the subject.

EXERCISE 8.

A.

1. Cæsar commanded the soldiers of the tenth legion, which he most trusted, to remember their former valor. 2. He answered that Dumnorix was always opposing Cæsar's plans and assisting the enemy. 3. These resources he is using in order to gain the sovereign power. 4. He says that the senate distrusted the Gauls

1. On the translation of a verb by means of a verbal noun, see section 203, *d*.

2. The use of the impersonal passive construction with verbs which take the genitive or ablative occurs chiefly in the passive periphrastic conjugation. (See section 120, ii.)

and ordered them to obey Cæsar's commands. 5. Exercising his usual (*suus*) clemency, he promised to spare the Nervii, and demanded a large number of hostages from the other states. 6. To this embassy the answer was given that the Roman people could forget the old insult, but not the recent wrongs. 7. It is your interest, and the interest of all the citizens to obey the laws. 8. Word was brought that these tribes eat corn and flesh. 9. The soldiers whom Labienus commanded were persuaded not to injure the prisoners. 10. We are accustomed to pity those who obey our rule, but the states which oppose the Roman people cannot be pardoned. 11. All whom we met said that they lacked food. 12. Using this bridge, Cæsar made a sudden attack and became master of the enemy's camp.

B. (*Hannibal, 3, 4.*)

1. While making for Etruria we shall meet the two consuls with their whole army. 2. He uses both eyes equally well. 3. After Saguntum was taken Hannibal commanded three very large armies. 4. In the next year he gained Saguntum, an allied state. 5. No one was spared. 6. After routing the consuls, Hamilcar was commanded to seize the pass. 7. It is of great importance to the State that the chief command should be bestowed on Hannibal. 8. He obeys the consul's authority. 9. We shall never forget that ambuscade. 10. He could not be persuaded to assist his wounded colleague.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 8, 9.*)

1. They do not trust even Cæsar. 2. He has commanded the cavalry not to injure the ambassadors. 3. I cannot forget the outrages of the Suebi. 4. Answer was made that this concerned a large part of Gaul. 5. He says that a large part of the cavalry is being resisted. 6. They wish to obtain the lands of others. 7. This speech displeased the ambassadors. 8. They thought that they needed aid, and persuaded Cæsar to assist them. 9. This friendship will benefit Cæsar. 10. A large part of the Ubii envy the Suebi.

CHAPTER IX.

Conditional Sentences.

58. Conditional sentences consist regularly of two clauses: (*a*) a subordinate clause containing some assumption and introduced by *sī* (or a compound of *sī*), and (*b*) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the assumption. The former is called the *Protasis*, the latter the *Apodosis*. The Protasis is often called the *conditional clause*.

59. One obvious distinction of conditions is that of (1) *present* or *past*, in which the question of fulfilment has already been decided, and (2) *future*, in which a possibility of fulfilment is always conceivable. In each of these, two forms of statement are in common use, making four main classes of conditional sentences.

60. I. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where *no hint* is given of the accordance of the supposed case with fact, but where it is merely stated that, granting the assumption, the conclusion logically follows, the *indicative* is used in both clauses, the tenses being those which would be used for the same words if occurring in simple sentences; as,

If he thinks this, he is mistaken: **Sī hōc exīstimat, errat.**
If I did wrong, I did it unwittingly: **Sī peccāvī, īnsciēns fēcī.**
If they did this, they are not enemies: **Sī hōc fēcērunt, nōn inimīcī sunt.**

61. II. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where we wish to represent the assumption (and consequently the conclusion also) as *contrary to fact*, the *subjunctive* is used in both clauses, the *imperfect* subjunctive for *present* time, and the *pluperfect* subjunctive for *past* time; as,

If he thought this (but he does not), *he would be mistaken:* **Sī hōc exīstimāret, errāret.**
If he had said this (but he did not), *he would have been mistaken:* **Sī hōc dīxisset, errāvisset.**
If he were alive, we should have found him long ago: **Invēnissēmus jam diū, sī vīveret.**
Had my advice prevailed, we should to-day be free: **Sī meum cōnsilium valuisset, hodiē līberī essēmus.**

62. III. In FUTURE conditions, one class corresponds exactly to that given in section 60, where the *logical* result is emphasized. The English has in the protasis generally the *present* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (sometimes the imperative); the Latin has in the protasis the *future* or *future perfect* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (or imperative).

The difference in tenses is due to the fact that Latin in dependent clauses is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future), and also priority of action in relation to the main verb.

If he thinks that, he will be mistaken: **SI hōc existimābit, errābit.**
If he does that, he will receive a reward: **SI hōc fēcerit, praemium cōnsequētur.** (The doing must precede the receiving.)
We shall attain this end, if we take care: **Hōc assequēmur, sī cavēbimus.**
If they cross the river, hold your ground: **SI flūmen trānsierint, sustinēte.**

63. IV. In the other class of FUTURE conditions, where a *conceivable* case is put less vividly, the English has in the protasis *should* or *were to*, or the past subjunctive; in the apodosis *would* (or, in the first person, *should*); the Latin has the *present subjunctive* in both clauses; as,

If he were to say this (or *If he said this*), *he would be mistaken:* **SI hōc dīcat, erret.**
Time would fail me, if I should try to describe everything: **SI velim omnia dēscrībere, diēs mē dēficiat.**

64. i. Many departures from these four forms are found, especially other combinations of tenses. Of the cases where the mood is varied, the most important is in conditions contrary to fact (section 61), where *possum, dēbeō, oportet*, and the periphrastic conjugations (sections 120 and 124) are regularly used in the *indicative* instead of in the subjunctive; as, *If Cæsar had set out, he could have crossed the river:* **Caesar, sī profectus esset, flūmen trānsīre potuit.**

ii. Alternative conditions are introduced by **sīve . . . sīve** (or **seu . . . seu**) *whether . . . or*, which follow the rules for *sī* as regards mood and tense; as, *It will be an easy task, whether they remain or set out:* **Facilis erit rēs, seu manēbunt seu proficiscentur.**

Whether . . . or in this sense should be carefully distinguished from *whether . . . or* represented by *utrum . . . an* (section 38). In the former case we can always add *in either case*, or change to *no matter whether . . . or*.

iii. For *if not*, **sī nōn, sī minus** and **nisi** are found. *Nisi* (*unless*) is used to mark an exception, or after negatives. *Sī minus* is used where the verb is to be supplied from the context.

iv. Two mutually exclusive conditions are introduced by **sī . . . sīn**, *if . . . but if*. For *but if not*, where the verb is omitted, *sīn minus* or *sīn aliter* is used.

v. An important particular case of the present or past logical condition (section 60) is the so-called *general condition*, which, in connection with any one of a series of recurrent actions, states what is habitual. For present time the *perfect*[1] indicative is usual in the protasis, the present indicative in the apodosis; for past time the *pluperfect*[1] indicative in the protasis and the imperfect indicative in the apodosis; as, *If (ever) any crime is committed, the Druids fix the penalty:* **Sī quod est admissum facinus, Druidēs poenam cōnstituunt.**

vi. For *sī* meaning *in the hope that, to see whether*, see sec. 177.

vii. Participles and adjectives may be used in place of the regular protasis to express condition; as, *He will come, if asked:* **Rogātus veniet.** *If we keep together we shall be a match for them:* **Ūniversī parēs illīs erimus.**

viii. Another favorite classification of the conditional clauses is threefold:

I. Logical conditions (past, present or future) combining classes I. and III. above. Indicative in both clauses.

II. Ideal or contingent conditions (future)—the same as class IV. above. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

III. Unreal conditions (present or past)—the same as class II. above. Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

EXERCISE 9.

A.

1. If Casticus should seize the supreme power in his state, Cæsar would wage war against him. 2. If our troops defeat the enemy, the Belgians will at once send ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. If the Gauls had been conquered by Cæsar they would have immediately sent ambassadors to him concerning peace. 4. If a murder has been committed, or there is a dispute about an inheritance, the Druids decide (the matter). 5. The Germans would not now be

1. The perfect and pluperfect are used on the same principle as the future perfect in section 62.

carrying on war with the Gauls if Ariovistus had been defeated by the Roman troops. 6. If this is reported to Ariovistus, he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages. 7. If the general had not sent forward three cohorts, the enemy would have gained the victory and our soldiers would now be in the greatest peril. 8. The Helvetians would return to their territories if the Roman people were to conclude peace with them. 9. Unless Cæsar enrols two legions in that place, he will not be able to carry on the war successfully with the Gauls. 10. If the enemy had set fire to all their towns and villages and burnt up all their corn, they would not have been able to return. 11. If Cæsar meets with favorable weather, he will weigh anchor; but if not, he will return to the province. 12. If the Germans had made an attempt to cross the Rhine, Cæsar would have marched against them with two legions.

B. (*Hannibal, 5, 6.*)

1. He would have escaped the Numidians, had he not been drawn into an ambuscade. 2. If he were to collect a new army, he would defeat the dictator. 3. If he returns without a large army, he will be put to death. 4. If ever the consuls opposed Hannibal in the field, they were routed. 5. If they were to delay among the mountains, he would not be able to crush them. 6. If Hannibal was defeated in Italy, he did not return unconquered to his native land. 7. If they go outside the camp, no one will escape. 8. If the resources of the country were not exhausted, no one would venture to resist the Romans. 9. If he is returning, he has been recalled by the master of the house.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 10, 11.*)

1. If the enemy were to provoke them to fight, they would hold their ground. 2. Had they gained this request, they would have begged him not to return. 3. If the army is approaching nearer, they have not gained their request. 4. If the Treveri return to Cæsar, he will ask them to advance no further. 5. If rivers divide into several branches, they form islands. 6. If Cæsar thought they were fierce and savage tribes, he would not be sending ambassadors to them. 7. If they inhabited these territories, they were not far distant from the Alps. 8. If the cavalry had not been sent in advance, we should have accepted these terms. 9. If ever he gave them permission they advanced.

CHAPTER X.

Clauses of Concession—Clauses of Proviso—Conditional Clauses of Comparison.

65. Clauses of Concession are subordinate clauses which concede or admit something in spite of which the statement in the principal clause still holds good.

(*a*) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *in spite of the fact that*, or *whereas*, are rendered into Latin by *quamquam*, *etsī* or *tametsī* with the *indicative*, or by *cum* with the *subjunctive*; as,

Although the difficulty was very great, he determined to lead his army across: **Etsī summa erat difficultās, tamen trādūcere exercitum cōnstituit.**

The Romans, in spite of being weary with fighting, yet advanced: **Rōmānī, quamquam proeliō fessī erant, tamen prōcēdunt.**

He kept himself in camp, although the enemy every day gave him an opportunity to fight: **Castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum hostēs cotidiē pūgnandī potestātem facerent.**

He was poor, whereas he might have been very rich: **Fuit pauper, cum dīvitissimus esse posset.**

(*b*) Clauses introduced by *even though*, *even if*, *even granting*, are rendered into Latin by *etsī* or *etiamsī* with the *indicative* or *subjunctive*, according to the rules for the protasis of conditional sentences (Chapter IX.), or by *ut* or *nē* with the *subjunctive*; as,

Even if he cannot show gratitude, he at least can feel it: **Etiamsī referre gratiam nōn potest, habēre certē potest.**

Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth: **Vēra loquī, etsī meum ingenium nōn movēret, necessitās cōgit.**

Even supposing everything should turn out contrary to expectation, we are very powerful in ships: **Ut omnia contrā opīniōnem accidant, plūrimum nāvibus possumus.**

(*c*) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *however much*, *no matter how*, are rendered into Latin by *quamvīs* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as,

However great expectation may be (or *Although expectation be great*), *yet you will surpass it:* **Quamvīs sit māgna exspectātiō, tamen eam vincēs.**

66. i. The impersonal verb *licet* and the subjunctive (see section 143, fn.) is often used with the force of *even though*.

ii. *Quamvīs* is sometimes joined with a single word, the predicate of the subordinate clause being understood; as, *However few they are, they venture to advance:* **Quamvīs paucī** (supply **sint**) **adīre audent.**

iii. *Quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent clause, and may then be rendered *and yet*.

iv. Only in class (*a*) is it always certain that what is conceded is a fact.

67. Clauses of Proviso are subordinate clauses embodying some stipulation. They are introduced in English by *provided*, or *if only*, or *so long as;* in Latin commonly by *dum*, *dummodo* or *modo* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as,

Let them hate, provided (or *so long as*) *they fear:* **Ōderint dum metuant.**

The negative in clauses of proviso is *nē*.

68. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are subordinate clauses containing a comparison to some imaginary state of affairs. Such clauses are introduced in English by *as if;* in Latin by *quasi*, *tamquam sī*, *velut sī*, *ut sī*, *āc sī*, or by *tamquam* or *velut* alone. These are followed by the subjunctive, the sequence of tenses being observed (*i.e.*, present or perfect subjunctive after the primary tenses, imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses); as,

We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus just as if he were present: **Ariovistī crudēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrēmus.**[1]

i. *Quasi*, *tamquam*, *ut* and *velut* are used with a similar force with participles; as, *They halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven:* **Restitērunt tamquam caelestī vōce jussī.**

EXERCISE 10.

A.

1. Although he saw that the legions were being hard pressed, he was unwilling to order the soldiers to retreat. 2. Even if Cæsar were in command of the army, he would not be able to defeat the enemy. 3. Provided that the enemy do not learn our numbers,

1. In all such clauses, both English and Latin, the verb of the real apodosis has been suppressed: as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus as* (*we should shudder*) *if he were present:* **Ariovisti crudelitatem velut** (horreamus) **si coram adsit horremus.**

we shall attack them to-morrow. 4. Many remain in Cæsar's camp, as if they were unwilling to return to Gaul. 5. If Cæsar comes up with the enemy, he will easily defeat them, no matter how brave and numerous they may be. 6. In spite of their having taken up their position on the higher ground, the enemy could not withstand the attacks of our men. 7. If only Labienus can cross the river, he will surround the enemy. 8. The cavalry quickly crossed the river, just as if they had been instructed to do so. 9. Though you can persuade these men to send ambassadors, you cannot make them friends. 10. Even though he should have met with suitable weather, he would not have sailed for Britain. 11. Whereas they might return without danger, they are unwilling to set out. 12. The enemy sent hostages at once, as if afraid of Cæsar's vengeance.

B. (*Hannibal, 7, 8.*)

1. No matter how welcome these gifts may be, the Romans will not send back the prisoners. 2. Hannibal will be declared an exile, in his absence, just as if he were the greatest enemy of the Carthaginians. 3. Provided they make peace with the Romans, Hannibal will be put to death. 4. Although they paid the money in accordance with the treaty, the hostages were not restored. 5. Even if they send vessels to seize him, they will not be able to overtake him. 6. Whereas he might have been made consul, he was persuaded to flee from Rome. 7. He was recalled, just as if he had not carried on the war with great vigor. 8. Even if envoys had not been sent to demand Hannibal's surrender, he would have fled. 9. Even though this answer were to be given, an audience of the Senate would not be granted.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12.*)

1. Provided he resist bravely, he will not be surrounded. 2. In spite of the fact that they were cut off by the enemy, our men had no fear. 3. Even if several of our men are unhorsed, the rest will not be put to flight. 4. Although he had come in sight of the enemy, he did not cease from his flight. 5. The enemy were put to flight, as if panic-stricken. 6. Even if we had lent aid, we should not have rescued him from peril. 7. However brave an opposition they may offer, they will be slain. 8. Although he himself has not more than a thousand cavalry, he will return. 9. Even though we were to leave the field, Piso would not be at all alarmed.

CHAPTER XI.

USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

69. The DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb (whether active or deponent) is put in the accusative; as,

They slay the man: **Hominem interficiunt.**
He saw the forces of the enemy: **Hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.**
He builds a bridge: **Pontem facit.**

i. The direct object is that which is (*a*) affected or apprehended, or (*b*) produced, by the action of the verb.

ii. Some verbs (chiefly verbs of emotion) which are intransitive in English are represented by transitive verbs in Latin, such as *horrēre* (*to shudder at*), *dolēre* (*to grieve over*), *rīdēre* (*to laugh at*), *spērāre* (*to hope for*), *dēspērāre* (*to despair of*), *tacēre* (*to be silent about*); as, *They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus:* **Crudēlitātem Ariovistī horrent.**

iii. Many intransitive verbs (chiefly verbs of motion) become transitive when compounded with prepositions (especially *circum*, *praeter* and *trāns*); as, *They cross the river:* **Flūmen trānseunt.** *The Helvetians meet Cæsar:* **Helvētiī Caesarem conveniunt.** Similarly in English *overrun*, *undergo*. (See section 78, v. *a*.)

iv. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* take two accusatives in the active, one governed by the verb and the other by the preposition; as, *He leads his army across the river:* **Flūmen exercītum trādūcit.** (The preposition may, however, be repeated; as, **Trāns flūmen exercītum trādūcit.**) In the passive the accusative governed by the preposition may be retained.

v. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *electing*, *considering* and *showing* take two accusatives of the same person or thing, one being the direct object, and the other a predicate noun or adjective; as, *He calls the Ædui brothers:* **Aeduōs frātrēs appellat.** *They let him know:* **Eum certiōrem faciunt.** *They choose these as their leaders:* **Hōs ducēs dēligunt sibi.** *They consider this a mark of valor:* **Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant.** In the passive both direct object and predicate become nominative; as, *Ariovistus was called friend:* **Ariovistus amīcus appellātus est.**

vi. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching* and *concealing* may take two accusatives, the one of the person and the other of the thing; as, *Cæsar demands corn of the Ædui:* **Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitat.** *I concealed my opinion from him:* **Eum sententiam cēlāvī.** In the passive one accusative, usually of the thing, may be retained. All these verbs, however, may take a pre-

positional phrase in place of one of the accusatives, as *petō*, *postulō* and *quaerō* regularly do.

vii. In poetry, the passive of verbs of *clothing*, as also the perfect participle passive of some other verbs, is used with a reflexive or 'middle' force, and takes a direct object; as, **Galeam indultur**: *He puts on (himself) the helmet.* **Nōdō sinūs collēcta**: *Having the folds gathered in a knot.*

70. The accusative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS:

ad, *to*; **adversus, adversum**, *against*; **ante**, *before*; **apud**, *near, at*; **circā, circum**, *around*; **circiter**, *about*; **cis, citrā**, *on this side of*; **contrā**, *opposite to, against*; **ergā**, *towards*; **extrā**, *outside*; **infrā**, *below*; **inter**, *between, among*; **intrā**, *within*; **jūxtā**, *near*; **ob**, *on account of*; **penes**, *in the power of*; **per**, *through*; **pōne, post**, *behind, after*; **praeter**, *past*; **prope**, *near*; **propter**, *on account of*; **secundum**, *after, following*; **suprā**, *above*; **trāns**, *across*; **ultrā**, *beyond*; **versus**, *towards*.

The accusative is also used with **in**, *into* or *in*, and **sub**, *under*, when they express motion towards, and usually with **subter**, *beneath* and **super**, *above*. These four also take the ablative (section 108).

i. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē*, *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē*, and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* sometimes take the accusative.

71. The SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (except the historical infinitive, section 112) is put in the accusative; as,

He answered that Cæsar was doing wrong: **Respondit Caesarem injūriam facere.**

It is dangerous for the Germans to cross the Rhine: **Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīre est perīculōsum.**

72. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.—Intransitive verbs often take an accusative to define more clearly their meaning. This is either a substantive (generally modified by an adjective) of kindred meaning and often of kindred derivation, or more frequently a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively; as,

We shall live a safer life: **Tūtiōrem vītam vīvēmus.**

He makes almost the same mistakes: **Eadem ferē peccat.**

This is the origin of the adverbial use of *multum, nihil, quid*, etc.; as, *He has very great power:* **Plūrimum potest.**

i. There are also a few isolated phrases used adverbially, which are closely connected with the cognate accusative, such as *māximam partem, for the most part.*

73. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.—In poetry, largely through Greek influence,[1] the accusative is used to denote the part of the body affected; as, **Tremit artūs**: *He trembles in his limbs.* **Ōs deō similis**: *In face like to a god.*

74. The accusative is used in EXCLAMATIONS, with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me*: **Mē miserum** or **Ō mē miserum.**

75. For the use of the accusative to denote DURATION OF TIME, EXTENT OF SPACE, and LIMIT OF MOTION, see Chapter XVII.

EXERCISE 11.

A.

1. The Gauls had already led three-fourths of their troops across that river. 2. He learned that they had all encamped within those forests and were there waiting for the approach of the Romans. 3. It is very easy for our forces to pursue their march through these districts. 4. The ships were carried down towards the lower part of the island, which is nearer the west. 5. The tribes which dwell on this side the Rhine have been made tributary. 6. He crossed the river, and having attacked the enemy, he began to storm the city. 7. They are mistaken, if they hope for aid from the Romans. 8. Before Cæsar's arrival they had seized the country around the forest which the Greeks call Orcynia. 9. Because of their fear, they concealed everything from Cæsar. 10. Perceiving that their comrades had been put to flight, they despaired of victory and withdrew into the town. 11. On being asked their opinion, they made no answer. 12. For (*ob*) the same reason, he did not trust the Gauls much.

B. (*Hannibal, 9, 10.*)

1. They said he had entrusted all the gold to the Cretans. 2. These nations are considered very warlike among the Romans. 3. He pretends to fill the earthen vessel with live serpents. 4. Thinking that he would easily attain this object, he took no precautions. 5. He says he desires to crush Hannibal that all else may be made easy. 6. Calling the leading men together, he promised to wage war against the Cretans. 7. Perceiving that the king was very strong on account of the number of his ships, he

1. Hence this is often called the Greek accusative.

formed another plan. 8. He regards it sufficient for all the others to attack the king alone. 9. After the other nations have been won over, we shall easily deceive the Carthaginians, with Hannibal's knowledge.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 13.*)

1. He was of the opinion that the Gauls, after accepting these terms, would not make war. 2. Before the recent battle he had ordered the forces to be increased. 3. He was glad that they had attained very great prestige among the Gauls. 4. On account of the treachery of the enemy, he did not wait at all for the leading men. 5. After the battle was begun, he thought it was the height of folly for the cavalry to return into the camp. 6. Cæsar believed that the Gauls had treacherously taken the offensive in the battle the day before. 7. He perceived how much power they had. 8. All the troops, after following up the enemy, were led across the river. 9. Although he had not been made quæstor, he considered this circumstance most opportune.

CHAPTER XII.

Uses of the Dative.

76. The Dative case is used to express the indirect or remote connection of a person or thing with the action, feeling, or quality expressed by a verb or adjective. There are three main uses:[1] to express (1) the indirect object, (2) the person interested, (3) the purpose served. The dative may generally be rendered by *to* or *for*.

77. The Indirect Object, completing the meaning of a verb by denoting a person or thing indirectly affected, is put in the dative; as,

They yield to Cæsar: **Caesarī cēdunt.**
They granted lands to the Germans: **Germānīs agrōs dedērunt.**

78. i. The dative of the indirect object is found (*a*) with intransitive verbs, (*b*) with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object.[2]

ii. Closely allied to the use with verbs is the use of the Dative with Adjectives, whose meaning it completes by denoting that to which the feeling or quality is directed; as,

He was friendly to the Helvetians: **Helvētiīs erat amīcus.**

Such adjectives are those meaning *near, friendly, like, useful, easy, agreeable, known*, and their opposites. Many of these, however, admit other constructions, especially a preposition (*ad* or *in*) with the accusative. The dative is also found with adverbs of like meaning.

iii. Often in English, especially with verbs of *giving, promising* and *telling*, the preposition *to* is not used, and the indirect object is in form indistinguishable from the direct; as, *He gave the soldiers the signal:* **Mīlitibus sīgnum dedit.** *He told Cicero he would return:* **Cicerōnī dīxit sē reversūrum.**

iv. Of especial importance are those cases where, because the usual translation is somewhat inexact, a Latin intransitive verb with the indirect object corresponds to an English transitive verb with the direct object. (See Chapter VIII.)

v. Another important usage is the Dative with Compound Verbs. Where an English verb with a preposition and its object is represented in Latin by a verb compounded with the corresponding preposition (e.g., *adeō = I go to*), difficulty often arises

1. This division is not fundamental, but is convenient for practical purposes.

2. The direct object of course becomes the subject in the passive voice, the indirect object remaining.

in determining the case of the Latin noun. Three different constructions are found, for the use of which no invariable rules can be given; the student must depend upon observation and authority.

(*a*) The compound is sometimes followed by the same case as the preposition would take. (For the accusative see section 69, iii. and iv.; for the ablative, section 93.)

(*b*) More often (and especially in the literal local sense) the prefixed preposition is repeated with the noun; as, *They sally out from the camp:* **Ex castrīs ērumpunt.** *He came up to the camp:* **Ad castra accessit.** *He converses with him:* **Cum eō colloquitur.** *They put everything into the fire:* **Omnia in ignem inferunt.**

(*c*) But very often also, in place of the preposition and noun, Latin has the dative (to which in the case of transitive compounds may be added an accusative of the direct object). This dative means literally *with reference to*;[1] as,

He comes beneath the roof: **Tēctō succēdit** (literally, *He comes beneath, with reference to the roof*).

He puts friendship before everything: **Amīcitiam omnibus rēbus antepōnit** (literally, *He puts friendship in front, with reference to everything*).

This usage is especially common with compounds of *ad, ante, con-, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, super;* generally where the compound is not used in a literal sense; as, **Equitātuī praeerat**;[2] *He commanded the cavalry* (more literally, *He was at the head of the cavalry*). *He inspired the soldiers with hope:* **Spem intulit mīlitibus** (more literally, *He put hope into the soldiers*).

vi. A few verbs, such as *dōnō* and *circumdō*, admit a double construction: (1) dative and accusative, (2) accusative and ablative; as, *He presented the plunder to the soldiers:* **Praedam mīlitibus dōnāvit.** *They presented him with the citizenship:* **Eum cīvitāte dōnāvērunt.**

vii. In the poets the dative of indirect object is extended to include the idea of motion towards[3] (see section 125), and is also used with verbs of *nearness, union, difference* and *contention.*

79. The Dative of Interest denotes the person or thing concerned (especially benefited or harmed). It is really identical with the dative of the indirect object, but the connection is looser and the dative complement not so essential to the verb; as,

1. In no case should this dative be regarded as depending on the preposition, but rather on the whole verb.

2. Most of the compounds of *sum* are used in a similar way.

3. This, some grammarians contend, was the original force of the dative.

He ordered each to take thought for himself: **Sibi quemque cōnsulere jussit.**

I do not ask this for myself: **Neque mihi haec quaerō.**[1]

80. Besides this simple use (often called the *dative of advantage* or *disadvantage*), the dative of interest includes:

(*a*) The dative with verbs of *taking away* or *warding off*, with which it is translated by *from*; as, *They are taking from me my liberty:* **Mihi lībertātem ēripiunt.**

(*b*) The DATIVE OF REFERENCE, modifying the sentence as a whole and denoting a person indirectly interested rather than actually affected. This includes:

i. Many cases where English would use a *possessive*: as, *Pulio's shield is pierced:* **Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pulliōni** (more nearly, *Pulio gets his shield pierced*).

ii. The person *in whose eyes*; as, *She is beautiful to many:* **Fōrmōsa est multīs.** *They wished to be blameless in Cæsar's eyes:* **Caesarī pūrgātī esse volēbant.**

iii. Participles expressing *the point of view*; as, *The first town as you come from Epirus:* **Oppidum prīmum venientibus ab Epīrō.**

(*c*) The ETHICAL DATIVE, confined to personal pronouns, and indicating a person conceived to be interested in the statement. It is chiefly used in colloquial expressions of emotion, and often answers to the English *pray* or *bless me*. Here belongs the expression *sibi velle*; as, *What does he mean?* **Quid sibi vult?**

(*d*) The DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT, with the gerundive, to indicate the person interested, and hence presumably the agent; as, *Everything had to be done by Cæsar:* **Caesarī omnia erant agenda.**

i. This dative is sometimes found (especially in poetry) with other forms of the passive, chiefly the compound ones.

ii. To avoid ambiguity the gerundive may have *ab* and the ablative in place of the dative of agent; as, *I must show him gratitude:* **Ei ā mē referenda est grātia.**

(*e*) The DATIVE OF POSSESSOR, chiefly with the verb *sum*, to denote the person interested as owner; as, *They state that they have nothing:* **Dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse.**

81. The DATIVE OF PURPOSE is a predicative dative, denoting the purpose served (that which something tends or is

1: *For*, meaning *in defence of*, is expressed by *pro* with the ablative.

intended to be), and is usually accompanied by another dative of the person interested; as,

It was a great hindrance to the Gauls: **Gallīs māgnō erat impedīmentō.**

They were coming to the aid of the Nervii: **Auxilīō Nervīīs veniēbant.**

He leaves five cohorts for the defence of the camp: **Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit.**

1. This dative is especially common with the verb *sum* (after which it has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun), and is found also with *fīō, veniō, mittō, relinquō, dō.* The nouns so used are generally of a semi-abstract nature, and are always in the singular, some of the commonest being *auxiliō, praesidiō, subsidiō, ūsuī, impedīmentō, cūrae, salūtī, odiō.*

EXERCISE 12.

A.

1. He consulted the welfare of the troops whom Labienus commanded. 2. He said all these matters would be an object of concern to him. 3. It is well known to all that the departure of the Belgians was like a rout. 4. The soldiers told Labienus that Cæsar had always shown special indulgence to this legion. 5. Word was brought to the lieutenant that the general had left two cohorts as a protection to the ships. 6. They said they preferred death to slavery and that they would oppose themselves to the enemy. 7. He found that traders have no access to these tribes. 8. He asked what Cæsar meant, and why he had demanded of them such a great number of hostages. 9. To these envoys Cæsar made answer that he could have no friendship with the Germans. 10. A centurion, who had participated in many engagements, was in command of the troops. 11. He ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers not to surround the camp with a trench nor to go to the assistance of Labienus. 12. Perceiving that they had become suspected in our eyes, they threw themselves at Cæsar's feet.

B. (*Hannibal, 11-13.*)

1. The fortress which had been bestowed on Hannibal as a gift, they surrounded with armed men. 2. It has been handed down to tradition that Hannibal was bitterly hostile to the Romans. 3.

Word was brought to the king that these gifts had excited Hannibal's laughter. 4. They informed the envoys that they devoted all their time to literary pursuits. 5. If Prusias had had the courage to say no to the envoys, Hannibal would not have been surrendered to the Romans. 6. He gives the messenger orders to make plain to the soldiers where the king is. 7. He declared that there was friendship between him and Hannibal. 8. On the battle being begun they all at once sought safety for themselves in flight. 9. The senators considered that Hannibal's strategy would always be a source of safety to the enemy.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 14.*)

1. Hastily seizing their arms, the Germans for a short time resisted our cavalry. 2. In order that time might be given the women and children, they defended the camp for a while. 3. It is better for the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. Cæsar instructed (*praecipiō*) our men not to burst into the enemy's camp. 5. In dismay, the women began to give indication to our troops of the flight of the Germans. 6. He found out that the Germans had neither arms nor baggage. 7. The speed of Cæsar's approval proved the safety of the cavalry. 8. In order to pursue the enemy more quickly, the cavalry was given to Labienus. 9. If Cæsar finds out what the enemy are doing, he will send all the cavalry as reinforcements (*subsidium*) to our men.

CHAPTER XIII.

Uses of the Genitive.

82. The Genitive case is used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. It is also used to limit certain adjectives, and (by analogy) to complete certain verbs. The genitive is regularly translated (*a*) by the English possessive case, (*b*) by means of the preposition *of*, or (*c*) by means of the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition.

83. The Possessive Genitive is used with a noun to denote the owner; as,

The lands of the Helvetians: **Helvētiōrum agrī.**

i. The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with *sum*, *fiō*, etc.; as, *Gaul does not belong to the Roman people:* **Neque Gallia est populī Rōmānī.**

ii. This predicative use is often found denoting the person whose property, duty, or custom the subject is, especially when the subject is an infinitive or a clause; as, *It is the part* (or *duty*) *of a wise man to obey the laws:* **Sapientis est lēgibus parēre.** So **Sapientiae est:** *It is a mark of wisdom.* But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns the neuter possessives are used; as, *It is my duty* (or *my way*): **Meum est.**

iii. The word on which the genitive depends is frequently omitted, regularly so if it has been used previously in the sentence; as, *He had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus:* **In exercitū Sullae et posteā in Crassī fuerat.**

84. The Subjective Genitive is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels; as,

The flight of the Gauls: **Fuga Gallōrum.**
Cæsar's anxiety: **Sollicitūdō Caesaris.**

i. In all such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its subject; as, *The Gauls fled:* **Gallī fūgērunt.**

85. The Objective Genitive is used with nouns denoting action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed; as,

The storming of the camp: **Expūgnātiō castrōrum.**
The fear of death: **Metus mortis.**

i. In such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its object; as, *They storm the camp:* **Expūgnant castra.**

ii. This construction is often used when there would be no corresponding Latin verb with the accusative, but where we should expect a dative or ablative or prepositional phrase; and in such cases it will constantly be found that the English equivalent is a phrase containing some other preposition than *of*, but one that, as a rule, is equivalent to *as regards;* as, *Confidence in (as regards) one's self:* **Sui fīdūcia.** *Exemption from (as regards) military service:* **Mīlitiae vacātiō.** *War with the Veneti:* **Bellum Venetōrum.** *Reputation for valor:* **Opīniō virtūtis.** *Danger to the cavalry:* **Perīculum equitum.**[1]

iii. Both the objective and the subjective genitive may modify the same noun; as, *The wrongs done by the Helvetians to the Roman people:* **Helvētiōrum injūriae populī Rōmānī.**

iv. Prepositional phrases[2] and possessive pronominal adjectives sometimes take the place of the objective genitive; as, *Danger to himself:* **Perīculum suum** (for **sui**).

86. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

The genitive is used with nouns, pronouns, numerals (especially ordinals and *mīllia*), adjectives (especially comparatives and superlatives), and occasionally with a few adverbs; as,

Part of the soldiers: **Pars mīlitum.**
Which of you? **Quis vestrum?**
Two of the states: **Duae cīvitātum.**
The bravest of all these: **Hōrum omnium fortissimī.**
Least of all: **Minimē omnium.**

i. The partitive genitive often depends on neuter pronouns or adjectives used substantively (but only in the nominative or the accusative without a preposition); e.g., *nihil, tantum, quantum, plūs, minus, quid, quod, aliquid, id, hōc,* and also the adverbs *satis* and *parum* used substantively. In most of these cases the English equivalent omits *of;* as, *No time:* **Nihil spatiī.** *Less hesitation:* **Minus dubitātiōnis.** *They carried off what corn they could:* **Frūmentī quod potuērunt āvexērunt.** *This measure of consolation:* **Hōc sōlāciī.** *Sufficient protection:* **Satis praesidiī.**[3]

1. Compare *Sibi confidere, militiā vacare, cum Venetis bellare, de virtute opinari, periculosum equitibus.*

2. Nouns in Latin are joined to each other by prepositions, as a rule, only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin and even then but very seldom.

3. This genitive may be an adjective of the first and second declensions used substantively, but not of the third; as, *No evil:* **Nihil malī**; but *Nothing greater:* **Nihil majus.**

ii. In other cases an adjective used substantively regularly agrees in gender with the partitive genitive depending on it; as, *Many of the ships:* **Multae nāvium.**

iii. With adjectives and pronouns the partitive idea is often expressed by prepositions, chiefly *ex* or *dē*, but also *inter*, *ante*, *apud* and *in*. Especially is this the case with *ūnus*, *paucī* and *quīdam*; as, *One of his sons:* **Ūnus ē fīliīs.** *A few of our men:* **Paucī dē nostrīs.**

iv. The partitive genitive should not be used in the following cases:

(*a*) When, though English uses *of*, not a part but the whole is taken; as, *To all of us:* **Omnibus nōbīs.** *Three hundred of us have conspired:* **Trecentī conjūrāvimus.**

(*b*) To denote the whole, the remainder, or any local part of anything, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning. Here Latin idiom prefers an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes the substantive; as, *The whole of Gaul:* **Tōta Gallia.** *The rest of the struggle:* **Reliquum certāmen.** *The top of the hill:* **Summus collis.** *The middle of the river:* **Medium flūmen.** *At the beginning of spring:* **Primō vēre.**

87. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC[1] is used to denote some character or quality of the substantive modified, including value, measure, time, etc.; as,

A man of great prudence: **Vir cōnsiliī māgnī.**
Stones of great weight: **Māgnī ponderis saxa.**
A few days' march: **Paucōrum diērum iter.**
A six-foot wall: **Mūrus sex pedum.**

i. There must be some adjectival modifier of this genitive; e.g., *A man of bravery* is not **vir fortitūdinis**, but **vir fortis.**

ii. The modifiers most commonly used are numerals and such adjectives as *māgnus*, *māximus*, *parvus*, *tantus*, *summus*, *paucī*. The genitive of characteristic should not be used with *pār*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *aequus*, or with pronouns except in such phrases as *hūjusmodī*, *ējusmodī*.

iii. The genitive of characteristic may be used as a predicate; as, *The depth of the river was three feet:* **Flūminis erat altitūdō trium pedum.**

iv. For the relation to the ablative of characteristic see section 105, iii.

88. The GENITIVE OF PRICE denotes the value, but only in general, not definite, terms; as, *His influence was valued highly:* **Auctōritās ējus māgnī habēbātur.**

1. Also called the Genitive of *Description* or Genitive of *Quality*.

i. With verbs of *estimating* are found *tantī, quantī, māgnī, parvī, plūris, minōris, nihilī*, and a few other words.

ii. With verbs of *buying, selling* and *costing* are found only *tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris.*

iii. For the ablative of price see section 100.

89. The GENITIVE OF DEFINITION is used occasionally to explain the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do; as, *The virtue of justice:* **Virtūs Jūstitiae.**

i. With words like *urbs, oppidum, flūmen*, etc., this genitive is not used by the best prose writers; e.g., *The city of Rome* is **Urbs Rōma**, not **Urbs Rōmae.**

90. The GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—Many adjectives require a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning; as,

Full of confidence: **Fidūciae plēnus.**
Eager for power: **Cupidus imperii.**
Skilled in war: **Peritus belli.**
Unaccustomed to toil: **Insuētus labōris.**

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those of *desire, knowledge* and *ignorance, participation* and *fulness*, so also some verbal adjectives in *-āx* and some present participles used as adjectives; as, *Averse to exertion:* **Fugiēns labōris.**

ii. As with the objective genitive after nouns (see section 85, ii.), so after adjectives the preposition used is frequently not *of*, but some equivalent of *as regards.*

iii. Many of these adjectives take other constructions; while in poetry the number of adjectives taking the genitive is largely extended.

91. The GENITIVE WITH VERBS. Many verbs take a genitive to complete their meaning.

(*a*) For verbs of *pitying, remembering* and *forgetting* see section 53, *a.*

(*b*) Verbs of *reminding* sometimes take the genitive of the thing called to mind.

(*c*) Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning* and *acquitting* take the genitive of the fault or crime charged; as, *You are accusing him of treason:* **Eum prōditiōnis insimulātis.** *He was found guilty of wrong-doing:* **Injūriae condemnātus est.**

(*d*) The impersonal verbs of emotion, *miseret, pudet, piget, paenitet* and *taedet* take the accusative of the person who feels,

and the genitive of that which causes the feeling;[1] as, *I am ashamed of my folly*: **Mĕ stultitiae pudet.**

(*e*) For the genitive with *interest* and *rĕfert* see section 53, *b*.

(*f*) The genitive is sometimes found with verbs of *plenty* and *want*, with *potior* (see section 55, iii.), and in poetry (after the analogy of the Greek) with verbs denoting *separation*.

EXERCISE 13.

A.

1. He said that this circumstance had dispelled all doubt as to the arrival of the legions. 2. He was a man of consummate ability, and had very great experience in military affairs. 3. He believed that the soldiers of Ariovistus were wholly inexperienced in this mode of fighting. 4. In the middle of this course is the island of Mona. 5. He reminds the soldiers of their old disaster, and urges them not to forget the valor of the enemy. 6. He distributed three months' provisions of ground corn among the soldiers. 7. It is a consul's duty to be of service to the rest of the citizens. 8. The top of the hill was held by a few of our men. 9. Your influence is of great value, your friendship is of greater. 10. He was acquitted of treachery, but found guilty of carelessness. 11. They compelled the Ædui to give them part of their land and to undertake to form no project against the Sequani. 12. He says he is ashamed of his treachery, and sorry for having attempted to revolt.

B. (*Themistocles, Aristides, Hannibal.*)

1. They built a fleet of two hundred ships, of which one hundred were the Spartans'. 2. He asked how much money had been given by the states. 3. He was a man of such integrity that he alone, within the memory of man, was called the Just. 4. They are incited by the hope of victory and by confidence in Hannibal. 5. Being accused of treason, he was punished with three years' exile. 6. The result was that they became skilled in naval warfare. 7. He gave instructions to the rest of the ambassadors to set out with these. 8. Thucydides, who was the nearest of those who have

1. These verbs (except *miseret*) sometimes have instead of the genitive an infinitive or substantive clause as subject, or a neuter pronoun in the cognate accusative; as, *I am sorry for having done this*: **Me haec fecisse paenitet.**

written of these events, says that he belonged to this State. 9. Mindful of his former bravery, he was unwilling to seek safety in flight.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 15.*)

1. The rest of the enemy heard the shouting of the Germans. 2. Thirty thousand Germans are harrying the lands of the Gauls. 3. Overcome by their fear of punishment, they wished to depart. 4. Fearing torture at Cæsar's hands, they killed themselves. 5. On learning of their comrades' flight, they threw away their arms. 6. They said that the number of the military standards was one thousand four hundred. 7. Although a large number of the enemy were slain, very few of our men were wounded. 8. Overwhelmed with dread of this war, they withdrew to the confluence of the rivers. 9. So great was the force of the stream that all of the enemy perished to a man.

CHAPTER XIV.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

92. The Ablative is an adverbial case, used to determine the circumstances attending upon some action. It is composite in its origin, representing three main ideas: the *true ablative*, meaning *from*; the *instrumental and comitative*, meaning *with*; and the *locative*, meaning *in* or *at*.

A. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

93. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION denotes that from which something is removed or excluded; as,

They cut off Cæsar from supplies: **Commeātū Caesarem intercludunt.**

They are in need of assistance: **Auxiliō egent.**

i. The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *ex* or *dē*, especially in the literal local sense. The simple ablative is used chiefly with verbs of *relieving*, *depriving* and *lacking*; with adjectives of *freedom* and *want*; and (less regularly) with verbs of *removing* and *excluding*, especially in the metaphorical sense.

ii. When the ablative denotes a person the preposition should always be used.

iii. The fact that the verb expressing separation may be a compound of *ab*, *ex* or *dē* does not prevent the use of a preposition with the ablative. (See section 78, v. *b*.)

94. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH, with or without prepositions, see section 126.

95. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE tells that from which something is derived. It is found chiefly with participles denoting ancestry or rank; as,

Descended from a very old family: **Antiquissimā familiā nātus.**

i. A preposition is regularly used (*a*) in the case of finite verbs, (*b*) with pronouns, and (*c*) to denote remote origin.

ii. Here belongs the ablative denoting the material of which something is made; with this ablative *ex* is commonly used in prose.

96. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE[1] is used to denote the motive from which some act proceeds, more rarely the cause of something; as,

In that hope he sought our friendship: **Amīcitiam eā spē petīvit.**

i. In place of this ablative we find more frequently prepositional phrases with *ex*, *dē*, *ob*, *per*, *propter*, *prae*, the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*, or, especially to indicate the moving cause, an ablative of means with a participle such as *adductus*, *permōtus*.

97. The PERSONAL AGENT with passive verbs is denoted by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*; as,

Their lands are laid waste by the enemy: **Agrī eōrum ab hostibus vāstantur.**

i. For the dative of apparent agent see section 80, *d*.

ii. For the so-called secondary agent with *per* see section 99, i.

98. The ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (translated by means of *than*) is used after comparatives to denote that with which something is compared; as,

The Ubii are more civilized than the rest: **Ubiī cēterīs hūmānitātē sunt.**

i. This ablative is most often used in negative sentences or their equivalent, and is rarer after adverbs than after adjectives.

ii. As a rule the ablative of comparison is used only when the first of the words compared is in the nominative or is a subject accusative. But the ablative of the relative pronoun is often used when the first of the words compared is an object accusative.

iii. In other cases, as well as often where the ablative might be used, *than* is expressed by *quam*, and a noun or pronoun following takes the case of the word with which it is compared;[2] as, *Ireland is smaller than Britain:* **Hibernia minor est quam Britannia.**

iv. The comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *longius* and *amplius* are regularly used without *quam*, yet without affecting the case of the following word; as, *More than eight hundred ships had been seen:* **Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant vīsae.**

v. The ablative of comparison of some abstract words such as *opiniō* and *spēs* is used in place of a comparative clause; as, *Sooner than anyone expected:* **Celerius omnī opiniōne.**

1. This use may also be classed under the Instrumental Ablative.

2. As a general rule, unlike English idiom, the same construction whether of substantives or of verbs follows *quam* as precedes it; as, *He said they did nothing else than make preparations for war:* **Dixit eōs nihil aliud agere quam bellum parare.** See also section 98, vii.

vi. Latin often omits the standard of comparison (e.g., *than is natural, than is usual, than is desirable, than that just mentioned*) when it is easily gathered from the context. In such cases the comparative may generally be translated by *unusually* or *too* with the positive.

vii. When two qualities in the same object are compared with each other, Latin has *quam* with *magis* and the positive, or with the comparative in both clauses; as, *He is more brave than wise:* **Magis fortis est quam sapiēns,** or **Fortior est quam sapientior.** So, too, with the adverbs.

B. The Instrumental and Comitative Ablative.

99. The Ablative of Means or Instrument is used to denote that by means of which something is effected; as,

It cannot be determined by the eyes: **Oculīs jūdicārī nōn potest.**
They live on flesh and are clad in skins: **Carne vīvunt, pellibusque sunt vestītī.**

i. A personal instrument is occasionally in the ablative, but is more often expressed by *per* and the accusative; as, *He learns by means of scouts:* **Cōgnōscit per explōrātōrēs.**

ii. The ablative of means is used (*a*) to denote the route or means of conveyance; (*b*) with *ūtor, fruor,* etc.; (*c*) with *opus est* and *ūsus est;* (*d*) with verbs of *filling* and *abounding* and adjectives of *plenty.*

100. The Ablative of Price is used with verbs of *buying, selling, exchanging* and *costing;* as,

It was purchased for a small price: **Parvō pretiō redēmptum est.**
They exchange war for agriculture: **Bellum agricultūrā commūtant.**

i. For the genitive of indefinite price see section 88.

101. The Ablative of Measure of Difference is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the amount by which two persons or things differ; as,

The other road is much easier: **Alterum iter est multō facilius.**
Ireland is considered a half smaller than Britain: **Hibernia dimidiō minor quam Britannia existimātur.**
A few days after: **Paucīs post diēbus.**
Three years before: **Tribus ante annīs.**

i. This ablative is used also in designations of distance, *e.g.*, with *distō* and *absum* (where the accusative may be used as well), and

regularly in the case of the words *spatium* and *intervāllum*; as, *He halts at a great distance:* **Māgnō intervāllō cōnsistit.**

ii. To this usage belong (*a*) *quō . . . eō* (or *quantō . . . tantō*) with comparatives, as, *The sooner the better:* **Quō citius eō melius**; (*b*) *quō* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive (sections 28, iii. and 139); and (*c*) *eō* or *hōc* with a comparative.[1]

102. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as true; as,

They excel the rest of the Gauls in valor: **Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt.**

103. The Ablative of Manner and Accompaniment expresses manner or the attendant circumstances of an action; as,

The news is carried with incredible speed: **Incrēdibilī celeritāte fāma perfertur.**

They began to mount the rampart with loud shouts: **Māximō clāmōre vāllum ascendere coepērunt.**

i. As a rule the ablative of manner and accompaniment requires the preposition *cum* when not modified by an adjective or a genitive, and even when so modified it often has *cum*; as, *He is put to death with torture:* **Cum cruciātū necātur.** *He did this with the greatest care:* **Summā (cum) dīligentiā hōc fēcit.** Some ablatives, however (*e.g.*, *vī*, *jūre*, *cāsū*), never take *cum*, being used virtually as adverbs.

ii. Literal accompaniment is always expressed by *cum* and the ablative; except that in certain military phrases (chiefly of the troops with which a march is made) *cum* may be omitted if the ablative has a modifier; as, *They hastened with all their forces:* **(Cum) omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt.**

iii. The ablative of manner denotes that *in accordance with which* something is done; as, *He did this in accordance with Caesar's instructions:* **Praeceptīs Caesaris hōc fēcit.**

104. For the Ablative Absolute, which is perhaps locative in origin, but which in use resembles the ablative of accompaniment in expressing the attendant circumstances of an action, see Chapter VII.

105. The Ablative of Characteristic[2] is used to denote some character or quality of the noun or pronoun modified; as,

1. This last usage is, however, complicated with the ablative of cause, especially before *quod* clauses.

2. Also called the Ablative of *Description* or Ablative of *Quality*.

A young man of great valor: **Māgnā vīrtūte adulēscēns.**

i. This ablative may be used not only attributively but also in the predicate; as, *They are [a people] with long hair:* **Capillō sunt prōmissō** (literally, *They are [a people] with long hair*).

ii. As in the case of the genitive of characteristic (see section 87, i.), there must be some adjectival modifier of this ablative.

iii. When the description refers to *number* the genitive of characteristic should be used. To denote *physical characteristics* or *external appearance* the ablative is usually used, while for other descriptions either case may be used, with a preference for the genitive to express *permanent* or *inherent qualities*.

C. The Locative Ablative.

106. For the Ablative of the Place where see section 127, and for the Ablative of Time when or within which see sections 130 and 131.

107. The ablative is used with many special verbs and adjectives, really belonging to the classes already mentioned but not always easy to classify.

i. For the ablative with *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and with verbs of *lacking*, see section 54.

ii. The ablative is used with *glōrior, laetor, gaudeō; fīdō, cōnfīdō; nītor; assuēscō, assuēfaciō.*

iii. The ablative is used with *dignus, indignus; contentus, laetus; frētus.*

108. The ablative is used with the following Prepositions:

Ā, ab (abs), *from, by;* **absque**, *without;* **cōram**, *in the presence of;* **cum**, *with;* **dē**, *from, concerning;* **ē, ex**, *out of, from;* **prae**, *before, in comparison with, because of;* **prō**, *before, in place of, in accordance with;* **sine**, *without;* **tenus**, *as far as.*

The ablative is also used with **in**, *in*, and **sub**, *under*, expressing the place where, and sometimes with **subter**, *beneath*, and **super**, *above, concerning.* These four also take the accusative (section 70).

EXERCISE 14.

A.

1. They strengthened the place with a wall, and filled the trench with water. 2. He was a man of the highest merit and worthy of all praise; relying on the friendship of the Romans he had collected all his retainers, two hundred in number. 3. If they had been able to keep our men from supplies, they would have cut them off from returning. 4. They all stain themselves with woad,

and thus are of more frightful appearance in battle. 5. In order that the soldiers, influenced by the hope of plunder, might not wander too extensively, he did not suffer them to go farther than usual from the camp. 6. He was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain two days before. 7. If they are of an unfriendly disposition, they will be incensed at this grievance. 8. With such swiftness and vehemence did our soldiers advance that more than six hundred of the enemy were slain. 9. Advancing with the charioteers, whom they are accustomed to use in all their battles, they prevent our men from landing from the ship. 10. In accordance with their custom, they were boasting insultingly of their victory. 11. Whether by chance or design they had been led out of the camp without baggage. 12. The Helvetians were much braver than the rest of the Gauls.

B. (*Themistocles, Aristides, Hannibal.*)

1. In the same manner he defeated Antiochus two years later by strategy. 2. He was informed by letter that the Greeks would cut him off from returning. 3. If the harbor is surrounded with walls, it will surpass the city in usefulness. 4. It happened by chance that the master of the horse was of equal authority. 5. Terrified by this strange circumstance they took poison of their own accord. 6. More than two hundred cities were taken by force. 7. In accordance with the common law of nations, he was banished from his country. 8. Through the instrumentality of Sosilus, whom he employed as teacher, he became versed in Greek literature.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 16.*)

1. For these reasons after the hostages were given up, he took his army across the Rhine by means of boats. 2. The Suebi pressed them harder than did the Usipetes. 3. Impelled by this hope they gave up less than thirty hostages to Cæsar. 4. Against Cæsar's will they had returned to join the Germans. 5. Cæsar many years before had been prevented from crossing by the pressure of public business. 6. Messengers have come concerning public business from the nations which are under the sway of the Roman people. 7. They are considered by the other nations to have great strength in cavalry. 8. He answered through messengers that they had been kept by the envoys from fleeing.

CHAPTER XV.

Verbal Nouns—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine.

A. The Infinitive.

109. The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; it governs the same case as other parts of the verb; it has the distinction of tense, and it has a subject. As a noun it is used as a subject or object of verbs, or as an appositive, and is always neuter.[1]

110. The Infinitive as Subject.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the *subject* of a verb; as,

It is best to defend the camp: **Castra defendere praestat.**
It is not right for the Germans to cross over: **Germānōs trānsīre nōn aequum est.**[2]
It was reported that the cavalry was approaching: **Nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.**
He shows that carrying out their plans is an easy matter: **Perfacile esse probat cōnāta perficere.**

i. This usage is found chiefly with (*a*) certain impersonal verbs, *e.g.*, *oportet*, *licet*, *juvat*, *placet*; (*b*) *est* and neuter adjectives, such as *aequum*, *turpe*, *ūtile*, *necesse*; (*c*) passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī*.

ii. Except with passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī*, the tense of the infinitive used is almost invariably the present, the perfect occurring but seldom, and the future never.

111. The Infinitive as Object.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of a verb; as,

He says Cæsar has come: **Dicit Caesarem vēnisse.**
He wished to depart: **Discēdere volēbat.**

i. For the accusative and infinitive construction see Chapter I., for the complementary infinitive, Chapter II. For the infinitive as an appositive see section 195.

112. The Historical Infinitive.—In lively description the present infinitive, with its subject in the *nominative* case, is often

1. In the case of the historical infinitive, however, the infinitive has the value of a verb, not of a noun.

2. Notice that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by any separate word.

found instead of the imperfect indicative; generally several such infinitives are found together; as,

Cæsar every day kept dunning the Ædui; day after day the Ædui kept putting him off: **Cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs flāgitāre; diem ex diē dūcere Aedui.**

B. The Gerund.

113. The Gerund is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. Like the infinitive, it is modified by an adverb, and governs the same case as the other parts of the verb.

In use the gerund corresponds pretty closely to the English imperfect gerund in *-ing*, but often also, especially with *ad*, it may be translated by the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to*.

114. (*a*) The Genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with nouns and adjectives, and with *causā*; as, *Desirous of making war:* **Bellandī cupidus.** *For the purpose of foraging:* **Frūmentandī causā.**

(*b*) The Dative of the gerund is rarely found, and is used chiefly with adjectives denoting *fitness* (for which *ad* and the accusative is more common), and in some official phrases; as, *A wall sufficiently high for defence:* **Satis altus tuendō mūrus.**

(*c*) The Accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad* and *in*; as, *Ready to fight* (or *Ready for fighting*): **Parātus ad dimicandum.**

(*d*) The Ablative of the gerund is used to denote means and with prepositions, chiefly *in*, *ab*, *dē* and *ex*; as, *Occupied in reaping:* **In metendō occupātī.**

i. The use of the gerund with an accusative object is, on the whole, rare. See section 119.

C. The Supine.

115. The Supine is a verbal noun found only in the accusative and ablative singular, in both cases with adverbial force. It is translated by the English infinitive with *to*.[1]

1. The supine in *-um* corresponds to the English (gerundial) infinite with *to* after verbs; the supine in *-u* to the English infinitive with adjectives and nouns.

116. The ACCUSATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-um*, is used to denote purpose, especially after verbs of motion, and if transitive may take an accusative object; as,

They send envoys to Cæsar to ask aid: **Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.**

i. The construction is not common in classical Latin, which prefers to express purpose by the final subjunctive, or by the gerund and gerundive with *ad* or *causā*. It is used most frequently with *eō* and *veniō*, and also in the phrase *nāptum dare* (or *collocāre*).

ii. The rare future infinitive passive is formed by means of *īrī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally) and this supine; as, *He says the city will be taken:* **Dicit urbem captum īrī** (literally, *there is a going to take the city*). Here *urbem* is really the object of *captum*, not the subject of *captum īrī*.

117. The ABLATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-ū*, is used to define the application of certain adjectives and of the nouns *fās* and *nefās*; as,

This is difficult to do: **Hōc est difficile factū.**
Incredible to narrate: **Incrēdibile dictū.**
It is a sin to say so: **Hōc nefās est dictū.**

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those meaning *easy, difficult, pleasant, strange, best*. The supines so used are chiefly *audītū, dictū, factū, vīsū, nātū*.

ii. The ablative supine does not take an accusative object.

EXERCISE 15.

A.

1. The lieutenant brought word to Cæsar that he had found the ships ready for sailing. 2. They saw that our men were not advancing for the purpose of fighting. 3. After making a bridge Cæsar attempted to cross the river and pursue the enemy. 4. He proves to them that it is a very easy thing to do, to seize the supreme power. 5. For quickness in loading, the ships were made lower. 6. If messengers had come to Cæsar to ask help, he would have sent three legions to their assistance. 7. Answer was made that it was better to be slain in battle than not to recover their freedom. 8. By making enquiry, Cæsar found that the rest of the cavalry had been thrown into a panic. 9. They hurl their weapons at the enemy and give them no opportunity of retiring. 10. They

thought the best thing to do was to cut off our men from supplies, and protract the affair into the winter. 11. He learned from the soldiers that the ships were useless for sailing, and although he was ready to set out, he thought it would be extremely dangerous for the soldiers to embark. 12. So fierce an onset did the enemy make that there was no possibility of keeping one's position on the wall.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 27, 28.*)

1. The leading men came to Cæsar to seek peace and to complain of the indiscretion of the common people. 2. It has been pointed out above that the enemy had surrendered part of the hostages. 3. He pointed out what was the reason for disembarking. 4. He had brought to them Cæsar's instructions regarding returning to their lands. 5. They kept laying the blame on the common people, and saying they would surrender the hostages at once, and commending themselves to Cæsar. 6. He said that the ships would be carried back by the storm to the mainland. 7. He ordered the soldiers to send back the hostages when they were given up. 8. A day was appointed (*dīcō*) for assembling. 9. By setting out for the open sea they escaped (*effugiō*) a greater danger.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 18*).

1. Cæsar began to get timber together and build a bridge. 2. Time will be left the Sugambri for withdrawing from their territories. 3. He will order a strong guard to be left at the bridge. 4. The envoys answered Cæsar that the hostages would be brought. 5. Several envoys came to Cæsar to seek peace and friendship. 6. He answered that it was best (*optimus*) for all to prepare for flight. 7. The answer was given that the Sugambri had concealed themselves in the forest. 8. The Usipetes answered that a day had been fixed (*dīcō*) for leaving their territories. 9. It is difficult (*difficilis*) to say why the army has been led across the bridge.

CHAPTER XVI.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES—GERUNDIVE, PARTICIPLES.

A. THE GERUNDIVE.

118. The Gerundive (sometimes called the future participle passive) is a verbal adjective of the first and second declensions, and agrees with its substantive.

119. THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.—Instead of the *gerund governing* a direct object in the accusative, we often find the substantive put in the case required by the context and the *gerundive in agreement* with it. This is the regular usage after prepositions and in the dative case, and is preferable in the genitive and the ablative of means; as,

He sets out to harass the enemy: **Ad hostēs vexandōs proficiscitur** (in place of **ad vexandum hostēs**).

They lose time in seeking their comrades: **In quaerendīs suīs tempus dīmittunt** (in place of **in quaerendō suōs**).

An opportunity is afforded of marching through the province: **Facultās datur per prōvinciam itineris faciendī** (in place of **iter faciendī**).

i. The various cases are used in the same way in the gerundive construction as in the gerund. (See section 114.)

ii. The gerundive construction cannot be used with intransitive verbs; as, *For the purpose of resisting the enemy:* **Hostibus resistendī causā** (never **Hostium resistendōrum causā**). But *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor* and *potior*, which governed the accusative in old Latin, regularly take the gerundive construction; as, *The hope of taking the camp:* **Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum.**

iii. In the case of neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively, the gerund with an object accusative is regular, even after prepositions; as, *For the purpose of doing something:* **Aliquid agendī causā.**

iv. With *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, the gerund or gerundive in *-ndī* is used, without regard to either gender or number; as, *For the purpose of clearing themselves* (or *herself*): **Suī pūrgandī causā.**[1]

1. If *purgandī* is the gerund, *suī* may either be the pronominal adjective modifying the gerund regarded as a substantive, or be the pronoun depending as an objective genitive upon the gerund: the usual explanation given is that *purgandī* is the gerundive agreeing with *suī*, which, like *meī*, *nostrī*, etc., was in its origin the genitive of the neuter singular possessive, *suum* = *their* (or *her*) *personality*.

120. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The gerundive is used in the nominative and accusative as a predicate adjective with *sum*, to denote *duty* or *necessity*; as,

Everything had to be done by Cæsar: **Caesarī omnia erant agenda.**

He decided that the Rhine must be crossed: **Statuit Rhēnum esse trānseundum.**

i. The expression is always passive, the agent being in the dative (see section 80, *d*). The English equivalent is, however, constantly in the active; as, *Cæsar had to do everything. He decided that he must cross the Rhine.*

ii. In this construction intransitive verbs are used impersonally (see section 56), the gerundive taking the same case as the verb from which it is formed; as, *There must be no delay:* **Nōn est cunctandum.** *They had to fight:* **Erat pūgnandum.** *These things ought to be used:* **His rēbus ūtendum est.**

121. The accusative of the gerundive is used in predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs (chiefly verbs of *giving, assigning, undertaking* and *caring for*) to express *purpose*; as, *He hands them over to the Ædui to guard:* **Hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit.** *He provided for the transportation of the army:* **Exercitum trānsportandum cūrāvit.**

B. THE PARTICIPLES.

122. For the grammatical value of the participle and the use of the *present* and *perfect* participles see Chapter VI.

123. The *future* participle denotes an action as about to happen at a time *subsequent* to that of its principal verb. Its chief uses are (*a*) to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active in the accusative and infinitive construction, and (*b*) to form the active periphrastic conjugation. It is but rarely used as an adjective or substantive (*futūrus* being the chief instance); in poetry and late prose writers it is used appositively to express intention or probability.

124. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The future participle is used as a predicate adjective with *sum* to express *intention, likelihood*, or *imminence*; as,

You are about to fight: **Pūgnātūrī estis.**

He said that he had been on the point of setting out: **Dixit sē profectūrum fuisse.**

EXERCISE 16.

A.

1. Cæsar is about to lead out his forces with the object of crushing the enemy. 2. He answered that the soldiers must not waste the time for fighting in searching for their comrades. 3. He caused two bridges to be built for the purpose of following up the enemy. 4. All hope of gaining possession of the town has vanished. 5. The enemy was on the point of making an attack on the cavalry. 6. He perceived that he would have to set out at once. 7. We should not let slip the opportunity of freeing ourselves for ever. 8. He will give this legion to Labienus to lead back. 9. They did not think that so large a number of hostages should have been required. 10. They were assembling from all sides to defend the camp.

B. (*Cæsar, Book IV. 29-31.*)

1. An opportunity had been given our men to bring in corn. 2. They were about to form a conspiracy for the purpose of renewing the war. 3. He had caused corn to be provided and timber brought from Gaul. 4. Cæsar had to cross over into Britain. 5. The ships are useless for carrying back the legion. 6. We shall have to make use of bronze for repairing this ship. 7. Corn must be brought in daily. 8. The Britons should have shut the Romans out from supplies. 9. The legions are going to winter in Britain.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 19.*)

1. All ought to assemble with a view to holding a council. 2. He discovered that they were going to burn their towns. 3. A few days were spent in achieving these objects. 4. He provided for the construction of a bridge. 5. The Germans should have broken down the bridge for the purpose of freeing themselves. 6. Thinking that the Sugambri would break down the bridge, they intended to withdraw into Gaul. 7. The crops must be cut down in order to strike terror into the Germans. 8. Cæsar had to lead his army across for the purpose of taking vengeance on the Germans. 9. They had learned for what purpose he was about to build this bridge.

CHAPTER XVII.

Expressions of Place and Time.

125. Place to which (limit of motion) is denoted by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domum*, *domōs* (*home*), and *rūs* (*to the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

They hasten to the camp: **Ad castra contendunt.**
He sets out for Britain: **In Britanniam proficiscitur.**
He sets out for Rome: **Rōmam proficiscitur.**
They returned home: **Domum rediērunt.**

i. With names of towns *ad* is used (*a*) to denote *into* (or *in*) *the neighborhood of*, and (*b*) sometimes in contrast with *ab* in expressions of direction; as, *He came into the neighborhood of Geneva:* **Ad Genāvam pervēnit.** *He pitched his camp near Alesia:* **Ad Alesiam castra fēcit.**

126. Place from which is denoted by the ablative with *ab*, *ex* or *dē*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domō* (*from home*) and *rūre* (*from the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

They withdrew from the shore: **Ā lītore discessērunt.**
They crossed over from Belgium: **Ex Belgiō trānsiērunt.**
He fled from Corinth: **Corinthō fūgit.**
They had gone away from home: **Domō discesserant.**

i. With names of towns *ab* is used (*a*) to denote *from the neighborhood of*, (*b*) sometimes in contrast with *ad* in expressions of direction, and (*c*) with *longē* and verbs of distance; as, *It is three hundred miles from Zama:* **Ā Zamā abest mīlia passuum trecenta.**

127. Place where is denoted by the ablative with *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with a few common nouns the preposition is omitted; as,

He stood on the wall: **In mūrō cōnstitit.**
They spend the winter in Gaul: **In Galliā hiemant.**
He died at Athens: **Athēnis mortuus est.**

i. In names of towns and islands of the first and second declensions in the singular, the locative (identical in form with the

genitive) is used, not the ablative; as, *At Rome:* **Rōmae.** *At Corinth:* **Corinthī.** So occasionally in the third declension singular (where the locative is identical in form with the dative, as *Carthāginī*), and regularly in the words *domī, rūrī, humī, bellī, mīlitiae.*

ii. The words *locus* and *pars*, and other nouns when modified by *tōtus* (and sometimes by *medius, omnis* or *cūnctus*), may be used in the ablative without a preposition; as, *On suitable ground:* **Idōneō locō.** *Throughout the whole camp:* **Tōtīs castrīs.**

iii. Often where English uses *in, motion towards* is implied, and Latin consequently uses the accusative; as, *They concealed themselves in the woods* (that is, *went into the woods and hid*): **In silvās sē abdidērunt.**

Collocō and *pōnō*, however, take the ablative with *in*.

iv. For such expressions as *He came to the senate at Rome* (where *at Rome* is an adjectival phrase modifying *senate*), Latin has **Rōmam ad senātum vēnit** (where both expressions modify the verb). Similarly, *He came from the senate at Rome* is **Rōmā ā senātū vēnit.**[1]

v. With *pars, latus, agmen, cornū, tergum, frōns*, the direction in which or the side on which is expressed by the ablative with *ab* (and in the case of *pars*, also with *ex*); as, *In front:* **Ā fronte.** *On one side:* **Ūnā ex parte.**

128. Extent of Space is expressed by the accusative, with verbs and with the adjectives *longus, altus* and *lātus*; as,

He advances three miles: **Tria mīlia passuum prōcēdit.**
A trench five feet deep: **Fossa quīnque pedēs alta.**

i. With *absum* and *distō* either this accusative or the ablative of measure of difference may be used. (Section 101, i.)

129. Duration of Time is expressed by the accusative; as,

He waits there a few days: **Paucōs diēs ibi morātur.**
He was twenty years old: **Vīgintī annōs nātus erat.**[2]

i. *How long ago* is expressed by *abhinc* and the accusative; *how long before* and *how long after* by *ante* and *post* with (*a*) the accusa-

1. On a somewhat similar principle, where English has a common noun, like *town* or *city* (modified by an adjective or its equivalent), in apposition with the name of a place, with the corresponding nouns Latin generally uses a preposition to express *motion towards, motion from* or *place where*, instead of having *urbs* or *oppidum* in apposition with the proper name; as, *They halted at Alba, a convenient city:* **Albae constiterunt in urbe opportuna.** *I came to Athens, a most famous city:* **Athenas in urbem praeclarissimam veni.** *He set out from Cures, a town of the Sabines:* **Curibus ex oppido Sabinorum profectus est.**

2. Literally, *He had been born twenty years.*

tive or (*b*) the ablative of measure of difference; as, *A few days after:* **Post paucōs diēs** or **Paucīs post diēbus.**

130. TIME WHEN is expressed by the ablative; as,

He returns on the fifth day: **Quintō diē revertitur.**
At sunset he led back his forces: **Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās redūxit.**

131. TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative; as,

He has been put to death within the last few days: **His paucīs diēbus interfectus est.**

i. Occasionally, by inference, the ablative of the time within which, especially with *tōtus*, may be equivalent to the accusative of the time how long; as, *They marched all that night:* **Eā tōtā nocte iērunt.**

EXERCISE 17.

A.

1. After waiting in Italy three months he returned from Rome to Athens. 2. The enemy took up their position on wooded ground eight miles from Cæsar's camp. 3. Four years ago a battle was fought in the neighborhood of Massilia. 4. This river, he replied, was sixty feet wide and about five feet deep. 5. Setting out from the army in Gaul, he came a few days later to the river Thames in the enemy's country. 6. They were ordered to leave home within three days and hide in the nearest woods. 7. He set out for the country at the beginning of spring and returned home the next year. 8. The battle was begun on the right wing. 9. He came from Geneva in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey, and lived for several years at Rome and Athens. 10. On the same day, he was informed that the enemy's forces were three miles distant from Bibracte. 11. He said that he was nine years old. 12. After completing a march of twenty miles, they remained in camp for several successive days.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 32-34.*)

1. For several days the rest of the cavalry remained in the camp. 2. On the seventh day Cæsar set out from Rome for Britain. 3. A few days later the Romans were driven out of the camp. 4. If they halt on unfavorable ground we shall suddenly attack them by

night on two sides. 5. At an opportune moment they came to steep ground. 6. After several days had elapsed the barbarians betook themselves to their forests. 7. For a larger part of that day Cæsar remained in the neighborhood of Rome. 8. Four years ago Cæsar departed for home. 9. Several days before Cæsar's arrival the legions had marched in that direction. 10. They lay concealed in the forest six miles from the enemy's camp.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20.*)

1. He found that the harbor was suitable for a large part of the winter. 2. In the war with the Gauls he summoned the leaders from every side. 3. On the north was an island. 4. Two days later the forces will set out for the harbor. 5. The winter is earlier in Gaul than at Rome. 6. War had been waged in those regions for many years. 7. Cæsar set out from Britain for home. 8. Setting out for the island they concealed themselves in a suitable place. 9. During all that time the Gauls were five miles distant. 10. Within that year he had examined all the coast.

CHAPTER XVIII.

IMPERATIVE—INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

132. COMMANDS.—The present imperative is regularly used to express commands and entreaties; as,

Consider Gaul: **Respicite Galliam.**

i. As in English, there are many substitutes for the imperative; *e.g.*, (*a*) periphrases with *jubeō*, *petō*, *ōrō*, etc.; (*b*) *velim* (*I should like*), and *fac* or *cūrā* (*see to it, be sure*) with the present subjunctive (with or without *ut*).

ii. The future imperative expresses rather a contingent command than one to be immediately obeyed. Hence it is used in laws and precepts, and in distinct reference to the future.

133. PROHIBITIONS are usually expressed by *nōlī, nōlīte* (*be unwilling*) with the present infinitive; as,

Do not suppose: **Nōlīte existimāre.**

i. Prohibitions are also expressed (*a*) by *cavē, cavē nē, vidē nē*, or *fac nē*, and the present subjunctive; (*b*) by *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, but chiefly in familiar discourse; (*c*) in poetry by *nē* and the present imperative.

134. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *willed*. The following varieties exist:

(*a*) HORTATIVE.—The first person of the present subjunctive is used to exhort, or, with *nē*, to dissuade; as, *Let us consider Gaul:* **Galliam respiciāmus.** *Let us not despair:* **Nē dēspērēmus.**

(*b*) JUSSIVE.—The third person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid; as, *Let the consuls see to it:* **Vident cōnsulēs.**

i. So too the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive is used with *nē* to express prohibition (section 133, i. *b*).

(*c*) CONCESSIVE.—The present and perfect subjunctive are used to concede for the sake of argument, the negative being *nē*; as, *Granting that pain is not the greatest evil, still it certainly is an evil:* **Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est.**

(*d*) DELIBERATIVE QUESTION.—The first person of the present and imperfect subjunctive is used to ask for direction (though without

expecting an answer), and thus comes to express perplexity or indignation; as, *What am I to do?* **Quid faciam?** *What was I to do?* **Quid facerem?** *Are we to yield to him?* **Huic cēdāmus?**

135. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *desired*.

This is called the OPTATIVE subjunctive or the subjunctive of DESIRE. The negative is *nē*. The present tense is used to express wishes viewed as practicable; the imperfect and pluperfect to express wishes viewed as impossible of fulfilment in present and past time respectively. Such clauses are frequently introduced by *utinam*, regularly so in the case of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses; as, *May they be happy:* **Sint beātī.** *Would that he were present:* **Utinam adesset.** *Would that I had never been born:* **Utinam nē nātus essem.**

136. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *conceivable*.

This is the so-called POTENTIAL subjunctive, used of present and past time. It is generally to be translated by *could*, *would* or *should*, and takes the negative *nōn*. The following varieties exist:

(*a*) STATEMENTS. (1) Modest expressions of wish or regret with *velim* or *vellem* and their compounds, followed often by another subjunctive of desire; as, *I should like to know:* **Velim scīre.** *I would rather he were present:* **Māllem adesset.** (2) With the indefinite second person; as, *You* (=*one*) *would have thought:* **Putārēs.** (3) In softened assertions; as, *It would scarcely seem probable:* **Vix vērīsimile vidēātur.**

This last usage is found chiefly in the protasis of subjunctive conditional sentences (see sections 61 and 63).

i. Latin, however, often has the indicative where we might expect the potential subjunctive. So regularly with *possum*, *dēbeō*, etc., with the passive periphrastic conjugation, and with *est* and predicate adjectives such as *aequum*, *melius*, *satis*, *facile*, etc.; as, *I might have said more:* **Plūra poteram dīcere.** *It would be tedious to tell everything:* **Longum est omnia nārrāre.** (See section 64, i.)

(*b*) RHETORICAL APPEALS, asking whether something is conceivable; as, *Who could doubt?* **Quis dubitet?** *Who would ever have thought?* **Quis umquam arbitrārētur?**

137. Notice the values of *would* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(*a*) *I thought he would come:* **Arbitrābar eum ventūrum esse** (15, *c*).

(*b*) *I asked what they would do:* **Rogāvī quid factūrī essent** (36).

(*c*) *He would not do this:* **Nōluit haec facere** or **Negāvit sē haec factūrum.**

(*d*) *If he were alive he would be present:* **Sī vīveret, adesset** (61).

(*e*) *If you should do this, he would come:* **Sī haec faciās, veniat** (63).

(*f*) *Would that he would come!* **Utinam veniat!** (135).

(*g*) *Would that he had come!* **Utinam vēnisset!** (135).

(*h*) *It would be better to do this:* **Melius est haec facere** (136, *a*, 1).

(*i*) *Who would venture to do this?* **Quis haec facere audeat?** (136, *b*).

(*j*) *I was afraid he would come:* **Verēbar nē veniret** (138).

(*k*) *Whenever they came, he would do this:* **Ubī vēnerant, haec faciēbat** (180, *b*).

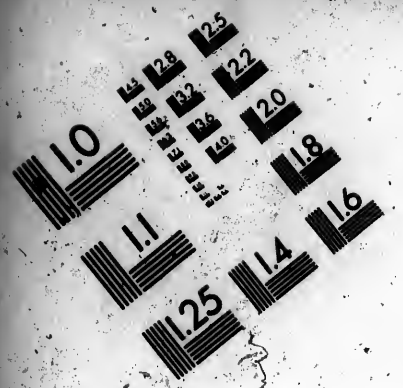
EXERCISE 18.

A.

1. Let us not fear the enemy, however numerous, nor return to the camp, unless victorious. 2. Would that Cæsar had not been unwilling to send two legions to the assistance of Labienus. 3. Who can endure that his freedom should be taken away from him? 4. Remember the former valor of the Helvetians, soldiers. 5. Let the Gauls send envoys to Cæsar to seek peace. 6. Do not let slip this opportunity of waging war. 7. What was I to say? It would have been easy to make many promises; but who would have believed me? 8. I should like you to inform me at once of his departure. 9. Would that Cæsar would allow us to march through the province. 10. Advance towards the shore and do not betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He would not announce to the soldiers when he would set out. 12. One would have supposed that the envoys would not return the next day.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 35-38.*)

1. Soldiers, withstand the attack of the enemy; do not take to flight. 2. Would that Cæsar had set sail the day before. 3. Let the other states not omit to send hostages. 4. I should not like



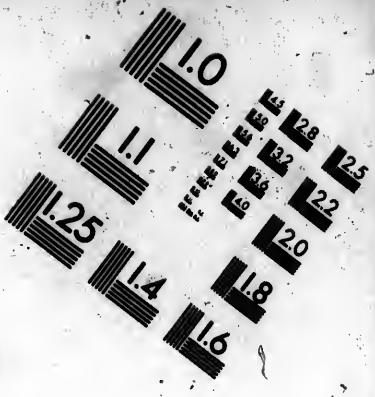
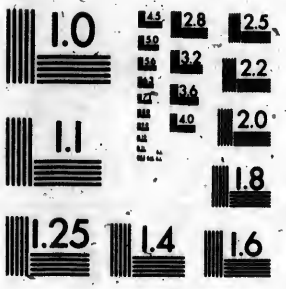
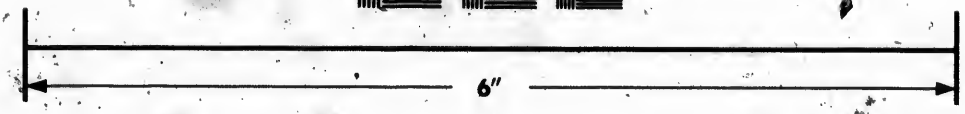
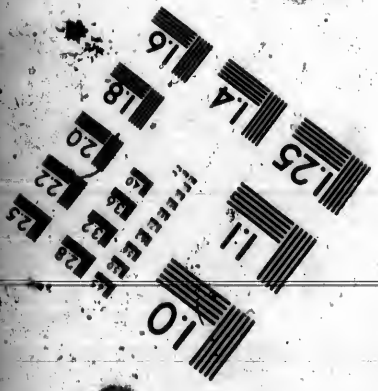
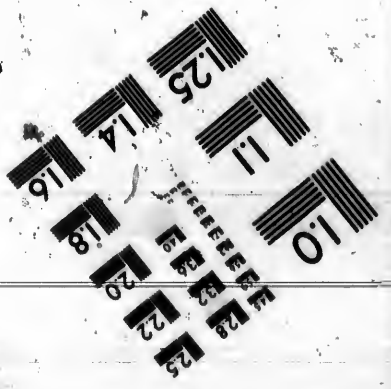


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)









Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716)-872-4503

to use the marshes as a place of refuge. 5. One would have thought that the Senate would decree a thanksgiving. 6. Lay down your arms if you do not want to be put to death. 7. It would not have been easy to escape this danger. 8. After routing the enemy, let us burn all the buildings. 9. Where are we to betake ourselves (*nōs*)? Are we to conceal ourselves in the marshes?

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 21*).

1. Let us send the envoys home and set out as soon as possible with all the fleet. 2. Land from the vessel, soldiers, and find out these matters. 3. Would that an opportunity might be given of making the attempt. 4. What was he to do? Was he to report to Cæsar that he dared not return home? 5. I should have preferred that he had visited these states. 6. Let all the states give hostages and be faithful to the Roman people. 7. Return to the ship, Volusenus, do not entrust yourself to the Britons. 8. Who would embrace an alliance with Cæsar? It would be better to make trial of war. 9. Thinking they would discover his design, he would not announce what states he would visit.

CHAPTER XIX.

Verbs of Fearing—Uses of *Quin* and *Quominus*.

138. After verbs of fearing and such phrases as *metus est, perīculum est, that* and *lest* are translated by *nē*,[1] and *that not* by *ut*, with the present subjunctive after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses; as,

I fear that he will do this (or *I fear lest he do this*): **Vereor nē hōc faciat.**

I fear that he will not do this: **Vereor ut hōc faciat.**

There was danger that they would be surrounded: **Perīculum erat nē circumvenīrentur.**

i. For *ut, nē nōn* is very commonly used, regularly so after *nōn vereor*.

ii. Verbs of fearing may be used as modal verbs, followed by the infinitive to represent a corresponding infinitive in the English; as, *I fear to do this:* **Vereor haec facere.**

139. Verbs and phrases of *hindering* and *objecting*, and negative verbs and phrases of *doubting, failure* or *omission*, are regularly followed by the subjunctive with the introductory particles *quīn, quōminus* or *nē*,[1] according to the following rules; the present subjunctive being used after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses.[2]

N.B.—*Quīn* is used only after negatives or virtual negatives.

(*a*) Verbs of *hindering*, e.g., *dēterreō, impediō, retineō*, and also *recūsō, I object* (if negatived), take *quōminus* or *quīn*; or (if not negatived) *quōminus* or *nē*; as,

They did not object to coming: **Nōn recūsābant quīn** (or **quōminus**) **venīrent.**

They hinder the Æduí from bringing in corn: **Æduōs dēterrent quōminus** (or **nē**) **frūmentum cōnferant.**

1. The apparently redundant negative (*ne, quo-minus, quin* = *qui-ne*) in these clauses is due to the fact that the clauses now dependent were once independent clauses expressing a desire; this has been developed through a final clause into a substantive clause: as, *I fear; may he not do this. They hinder the Æduí in order that they may not bring in corn.* English, unlike Latin, tends to look at prevention as the result, not the purpose, of the hindering.

2. It should be observed that *quīn* and *quominus* with the subjunctive often answer to the English gerund governed by a preposition.

i. *Prohibeō* regularly takes the accusative and infinitive (section 22, i.), while *nōn recūsō* also may take the infinitive.

(*b*) Negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, e.g., *nōn dubitō*, *nōn est dubium*, take *quīn*; as,

There was no doubt that they had (or *of their having*) *very great power:* **Nōn erat dubium quīn plūrimum possent.**

i. *Dubitō, I hesitate*, regularly takes the infinitive.

(*c*) Negative verbs and phrases of *failure* or *omission*, such as *nihil praetermittō (I leave nothing undone)*, *haud multum absum (I am within a little)*, *facere nōn possum (I cannot but* or *I cannot help)*, take *quīn*; as,

And a suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide: **Neque abest suspiciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.**

They let no time go by without stirring up the states: **Nūllum tempus intermīserunt quīn cīvitātēs sollicitārent.**

i. For *quīn* after such expressions as *nēmō est* see section 33, ii.

EXERCISE 19.

A.

1. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the city by storm. 2. Who could doubt that the Romans are going to take our freedom away from us? 3. They promised to raise no objections to being for ever under the sway of the enemy. 4. There was great danger of the enemy's crossing the river and making an attack upon the camp. 5. Cæsar could not but suspect that they were about to renew the war. 6. They believed that Cæsar by his influence could hinder the Germans from being brought across the Rhine. 7. He feared that the soldiers would not be able to cross the bridge and attack the enemy in the rear. 8. There was no doubt that the Ædui were hesitating to declare war. 9. Several vessels were prevented by the storms from being able to reach the same port. 10. There is no one who does not know that he feared to disembark. 11. We fear that the soldiers will be unwilling to defend the camp. 12. Not even at the conference could the Gauls be deterred from hurling weapons at our men.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 1, 2.*)

1. The Gauls feared that Cæsar would leave hither Gaul for the winter quarters of the army. 2. He prevented the Germans from setting out to lay waste the province. 3. There was no doubt that

they used lower ships in that sea. 4. The soldiers did not object to repairing the old vessels. 5. Cæsar was within a little of having the ships launched. 6. There is danger that the Gauls will not assemble nor obey Cæsar's authority. 7. Cæsar did not hesitate to place a lieutenant in charge of this business. 8. There was no one but knew that Cæsar was in command of the legion. 9. They promised to leave nothing undone to make amends to Cæsar.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 22.*)

1. Thinking that they were afraid of being left behind, he ordered them to come to him. 2. He could not help preferring Britain to these trifling matters. 3. He will be prevented from having an opportunity of taking the legion across. 4. There is danger of this happening. 5. The Morini did not object to bringing a larger number of hostages. 6. No one doubted that they were staying in Britain for the purpose of guarding the harbor. 7. They fear they will not be able to carry on war. 8. He did not hesitate to promise to take them under his protection. 9. There is no one who does not think that he will assign these vessels to the cavalry.

CHAPTER XX.

Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission.

140. Duty or obligation is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive with esse*, also by *dēbeō* and *oportet*.

(*a*) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(*b*) *Dēbeō* takes the present infinitive, and the impersonal verb *oportet* takes the accusative and the present infinitive;[1] as,

Cæsar ought to come to me: **Caesar ad mē venīre dēbet**, or **Caesarem ad mē venīre oportet.**

i. The infinitive remains in the *present* tense with all forms of these verbs, while the verbs themselves change according to the time of the action; as, *Cæsar ought to have come:* **Caesar venīre dēbēbat**, or **Caesarem venīre oportuit.** *Cæsar ought to come to-morrow:* **Caesar venīre crās dēbēbit**, or **Caesarem venīre crās oportēbit.**

141. Necessity is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive with esse*, also by *necesse est*.

(*a*) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(*b*) *Necesse est* is used with the dative and the present infinitive to express what is *inevitable* rather than what is obligatory or binding;[1] as,

All men must die: **Omnibus necesse est morī.**

142. Possibility or ability is expressed by *possum* and the present infinitive; as,

The river can be crossed: **Flūmen trānsīrī potest.**
They were unable to defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere nōn poterant.**
It is impossible for us to cross: **Trānsīre nōn possumus.**
We could (or *might*) *have been useful friends:* **Poterāmus esse ūtilēs amīcī.**

143. Permission is expressed by *licet* with the dative and the present infinitive;[1] as,

---

1. The impersonal verbs *licet*, *necesse est* and *oportet* may also take the subjunctive; as, *You ought to do this:* **Hæc facias oportet.** With *necesse est* the subjunctive often has *ut*.

You may remain: **Licet vōbis remanēre.**
They were not allowed to depart: **Discēdere illīs nōn licēbat.**

i. A predicate noun or adjective referring to the dative agrees with it in case; as, *We may be free:* **Nōbis licet esse līberīs.**

144. Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(*a*) *I said I should return at once:* **Dixī mē statim reditūrum esse** (15, *c*).

(*b*) *He did this so that I should not return:* **Hoc fēcit nē redīrem** (24).

(*c*) *If he had done this I should not be returning:* **Sī hoc fēcisset nōn redīrem** (61).

(*d*) *If he should do this* (or *Should he do this*), *I should return at once:* **Sī hoc faciat, statim redeam** (63).

(*e*) *It is best that he should return at once:* **Optimum est eum statim redīre** (110, i.).

(*f*) *You should return at once:* **Statim vōbis est redeundum** (120).

(*g*) *I should like you to return:* **Velim redeās** (136, *a*).

(*h*) *I feared that I should not return:* **Veritus sum nē** (or **nē nōn**) **redīrem** (138).

(*i*) *He waited until they should return:* **Dum redīrent exspectāvit** (155, *b*).

(*j*) *He promised great rewards to anyone that should return:* **Sī quis redīisset, māgna praemia pollicitus est** (177).

EXERCISE 20.

A.

1. You should have replied that you were unable to leave the city. 2. The soldiers had to advance into the waves. 3. He answered that Gaul ought to be free, and that he could not allow the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. They asked to be allowed to march through the province. 5. We must not wait longer; we must set out for home at once. 6. Cæsar should have ordered that state to furnish hostages. 7. He was afraid this would inevitably happen. 8. They could not be persuaded to stay longer. 9. The Gauls may be cowards if they wish, but Romans must be brave men. 10. All will have to die some day. 11. You might have left

the camp yesterday, so far as I was concerned. 12. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste in sight of the enemy, and our towns taken by storm.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 3, 4.*)

1. The common people ought not to be compelled to revolt from the Romans. 2. He cannot point out what is going on among the Remi. 3. He could easily have kept his kinsmen true to their allegiance. 4. If they have revolted, we must begin to collect forces of infantry and cavalry. 5. They feared they should not be allowed to take thought for themselves. 6. All had to conceal themselves in the woods. 7. It is very important that Cæsar should be able to win over the Treveri. 8. Cæsar ought to have urged them to come to him in the camp. 9. He thought everything should have been made ready.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 23.*)

1. Thinking that it was quite impossible for them to land, they weighed anchor. 2. The ship ought to be anchored in order that the troops may land. 3. Cæsar had to advance a mile and wait till the fourth watch in the further harbor. 4. He could not get suitable weather for embarking. 5. He pointed out that after the troops had been drawn up on the shore, the lieutenants must execute everything promptly. 6. They can hurl their weapons from the hill into the sea. 7. If you wish to find out what is the character of the mountains, you may land in a suitable spot. 8. He points out that the cavalry should have set sail and followed him. 9. He will point out what they have been allowed to do.

CHAPTER XXI.

Causal Sentences—Uses of *Cum*.

145. Causal sentences are introduced by *quod*, or (less frequently) *quia, because, for the reason that; quoniam, seeing that; cum, since, as;* and *quī, since he.*

i. For *quī* with the causal subjunctive see section 171.

ii. For *quod*, meaning *the fact that*, see section 198.

iii. *Cum* clauses (as giving attendant circumstances) regularly precede the principal clause; *quod* clauses (as emphasizing the reason) generally follow.

146. *Quod, quia* and *quoniam* take the *indicative* to express a reason advanced by the writer or speaker himself; as,

He set out for Illyricum, because he wished to become acquainted with that district: **In Illyricum profectus est, quod eās regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat.**

i. Frequently a sort of antecedent (such as *propterea, eō, hōc, eā dē causā*) is found preparing the way for the *quod* clause.

147. *Quod, quia* and *quoniam* take the *subjunctive* to quote some other person's reason;[1] as,

They begged him to lend them aid, because (as they said) they were hard pressed by the Suebi: **Ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur.**

Aristides was banished from his country on the ground that he was unreasonably just: **Aristīdēs expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum jūstus esset.**

i. It should not be supposed that the subjunctive casts doubt upon the reason given, or refuses to vouch for its accuracy. It simply quotes without expressing any opinion, and is, in fact, identical with the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration (section 177). *Quod* with the indicative tells *why* something was said or done; *quod* with the subjunctive tells *on what grounds* something was said or done.

ii. *Quod* is very commonly used after verbs of *accusation, praise, complaint, thanks, joy, anger*, and the like; the indicative and subjunctive being used according to the distinction just drawn; as, *I thank you for setting me free:* **Tibi grātiās agō, quod mē**

1. Or even to quote one's own previously expressed reason.

liberāvistī. *Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth:* **Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem.**

iii. *Nōn quod* or *nōn quō* is used with the subjunctive of a reason mentioned only to be rejected, = *not because (as one might suppose)*. So also *quam quod* or *quam quō* after an actual or virtual comparative.

iv. For the illogical *quod dīceret* see section 177, ii.

148. *Cum*, with causal force, meaning *since* or *as*, takes the *subjunctive*;[1] as,

Since they could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Cæsar: **Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.**

149. *Cum*, meaning *whenever*, in clauses denoting indefinitely recurring action, takes the *indicative*.

When, as is usually the case, the *cum* clause denotes an action preceding that of the main verb, the perfect and pluperfect tenses are used; but when it denotes what is simultaneous, the present and imperfect. The main verb is regularly present or imperfect indicative.

Whenever our men attack, the enemy fall back: **Cum nostrī impetum fēcērunt, hostēs pedem referunt.**

Whenever there is need, the enemy fall back: **Cum ūsus est, hostēs pedem referunt.**

Whenever our men attacked, the enemy fell back: **Cum nostrī impetum fēcerant, hostēs pedem referēbant.**

i. With the same force and with the same construction are used also *quotiēns, quotiēnscumque, ut, ubi, sī quandō*.

150. *Cum*, meaning *when*, referring to present or to future time, takes the *indicative*; as,

When I find out, I shall inform you: **Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem.**

i. The future and future perfect are used with *cum* as with *sī* (section 62).

151. *Cum*, meaning *when* (or *while*), referring to past time, regularly takes the *subjunctive*; the imperfect of contemporaneous action, the pluperfect of antecedent action; as,

When they were approaching Britain, a storm arose: **Cum Britanniae appropinquārent, tempestās coorta est.**

1. For *cum*, with concessive force, meaning *although*, see section 65, *a*.

When he perceived this, he sent reinforcements: **Quod cum animadvertisset, subsidia submittit.**

In most cases *cum* with the subjunctive denotes the *circumstances* or *situation*, very often, as in the last example, combining the causal with the temporal idea.[1]

The following exceptions to this use of *cum* with the subjunctive regularly occur:

i. *When*, meaning *whenever*, is regularly expressed by *cum* and the indicative (section 149).

ii. *Cum* expressing *identity of action* or *coincidence of time* regularly takes the indicative, chiefly when the principal clause contains *tum*, or some equivalent expression; as, *When they remain quiet* (or *in remaining quiet*), *they approve:* **Cum quiēscunt, probant.** *At the time when he came to Gaul, there were two factions in that state:* **(Tum) cum in Galliam vēnit, in eā cīvitāte duae erant factiōnēs.**

iii. *Cum*, meaning *when* or *when suddenly*, in a clause which is logically the principal one, takes the indicative. The principal clause often has *jam*, *vix* or *nōndum*; as, *They were already preparing to depart, when suddenly it was announced that the city had been captured:* **Jam discēdere parābant, cum repente nūntiātum est urbem captam esse.**

iv. *Cum primum*, *as soon as*, takes the indicative.

v. *Cum . . . tum*, meaning *both . . . and*, has regularly no influence on the mood of the verb.

EXERCISE 21.

A.

1. Cæsar complained because the enemy were laying waste the territories of the Ædui. 2. When the ships were drawing near the island, so great a tempest arose that they could with difficulty hold their course. 3. As they thought the enemy was within the gates, they rushed out of the town. 4. Cæsar feared an ambush, because he had not yet learned why they were withdrawing. 5. Whenever our men began to return to the place from which they had started, they were surrounded by the enemy. 6. They asked to be allowed to remain in our camp, on the ground that they dreaded the vengeance of the Gauls. 7. Since this is the case, I

1. Similarly combining the concessive with the temporal idea, *cum* (meaning *while* or *whereas*) is used with the subjunctive to contrast two situations; as, *The enemy numbered five thousand, while our men had no more than eight hundred cavalry:* **Hostium erat quinque millium numerus, cum nostri non amplius octingentos haberent.**

shall set out at once. 8. The soldiers were proceeding with the greatest caution through the territories of the enemy, when the Helvetians suddenly attacked them in the rear. 9. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with great numbers of the enemy, they immediately took to flight. 10. When Cæsar returns to the camp, he will find the ships repaired. 11. At the time when the enemy were preparing to storm the camp, Cæsar was leading the soldiers across the bridge. 12. When Cæsar discovered what had been done, he reproved the rashness of the soldiers, because they had not halted on the signal being given.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 5, 6.*)

1. They begged to be left in Gaul, on the ground that they were not used to sailing. 2. Since he has discovered that the vessel is not ready for sailing, he has determined to return. 3. When Cæsar finds out what is the design of Dumnorix, he will send him as a hostage to the mainland. 4. Cæsar, whenever he is absent from the mainland, fears an uprising, not because the Ædui are eager for a change of government, but because Gaul has been stripped of all its nobles. 5. Whenever the ships set out, they are driven back by the storm. 6. The Ædui were on the point of setting out, when Cæsar returned. 7. Cæsar is taking the leading men over to Britain, because he is afraid to leave them in Gaul. 8. When this was reported to Dumnorix, he perceived that all hope had vanished. 9. He accused Dumnorix of being eager for supreme power.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 24.*)

1. When they were fighting with the enemy they leaped down into the waves. 2. Since they are unacquainted with the country they cannot advance boldly. 3. There will be very great difficulty because our men are unaccustomed to fight in the waves. 4. As soon as they got a footing in the waves, they began to hurl their weapons. 5. When they have discovered the Romans' plans, they will follow them up with all their forces. 6. As they were weighed down with their armor, they could not get a footing in the waves. 7. Our men were landing from the ship, when suddenly weapons were hurled at them. 8. He accused them of not showing the same zeal in this battle. 9. Whenever our men leaped down, the enemy would spur on their horses.

CHAPTER XXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.[1]

152. WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS,[2] introducing clauses of time, are translated by

(*a*) *Cum* or *cum primum* (sections 149-151).

(*b*) *Postquam, posteāquam, ut, ubi, simul āc* (or *atque*) with the indicative, in narrative chiefly the perfect indicative; as,

After Cæsar reached that place, he determined to cross the Rhine: **Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit.**

When he heard that, he removed to Corcyra: **Id ut audīvit, Corcȳram dēmigrāvit.**

When they were informed of his approach, they sent envoys: **Ubi dē ējus adventū certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt.**

As soon as they perceived this, they began to take up arms: **Quae simul atque cōnspexērunt, arma capere coepērunt.**

i. To indicate indefinitely recurring action the perfect and pluperfect tenses would be used as with *cum* (section 149).

ii. With *postquam* the pluperfect indicative is used when a definite interval is specified; as, *He was killed in the ninth year after he came to Spain:* **Nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, occīsus est.**

iii. *Postquam* and *posteāquam* are often written as two words, in which case *post* is sometimes treated as a preposition; sometimes *quam* is used for *postquam*.

153. WHILE, meaning *within the time that*, is expressed by *dum* with the *present* indicative; as,

While this was being done, the Treveri had gathered large forces: **Dum haec geruntur, Trēverī māgnās cōpiās coēgerant.**

i. This idea may also be expressed by *cum* and the imperfect subjunctive (section 151), especially if there be any idea of contrast (section 151, fn.).

154. WHILE, meaning *as long as*, is expressed by *dum, quoad* or *quamdiū*[3] with the indicative.

---

1. For the use of the tenses of the indicative see Chapter XXVII., especially section 178, ii.

2. Clauses introduced by *when, while, after,* are also often expressed in Latin by participial phrases, especially in the ablative absolute (see chapters VI. and VII.).

3. *Donec* also is used in poetry and late prose, often with the subjunctive.

The tenses are used as in English, except that for future time Latin uses the future where English loosely uses the present; as,

While their strength lasted they held their ground: **Dum vīrēs suppetēbant sustinuērunt.**

He resisted as long as he could: **Quoad potuit, restitit.**

You shall study as long as you wish: **Discēs, quamdiū volēs.**

i. For *dum*, meaning *so long as, provided that*, where the temporal force no longer appears, see section 67.

155. UNTIL, introducing clauses of time, is expressed by *dum* or *quoad*.[1]

(*a*) To denote *mere limit of time* the *indicative* is used, chiefly with *quoad*; as,

He was in the senate that day until the senate adjourned: **In senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dīmissus.**

Until I learn that the winter camp has been fortified, I shall stay in Gaul: **Quoad mūnīta hīberna cōgnōverō, in Galliā morābor.**

(*b*) To denote *expectation, purpose* or *end in view*, the present or imperfect *subjunctive* is used, generally with *dum*; as,

He waited until the other ships should assemble: **Dum reliquae nāvēs convenīrent, exspectāvit.**

i. For *not until*, meaning *not before*, see section 156, iii.

ii. As a rule, actions referring to the future may be regarded as denoting either mere limit of time or expectation.

156. BEFORE is expressed by *antequam* or *priusquam*.

(*a*) To denote *mere priority* or *limit of time* the *indicative* is used; as,

I was born the year before he died: **Annō antequam est mortuus, nātus sum.**

And they did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine: **Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt.**

(*b*) To denote *purpose* or *anticipation* or *prevention* the present or imperfect *subjunctive* is used; as,

Before they could recover from their panic, he led his army across: **Priusquam sē ex terrōre recīperent, exercitum trānsdūxit.**

1. *Donec* also is used, but not often in the best prose.

i. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as two words, especially after a negative.

ii. *Priusquam* is commoner than *antequam*, especially with the subjunctive.

iii. To express *not before*, meaning *not until*, both indicative and subjunctive are found, but after secondary tenses the perfect indicative is preferred.

iv. When the pluperfect subjunctive is found after *priusquam* or *antequam*, it is regularly either in indirect narration (actual or virtual) for the perfect or future perfect indicative of the direct, or it is due to attraction. (See section 177, i.)

EXERCISE 22.

1. The Gauls decided they ought not to wait until Cæsar reached their borders. 2. Before he should make an attack on the enemy, he sent forward a scout to find out what their numbers were. 3. While these things were going on, the envoys who were in the camp took their departure. 4. As soon as they recovered from their panic, they sent envoys to Cæsar to sue for peace. 5. For that reason I shall keep silent as long as I can. 6. He did not set out for the army until he learned that the enemy were gathering their forces to one place. 7. Before he reached the harbor, the cavalry had set sail. 8. We shall hold our ground until Cæsar sends reinforcements. 9. After they had been informed of our advance, they withdrew into their remotest forests. 10. While our men were getting the ships ready, it was reported that the camp had been attacked. 11. Before these could learn of his departure, he crossed the river. 12. The enemy resisted bravely until they saw our cavalry approaching in the rear.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 7, 8.*)

1. After Dumnorix had taken his departure for home, Cæsar ordered the cavalry to bring him back. 2. So long as he disregards Cæsar's authority, I shall take measures to prevent him from doing harm to the state. 3. While this was going on in Britain, two thousand cavalry were guarding the harbor. 4. We shall not embark until supplies are provided. 5. Before Cæsar reached Britain, he learned that large forces had assembled. 6. They held on their course until the wind fell at sunset. 7. As often as

they caught sight of our soldiers, the enemy would conceal themselves in the higher ground. 8. Before Cæsar could get suitable weather, word was brought that the enemy had learned his design. 9. Cæsar should have put off his departure until he found in what part of the island was the best landing place.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 25.*)

1. The natives retreated before the ships could be stationed on their exposed flank. 2. As long as you do your duty, everything will turn out happily. 3. They had halted until the commander should invoke the gods. 4. While the transport vessels were being withdrawn, Cæsar was encouraging the soldiers not to abandon the eagle to the enemy. 5. I shall not bear the eagle against the enemy until you are willing to follow. 6. The enemy caught sight of the soldier before he drew near the ship. 7. As soon as the ships were urged forward the enemy began to retreat. 8. Our men hesitated until Cæsar ordered them to leap down. 9. After this soldier had flung himself from the ship, the legion followed in a body.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns.[1]

157. As the pronominal subject is really contained in the personal ending of the finite verb, the nominative of the personal pronouns is not, as a rule, expressed except for *emphasis* or *contrast*; as,

I drove out kings, you bring in tyrants: **Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis.**

i. The third personal pronoun is supplied by *is*, *hīc* or *quī*, or if emphatic by *ille*.

ii. *Nōs* is often used for *ego* (compare our 'editorial we'), but *vōs* should never be used for *tū*.

iii. For the use of the different forms of the genitive see Part III. 62, *a*.

158. *Hīc, this* (the demonstrative of the first person), denotes something *near* (in place, time or thought). Hence it is used of something just mentioned or something just about to be mentioned; as,

This present war: **Hōc bellum.**

All these (the tribes just mentioned) *differ from one another in language:* **HI omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.**

The character of the ground was as follows: **Locī nātūra erat haec.**

159. *Is, that, this, the*, refers without emphasis to something named in the preceding context, and also serves as the antecedent of the relative. It is thus also used as the unemphasized third personal pronoun; as,

They order Lutetia to be burnt and the bridges of that town to be destroyed: **Lutētiam incendī pontēsque ējus oppidī rescindī jubent.**

The legion which he had with him: **Ea legiō, quam sēcum habēbat.**

1. N.B.—It will be understood that the words treated of in this and the two succeeding chapters are pronouns when they are substitutes for nouns, and pronominal adjectives when they modify nouns.

The number of those who returned home: **Eōrum, quī domum redīērunt, numerus.**

They send envoys to him: **Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.**

i. *Is* sometimes has the force of *such* (=*tālis*).

ii. *Et is* and *neque is* are used to emphasize, with the force of *and that too*; as, *One cohort, and that too a small one:* **Ūna cohors et ea parva.**

iii. Where English uses *that of* or *those of* to avoid repeating a noun, Latin does not use a pronoun, but the noun is either repeated or understood (see section 83, iii.).

160. *Ille, that* (the demonstrative of the third person), denotes something *remote* in place, time or thought. It is frequently used as the emphatic third personal pronoun, in contrast with *hīc*, and also to call special attention to some person or thing; as,

Trained not in the customs of former days, but after our modern fashion: **Nōn antīquō illō mōre, sed hōc nostrō ērudītus.**

These are under arms; those remain at home: **Hī in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent.**

The famous Alexander the Great: **Māgnus ille Alexander.**

Part of the cavalry he assigned to him, part he left for himself: **Equītātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi relīquit.**

i. A very common use of *ille* is to indicate a change of subject, where the new subject has been referred to in the preceding clause. In such cases it may be rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the other, the enemy, the latter*, or some similar phrase.

ii. *Ille*, often, especially in the neuter *illud*, is used to point forward with emphasis to a following clause.

iii. *Hīc . . . ille* often mean *the latter . . . the former.*

161. *Iste, that* (the demonstrative of the second person), denotes something near or belonging to the person addressed; as, *Those affairs of yours* (or *Those affairs you mention*): **Istae rēs.** It has also at times a contemptuous force.

162. *Īdem, the same*, expresses identity, and is often to be rendered by *also* or *likewise*; as,

The same day he moved his camp: **Eōdem diē castra mōvit.**

Whatever is honorable is also expedient: **Quicquid est honestum, idem est ūtile.**

i. For *the same as* see section 174.

ii. As *idem* is a compound of *is, that same* is *ille īdem*, not *is īdem.*

163. *Ipse, -self*, is used for emphatic contrast, not as a reflexive pronoun. It may be used with nouns or with any of the personal pronouns, or may be used independently, meaning *he himself;* as,

They slew Dumnorix himself: **Ipsum Dumnorīgem interfēcērunt.**

Leaving Labienus on the mainland, he himself set sail: **Labiēnō in continentī relictō, ipse nāvēs solvit.**

i. The emphatic force of *ipse* is often best rendered by *very* or *mere;* as, *They were fighting on the very banks of the river:* **In ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur.**

ii. The genitive of *ipse* with or without the possessive pronominal adjectives may be used as the equivalent of *own;* as, *My own fault:* **Mea ipsīus culpa.** *Their own tongue:* **Ipsōrum lingua.**

iii. *Ipse*, when used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, agrees with the subject, unless very strong emphasis is to lie on the reflexive; as, *They kill themselves:* **Sē ipsī interficiunt.**

iv. Occasionally in indirect narration *ipse* is used as a reflexive for the sake of emphatic contrast, or where *sē* might be ambiguous.

164. *Sē, himself, him*, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, refers back to the subject of the verb. It should be carefully distinguished from (*a*) the emphatic pronoun *ipse*, and (*b*) the personal pronouns referring to others than the subject; as,

They cannot defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere nōn possunt.**

Commius took the cavalry over with him: **Commius sēcum equitēs trānsportāvit.**

i. When *sē* refers to the subject of the clause to which it belongs, it is called the 'direct reflexive'; but when, as often, *sē* belongs to a subordinate clause and refers to the subject of the principal clause, it is called the 'indirect reflexive.' As a rule, in subordinate clauses expressing a thought, statement, wish, command or question, the reflexive is indirect, referring to the person who thinks, commands, etc. The direct and the indirect use may be found together; as, *They asked the king not to keep Hannibal with him, but to surrender him to them:* **Ab rēge petēbant nē Hannibalem sēcum habēret sibique dēderet.**

ii. For *inter sē*, used as a reciprocal pronoun, see Part III. 62, *e*.

iii. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, the personal pronouns are used.

iv. The passive voice of some verbs is used with reflexive force; as, *They exercise themselves:* **Exercentur** or **Sē exercent.**

165. *Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester*, the possessive pronouns, are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness; in other cases the context gives a sufficient indication; as,

For the sake of your well-being, they have disregarded their own peril: **Vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt.**

i. These pronouns often express what is characteristic of a person; as, *By his own peculiar methods:* **Suīs artibus.**

ii. *Suus*, like *sē* (section 164, i.), is used both as a direct and as an indirect reflexive. Very frequently also *suus* refers to some word in its clause which is not a subject of any verb; as, *They send Mago with his fleet to Spain:* **Māgōnem cum classe suā in Hispāniam mittunt.** As a rule, *ējus* and *eōrum* are used for *his* or *their* when not reflexive.

iii. The possessive pronouns are often used substantively, especially *nostrī, suī* and *sua*.

iv. Sometimes we find a genitive in apposition with the genitive idea implied in these words; as, *My name in my absence:* **Nōmen meum absentis.** *By our own help:* **Nostrā ipsōrum operā.** *Amid the tears of us all:* **In nostrō omnium flētū.** (See section 163, ii.)

EXERCISE 23.

A.

1. After these matters had been settled, a war suddenly broke out in the province itself. The cause of this war was as follows. 2. He himself placed you in charge of us. 3. The enemy had concealed their own forces in the same woods. 4. For the same reason he feared our men would inflict injury upon themselves. 5. I remained with you all that time; he returned to his own home. 6. Cæsar had these two legions and those of Croesus with him. 7. They slew themselves in the very gates of the camp. 8. He also thought this present war itself was dangerous to all of us. 9. Our cavalry, after encouraging one another, joined battle with the enemy's horsemen. These latter at once betook themselves to their comrades. 10. This much he promised, that he would give them a safe passage through your province. 11. After their usual custom, they put their wives and all their property in the woods. 12. The Nervii and the Aduatuci were waging war against us; the former had taken up their position on the other side of the river Sabis; the latter were fortifying their own town.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 9, 10.*)

1. These messengers came from those who were pursuing the cavalry. 2. On that same day they found out that their own vessel had been wrecked. 3. These reputed to him that the nature of that place was as follows. 4. He himself forbade my advancing with him. 5. He also has put you in charge of that famous legion. 6. We repulsed the enemy; you fled. 7. He learned that they had, according to their custom, hidden themselves in the woods. 8. I wished you to advance to that river with all your forces. 9. In that place we caught sight of the enemy's camp. 10. These latter had begun to blockade the very entrances.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 26.*)

1. He sent aid to his comrades. 2. This alone is lacking to you. 3. When he saw that these were putting our men to flight, he was himself alarmed. 4. These made an attack on those who had landed from that ship. 5. He also ordered them to follow him. 6. He ordered our cavalry to attach themselves to that same standard. 7. We held our course; they could not make the island. 8. Perceiving that the cavalry themselves were being thrown into confusion, he ordered the soldiers to follow their own standards. 9. The former hurl their weapons; the latter man the boats. 10. He perceived that the enemy were in distress, and that our own ranks were gaining a footing on the shore.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Indefinite Pronouns.

Any.

166. (*a*) **Quis** (**quī**) means *any, anyone,* after *sī, nē, num,* and *some, some one,* after *nisi*; as,

If any one has heard anything he reports it to the magistrate: **Si quis quid accēpit, ad magistrātum dēfert.**
He ordered the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon: **Militibus imperāvit nē quod tēlum rejicerent.**

(*b*) **Quisquam** (substantival) means *any one,* and **ūllus** (adjectival) means *any,* when all are excluded, that is, when *any* has the force of *any, even one,* suggesting the idea of *no one* or *none.* They are used in negative, or practically negative sentences;[1] as,

Nor was any one found: **Neque repertus est quisquam.**
The battle was without any danger: **Sine ūllō perīculō erat proelium.**

i. Instead of *nōn* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus,* Latin prefers *nēmō, nihil* and *nūllus;* but *neque* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus* is preferred to *et* followed by *nēmō, nihil* or *nūllus:* as, *They do not expect any disaster:* **Nūllum cāsum exspectant.** *And nothing is considered more disgraceful:* **Neque turpius quīcquam habētur.**

(*c*) **Quīvīs, quīlibet** mean *any, any one,* when all are included, that is, when *any* has the force of *any you please,* suggesting the idea of *every one, all;* as,

The vessels are built to withstand any violence: **Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvīs vim perferendam.**

Some.

167. (*a*) **Aliquis** (**aliquī**) means *some, some one* (*or other*), wholly indefinite; as,

He bade them send some one: **Jussit eōs aliquem mittere.**
They are devising some new plan: **Aliquid novī cōnsilii ineunt.**

1. For instance, rhetorical questions, comparative clauses, and clauses containing such words as *sine, vix, aegre.*

Even if some portion be surrounded, the rest can be saved: **Sī pars aliqua circumventa erit, reliquī servārī possunt.**

i. *Quispiam* has the force of *aliquis*, but is much rarer.

(*b*) NŌNNŪLLĪ means *some, some few*, suggesting the idea *some, but not many;* as, *They lost some* (or *a few*) *of their men:* **Nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt.**

(*c*) NESCIŌ QUIS means *some one or other* unknown to the speaker; often, through an affectation of ignorance, it implies contempt; as, *He had raised some rumor or other* (or *some trifling rumor*): **Rūmōrīs nesciō quid afflāverat.**

i. *Nesciō quis* in this sense is treated as a single word, and as such is not followed by the subjunctive of indirect question. Similarly *nesciō quō modō* or *nesciō quō pāctō, in some way or other.*

(*d*) SUNT QUĪ with the subjunctive (section 32) means *some* (emphatic) or *there are some who;* as, *Some said:* **Erant quī dīcerent.**

(*e*) QUĪDAM means *a certain one, a certain*, of what one has in mind, but is not anxious or able to specify further. Hence it is often used in vague descriptions, meaning *a sort of;* as,

One of the soldiers said: **Quīdam ex mīlitibus dīxit.**
The Romans have defeated us not by valor but by a sort of trick: **Nōn virtūte vīcērunt Rōmānī sed artificiō quōdam.**

(*f*) For *alius* repeated, meaning *some . . . other*, see section 168, *a*, and for *quis*, meaning *some*, see section 166, *a*.

OTHER.

168. *a.* ALIUS means *other, another.* When it is repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is *one . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . others.* When, in the same clause, it is repeated in a different case, or is accompanied by a derivative adverb, the meaning is, in the singular *one . . . one, another . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . one, others . . . another:* as,

They fled in another direction: **Aliam in partem fūgērunt.**
Some were filling the trenches, others were hurling weapons: **Aliī fossās complēbant, aliī tēla conjiciēbant.**
Some were carried in one direction, others in another: **Aliī aliam in partem ferēbantur.**
They believe one thing one moment, another another: **Aliās aliud sentiunt.**

i. After *alius* or *aliter* (and similarly after *contrā*) *āc* or *atque* is used to introduce a comparison (*other than*); as, *They wage war in a manner very different from* (or *far other than*) *the rest of the Gauls:* **Longē aliā ratiōne [illegible]liquī Gallī bellum gerunt.**

ii. Sometimes *alius* repeated in the same clause is to be rendered by *one another*; as, *They lend aid to one another* (or *one to another*): **Alius alii subsidium ferunt.**

(*b*) ALTER means *the other, the second* (of two). When repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is (*the*) *one . . . the other*, in the plural (*the*) *one party . . . the other party*; as,

The one part he gave up to the Gauls, the other he assigned to the cohorts: **Alteram partem Gallis concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit.**

One division fled to the mountain, the other to the baggage: **Alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta.**

(*c*) CĒTERĪ and RELIQUĪ mean *the others, the rest, the remainder*;[1] as,

They differ from the others: **Differunt ā cēterīs.**

The Veneti and the other states also prepare for war: **Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs bellum parant.**

EACH.

169. (*a*) QUISQUE means *each* (*of more than two*), *every*, and is especially frequent with the reflexive;[2] as,

It is best for each to return to his home: **Optimum est domum suam quemque revertī.**

i. With superlatives and ordinal numerals *quisque* has the force of *every* (or *all the*); as, *Every man of noble birth:* **Nōbilissimus quisque.** *Every tenth man:* **Decimus quisque.** *Prīmus quisque* means *the very first, the first possible.*

(*b*) UTERQUE means *each* (*of two*), freely *both*; the plural *utrīque* meaning *both sides* or *both parties*; as,

On each bank (or *on both banks*) *they had villages:* **Ad utramque rīpam vīcōs habēbant.**

That day both armies keep within their own lines: **Eō diē utrīque sēsē suō locō continent.**

EXERCISE 24.

A.

1. They beheld certain of our men leaping down from the other vessel. 2. They used to inquire what every one had heard concerning each matter. 3. Before he should make any answer,

1. For the agreement of *ceteri* and *reliqui* see section 86, iv. *b*.

2. With pronouns *quisque* and *uterque* are used substantively, taking the partitive genitive; with substantives they are used adjectively in agreement.

he ordered the others to be summoned to him. 4. Some thought they could gain the victory without a (=*any*) wound. 5. It would be better to suffer any fate at the hands of the Romans. 6. They will not make peace on any other terms. 7. The enemy were advancing, some from one direction, others from another. 8. When he saw that the enemy was pressing him on each flank, he suspected some new design had been formed. 9. If any of the Gauls are captured, the rest will soon surrender. 10. He trusted both the Ædui and the Remi, the one because of their ancient loyalty, the other because of their recent services. 11. Scarcely any one perceived that some other plan must be devised than (they had formed) previously. 12. Lest the flight of the Gauls should alarm any, he pointed out that the Germans had won by some trick or other, rather than by their valor.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 11, 12.*)

1. Labienus said that he could build any number of ships. 2. There are some who say that there is timber in every part of the island. 3. If any workmen are summoned, they will be ordered to repair the other vessels. 4. He put a certain Labienus in charge of the other legion. 5. Some were born in the island; others had crossed over from the mainland. 6. Scarcely any one had discovered that Cæsar was leaving a garrison for both camps. 7. Some think that the cold is less intense in the interior; others on the coast. 8. Others said that some place or other should be chosen. 9. Scarcely any ships have been lost; but some few must be repaired.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-4.*)

1. Killing some, they drove the rest from their lands. 2. Some one said that the Suebi could withstand the power of any state. 3. In each state some think this a merit, others regard it as unmanly. 4. If we wish anything imported, certain traders will be given access. 5. We take pleasure some in one thing, others in another. 6. Others thought that scarcely any state was more civilized. 7. And they do not permit any one to use wine. 8. Lest they seize any vessel, guards should be stationed on both banks. 9. There were some who said that the cavalry would reach another river.

CHAPTER XXV.

The Relative Pronoun.

170. Quī, *who, which*, the relative or conjunctive pronoun, is regularly followed by the *indicative*; as,

The bridge which was at Geneva he orders to be destroyed: **Pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindī.**

i. The indicative is regularly found also after relative adverbs, such as *unde, ubi, quō, ut*, relative adjectives such as *quālis, quantus*, and indefinite relatives such as *quisquis* and *quīcumque*.

ii. For the agreement of the relative with its antecedent see section 13.

iii. In Latin, unlike the English usage, the relative is always expressed; as, *The liberty we have received from our forefathers:* **Ea lībertās, quam ā mājōribus accēpimus.**

iv. In the case of two relative clauses coordinate with each other, the second relative is generally omitted if the two relatives would have the same case; as, *He prevails upon Dumnorix, who held the chief authority and was very popular with the common people:* **Dumnorigī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet.** When the two relatives would be in different cases, as a rule both are expressed; but sometimes the second is replaced by a demonstrative, or (if it would be in the nominative or accusative) is omitted; as, *He has sent a man whom we neither fear nor obey:* **Hominem, quem neque timēmus neque eī pārēmus, mīsit.**

v. Where the same preposition would be used with both antecedent and relative, it is regularly omitted with the relative.

vi. The relative is often found in the ablative absolute construction.

171. The relative is used with the *subjunctive* to introduce clauses of *purpose* (section 26), clauses of *characteristic* (section 32), and also clauses of *concession* and *cause* or *reason*;[1] as,

Though Cicero during all the previous days had kept the soldiers in the camp, on the seventh day he sent five cohorts to forage: **Cicerō, [illegible] omnēs superiōrēs diēs mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, [illegible] diē quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mittit.**

It is not without divine aid that the Romans carry on war, since they are able to move forward such mighty engines: **Nōn**

1. The causal relative sentence is often introduced and emphasized by *quippe, ut*, or *utpote*.

Rōmānī sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerunt, quī tantās māchinātiōnēs prōmovēre possint.

172. THE COORDINATING RELATIVE.—*Quī* is often used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce, not a subordinate clause, but *a new independent sentence*, which it thus connects more clearly with the preceding words than a personal or demonstrative pronoun, such as English uses, would do. The relative may belong either to a principal or to a subordinate clause in the new sentence; as,

For this reason the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls: **Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt.**

Having completed this business Cæsar set out for Gaul: **Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar in Galliam profectus est.**

When they perceived them, they began to close the gates: **Quōs cum cōnspexissent, portās claudere coepērunt.**

173. The following peculiarities in the antecedent are of common occurrence:

(*a*) The antecedent is frequently omitted; as, *They do what they are ordered:* **Quod jussī sunt, faciunt.** *He sent men to find out:* **Mīsit quī cōgnōscerent.**

(*b*) The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause, especially the words *pars, rēs, locus, diēs;* as, *Dust was seen in the direction in which the legion had marched:* **Pulvis in eā parte vidēbātur quam in partem legiō iter fēcerat.**

(*c*) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause:

i. Where the relative clause precedes, an antecedent substantive is often put in the relative clause; as, *That part which had caused the disaster paid the penalty;* **Quae pars calamitātem intulerat, ea poenās persolvit.**

ii. Where the antecedent is an appositive, it is as a rule put in the relative clause; as, *They inhabit Kent, a country which lies entirely on the coast:* **Cantium incolunt, quae regiō omnis maritima est.**

iii. Somewhat similar is the transference of the superlative or other modifier of the antecedent to the relative clause; as, *He sent the largest ship he had:* **Nāvem, quam māximam habuit, mīsit.**

(*d*) The substance of a sentence or phrase may be referred to parenthetically by *quod* or *id quod;* as, *He told them that after the enemy were put to flight (as he saw would be the case) they were all to attack the king:* **Praecēpit hostibus in fugam conjectīs (quod fore vidēbat) omnēs peterent rēgem.**

174. The relative pronoun *as* in correlative sentences is represented by different words, according to the demonstrative in the antecedent clause. *Īdem* is followed by *quī*, or by *āc* (*atque*). (So also *pār* when used with the force of *īdem*.) *Tālis, tantus* and *tot* are followed by *quālis, quantus* and *quot* respectively; as,

Our men resist in the same manner as on the previous day: **Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur.**

He was the same kind of man as I perceive you to be: **Tālis erat quālem tē esse videō.**

i. *As* (*many, large*, etc.) *as possible* is expressed by *quam* and the superlative, with or without the proper form of *possum*; as, *They gather as many ships as possible:* **Nāvēs quam plūrimās (possunt) cōgunt.**

ii. The antecedents *tālis, tantus, tot* are often omitted; as, *They assign them as much land as seems best:* **Attribuunt quantum vīsum est agrī.**

EXERCISE 25.

A.

1. The ships which he had built in the previous summer, were ordered to assemble at once. 2. Nor could any vessels be found on which the cavalry could be brought over. 3. Having made these preparations, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble at the banks of the river. 4. When they heard this, they withdrew to the camp whence they had set out. 5. The same thing will happen as has happened on previous days. 6. This legion he left to guard the camp, seeing that it was wearied with marching. 7. The number of those who set out from the country of the Helvetians was three hundred and sixty-eight thousand. Of these, those who could bear arms were ninety-two thousand. 8. Dismayed by his advance, the enemy took to flight, although they had gathered large forces. 9. These do not strive with as great eagerness as they are accustomed to exhibit in battles on land. 10. The enemy suddenly came in sight of the cavalry Cæsar had sent to the assistance of the Ædui. 11. These are allowed to go in safety in whatever direction they wish. 12. He sent the bravest horsemen he had with him to Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 13, 14.*)

1. Those who inhabit the district along the seacoast are more civilized. 2. Ireland is not considered to be so large as Britain. 3.

This island the Britons inhabit. These, seeing that they dye themselves blue, are of a hideous appearance. 4. When the ship was brought to land at this place, we saw that most of the people were clad in skins. 5. The region which is called Kent is on the sea. 6. In this island they have nothing on which to live except milk and flesh. 7. Although they are more civilized than the Britons, they do not live on grain. 8. By these inquiries we found that the nights are the same as in Britain. 9. The woad with which the Britons used to dye themselves is thought to have produced a blue color.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 5-10.*)

1. The islands which the river forms are inhabited by tribes which live on birds. 2. When they heard this, they sent envoys to Cæsar to ask him into what district he was marching. 3. As he suspected that they had formed some new resolve, Cæsar determined not to move his camp nearer the Rhine. 4. There was no tribe for whom they were not a match. 5. The lands Cæsar allowed the Germans to settle in were not of the same character as those they had seized in Gaul. 6. Being driven from home, these tribes had come to the Rhine, where the Ubii had lands. 7. If these settle in Gaul, I shall assign them whatever lands they wish to hold. 8. The Germans, although they cannot protect their own territories, are asking to be allowed to drive out the Treveri from their lands. 9. When he discovered their design, he made them the same answer as he had given to the envoys of the Ubii some days before.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Narration.

175. In many of the preceding chapters rules have been given for using, now the indicative, now the subjunctive, in subordinate clauses introduced by a relative or conjunction.

But all such subordinate clauses are put in the *subjunctive* when dependent on a clause in indirect narration, that is, on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *stating*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, *ordering* or *asking*. The indicative should never be used to express any portion of the quoted words or thoughts of another; as,

He answers that he has been silent as long as he has been able: **Respondet quamdiū potuerit sē tacuisse.**

They thought they would recover the hostages that they had given to Crassus: **Sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.**

It was observed that our men were scarcely suited to an enemy of this sort because they could not follow up a retreating force: **Intellēctum est nostrōs, quod īnsequī cēdentēs non possent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem.**

He ordered them to await his arrival in the place where they then were: **Eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre jussit.**

He asked why Cæsar demanded this if he did not think it right: **Rogāvit cūr Caesar, sī nōn aequum exīstimāret, hōc postulāret.**

1. An apparent exception is found in the use of the indicative in subordinate clauses that really form no part of the quoted words or thoughts, but either are parenthetic or explanatory additions made by the writer himself, or are the writer's substitute for something actually said or thought; as,

He ordered the cohorts which were on guard to set out with him: **Cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum proficīscī jussit.**

Cæsar suspected that that would happen which did occur: **Caesar fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.**

Here *quae in statiōnibus erant* formed no part of the order given, while no such clause as *quod accidit* could possibly have been in Cæsar's mind.

176. The *sequence of tenses* is observed in these subjunctive clauses, primary tenses following primary and secondary following secondary. In narrative, secondary sequence is the rule, the present and future indicative becoming the imperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the pluperfect subjunctive (see section 187, *b*).

But sometimes for the sake of vividness the primary sequence is used in narrative, the present and future indicative becoming the present subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the perfect subjunctive. (See also section 190, vi.)

177. VIRTUAL INDIRECT NARRATION.—The subjunctive is used in any subordinate clause which is conceived as expressing the words or thoughts of another, without any formal or explicit statement to that effect. This is called the subjunctive of *virtual* (*informal* or *implied*) *indirect narration;* as,

He offered great rewards if they succeeded in carrying the despatches through: **Māgna prōposuit praemia sī litterās pertulissent.** (Here *prōposuit* is equivalent to *sē datūrum esse pollicitus est.*)

They led part of their troops across, in order, if possible, to storm the fortress: **Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūxērunt ut, sī possent, castellum expūgnārent.** (This represents the original thought *sī poterimus, castellum expūgnābimus.*)

The enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross the marsh: **Palūdem sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant.**[1] (This represents some such thought as *sī trānsībunt, adoriēmur.*)

He gave me all the books that (as he said) his father had left: **Omnēs librōs quōs pater suus relīquisset mihi dōnāvit.**

For other examples compare the subjunctive with *quod, dum* and *priusquam* (sections 147, 155 and 156).

i. A clause dependent on a subjunctive, and forming a close connection with it, is sometimes itself put in the subjunctive by attraction, without in any way being in virtual indirect narration; as, *So profound an impression was produced by this war among the barbarians, that envoys were sent to Cæsar by those tribes which dwelt beyond the Rhine:* **Tanta hūjus bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab īs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem.** *They drove the cavalry before them in such a panic that they did not cease from their flight until they came in sight of our army:* **Equitēs ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in**

1. Such a clause seems to have the value of an indirect question, but is really a protasis in virtual indirect narration.

cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. *When he failed to influence him as he desired, he sent by night to the king the most trusty slave he had:* **Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servīs suīs quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit.**[1]

ii. There sometimes occurs an illogical extension (by mistaken analogy) of the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration, in which the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is expressed, and is itself put in the subjunctive; as, *He begged to be left in Gaul because, as he said, he was prevented by religious scruples:* **Petēbat ut in Galliā relinquerētur, quod religiōnibus impedīrī dīceret** (for *quod religiōnibus impedīrētur*).

EXERCISE 26.

A.

1. He promised to send all the cavalry he had with him. 2. He believes that if the Ædui are crushed, the rest of the Gauls will disperse to their homes. 3. Cæsar feared that the same thing would happen as had occurred on the previous day. 4. We were waiting in case the Gauls should attempt to break down the bridge. 5. Having offered rewards to those who should first mount the wall, he gave the signal. 6. He ordered Labienus, whom he had put in charge of the camp, to hinder, by whatever means he could, the enemy from crossing that river. 7. Cæsar complains because the Ædui have not lent him aid. 8. The enemy swarmed around in hopes of finding some means of approach. 9. Word was brought that Cæsar would send the cavalry by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. He inquired how many miles the town in which they dwelt was from the camp. 11. Driven by hunger, they secretly went out from the camp to see whether they could find any grain or cattle in the fields. 12. They gave reasons which (they held) were perfectly valid.

(*B. Cæsar, Bk. V. 15, 16.*)

1. He observed that when our men had an engagement with the enemy, the cavalry never fought in close order. 2. He feared that if the enemy were driven back our men would pursue them too closely. 3. The two cohorts which Cæsar had sent to reinforce

1. The subjunctive mood of *incolerent*, *venissent* and *vellet*, instead of *incolebant*, *venerunt* (see section 156, *a*) and *volebat* is due entirely to the subjunctives on which they depend.

our men, he ordered to drive back the charioteers who were boldly breaking through the cavalry. 4. They were waiting to see whether our men would follow those who were designedly retreating into the woods. 5. He thinks that our men will not dare to attack the charioteers, because they are not suited for this kind of fighting. 6. They asked what brought the same danger to the cavalry and to those who had leaped down from their chariots. 7. He had not posted guards, on the ground that all the soldiers were busy fortifying the camp. 8. He perceived that if our men left the standards, the enemy rushed out of the woods and slew them. 9. They generally fall back towards the hills until they have withdrawn our cavalry from the legions.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 11-14.*)

1. He ordered his men to defend the camp as long as they could. 2. They begged him to give no time for employing treachery, to those who the day before had put our cavalry to flight. 3. They thought that the enemy would not join battle until their cavalry, who had gone across the Meuse, returned. 4. He waited in hopes that they would accept the terms he had offered. 5. He perceived how much prestige he would gain if he forced his way into the enemy's camp. 6. He intends to put to death all who deceive him. 7. They said that they had brought all their leading men and soldiers, as had been arranged. 8. Enraged at the thought of (*quod*) the enemy having treacherously slain our cavalry the day before, he ordered the envoys who had come to the camp to be detained. 9. They brought word that several of our men had been slain, among them Piso, whose grandfather had been called friend by our senate.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Tenses of the Indicative.

178. In the general use of the tenses Latin differs from English in two respects:

i. There is no distinction in form corresponding to the English Progressive, Indefinite and Emphatic tenses, except that the Latin imperfect and perfect nearly correspond to the English past progressive and past indefinite respectively.

ii. Especially in subordinate clauses Latin is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future),[1] and also priority of action in relation to the main verb; as, *When I find out, I shall inform you, if I can:* **Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem, sī poterō.** (Literally, *When I shall have found out, I shall inform you, if I shall be able.*)

179. The PRESENT tense is used

(*a*) Of what is going on now at the present moment; as, *They are preparing for war:* **Bellum parant.**

(*b*) Of general truths, and of continued, repeated or habitual actions or states; as, *Fortune favors the brave:* **Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.** *Those in the interior do not sow grain:* **Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt.**

(*c*) As an historical present, in animated narrative; as, *When the news was brought, he makes haste to set out:* **Cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat proficīscī.**

(*d*) To express an action attempted or intended in present time (the conative present); as, *They are trying to avoid danger:* **Perīculum vītant.**

(*e*) With *jam* and its compounds to express actions continued from the past into the present, where we should expect the perfect; as, *He has long been collecting troops:* **Jamdiū cōpiās comparat.**

(*f*) With *dum* (*while*), where we should expect the imperfect (see section 153).

180. The IMPERFECT tense is used

(*a*) Of what was going on in past time; as, *He was wintering in Gaul:* **In Galliā hiemābat.**

1. In letters the writer often transfers himself in thought to the time of the reader, and uses the imperfect and pluperfect instead of the present and perfect; as, *I have nothing to write:* **Nihil habebam quod scriberem.**

(*b*) Of continued, repeated, or habitual actions or states in past time, like the English past indefinite; as, *He used to* (or *would*) *lead his troops out daily:* **Cotīdiē prōdūcēbat cōpiās.** *He had the greatest confidence in this legion:* **Huic legiōnī cōnfīdēbat māximē.** *He could not discover anything:* **Nihil reperiēbat** (suggesting repeated failures). *They would not come to the councils:* **Ad concilia nōn veniēbant** (implying repeated refusals).

(*c*) Hence appropriately i. to express one's usual way of thinking, or the thoughts or feelings which accompany consideration (while the perfect is used of coming to a decision); ii. to explain the situation of affairs; iii. to give the details of movements, or to describe the process as opposed to summing up the result; iv. to mention the natural features of the scene of past operations.

(*d*) To express an action attempted or intended or begun in past time (the conative imperfect); as, *They tried to prevent our march:* **Nostrōs itinere prohibēbant.** *He proceeded to stir up the Gauls:* **Gallōs sollicitābat.**

(*e*) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from a still earlier time into the past time spoken of, where we should expect the pluperfect; as, *He had long been carrying on war:* **Jamprīdem bellum gerēbat.**

(*f*) In the case of *possum, oportet, dēbeō* and such verbs, to express lack of correspondence with fact.

181. The FUTURE is used to denote what will take place at some future time; as, *Cæsar will take the camp by storm:* **Caesar castra expūgnābit.**

i. Where English has the present in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future when the actions are contemporaneous (section 178, ii.). Compare section 184, i.

182. The PERFECT is used

(*a*) Like the English present perfect, to denote an action completed by the present time; as, *They have left their lands and have hidden in the forest:* **Finibus suīs excessērunt, sēque in silvās abdidērunt.**

(*b*) Like the English past indefinite, to state that something took place in past time; as, *He sent forward the cavalry:* **Equitātum praemīsit.**

The perfect narrates; the imperfect describes. The perfect sums up; the imperfect dwells upon the process or the particulars. Compare section 180, *c*.

(*c*) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the present. (Section 149.)

(*d*) With *postquam, ut, ubi, simul atque*, where we might expect the pluperfect. (Section 152, *b*.)

(*c*) To denote the present state resulting from completed action; as, *He is dead:* **Mortuus est.** *They are gone:* **Discessērunt.** *We are surrounded:* **Circumventī sumus.** This is especially the case with *cōnsuēvī, I am accustomed; meminī, I remember;* and *nōvī, I know* (literally *I have become accustomed, I have called to mind, I have learned*).

Similarly the pluperfect of these verbs has the value of the imperfect, and the future perfect the value of the future.

i. The perfect tenses of the passive have sometimes *fuī, fueram, fuerō,* instead of *sum, eram, erō.* The form with *fuī* generally implies that the condition spoken of has ceased to exist.

ii. A sort of perfect is formed by *habeō* and the perfect participle passive,[1] emphasizing the continuance of the result of a past action; as, *He has large forces collected:* **Māgnās cōpiās coāctās habet.** Similarly for the pluperfect *habēbam* is used.

183. The PLUPERFECT is used

(*a*) To mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied: as, *They had by this time reached the territories of the Æduī:* **Jam in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant.**

(*b*) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the imperfect. (Section 149.)

i. Sometimes Cæsar uses the pluperfect instead of the perfect in referring to previous passages in his Commentaries.

184. The FUTURE PERFECT is used to express something completed or attained by some point in the future; as, *Meanwhile they will have gone:* **Interim discesserint.**

i. Where English has the present or present perfect in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future perfect when the action of the subordinate verb is prior to that of the principal verb (section 178, ii.). Sometimes where two future actions are regarded as identical, one involving the other, the future perfect is found in both clauses; as, *He who crushes Antony will (thereby) finish the war:* **Quī Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum cōnfēcerit.**

ii. The future perfect is sometimes used to emphasize the completion of a future act; as, *I at least shall have my duty done* (or *I at least shall be found to have done my duty*): **Ego certē meum officium praestiterō.** It thus may come to give assurance of rapidity of action; as, *The first attack will carry the camp forthwith:* **Primus impetus castra cēperit.**

1. Compare in English *I have the letter written,* with *I have written the letter.*

EXERCISE 27.

A.

1. To this legion he always showed especial indulgence. 2. If you assist the enemy, I shall burn your villages. 3. The Druids are accustomed to hold aloof from war, and do not pay taxes. 4. After he had learned this, he thought he ought not to wait longer. 5. If Cæsar is at the head of the army, we shall easily conquer the Gauls. 6. He marched through the forest of Ardennes, which extended from the Rhine to the Nervii. 7. By this means they sought to terrify the others. 8. While this was going on, the enemy had already reached the territories of the Ædui, and were laying waste their lands. 9. On the following day they move their camp two miles. 10. Whenever he saw his men in distress, he would send reinforcements. 11. For the reasons which I have mentioned, Cæsar wished to set out for Britain. 12. Before midnight the enemy will be gone.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 17, 18.*)

1. The enemy are rallying. 2. When Cæsar learns this he will send forward the legions. 3. Whenever our men make an attack, the enemy betake themselves to flight. 4. They were accustomed to leap down from their chariots. 5. For a long time they had been contending with their full force. 6. Whenever they began to forage, the enemy would suddenly show themselves. 7. As soon as all the forces had assembled, he proceeded to cross the river. 8. The enemy's forces are drawn up on the hill. 9. While the cavalry was foraging the enemy had withdrawn.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 15-19.*)

1. He did not think it right to give them permission to cross. 2. After the army had begun to be led across, they held a council. 3. If they lay waste these lands, I shall detain the envoys who are with me. 4. They were afraid of punishment, because they remembered what they had done. 5. They sought to keep Cæsar from lending aid to the Ubii. 6. When the Romans have the courage to cross the Rhine, we shall assemble. 7. He gave a kindly answer to whatsoever envoys came to him. 8. Whenever he punishes the Germans, he inspires fear in the Gauls. 9. While he was staying there, the cavalry was burning the enemy's buildings, cutting down their crops and breaking down their bridges.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Indirect Narration—Oratio Obliqua.

185. Direct Narration (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*) gives in their original form the words or thoughts of any person.

Indirect Narration (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*) gives (in dependence upon some verb of *stating, thinking, perceiving, ordering* or *asking*) the substance of the words or thoughts of another person, and even of the writer or speaker when quoting himself.

This indirect mode of reporting speech is more usual in Latin than the direct, and is much more common in that language than it is in English.

The rules for changing Direct into Indirect Narration are as follows:

A. Changes in Mood.[1]

186. **1. Principal Clauses.**

(*a*) Clauses containing a *statement* (assertive sentences) have their verb in the *infinitive* with subject accusative. (Section 14.)

(*b*) Clauses containing a *question* (interrogative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive.* (Section 35.)

i. Indirect deliberative questions (section 134, *d*) retain the subjunctive.

(*c*) Clauses containing a *command* or *request* (imperative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive.*

i. This use of the subjunctive is closely related to the substantival final clause (section 27), both being developments of the independent jussive subjunctive (section 134, *b*). It is thus sometimes difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish the reported command and the substantival final clause, especially after *nē* or when *ut* is omitted (section 28, vi.); as for instance in the sentences, **Nūntiī postulābant hōs sibi dēderent**: *The messengers demanded that they should surrender these men to them.* **Mīlitibus imperātum est nē hostēs aggrederentur**: *The soldiers were given orders that they should not attack the enemy.*

2. Subordinate Clauses.

All kinds of subordinate clauses (relative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.) are put in the *subjunctive* mood. (Section 175.)

1. In no case is the indicative retained.

B. Changes in Tense.

187. (*a*) Clauses put in the *infinitive* change as follows:

DIRECT NARRATION.		INDIRECT NARRATION.
Present Ind.	becomes	Present Infinitive.
Imperfect, Perfect or Pluperfect Ind.	"	Perfect "
Future Ind. / Present or Imperf. Subj.[1]	"	Future "
Future Perf. Ind. / Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj.[1]	"	Inf. in *ūrum fuisse.*

(*b*) Clauses put in the *subjunctive* as a rule observe the sequence of tenses (section 176) as follows:

DIRECT NARRATION.		INDIRECT NARRATION.	
		Primary Sequence.	*Secondary Sequence.*
Present Indic. or Subj.	becomes	Present Subj.	Imperfect Subj.
Future "	"	" "	" "
Imperfect " "	"	Imperfect "	" "
Perfect " "	"	Perfect "	Pluperfect "
Fut. Perf. "	"	" "	" "
Pluperfect " "	"	Pluperfect "	" "

Certain exceptions occur, however, in *indirect questions:*

The future indicative becomes (according to sequence) the present or imperfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (section 36).

The imperfect indicative becomes (according to sequence) the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive (section 36, fn. 1).

i. Of special importance is the use of the pluperfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct narration. The difficulty of this common use is due largely to the fact that the original future perfect is foreign to the English idiom (section 178, ii.). Thus, *If I find out, I shall bring back word:* **Sī cōgnōverō, renūntiābō**, would become, *He answered that if he found out, he should bring back word:* **Respondit sī cōgnōvisset, sē renūntiātūrum esse.** The pluperfect subjunctive in such cases means literally *should have*, not *had already.*

C. Changes in Pronouns.

188. When, as is generally the case,[2] the first and second per-

1. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

2. Of course where the matter quoted refers to the person reporting or the person to whom it is reported, Latin, like English, will use the first or second persons in indirect narration.

sons of the original words are changed in indirect narration to the third person:

Egō, nōs,	become	*sē* (or if emphatic in the nominative, *ipse, ipsī*).
Meus, noster,	"	*suus.*
tū, vōs,	"	*illē, illī* (or sometimes *is, eī*).
tuus, vester,	"	*illīus, illōrum.*
hīc, iste,	"	*ille* (or *is*).

D. Changes in Adverbs.

189. Adverbs which are relative to the time or place of the speaker are, as a rule, adapted to the time and place of the reporter. Thus *nunc, hodiē, hīc, hinc, herī* would become respectively *tum* or *tunc, illō diē, ibi, inde, prīdiē.*

190. The following real or apparent exceptions are found:

i. Clauses introduced by the coordinating relative, which are only apparently subordinate, are put in the accusative and infinitive.

ii. Because of the tendency in Latin to use the same construction after *quam* (*than*) as before it, the accusative and infinitive sometimes occurs in *quam* clauses instead of the subjunctive.

iii. For the indicative in parenthetic clauses in indirect narration see section 175, i.

iv. The hortative subjunctive (section 134, *a*) is usually changed into the infinitive of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

v. Rhetorical questions which are virtual denials are often put in the accusative and infinitive.

vi. Instead of the regular secondary sequence the more vivid[1] primary is often found after historical tenses; and sometimes also a passage may begin with secondary sequence and suddenly change to primary sequence.

vii. The pronoun *hīc* and the adverbs mentioned in section 189 are often retained unchanged in indirect narration.

viii. The regular rules for the use of *sē, ille* and *is* in indirect narration are not always rigidly followed, especially where no ambiguity arises. See particularly the use of *sē* and *suus* in sections 164 and 165.

191. The verb of *saying, thinking,* etc., on which the indirect narration depends, is not always expressed, being often sufficiently suggested by the context.

Further, where the indirect narration includes more than one variety of reported utterance (statements, commands, questions, requests) it is not Latin usage to change the verb introducing the various indirect clauses, as English often does.

1. More vivid because presenting more exactly the original tenses of the direct narration.

Ariovistus sends envoys to Cæsar saying that he wishes to treat with him about these matters . . . and asking him to appoint a day for an interview: **Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē hīs rēbus . . . agere cum eō: utī colloquiō diem cōnstitueret.**

192. In indirect narration conditional sentences assume the following forms:

SI quid habeō dō, *becomes*	**dīcit**	**sē, sī quid habeat, dare.**
	dīxit	**sē, sī quid habēret, dare.**
SI quid habēbam dabam, *becomes*	**dīcit**	**sē, sī quid habēret, dedisse.**
	dīxit	**sē, sī quid habēret, dedisse.**
SI quid habuī dedī, *becomes*	**dīcit**	**sē, sī quid habuerit, dedisse.**
	dīxit	**sē, sī quid habuisset, dedisse.**
SI quid habēbō dabō, *becomes*	**dīcit**	**sē, sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.**
	dīxit	**sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum esse.**
SI quid habeam dem, *becomes*	**dīcit**	**sē, sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.**
	dīxit	**sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum esse.**
SI quid habērem darem, *becomes*	**dīcit** / **dīxit**	**sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum fuisse (or esse).**
SI quid habuissem dedissem, *becomes*	**dīcit** / **dīxit**	**sē, sī quid habuisset, datūrum fuisse.**

193. The following examples illustrate the rules for changing from direct to indirect narration:

(1) *Direct.*—Your gift is pleasing and welcome; the hostages will be in the place you ask; the prisoners we shall not send back, because Hannibal, through whose agency the war was undertaken, you keep even now in command.

Mūnus vestrum grātum acceptumque est; obsidēs, quō locō rogātīs, erunt; captīvōs nōn remittēmus, quod Hannibalem, cūjus operā susceptum bellum est, etiam nunc cum imperiō habētis.

Indirect.—(This answer was given them:) that their gift was pleasing and welcome; the hostages would be in the place they asked; the prisoners they should not send back, because Hannibal, through whose agency the war had been undertaken, they kept even then in command.

(Hīs respōnsum est:) mūnus illōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūjus operā susceptum bellum esset, etiam nunc cum imperiō habērent.

(2) *Direct.*—All of you make your attack on the ship of Eumenes alone, against the rest be content merely to defend yourselves. You will easily accomplish this. I shall see that you know in which vessel the king is sailing; if you capture or slay him, you shall be well rewarded.

Omnēs in ūnam Eumenis rēgis **concurrite** nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis **habēte** vōs dēfendere. **Hōc** facile **cōnsequēminī.** Rēx autem in quā nāvī **vehātur, ut sciātis, ego faciam**; quem sī aut **cēperitis** aut **interfēceritis**, māgnō vōbīs praemiō **erit.**

Indirect.—(He gives instructions) that they are all to make their attack on the ship of Eumenes alone, and against the rest are to be content merely to defend themselves. They would easily accomplish that. He should see that they knew in which vessel the king was sailing; if they captured or slew him, they should be well rewarded.

(Praecipit) omnēs **ut** in ūnam Eumenis rēgis **concurrant** nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis **habeant sē** dēfendere. **Id illōs** facile **cōnsecūtūrōs.** Rēx autem in quā nāvī **veherētur, ut scīrent, sē factūrum**; quem sī aut **cēpissent** aut **interfēcissent**, māgnō **īs** praemiō **fore.**

(3) *Direct.*—We are not the aggressors in making war on the Roman people, but yet we do not refuse to fight in case we are attacked. If you desire our good-will, we can be useful friends to you; either assign us lands or permit us to hold those which we have acquired by our arms.

Nōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum **inferimus**, neque tamen **recūsāmus, sī lacessēmur**, quīn armīs **contendāmus.** **Sī nostram** grātiam **vultis, possumus** vōbīs ūtilēs esse **amīcī**; vel **nōbīs** agrōs **attribuite** vel **patiminī** eōs tenēre quōs armīs **possēdimus.**

Indirect.—(They said) they were not the aggressors in making war on the Roman people, but yet they did not refuse to fight in case they were attacked. If the Romans desired their good-will, they could be useful friends to them; let

(Dīxērunt) **sē** neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum **inferre**, neque tamen **recūsāre, sī lacessantur**, quīn armīs **contendant.** **Sī suam** grātiam **Rōmānī velint, posse** īs ūtilēs esse **amīcōs**; vel **sibi** agrōs **attribuant**, vel **pa-**

them either assign them lands, or permit them to hold those which they had acquired by their arms.

tiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs **possēderint.**

(4) *Direct.*—I can have no friendship with you, if you remain in Gaul; there are no lands vacant in Gaul; but if you wish, you may settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose envoys are with me, and are asking aid of me; I shall give this order to the Ubii.

Mihi nūlla vōbīscum amīcitia esse **potest**, sī in Galliā **remanēbitis**; neque **ūllīs** in Galliā **vacant agrī**; sed **licet**, sī **vultis**, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum **sunt** lēgātī apud **mē**, et ā **mē** auxilium **petunt**; hōc Ubiīs **imperābō.**

Indirect.—(Cæsar answered) that he could have no friendship with them, if they remained in Gaul; there were no lands vacant in Gaul; but if they wished, they might settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose envoys were now with him, and were asking aid of him; he should give this order to the Ubii.

(Cæsar respondit) **sibi nūllam cum his amīcitiam** esse **posse**, sī in Galliā **remanērent**; neque **ūllōs** in Galliā **vacāre agrōs**; sed **licēre**, sī **velint**, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum **sint** lēgātī apud **sē**, et ā **sē** auxilium **petant**; hōc **sē** Ubiīs **imperātūrum.**

(5) *Direct.*—Let them not provoke the enemy to battle, but if they are themselves attacked, let them hold their ground, until I myself come up.

Nē hostēs proeliō **lacessant**, et sī ipsī **lacessentur**, **sustineant**, quoad ipse **accesserō.**

Indirect.—(He sent men to tell them) not to provoke the enemy to battle, but if they were themselves attacked, they were to hold their ground, until he himself came up.

(Mittit quī nūntiārent) nē hostēs proeliō **lacesserent**, et sī ipsī **lacesserentur**, **sustinērent**, quoad ipse **accessisset.**

(6) *Direct.*—Surrender to me those who have made war on me and on Gaul.

Eōs, quī **mihi** Galliaeque bellum **intulērunt**, **mihi dēdite.**

The Rhine is the limit of the Roman people's authority. If you think it wrong for

Populī Rōmānī imperium **Rhēnus fīnit.** Sī tē invītō Germānōs in Galliam

the Germans to cross into Gaul against your wish, why do you claim that anything beyond the Rhine is under your sway or power?	trānsīre nōn aequum **existimās**, cūr **tuī** quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum **postulās**?
Indirect.—(Cæsar called on them) to surrender to him those who had made war on him and on Gaul.	(Caesar postulāvit) eōs, quī **sibi** Galliaeque bellum **intulissent, sibi dēderent.**
(They answered) that the Rhine was the limit of the Roman people's authority. If he thought it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against his wish, why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?	(Respondērunt:) Populī Rōmānī imperium **Rhēnum fīnīre**; sī **sē** invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum **existimāret**, cūr **suī** quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum **postulāret**?
(7) *Direct.*—Do no harm to the Trinobantes, Cassivellaunus.	**Nōlī, Cassivellaune,** Trinobantibus **nocēre.**
Indirect.—He orders Cassivellaunus to do no harm to the Trinobantes.	(Imperat **Cassivellaunō**) **nē** Trinobantibus **noceat.**

(Observe how the vocative may be turned in the indirect speech.)

EXERCISE 28.

A.

1. To these ambassadors he replied: "I will come now, if you are ready to follow." 2. They sent ambassadors to Cæsar saying that they were ready to open the gates they had closed the day before. 3. He told them not to forget the former valor of the Helvetians, nor the wrongs done by them to the Roman people. 4. "I," answered he, "have spared the citizens, you the Gauls." 5. He began to urge them not to set out; Cæsar did not dare to leave them in Gaul; but if they crossed over to Britain, he would kill them all. 6. "Leap down," he said, "fellow-soldiers, unless you wish to abandon the eagle to the enemy. Let us not incur such disgrace. I at any rate will do my duty." 7. They replied that if these proceedings were reported to Ariovistus, they did not doubt that he would inflict the severest punishment on all the

hostages who were in his power. 8. What were they to do? he asked; it was impossible to defend the camp any longer, and Cæsar would have been annoyed if they had set out without his orders. 9. In his consulship (he said) the Germans had most eagerly sought the friendship of Rome. Why should anyone imagine that they would forsake their allegiance? 10. Would they have sent Commius back, he asked, if he had not led his army across?

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 19-21.*)

1. He pointed out that if the cavalry wandered too extensively, the enemy would rush out from the woods and seize them. 2. "We shall send you all the corn we have," they answered Cæsar. "Why are you setting out with the legions? Do not make an attack on our town." 3. He said that this young man would have had supreme power if he had not been slain by Cassivellaunus. 4. "Let us cross the river," they answered. "Who can harm us if we are able to conceal ourselves in the marshes?" 5. The Trinobantes sent envoys to Cæsar, saying that they would surrender to him all the hostages he demanded and begging him not to suffer the soldiers to lay waste their lands. 6. They feared that if Cæsar allowed the legions to leave the line of march, the enemy would seize many of the soldiers. 7. They said they were accustomed to assemble in these towns, whenever the enemy made a raid.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20-22.*)

1. He said that this had happened very opportunely; for if he had set out for Britain, he would not have found suitable harbors. 2. "What was I to do?" he asked. "Was I to trust myself to barbarians?" 3. He ordered him to explore whatever islands he visited and bring him back word of the size of their harbors. 4. He was aware that Commius, who had been made king there, had discovered his design and would report it to the Atrebates. 5. "Do not land from the vessel," he urged Volusenus. "We have done all that Cæsar ordered. Let us return to Gaul." 6. "How many legions," he asked, "were sufficient last year to make war on Britain?" 7. Envoys came from Britain to Cæsar, saying that they wished to attach themselves to his alliance, promising to be faithful to the Roman people and not to furnish aid to the Gauls, and asking him to visit the island at his first opportunity.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Different Forms of the Noun Clause.

194. A noun (or substantive) clause is one that takes the place and discharges the functions of a substantive, whether as *subject* or *object* of a verb or equivalent phrase, or as an *appositive*[1] to some other word in the sentence.

N.B.—The accusative and infinitive construction is here treated as a noun clause because it represents the English noun sentence introduced by the conjunction *that*. Similarly in substantival clauses of result, and in clauses with *quīn* and *quōminus*, the adverbial notion of result or purpose has become so weakened that they are properly treated as noun clauses like their English equivalents.

1. Clauses, like infinitive phrases, are always regarded as neuter.

195. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, many so-called impersonal verbs, and many expressions composed of a neuter adjective and *est*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by the accusative and infinitive.

(*a*) Subject.—*It is not right that the Germans should cross the Rhine:* **Nōn aequum est Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīre.**

(*b*) Object.—*They thought they possessed limited territories:* **Angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*This report was brought to Cæsar, that they were attempting to march through our province:* **Caesarī id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī.**

196. After verbs of *ordering*, *asking*, *determining*, and verbs of *fearing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. This subjunctive is akin to the subjunctive of purpose, and like it is in its origin the subjunctive expressing will or wish. (See section 186, 1, *c*. i.)

(*a*) Subject.—*The soldiers have been given orders that they are to attack the enemy:* **Mīlitibus imperātum est ut hostēs aggrediantur.**

(*b*) Object.—*I fear that I may be deserted by all:* **Vereor nē ab omnibus dēserar.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*Their aim is that they may recover their liberty:* **Id agunt ut lībertātem recipiant.**

---

1. A noun clause is occasionally used as a restrictive appositive to an accusative of anticipation; as, *You know Marcellus, how slow he is:* **Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit.** *They feared that supplies could not be brought in:* **Rem frumentariam ut supportari posset timent.**

197. After verbs of *happening* and *causing*,[1] English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* and the subjunctive, which is a weakened subjunctive of result.[2]

(*a*) Subject.—*It happened that there was a full moon:* **Accĭdit ut essĕt plēna lūna.**

(*b*) Object.—*He brought it about that supplies could be conveyed without danger:* **Commeātūs ut sine perīculō portārī possent, efficiēbat.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*The day had this result, that a very great number of the enemy were wounded:* **Diēs hunc habuit ēventum ut māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur.**

198. English noun clauses with *that* after verbs expressing *emotion*, and clauses with *that = the fact that*, are expressed by clauses with *quod* and either the indicative, or the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration.

(*a*) Subject.—*There was also the fact that he had stated this in the assembly of the Æduī:* **Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Aeduōrum haec dīxerat.**

(*b*) Object.—*He complains that he has been abandoned:* **Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.**[3]

(*c*) Appositive.—*A most fortunate thing happened, that the next day the Germans came into the camp:* **Opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē Germānī in castra vēnērunt.**

(*d*) Adverbial Accusative.—*As to the fact that you threaten me you will not disregard the wrongs of the Æduī, no one has contended with me, except to his own destruction:* **Quod mihi dēnūntiās tē Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā pernīciē contendit.**

199. After verbs of *asking, learning, knowing, telling*, etc., English noun clauses introduced by an interrogative are expressed by an interrogative clause with the subjunctive of indirect question.

(*a*) Subject.—*It cannot be determined with the eyes in which direction it flows:* **Oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn potest.**

(*b*) Object.—*He found out what was being done:* **Cōgnōvit quid gererētur.**

1. Substantive clauses of result with *ut* are also found as subjects of such verbs and phrases as *sequitur, restat, relinquitur, reliquum est, jus est, mos est, consuetudo est.*

2. The substantive notion became so much more prominent than the notion of result that this construction came to be used in cases where not even the faintest trace of result can be discerned.

3. Here, as often, the substantival and causal notions are combined.

(*c*) Appositive.—*This is the real question, whether he has returned:* **Illud quaeritur num redierit.**

200. The same verb may have more than one construction, the difference of construction in most cases representing a difference of meaning.[1]

(*a*) *They determine that these should leave the town:* **Cōnstituunt ut hī oppidō excēdant.**

They determine that it is best to return: **Cōnstituunt optimum esse revertī.**

He determined what tribute Britain should pay: **Quid vectīgālis Britannia penderet, cōnstituit.**

(*b*) *Word was brought that they were not to attack the enemy:* **Nūntiātum est nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent.** (Compare section 195, *c*.)

(*c*) *There was also the fact that they fought in small groups:* **Accēdēbat hūc ut rārī proeliārentur.** (Compare section 198, *a*.)

N.B.—It is important to distinguish carefully (*a*) between substantival clauses with *that* and the purely adverbial clauses of purpose and result also introduced by *that*, and (*b*) between substantival interrogative clauses and relative clauses with omitted antecedent (section 39, v.).

EXERCISE 29.

A.

1. It is best that we should announce to the soldiers that they are not to provoke the enemy to battle. 2. They made the complaint that the enemy were laying waste their lands. 3. The result was that it was quickly ascertained what tribes inhabited the island. 4. There was a danger that it would be difficult to determine what should be done. 5. There was added the fact that he had stated that Cæsar had conferred the chief power upon him. 6. It happened that some of the soldiers were intercepted by the sudden approach of the cavalry. 7. It was reported that Cæsar had given orders to the soldiers to storm the enemy's camp. 8. By means of messengers he informs Cæsar what he thinks should be done. 9. He answered that he did not know why the soldiers had received orders that they were to attack the town. 10. There

1. Observe that the clause which follows verbs of *determining, announcing, telling*, etc., will be in the infinitive or subjunctive, according to the rules of indirect narration (section 186, *a*).

is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful. 11. He was of the opinion that it would be dangerous to the province that the enemy should become accustomed to cross the Rhine. 12. This report had been brought, that the Germans had betaken themselves to the woods.

B. (*Cæsar Bk. V. 22, 23.*)

1. There was added the fact that some ships had been driven back. 2. This report had been brought to Cassivellaunus that Cæsar had determined to lead his forces back to the mainland. 3. When he had determined what to do, he announced that they were to wait for the vessels. 4. There is danger that Cæsar will determine that all the legions shall winter in Gaul. 5. It happened that the ships in which he had ordered that the enemy should be taken back had been lost in the storm. 6. Cæsar complained that they had not paid the tribute. 7. He announced that the best (*optimus*) thing was for the envoys to fritter away the rest of the summer. 8. The result was (*quō factum est*) that Cæsar was not aware how many losses had been sustained. 9. As to the fact that you announce that the equinox is at hand, I am aware that the army must be taken back at one trip.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 23-26.*)

1. It happened that he perceived that some were in distress. 2. He prayed the gods that aid might be sent him. 3. Cæsar had warned them that they were not to land from the ship. 4. He warned the soldiers that the country was perfectly familiar to the enemy but unknown to them. 5. There is added the fact that he perceived this would be of great service to him. 6. They had learned what Cæsar had pointed out should be done. 7. He complained that the men were doing their work too slowly. 8. This has been determined, that the lieutenants shall point out to the soldiers what Cæsar wishes done. 9. The science of warfare demands that all should do their duty.

CHAPTER XXX.

Continuous Narrative Prose.

201. Passages of continuous narrative set for translation into Latin prose may conveniently be arranged in three divisions of increasing complexity: *first*, those passages in which little more is required than in the detached sentences heretofore given for translation, namely proper choice of words, correct inflection and observance of the rules of Latin syntax; *second*, those passages where, in addition, the phraseology requires alteration, either to adapt the passage to Latin idiom or to avoid difficulties arising from a limited vocabulary; and *third*, those passages in which some alteration is necessary or desirable not merely in phraseology but also in the structure or relation of sentences.

The three following sections discuss the chief points to be observed in each of these divisions.

Connection of Thought.

202. Even in the simplest kind of narrative passage it will not do to treat the component sentences as so many independent units. Latin differs very markedly from English in regard to the connection of sentences. If a modern book or newspaper be compared with such an author as Cæsar, it will be found that in narrative English it is the exception rather than the rule to give formal expression to the connection of thought, while in narrative Latin the reverse holds true.

Hence the general rule that at the beginning of each new sentence care should be taken to make plain the connection in thought with the preceding words.

(*a*) The usual means of expressing the connection between sentences are as follows:

i. Particles such as *atque, and moreover; neque, and not; at, but; autem, however; vērō, but indeed; itaque, therefore; nam* or *enim, for.*

ii. Pronouns, especially the coordinating relative *quī* (section 172) and the demonstratives *hīc, is, ille, ipse* and *īdem* (sections 158-163).

iii. Words or phrases whose meaning suggests a reference to the preceding context, such as *interim, meanwhile; ita, in this way; tum, thereupon; eō, to that place; posterō diē, the next day; eādem dē causā, for the same reason; accēdit quod* or *ut, besides this.*

(*b*) Where the scene shifts and a new actor comes upon the stage, Latin is generally careful to mark the change of subject *early* in the sentence. If the new subject has been mentioned in the preceding sentence, *quī*, *hīc*, *is* or (for emphatic contrast), *ille* are generally used; if it has not been mentioned, a substantive is used, as, for instance, *Cæsar*, *hostēs* or *nostrī*. In the latter case very often none of the connecting links mentioned above is used; apparently the contrast afforded by the change of subject is in such cases felt to be a sufficient mark of connection.

On the other hand, where there is no change, the subject is seldom indicated in Latin except by the personal ending of the main verb of the new sentence.

(*c*) It may be noticed here that Latin prefers as a connective *neque* (or *nec*) to *et* followed by *nōn*; and similarly *nec quisquam*, *nec ūllus*, *nec umquam* are preferred to *et nēmō*, *et nūllus*, *et numquam*.

Phraseology.

203. Before an English sentence can be turned into idiomatic Latin, it often requires remodelling and adaptation (in whole or part) because of differences in the form of expression preferred by each language. In our own language, as we know, the same thought may be expressed in many different ways, and of these some are sure to be more, some less, like the form of expression a Roman would choose. So it often happens that when at first it would seem impossible to turn some English sentence into Latin because it contains some words for which the student knows no Latin equivalent, the whole difficulty is easily solved by expressing the thought of the sentence in some other way. But again, even when the student does know a Latin equivalent for each *individual word* in an English sentence, he may yet fail to get a tolerable rendering, for the reason that Latin may put the *whole thought* into a form quite unlike the English.

To a certain extent differences of phraseology between Latin and English are matters of detail that the most complete vocabulary could not fully treat, but certain general rules may be given which have a very wide application. These rules are really illustrations of one great principle: that the genius of the Latin language is above all things *direct*, *definite* and *concrete*, like the Roman character itself, straightforward, business-like, practical and unimaginative.

Hence the general rule for narrative prose, first to see clearly what is the exact meaning of the English phrase, and then to express that meaning in the simplest and most direct manner. Some important special applications of this rule are as follows:

(*a*) *Avoid metaphorical or picturesque expressions.* Very little modern English prose is as simple and direct as Cæsar's style; much even of our everyday language is in fact highly metaphorical. In narrative prose, the best plan is to avoid figurative language altogether; translate the thoughts and not the words. So, for example:

He left no stone unturned: **Nihil praetermisit.**

He turned a deaf ear to this advice: **Quod cōnsilium nōn probāvit.**

He sacrificed friendship on the altar of patriotism: **Amīcitiam rei pūblicae posthabuit.**

Where figurative language is found in Latin (as in Cicero's oratory and Livy's semi-poetical prose) we constantly find either that a simile is preferred to the metaphor or that the metaphor is quite different from the English one, and even then is apt to be toned down by *tamquam, quasi, quīdam*, etc.

(*b*) *Avoid abstract forms of expression.* Latin has fewer abstract words than English, and those it does possess it uses much more sparingly than we do, many of them being found only in philosophical writings. The number of abstract words which can safely be ventured upon in narrative prose is very limited, such as *amīcitia, auctōritās, cēleritās, māgnitūdō, studium.* Almost invariably the English abstract expression should be turned by a concrete Latin phrase; as,

On the conclusion of this war: **Hōc bellō cōnfectō.**

On the receipt of this information: **Quod cum nūntiātum esset.**

They promised submission to his authority: **Ea quae imperāsset sē factūrōs pollicitī sunt.**

In Cæsar's consulship: **Caesare cōnsule.**

His measures: **Ea quae faciēbat.**

In pursuance of his annual custom: **Ut quotannis cōnsuēverat.**

So the indirect question furnishes an equivalent for many abstract words (see section 37) and the vague word *rēs* often affords a convenient translation for various words such as *circumstances, situations, measures*, etc.

Similarly Latin is very deficient in class names which express the doer of an action, such as *fugitive, defender, combatant, discoverer, believer.* These can generally be expressed by the verb; *e.g., fugientēs* or *eī quī fugiēbant.*

(*c*) *Avoid the personification of inanimate things or of qualities.* Latin seldom represents anything but a living thing as the doer of some action, while English so constantly makes inanimate objects

or abstract nouns the subject of a verb of action that we scarcely notice the personification.

Cæsar's sudden approach frightened them into submission: **Caesaris repentīnō adventū commōtī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mittunt.**

The darkness of the night hid us from the enemy: **Propter tenebrās, hostēs nostrōs nōn cōnspicātī sunt.**

Speed alone will save us: **Ūna est in celeritāte posita salūs.**

His dying words: **Ējus morientis verba.**

(*d*) *The chief weight of the sentence falls in Latin upon the verb,* whereas in English there is a tendency to make the noun the significant word. So for English phrases consisting of some unemphatic verb, such as *make, have, take, do,* etc., followed by a verbal noun which is the really significant word, Latin often has a verb which contains the meaning of the English noun within itself; as,

He made reply to me: **Mihi respondit.**

He has no hesitation: **Nōn dubitat.**

He took his departure: **Discessit.**

This verb is often accompanied by a cognate accusative (see section 72) in the form of a neuter pronoun or adjective; as,

They can do no harm to us: **Nihil nōbīs nocēre possunt.**

He made many promises: **Multa pollicitus est.**

They make the same attempt: **Idem cōnantur.**

This idiom is especially noticeable in the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs (section 56); as,

Mention has been made of him: **Dē illō dictum est.**

There must be no delay: **Nōn cunctandum est.**

(*e*) *The active voice is preferred to the passive* in the leading verbs in narrative prose, because of the desire to state exactly and naturally what takes place. But as Latin prefers to keep the same subject throughout a period, the verbs in the subordinate clauses and in participial phrases will often be passive while the main verb is, according to rule, in the active voice. Two important and frequent examples of the use of the passive are the ablative absolute construction, and the impersonal passive construction.

(*f*) *The precise meaning of both English and Latin words must be closely watched.* It will seldom happen that a word in one language corresponds exactly in all its uses to any one word in the other.

i. For instance, in English very many transitive verbs may be used intransitively also, whereas in Latin this much less frequently occurs. In such cases the intransitive use is expressed sometimes by the passive voice, sometimes by the active with the reflexive pronoun, and sometimes by a quite different verb; as,

move (transitive), **movēre**;	(intransitive), **movērī.**
surrender (transitive), **dēdere**;	(intransitive), **sē dēdere.**
increase (transitive), **augēre**;	(intransitive), **crēscere** or **augērī.**

ii. Again, many English words have widely different meanings, according to the context; as,

weight (burden), **onus**; (influence), **auctōritās.**
Rome (the city), **Rōma**; (the nation), **populus Rōmānus.**
field (piece of land) **ager**; (battle), **aciēs** or **proelium.**
ask (make a request), **petō**; (put a question), **quaerō.**
command (give an order), **imperō**; (have authority over), **praesum.**

iii. An entirely different source of mistakes is the fact that many English words derived from Latin originals have in the course of time taken on a very different meaning. For instance:

obtineō = *hold, possess;*	*obtain* = **cōnsequor, adipiscor.**
occupō = *seize;*	*occupy* = **obtineō.**
officium = *duty;*	*office* = **magistrātus.**
recipiō = *recover, regain;*	*receive* = **accipiō.**
sēcūrus = *free from anxiety;*	*secure* = **tūtus.**

(*g*) *Omit unnecessary and merely ornamental epithets.* Some English writers are fond of heightening the effect by adding words or phrases that may adorn the style, but add nothing to the meaning. These may safely be omitted; as, *The enemy was awaiting the approach of our (gallant) leader. They aimed their weapons particularly at the horses (of the enemy's cavalry).*

(*h*) Here also it may be in place to call attention again to the precision shown in the Latin use of the tenses, especially i. in subordinate clauses referring to an action prior to that of the main verb (sections 178, ii. and 187, *b*, i.); ii. in the tenses of the participle (section 41); iii. after verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, etc. (section 17). In one important respect only is Latin less exact than English, namely, in the frequent use of primary sequence after secondary tenses (section 190, vi.).

Structure.

204. It may happen, however, that all the preceding rules about syntax, connection and phraseology have been carefully observed, and yet that the result is far from being good Latin prose. For it may be that the English passage is constructed in a way that is very unlike Latin usage.

Modern English narrative is apt to consist of a series of detached sentences, each comparatively simple in its structure, generally short, and containing very few verbs. Classical Latin narrative is more apt to group several of these crisp sentences into a longer and more complex sentence, making the verb which expresses the main idea the principal verb, and putting the others in various subordinate relations.

Again, even when English does have a long complex sentence, it is more loosely constructed than the Latin period (section 9). In the Latin period (as in the Latin short sentence) the main thought is, as a rule, not complete until the final words are given; the period is intended to be grasped as a whole; grammatically it may appear very involved, but the thoughts are marshalled in a perfectly logical order. While in the English long sentence (as often in the short sentence also) we seldom find the main thought left in suspense until the very end of the sentence; the final words are not the emphatic ones; the thought is intended to be grasped in detail.

Contrast the following passages:

Our men then marched back to camp. Not a man had been killed, and very few wounded. Yet they had expected a formidable campaign, for the enemy numbered four hundred and thirty thousand men. **Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trīgintā mīllium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.**

In the elementary stages of the writing of continuous Latin prose, it is not necessary to study very closely the formation of the Latin period, which, after all, is by no means invariably employed by even the most careful Latin prose authors; the following suggestions, however, will be found of importance for even the beginner.

(*a*) Arrange the various clauses of a sentence in the logical order of thought, which in narrative commonly means the order of time. Put all clauses or phrases expressing attendant circumstances before the main verb, and put last the clause on which the emphasis falls. This will generally be the principal clause, but see section 6, ii.

(*b*) Reduce the number of principal verbs by grouping short independent sentences that relate to a common topic into a complex sentence.

(*c*) Within this complex sentence or period, avoid as far as possible changes of subject. The subject of the main verb should, if expressed at all (section 202, *b*), appear early in the sentence and be made, where possible, the subject of the dependent clauses also.

(*d*) Latin is very fond of inserting a subordinate clause in the middle of the clause on which it depends, but the loosely joined parenthesis should be carefully avoided.

(*e*) Even where there is no need for grouping short sentences into a period, it may often be convenient to readjust some of the

clauses or phrases in the passage for translation, shifting them from one part of the sentence to another or even transferring them to the preceding or the following sentence. For instance, in the passage: *On receiving this news he led his forces against the enemy. His march, though rapid, was so conducted as to save the troops from all fatigue,* the translation is simplified by transferring the idea of *marching rapidly* to the preceding clause: **Quae cum audivisset, cōpiās adversus hostēs quam celerrimē dūxit; ita tamen ut mīlitēs labōre et itinere nōn dēfatīgātī sint.** Similarly, instead of representing one action as the *result* of some preceding action it may be more convenient to represent the latter as the *cause* of the former.

205. Some miscellaneous differences of idiom also deserve notice.

(*a*) English often expresses emphasis by means of the verb *to be*, generally followed by the relative pronoun or adverb; as, *It was I who did it. Piso was the first to reach the camp.* Latin has nothing corresponding to this, but expresses emphasis by other means; as, **Ego fēcī. Prīmus ad castra pervēnit Pīsō.**

(*b*) Latin constantly tends to look upon an action as proceeding *from* a certain source or quarter, where in English it is considered as happening *in* that quarter; as, *He fought on horseback:* **Ex equō pūgnābat.** *They attack our troops on both flanks:* **Nostrōs ab utrōque latere aggrediuntur.** (See also section 128, v.)

(*c*) In Latin, demonstrative and relative pronouns (especially *hīc*) referring to some previous noun or the substance of a previous clause are put in agreement with a noun, instead of in the objective genitive depending on it. English has frequently this same condensed form of expression; as, *Through fear of this circumstance* (or *through this fear*): **Hōc metū** (= *Hūjus reī metū*).

(*d*) In such expressions as *The shrewd Fabius, Your excellent father, So brave a man as you,* Latin uses an appositive with the superlative in agreement; as, **Fabius callidissimus imperātor, Pater tuus vir optimus, Tū vir fortissimus.** When, however, such epithets have no bearing on the context they should be omitted altogether (see section 203, *g*).

(*e*) *This great* is regularly in Latin **hīc tantus** not **hīc māgnus.**

(*f*) Latin frequently uses **et** or **-que** to join adjectives, where English omits the connective; so especially with *multī*; as, *Many great contests:* **Multae et māgnae contentiōnēs.**

(*g*) The Latin adjective or participle frequently has the value of a noun; as, **nostrī**, *our men;* **omnia sua**, *all their property;* **sapientēs**, *wise men, philosophers;* **fugientēs**, *the retreating force.*

EXERCISE 30.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1–3.*)

In the following year a large number of Gauls crossed the Rhine for the purpose of harassing the Ubii and keeping them from tilling their lands. They thought that by this means they would make the Ubii tributary to them, and that the men and boys whom they captured in war they would sell at a high price to the Suebi. These latter were desirous of making the Ubii as weak as possible, because they thought it disgraceful to permit any tribe to become accustomed to dwell not far from their territories, and believed that if the Ubii were driven out, the Tencteri, who adjoined them on the other side, would not venture to remain. The Suebi have large experience in war; they are able to endure any toil, and they use skins for (*pro*) clothing. From childhood they are not allowed to do anything contrary to custom, and to be refined is considered unmanly. On account of (*propter*) the character of their food and their daily training under arms they are men of immense strength, and are said to be the most warlike of all the Germans.

EXERCISE 31.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 4, 5.*)

The traders were compelled against their will to halt and state what they had learned in the districts through which they had been wandering. At first (*primo*) they pretended to have heard nothing. At last they informed Cæsar that the Menapii whom he had driven out of Germany had returned secretly to their villages, that a large part of their cavalry had crossed the Rhine and were putting to death those who dwelt on this side the river. Knowing the fickleness of the Gauls, and fearing they would be anxious for a change, he thought he ought to cross the Rhine and, after crushing the Menapii, seize their boats. Before he could reach the river, however, they had been informed of his approach, and had placed guards along the banks. Being unable to advance, he halted for three days, in order to discover what plans the Gauls were forming.

EXERCISE 32.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 6–8.*)

Hearing that the Germans, after seizing the lands of others, had begun to wander far and wide, and were but a few days' march from him, he determined to set out for the army. The leading men of the Suebi, who were with him, suspecting what he was going to do, asked to be allowed to remain in Gaul. To these Cæsar made answer as follows: "I have set out unwillingly earlier than I am accustomed, in order that the Suebi and their dependants may not begin a more serious war than I wish to meet. I shall not allow the Suebi to drive out the friends of the Roman people from their homes, and I shall assign no lands to those who have invited the Germans to make war upon the Treveri. No one can be more useful to you than the Romans; some think that we are no match for the Germans, but there is no one whom we are not ready to resist. If you ask aid from us, we shall protect your territories; if you should wish to settle in Gaul, we should give you lands. But it is not right for those who have been the aggressors in doing wrong, to complain and beg for mercy. This was not the custom of your ancestors."

EXERCISE 33.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 9–11.*)

When these ambassadors returned to Cæsar they said they had reported his demands to their friends and that the next day the leading men of the tribes which inhabited the Vosges range would assemble to discuss these matters. Meanwhile, they said, envoys were being sent to beg the Helvetians not to cause delay, but to accept these terms, and that if he should give them an opportunity of returning beyond the Rhine they would keep the Sequani from fighting.

Thinking that he ought to wait until all his army should assemble, Cæsar said that he would not move his camp that day, but that on the day following they must all meet (*congredior*) him four miles from the camp, as had been agreed. Having arranged this matter, he announced to the officers whom he was sending in advance for the purpose of foraging, that the Helvetians had been advancing for several days, and were drawing near the camp; and that he had given a pledge to the senate not to harass their line of march,

EXERCISE 34.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-11.*)

The Ubii had been overpowered by the Treveri three days before in a cavalry engagement, and after many had been slain, the rest had betaken themselves to the islands which are formed by the Rhine and Meuse, not far from the sea, and inhabited by many savage tribes. Impelled by their lack of provisions, these send ambassadors to Cæsar, to beg him not to suffer any state to make war on those who had sought the good-will and friendship of the Roman people. Cæsar, on learning of this, thought that he ought not to wait for the remaining portion of his army, which was too far distant, and set out as early as possible for the sea. When he drew near the islands, he was informed by those who were preceding his column, that the Gauls had moved their camp nearer the river, and with their cavalry, who are accustomed to leap down from their horses and fight on foot, had crossed the Meuse for the purpose of securing forage and plunder.

EXERCISE 35.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-11.*)

Although (*etsi*) he had not yet discovered their plans, yet, knowing their custom, he suspected that this would happen, namely, that they would invite the Suebi to seize all the towns before he could gather supplies and post garrisons. He was also afraid of the fickleness of the Treveri, who are more unstable than the other Gauls, and thought he ought not to give them time for forming new plans. So he decided to summon all the leading men and the senate to him, and pretended to have heard that no one was willing to remain in the lands which he had assigned them. When he asked what was their reason for complaining, or why (*cur*) they repented their oath, they made no answer. At last some began to beg for mercy and said that they would conceal nothing; they had thought that if they drove out the Romans, they would obtain from the Suebi whatever they asked for. Cæsar thought he could put no confidence in them, and determined not to give them permission to return to their own districts, even if they gave a pledge that they would not be the slaves of untrustworthy rumors. But

in order to calm and reassure their hearts, he announced that it seemed best for them to remain with him for some days; after he had inquired into the outrages of the Suebi, they might depart.

EXERCISE 36.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12, 13.*)

After listening to the ambassadors, he said that they could not obtain their request for a truce until all their leading men came to him to clear themselves; that they had without provocation surrounded and put to death several of our men the day before, among them the brother of Piso the Aquitanian. Cæsar was aware that the Gauls had deceived him, and that their forces were being increased, and, knowing their treachery, he thought he ought to detain the envoys as long as he could. He gave orders next day that all the cavalry be led out of the camp, and that after the battle had begun, the rest of the forces should bring aid, if they perceived that our men were being thrown into confusion. The enemy did not wait for an attack to be made; putting spurs to their horses, they did not cease from their flight until they caught sight of the Meuse. More than eight hundred were slain in this battle, and Cæsar gained such (*tantus*) prestige that the Germans thought it would be the height of madness to make war on those who had so (*tam*) quickly put to flight five thousand Gauls.

EXERCISE 37.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 14–16.*)

As their lands had been laid waste by the Suebi, the Ubii were easily induced to leave home with their women and children. After holding a council, they began to beg the Gauls to give them lands; if they were prevented from lending aid, let them merely give them permission to cross. As the Gauls had given hostages to Cæsar, they did not venture to do so without Cæsar's consent. Besides which they were aware that it was better to be safe in the friendship of the Roman people than to be afraid of the treachery of the Germans. Accordingly (*itaque*) they quickly sent messengers to Cæsar to beg him to lead his forces against the people across the Rhine, and defend them from the cruel vengeance of the Ubii.

Cæsar, for these reasons, thought he ought to join battle before the Ubii could join the forces of Ariovistus. The enemy, alarmed at his approach, speedily took up arms and began to offer resistance; but when they saw they could not prevent our men bursting into their camp, they despaired of safety and threw away their arms. Four hundred of them rushing out of the camp sought safety in flight. These reached the Rhine in safety, but being unable to cross on account of (*propter*) the force of the current, they were killed to a man by our cavalry. The rest surrendered to Cæsar. On that day Cæsar captured (*capio*) thirty-eight military standards, and a large amount of baggage. On hearing of the battle the most distant tribes of Germany sent envoys to Cæsar to promise that they would not make war on the Roman people.

EXERCISE 38.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 18, 19.*)

On discovering that the bridge had been finished and that the army had begun to be led across, the Suebi removed from their towns and burned all their dwellings. All who could not bear arms were ordered according to their custom to hide in the woods. Meanwhile they sent out messengers to several states telling them to prepare for flight and to remove all their possessions into the midst of their territories. Cæsar had decided to spend eighteen days in the districts in which the enemy had collected, in order that he might cut down the crops and fight a decisive battle with the Germans, but after he learned that the garrison which he had left at the bridge was being hard pressed, he left their territories within ten days after he had brought his army across. He broke down the bridge and withdrew to the country of the Treveri. Here he learned that the Suebi had returned to their villages, had set free the hostages which were being brought to him, and were taking vengeance on the states which had sought peace from the Romans; and that these were awaiting the assistance he had promised.

EXERCISE 39.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20, 21.*)

Before setting out himself for Britain, Cæsar had the previous winter sent in advance Caius Volusenus, whom he considered to

be (a man) of great worth and discretion; he had given him instructions to get acquainted with the country, as far as he could, and find out what states would ally themselves with the Roman people. Volusenus had not ventured to approach the island that year, as he understood that the winters are early in that region and that there are no suitable harbors; he had, however, discovered from certain (*quidam*) traders what was the character of the inhabitants and from what place was the shortest passage. As soon as (*ubi*) the time of year was suitable he set out, and landing from his ship, examined the whole sea-coast. He visited several states and made liberal promises if the Britons would give hostages to Cæsar and promise not to furnish aid to our enemies; he announced that a large number of ships of war had been ordered to assemble, and that, if opportunity offered, Cæsar would set out for Britain that summer. On discovering that Cæsar was building a fleet and was going to visit the island, several traders who had been of great assistance to us in the former wars, came to him and urged him not to venture on making the attempt, because he could not conquer the island, a large part of which was inhabited by barbarians; these had great experience in war, and would not obey the authority of anyone. Although Cæsar knew that these traders were loyal to him, he yet did not think highly of their opinion, and gave orders that the forces should set out as quickly as possible.

EXERCISE 40.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12–21.*)

When he had formed this plan, Cæsar sent out messengers to all the states that had promised him vessels, to announce that, as (*cum*) he had accomplished everything for which he had crossed the Rhine, he was going to visit Britain, and would spend the rest of the summer in that island; accordingly they were to assemble with all their vessels as soon as possible, for the purpose of making war. As soon as this plan was communicated to Comnius, the Atrebatian, who was sovereign over the states which Cæsar had conquered in the war with the Veneti, he decided that he ought for several reasons to go to Cæsar in order to urge him not to cross over until he surveyed the whole situation. He thought that even if Cæsar returned in safety to Gaul, he would gain no prestige by

this war, and would inspire fear in no one; that the Roman people had no good reason for demanding supreme power in Britain, while the Britons resist most valiantly those who make war on them; and that if Cæsar should be hard pressed by the Britons, he himself would have reason to fear for his own safety. Cæsar, however, answered that if anyone was alarmed by the enemy's renown in war, and did not dare to make the attempt, but wished to remain in Gaul, he would grant him permission, but that on his return he would, according to his custom, punish all who urged the leading men of Gaul not to take part in the war.

EXERCISE 41.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12–21.*)

After the flight of the Morini, Cæsar determined that he ought not to wait for the bridge to be finished, but should take his men over in boats. He had no fears for the cavalry who were pursuing the enemy, although they had not yet returned, as he had ordered them to stay for a few days in the country of the Morini to secure forage. Crossing the river with the rest of his army, he sent Labienus in advance to find out what were the numbers of the enemy and in what direction they had retired. The enemy, on learning of Cæsar's advance, were rejoicing that he was giving them an opportunity of freeing themselves. They thought that if they could surround our column and prevent our men from returning to Gaul, they should be safe for the future, and no one would venture to lead his forces against them. Accordingly under the pretext of surrendering, their leading men and elders came in large numbers to Cæsar to promise to accept his terms and to beg him not to make war on them. Such was the reputation of his army, they said, that they considered it the height of folly to resist the Romans, and for this reason they sought peace and friendship. Cæsar thought that a most fortunate thing had happened, and answered them in kindly terms, promising to make peace with them, if they should surrender to him the men who, in the war with the Veneti which he had finished a short time before, had treacherously put to death the king of the Aquitanians. They promised to bring them within a few days, and urged him to visit their villages. The next day Cæsar setting out in the morning

reached the confluence of two rivers. Suddenly the Germans rushed out of the woods, and confronted our men. Before Cæsar could draw up the triple line of battle, the enemy made their attack. Several of our men, panic-stricken by the confusion, threw themselves into the river; the rest Cæsar ordered to put the baggage in one place, and quickly taking their arms to join battle.

EXERCISE 42.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 22, 23.*)

Having pointed out what he thought should be done in order to settle these affairs, Cæsar gave two legions to Cotta to lead against the Morini, who had not done what they had promised; the remaining legion, with all the cavalry, was ordered to occupy the harbors. While he was carrying out these measures, the Morini, thinking it by no means a favorable time for waging war, sent ambassadors to Cæsar. He demanded of the envoys eighty men-of-war and seven transports, and ordered a large number of hostages to be brought to him. When the vessels had been collected, he warned the lieutenants to wait until they got a suitable wind, and meanwhile to anchor their vessels in the farther harbor. After waiting eight days, on the ninth he ordered the signal to be given and the anchors raised. The cavalry, to whom the transports had been assigned, were prevented by the wind from embarking; the rest of the forces advanced about eighteen miles, and having found an unobstructed and level shore, waited at anchor for the cavalry to follow. When all the vessels had assembled, and the troops had been ordered to land, Cæsar learned that the higher ground and all the hills were held by the enemy.

EXERCISE 43.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 24-26.*)

Terrified by the unusual appearance of the ships of war and the motion of the oars, which they are not accustomed to use on their larger vessels, the barbarians hesitated a little, while our men, leaping down into the waves, began to advance towards the shore. As soon, however, as they perceived that our men were impeded because of the heavy burdens they were carrying, the enemy, encouraging each other not to retreat, tried to keep our men from

gaining a footing on solid ground, and whenever some would draw near the shore, they would advance with the utmost boldness into the water, and, making an attack, throw them into great confusion.

Cæsar perceived that there would be very great difficulty, chiefly because the ships, on account of the shoals, were anchored in deep water, and that unless he sent aid to those who were in distress, he would incur very great disgrace. Having prayed, in a loud voice, to all the gods that his former good fortune might not fail him, he cried out, "We must not abandon the eagle; fight vigorously, men, unless you wish this action to turn out favorably for the barbarians." He then ordered the soldiers to man the small boats of the nearest transports and hurl their weapons at those who were surrounding and attacking our men. When the enemy had been dislodged and driven off, Cæsar sent forward the cavalry in order to follow them up.

EXERCISE 44.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 22-26.*)

While Cæsar was procuring vessels for carrying the army across to Britain, envoys came from the nearest canton of the Morini, to apologize for not having done their duty in time past, and to reveal what was the policy of the Menapii. Cæsar, after demanding eighty hostages and promising to take the Morini under his protection, dismissed the envoys. When all the forces had gathered, he assigned the ships, some to one legion, others to another, and leaving Labienus with two legions by (*ad*) the sea to hold the harbors, he ordered the rest of the troops to set sail in a body about the third hour. As the soldiers promptly executed all his commands, the foremost ships reached Britain in a few hours; but the transport vessels, which followed the men-of-war, sailed so slowly that they did not make the island that day.

There was very great difficulty in (*use genitive*) landing, because the cavalry and charioteers of the enemy were drawn up on the shore and sought to prevent our men getting a footing on the island. Both sides were unskilled in naval affairs, but the ground was perfectly familiar to the natives. Cæsar ordered the eagles to be borne against the enemy. A few of our men were dismayed by the depth of the water and hung back, but the rest with the

utmost zeal and alacrity leaped down from the vessels, though impeded by their arms. They advanced rather (*magis*) as the nature of the place than (*quam*) as the science of war required, and being unable to keep their ranks, they followed whatever standards were nearest, and making an attack on the enemy, quickly put them to flight.

EXERCISE 45.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-19.*)

The Suebi, who were the most warlike of all the Germans, used to think it was greatly to their credit as a community, that the merchants to whom they sold the fish and eggs which they could not use themselves, should have access to their territories. These merchants, however, all of whom came from the districts beyond the Rhine, they would compel to halt, even against their will, and to inform them what they had severally learned about the war, and what was going on across the river I have mentioned above. On that occasion, after receiving information on these points, the Suebi, fearing the merchants would not go back the same way they came, refused them permission to depart unless they promised not to approach the ocean, into which the Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows, after forming several islands. On this account the merchants, fearing a conspiracy, as no time was allowed for forming a plan, began to entreat Cæsar to lend them aid on the ground that they were sorely afflicted by the Suebi. On hearing this Cæsar ordered a bridge to be built over the Rhine, and leaving forces at each end as a guard, conducted the merchants back (*reduco*) to their homes in Germany in safety, before the Suebi could learn of the bridge being built.

EXERCISE 46.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-19.*)

In the meantime, Cæsar, having proceeded a three days' journey, fell in with the enemy on the march about four miles from the Rhine, and earnestly besought them to advance no further; the Ubii were friends of the Roman people; why did the Suebi claim any power or authority on this side of the Rhine? he did not think it was fair for the Gauls to cross into Germany, nor for the

Germans to cross into Gaul; they must return to their own lands if they wished friendly relations to exist between him and them. To these remarks, the Suebi made answer as they thought fit. They were willing, provided they might, to settle in the territory of the Ubii, but they were not willing to become tributary to them, even if they were much more civilized than the Germans; if this were not granted them, let Cæsar as speedily as possible lead his army against them; they were prepared to offer a brave resistance, and would not beg off. Cæsar feared he would be prevented from setting out for Britain, and that his forces might be crushed by the superior numbers of the enemy, and in order to secure a few days' delay, he told them to go back at once to their own town and return to him on the following day. This they promised to do on the condition that Cæsar should not take his departure until they returned at the date specified.

EXERCISE 47.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-19.*)

In the winter of Pompey's consulship, the Ubii attempted to reduce to subjection the Suebi, a very powerful tribe, who had crossed the Rhine for the purpose of carrying on war against the Romans. These Suebi were a race of giants, who from boyhood followed their own caprice, accustomed to no system of instruction and recognizing no obligation. Their diet was composed mainly of animal food, and their apparel was confined to skins, which they procured by the chase, in which much of their time was spent, while (*et*) their bath was taken in the coldest rivers. As the Ubii, who were much more refined than the rest of the Germans, were unable to make headway against the violence of the Suebi, they sent envoys to Cæsar to ask aid on the ground that, owing to the proximity of the enemy, there was a complete cessation of agricultural operations. Cæsar made reply to them as follows: That as he regarded it the height of folly for the Roman people to allow the Suebi to grow too powerful, he would send the two legions he had with him to the assistance of the Ubii; they themselves were to remain in the place where they had encamped, until he should come to them a few days later, in case he were not forced to take his army across into the country of the Sugambri. After waiting

a few days, they heard that envoys from the Suebi were with Cæsar; so thinking no confidence ought to be placed in him, the envoys returned to their own countrymen and informed them what the Roman leader had stated were his intentions, and what they had learned was going on in the camp.

EXERCISE 48.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20-26.*)

On reaching Britain with the larger vessels, Cæsar learned from Volusenus what was the nature of the hills which bordered so closely on the sea that there was great difficulty in finding a suitable harbor. Volusenus advised him to disembark and give two legions to the lieutenants to lead against the state from which no envoy had come, but he thought that if he waited at anchor until the first watch, all the rest of the men of war would assemble there, and that he would meet with suitable weather for drawing near the shore. The natives learned of this plan of Cæsar's and said that our men must not disembark; they wished to keep the Romans from visiting the islands, and they would advance into the water if the Romans were to leap down from their vessels, and would hurl their weapons at the horses, a mode of fighting they are accustomed to practise very successfully. In the meanwhile the eagle-bearers of the first and the third legion called the boldest soldiers together from the nearest ships, and in a loud voice bade them leap down, unless they were minded to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy; they for their part would not hesitate to do their duty to their country. They thought that when a few had ventured to trust themselves to the waves, the rest would leap down in a body and attack the enemy. But they found that Cæsar's old luck had forsaken him, for although the Roman soldiers generally display the greatest zeal in battle, the barbarians attacked them so vigorously that they quickly put them to flight, and the Romans had to draw off their vessels and anchor them in the deep water a mile from the shore.

EXERCISE 49.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-26.*)

Certain traders, to whom the natives were wont to sell such things as were taken in war, brought word to Cæsar that the

Germans, however few, would have the courage to advance against any number of more civilized men, because they had been accustomed to military discipline from boyhood. On these merchants, however, Cæsar considered he could place no reliance, since they for the most part blindly followed untrustworthy rumors, and too often made use of the wine which, on the ground that men were rendered effeminate thereby, the Germans thought should not be brought into the country. On learning that Cæsar had determined to make war on the Germans, several states sent ambassadors to him, begging him not to form the plan of crossing the river Rhine. Cæsar, after listening to their statement, thought it best to make a kindly answer in order to calm and reassure their hearts; but the end of his speech was about as follows: That they must not remain in Gaul if they wished to be on friendly terms with the state (*res publica*); he had learned that their cavalry had been sent across the Rhine for the purpose of laying waste the lands of the Gauls and burning their villages; he would not allow them to harass the Gauls, who had embraced the alliance of the Roman people many years before and had remained faithful; the Gauls were complaining and asking aid of him, and he had promised to send three legions to their assistance. After these envoys were dismissed by Cæsar, who also ordered the Germans to bring him a large number of hostages, they returned to their own country, where they reported to the leading men of the cantons the answer Cæsar had made.

EXERCISE 50.*

While Cæsar was attending to these matters, the Bituriges sent envoys to him to ask his assistance against the Carnutes, who, they complained, had made war on them. On receiving this information, he led out of the camp the third and the sixth legion, which, as has already been stated, had been sent across the river to get supplies. Thus with two legions he set out to punish the Carnutes, who, on learning of Cæsar's approach, left the towns and villages they were inhabiting and betook themselves to flight.

* The exercises which follow are all based upon Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-26; all additional words and phrases required are given in the footnotes.

EXERCISE 51.

Having decided upon this plan, Cæsar sent the baggage belonging to the whole army to Labienus, in the country of the Treveri, and gave orders for two legions to set out for the same destination: he himself taking five legions without baggage,[1] began his march against the Menapii. These latter did not gather any forces, but took refuge in the forests, where they collected[2] all their belongings. Cæsar before very long had burned many of their villages, and had captured a large number of both people and cattle.[3] These measures compelled the Menapii to send and sue for peace. He demanded of them two hundred hostages, and declared that he would take vengeance upon them if they gave any aid to Ambiorix or his officers.

1. *expeditus*, adj. 2. *confero*. 3. *pecus*.

EXERCISE 52.

When all the troops had mustered, he sets out against the Bellovaci, and establishes[1] his camp in their country. Cavalry is sent out in all directions to capture some people from whom he may discover the enemy's projects. The report these bring back is that but few were found in the houses, and these not men who had stayed behind to till the land, but men who had been sent back to reconnoitre. Cæsar questioned these to find where the main body[2] of the Bellovaci was posted, and what were their intentions, and learned that all the Bellovaci capable of bearing arms had collected in one place, as well as the Aulerci and Atrebates; that the place they had chosen for their camp was in a wood surrounded[3] by a marsh,[4] and that all their baggage they had placed in more distant parts.

1. *pono*. 2. *multitudo*. 3. *circumdo*. 4. *palus*.

EXERCISE 53.

He soon gathered a large army by this means, and sent Lucterius, a man possessed of great daring,[1] with a portion of the force against the Ruteni; Vercingetorix himself went against the Bituriges. As he drew near, the Bituriges sent to the Ædui, under whose protection they were, and besought their assistance, in order to be able to hold out against the invaders. On the

vice of the lieutenants whom Cæsar had left with his army, the Ædui sent a detachment of both infantry and cavalry to reinforce the Bituriges. The auxiliary forces, on reaching the river which separates[2] the Bituriges from the Ædui, remained there a few days, and then returned home without having ventured to cross the river. They told our lieutenants that they had returned because they were afraid of treachery on the part of the Bituriges; they had discovered that it was their intention, in case they crossed the river, to surround them and put them to death. The Bituriges, on their departure, at once joined Vercingetorix.

1. *audacia.* 2. *divido.*

EXERCISE 54.

As soon as the natives caught sight of our men they set upon them from every side. Our troops were thrown into confusion at first;[1] some advised making a rush and breaking through,[2] seeing that the camp was close by;[3] even if some portion should be surrounded and slain, they were sure[4] the rest could be saved;[5] to others it seemed best to make a stand on the hill. This plan the veteran[6] soldiers did not approve.[7] Accordingly with mutual exhortations to remember[8] their old-time valor, they forced their way through the midst of the enemy and reached the camp in safety to a man. Those who had taken up their position on the hill were unable to abide by their resolve to defend themselves on the higher ground, and at the same time could not display the same energy[9] and quickness as the rest; they tried to make their way back to the camp, and got on unfavorable[10] ground, where a large number of them were surrounded by the natives and perished.

1. *primo.* 2. *perrumpo.* 3. *propinquus.* 4. *confido.* 5. *servo.* 6. *vetus, -eris.* 7. *probo.* 8. *reminiscor* (w. gen.). 9. *vis.* 10. *iniquus.*

EXERCISE 55.

When the news came, Cæsar sent Labienus with six cohorts[1] to aid the hard-pressed troops; he gives him instructions to withdraw[2] the garrison, if he cannot hold his ground, and make a sally;[3] but not to do so unless it is unavoidable.[4] Finding the fortifications[5] incapable of withstanding the enemy's fierce onset, Labienus gathered together all the cohorts, and informed Cæsar by mes-

sengers what in his opinion should be done. Cæsar made all haste to the point to which he had dispatched Labienus, withdrawing four cohorts from the nearest fort,[6] and ordering part of the cavalry to accompany him, while the others were to take the enemy in[7] the rear. When they perceived him approaching, and saw the cavalry and cohorts which he had ordered to follow him, our men, raising[8] a cheer, began the attack. Suddenly, while the fight is raging fiercely on both sides, the cavalry is seen in the rear, the enemy take to flight, the cavalry meets the fugitives and a great slaughter[9] follows.

1. *cohors.* 2. *deduco.* 3. *eruptio.* 4. *necessario*, adv. 5. *munitio.* 6. *castellum.* 7. *a.* 8. *tollo.* 9. *caedes.*

EXERCISE 56.

He surprised and overwhelmed the Arverni, and then told the cavalry to range over as wide a tract of country as possible, and inspire as much alarm in the enemy as they could. When news of this occurrence was brought, the rest of the Arverni in terror crowded about Vercingetorix and besought him to take thought[1] for them, and not[2] allow them to be plundered[3] by the Romans. Influenced by their entreaties[4] he shifted his camp from the country of the Bituriges towards the Arverni. Cæsar after two days' stay in this neighborhood, started off from the army to levy cavalry, leaving Brutus in charge of the troops and telling him that he would take care[5] not to be more than three days absent from the camp.

1. *consulo.* 2. *neu.* 3. *diripio.* 4. *preces.* 5. *operam do.*

EXERCISE 57.

At the same time representatives of both the Ædui and the Treveri came to Cæsar; the former to complain that the Harudes, who had recently[1] crossed over from Germany, were laying waste[2] their lands; they had found it impossible, they said, to purchase[3] peace even by giving hostages; the Treveri to state that a hundred cantons of the Suebi had encamped[4] by the bank of the Rhine, and were attempting to cross over; these were under the leadership of the brothers Nasua and Cimberius. This news deeply stirred[5] Cæsar; he decided that he must make haste[6] lest resistance be less

easy in case of a combination of the new band[7] of the Suebi with the old[8] forces of Ariovistus. He got together supplies with the utmost expedition and by forced[9] marches hastened against Ariovistus.

1. *nuper.* 2. *populor.* 3. *redimo.* 4. *consido.* 5. *vehementer commoveo.* 6. *maturo.* 7. *manus.* 8. *vetus.* 9. *magnus.*

EXERCISE 58.

Cæsar with an inferior force was besieging[1] troops which had not yet suffered defeat; they were supplied with an abundance of everything: every day[2] a great number of ships arrived from all parts to bring[3] provisions. Cæsar on the other hand had consumed[4] all the corn which he had been able to procure, and was in great distress; yet his men bore these privations[5] with extraordinary patience.[6] In the meantime Labienus, whom Cæsar at his departure had left in command of the camp, received information of this state of affairs, and came to the assistance of the investing army with two legions. This movement was most effectual; for within three days after Labienus arrived, the town of the enemy was captured without the loss of even one man on the side of the Romans.

1. *obsideo.* 2. *cotidie.* 3. *supporto.* 4. *consumo.* 5. *res.* 6. *singularis patientia.*

EXERCISE 59.

The news of Cæsar's advance caused Vercingetorix at once to give up[1] this design and set out to meet the Roman commander. The latter had got ready[2] to make an attack[3] on Noviodunum, a town of the Bituriges. Envoys had come out to clear themselves of the charge of having made war on Rome, and to sue for peace, and Cæsar, in order to carry out the rest of his purposes with the same speed with which he had succeeded in[4] most of his undertakings, gave orders that their arms were to be brought in[5] and hostages given. Some of the hostages had already been delivered up, and the other matters were being attended to, a few of the soldiers having been admitted[6] to collect the arms, when in the distance there was seen the enemy's cavalry, which had gone in advance of the main column of Vercingetorix. No sooner did the citizens[7] catch sight of this body of cavalry than the prospect of assistance

led them to seize their arms. Our troops in the town perceived that some new scheme was on foot among the Gauls. They made a rush, took possession of the gates,[9] and got away without loss.

1. *desisto* (with abl.). 2. *instituo.* 3. *oppugno.* 4. *consequor.* 5. *confero.* 6. *intromitto.* 7. *conquiro.* 8. *oppidanus.* 9. *porta.*

EXERCISE 60.

Before the army was ready to march, two Iroquois warriors came to the fort pretending friendship, but more probably in the hope of retarding the expedition until the approaching winter should make it impossible to proceed. They represented the numbers of the enemy and the extreme difficulty of penetrating so rough a country; and affirmed that if the troops refrained from hostilities, the hostile tribes, who were already collecting their prisoners, would soon send to make their submission. Bouquet turned a deaf ear to their advice and sent them to inform the Delawares and Shawanoes that he was on his way to chastise them, unless they made speedy atonement for their perfidious and wrongful acts.

[*To show how a passage from modern English may be dealt with, and especially how modern proper names may be handled, the following adaptation is given:*]

Before the army was ready to march, two of the Morini came to the camp, pretending that they were friends, but, what is more probable,[1] hoping[2] to be able to hinder our men from marching[3] until, on account of the winter which was at hand,[4] they should not be able to set out. These pointed out how great was the number of the enemy, and how great the difficulty of marching through country so rough;[5] that if our men would not make war on them, the enemy, who were collecting their prisoners,[6] would soon send envoys about surrendering.[7] Cæsar did not approve[8] this plan, and sent them to inform the Usipetes and Tencteri that he was setting out to punish them unless they quickly made reparation for[9] their perfidy and wrong-doing.

1. *verisimilis.* 2. *spero.* 3. *iter.* 4. *subsum.* 5. *impeditus.* 6. *captivus.* 7. *deditio.* 8. *probo.* 9. *satisfacio de.*

EXERCISE 61.

Between the town of Ilerda and the nearest hill, on which Afranius was encamped, there lay some half mile of level ground,[1] and about half way[2] was a slight eminence.[3] If Cæsar could get possession of this, he felt sure[4] he could cut off his opponents from the town and the supplies they had gathered[5] there. With this idea, he proceeded to lead out a force of three legions, which he drew up[6] in a suitable position, and then ordered the front rank to hasten forward[7] and seize the desired position. However, Afranius perceived his design and speedily sent the troops on guard[8] before[9] the camp by a shorter route to forestall[10] him. The other side having reached the place first, our troops were forced back, and on fresh[11] forces of the enemy coming up, were compelled to make their way back to their comrades.

1. *planicies.* 2. Say 'in about the middle of this interval' (*spatium*). 3. *tumulus.* 4. *confido.* 5. *confero.* 6. *instruo.* 7. *procurro.* 8. *statio.* 9. *pro.* 10. *praeoccupo* ('seize beforehand'). 11. Say 'other.'

EXERCISE 62.

Cæsar determined to come over to Britain because the Belgians[1] of South Britain[2] had sent help to their kinsmen[3] in Gaul, with whom he was at war. So he set sail for Britain with a small army. When the Britons, who were watching for him, saw his fleet draw near the shore, they advanced into the waves and kept the Romans from landing, till a brave standard-bearer[4] leapt from the galley into the water and advanced against the Britons. When the Roman soldiers saw him in the midst of their foes, they followed him to save[5] the standard, and at last made good their landing and drove the Britons up into the country.[6] Then Cæsar marched through Kent,[7] fought[8] several battles, and forced the nearest tribes to give hostages and sue for peace.

1. *Belgae.* 2. Say 'who inhabited the lowest part of the island.' 3. *propinquus.* 4. *aquilifer.* 5. *servo.* 6. Say 'from the coast.' 7. *Cantium.* 8. *fac*

EXERCISE 63.

The next night, Hasdrubal led his men silently[1] out of their camp, and moved towards the Metaurus, in the hope of placing that river between[2] himself and the Romans before his retreat was discovered. The Roman cavalry, however, was soon[3] seen coming

up in pursuit, followed at no great distance[4] by the legions, which marched in readiness for an engagement. It was hopeless for Hasdrubal to think of continuing his retreat.[5] He therefore ordered his men to prepare for action, and made the best arrangement of them that the nature of the ground would permit.[6]

1. *silentio.* 2. Say 'cross.' 3. *brevi.* 4. *spatium* or *intervallum.* 5. Say 'despairing of flight,' and connect closely with the next sentence. 6. Say 'drew them up (*instruo*) as advantageously (*commode*) as possible, considering (*pro*) the nature of the ground.'

EXERCISE 64.

The Gauls had an unusually able[1] leader, whom Latin historians[2] call Brennus. He had brought a great host of Gauls to attack Clusium, a Tuscan[3] city, and the inhabitants sent to Rome to entreat succor. Three ambassadors were sent from Rome to intercede for the Clusians.[4] They asked Brennus what harm the men of Clusium had done the Gauls, that they thus made war[5] on them. Brennus made answer that the injury was that the Clusians possessed land that the Gauls wanted,[7] remarking, that it was exactly the way[8] in which the Romans themselves treated[9] their neighbors.

1. Say 'of exceptional knowledge (*singularis scientia*) of the science of war.' 2. *Romanus scriptor.* 3. Say 'of the Etruscans (*Etrusci*).' 4. Say 'to urge Brennus to do no harm (*noceo*) to the Clusians (*Clusini*).' 5. Say 'provoked by what wrongs were they making war.' 6. Say 'that the Clusians were doing wrong in that (*quod*).' 7. *appeto.* 8. *modus* or *ratio.* 9. *tracto.*

EXERCISE 65.

The chiefs, when they saw that our men were resisting so bravely, and that there was no hope[1] of the speedy capture of the camp, sent ambassadors to Cicero to say that they desired a parley.[2] When leave was granted, they told the same story that the king had told Titurius; that the Germans had crossed the river and all Gaul was in arms. They add[3] that Titurius had perished with his whole army; but they had no wish to [illegible] Cicero or his men; their sole desire was to prevent the Roman[illegible] from quartering their legions permanently[6] in their coun[illegible] he were willing to leave his camp, he was free to go without [illegible] where he pleased.

1. Say 'all hope having been lost (*adimo*).' 2. Use *co[illegible]* ('have a conference'). 3. Use *etiam* ('also'). 4. *noceo* (with dat.). 5. Say 'from [illegible]ing accustomed to remain (*versor*).'

EXERCISE 66.

After making all preparations, Cæsar quickly carried the greater part of his forces over to Britain without the loss of a single man. Within a few days he marched against the enemy, who, he learned, had mustered in great numbers and now held a very strong[1] position. Since his arrival the previous summer, the Britons, with the object of offering as strong opposition as possible to the Romans when they should return, and of driving them more quickly from the island, had decided to entrust the entire conduct of the war[2] to one of their chiefs, Cassivelaunus. But it was soon clear[3] to the latter that he could not defeat Cæsar in battle, nor even prevent him from laying waste the country; and so he sent envoys to the Roman commander to treat for peace.

1. Say 'well fortified' (*egregie munitus*). 2. *summam imperii permittere.* 3. Use *animadverto.*

EXERCISE 67.

Cæsar, on coming up to the tenth legion, exhorted the soldiers to sustain with courage the assault of the enemy and not[1] to be thrown into confusion by a few savages. The army was drawn up[2] as the nature of the ground demanded; for the legions, being separated,[3] were resisting the enemy, some in one quarter, others in another. It could not be foreseen[4] what needed to be done in each direction, and it was impossible for one man to attend to everything. The men of two legions, the eighth and the ninth, did not hesitate[5] to cross the river, on the other side of which the enemy were drawn up in great force under the direction[6] of Boduognatus, whom the Nervii had put in command of the whole army. At the same time our horse, who, as I stated, had been routed at the first onset of the Nervii, met the enemy face to face[7] while retreating to the camp, and, thrown into a panic, sought flight in another direction. Cæsar, on perceiving his men hard pressed, sent four cohorts to the assistance of the cavalry, who had already lost many[8] of their number at the hands of the pursuing enemy. In the meantime, two other legions, which had been acting as an escort[9] for the baggage, were observed on the top of the hill[9] by the enemy, who immediately took to flight with the loss of one hundred and eighty killed and more than eight hundred wounded.

1. *neu.* 2. *instruo.* 3. *diversus.* 4. *provideo.* 5. *dubito.* 6. Say 'Boduognatus being leader (*dux*).' 7. *adversus.* 8. *praesidium.* 9. *summus collis.*

EXERCISE 68.

Cæsar, who was at a great distance, at last getting intelligence of their danger, returned with all expedition; and having collected a body of men, which did not exceed seven thousand, hastened to the relief of Cicero. The Gauls, who were not ignorant of his movements, raised the siége[1] and went to meet him with their entire strength. Cæsar, to deceive[2] them, made a feint as if he fled, till he came to a convenient place, and there he fortified[3] his camp. The instructions he issued to his men were not to fight, but to barricade the gates,[4] continuing by these manœuvres to increase the impression[5] of fear. It succeeded as he wished; the Gauls came up in great disorder[6] to attack his entrenchments. Then Cæsar, making a sally,[7] defeated them and destroyed the greatest part of them. This success laid the spirit of revolt[8] in those parts.

1. Say 'left the siege (*obsidio*).' 2. *decipio*. 3. *munio*. 4. *portas obstruo*. 5. *opinio*. 6. Say 'their ranks being in great confusion.' 7. *eruptio*. 8. Use *deficio* (I revolt).

EXERCISE 69.

When spring was almost come,[1] a considerable company of Virginians, under Captain Trent, hastened across the mountains and began to build a fort[2] at the confluence of the Monongahela and Alleghany, when suddenly[3] they found themselves invested by a host of French and Indians, who, with sixty bateaux and three hundred canoes, had descended from Le Bœuf. The English were ordered to evacuate the spot; and being quite unable to resist, they obeyed the summons and withdrew to Virginia. Meanwhile, Washington with another party was advancing from the borders; and hearing of Trent's disaster,[4] he resolved to fortify himself[5] on the Monongahela and hold his ground, if possible, until troops could arrive to support him. The French sent out a scouting party under M. Junonville, with the design of watching his movements; but a few nights afterwards Washington surprised them not far from his camp, killed the officer and captured the whole detachment.

1. Say 'when but a small part of the winter remained.' 2. *castellum*. 3. *subito*. 4. Say 'what had happened to.' 5. *castra munio* ('fortify a camp').

EXERCISE 70.

Finding great difficulty in pacifying the Soudan, the Government[2] resolved to send some famous military leader[3] to drive out the barbarian chief, and rescue the garrisons which were besieged[4] in several towns. They asked Gordon, a man of the utmost skill and bravery, to do what he could in that country, which a few years previously he had ruled with great uprightness and wisdom. He consented[6] to try; and travelling as fast as possible, he arrived at the capital,[7] Khartoum, which was many miles distant from the sea. Holding it for many months[8] against the swarms of barbarians, he repeatedly sent messages home to ask for help; but the Government for a long time[9] refused to send reinforcements. At last, however, thinking that he was in danger, they carefully[10] organized an army and entrusted the command to the best general they had.

1. *paco.* 2. Say 'the senate.' 3. Say 'of great reputation for (*genitive*) merit in war (*bellicus*).' 4. *obsideo.* 5. *justitia prudentiaque.* 6. Say 'promised.' 7. Say 'largest town.' 8. *mensis.* 9. *diu.* 10. Say 'with great care (*diligentia*).'

EXERCISE 71.

Before the task[1] was completed a deputation of chiefs arrived, bringing word that their warriors were encamped in great numbers about eight miles distant, and desiring our general to appoint[2] the time and place for a council. He ordered them to meet him on the next day near his camp. In the morning the little army moved in battle order to the place of council, and at the appointed hour[3] the deputation appeared. Their orator[4] declared that the war had arisen without any fault of theirs; they desired that there should be peace between us and his people, and to show their good-will,[5] at once[6] delivered eighteen prisoners they had brought with them, promising that we should receive the rest as soon as they could collect them.

1. *negotium.* 2. *constituo.* 3. *ad certam horam.* 4. Say 'he who spoke for (*loquor pro*) the envoys.' 5. *benevolentiam praesto.* 6. *statim.* 7. *captivus.*

EXERCISE 72.

The English army began to cross the bridge, Cressingham leading the van.[1] That took place which Lundin had foreseen.[2] Wallace suffered a considerable part of the English army to pass

the bridge, without offering any opposition;[3] but when about one-half[4] were over, the bridge was crowded with those who were following,[5] [illegible] and those who had crossed with his whole strength slew a very great number, and drove the rest into the river Forth, where the greater number were drowned. The remainder of the English army, who were left on the southern[6] bank of the river, fled in great confusion, having first set fire to the wooden bridge that the Scots might not pursue them. Cressingham was killed in the very beginning of the battle.[7]

1. *primum agmen.* 2. Say 'had suspected would happen.' 3. Omit because involved in 'suffered.' 4. *dimidia pars.* 5. Say 'and the rest were following in dense array (*conferti*).' 6. Say 'the other.' 7. Say 'the battle having scarcely (*vix*) been begun.'

EXERCISE 73.

Soon after their arrival, a party of Indian chiefs and warriors entered the camp. They proclaimed themselves an embassy from Pontiac, ruler of all that country, and directed in his name[1] that the English should advance no farther until they had had an interview[2] with the great chief, who was already close at hand. Before the day closed[3], Pontiac himself appeared. He greeted Rogers with the haughty demand,[4] what was his business in that country, and how he dared enter it without his permission.[5] Rogers informed him that the French were defeated, that Canada had surrendered, and that he was on his way to take possession of Detroit, and restore a general peace.[6] Pontiac replied that he would stand in the path of the English until morning.[7] Having inquired if the strangers were in need of[8] anything, he withdrew with his chiefs at nightfall to his own encampment; while the English, dreading treachery, stood well on their guard throughout the night.[9]

1. Say 'said that he commanded.' 2. *colloquor.* 3. *ante occasum solis*, 'before sunset.' 4. Say 'he haughtily (*superbe*) demanded.' 5. *injussu.* 6. Say 'establish (*confirmo*) peace and friendship with all the states.' 7. Say 'hinder from marching (*iter*) until the next day.' 8. [illegible] 9. Say, 'spent the whole night in watching (*vigiliae*).'

EXERCISE 74.

A deputation of the Wyandots came to the fort, and begged for peace, which was granted them; but when the Pottawattamies came on the same errand, they insisted as a preliminary[1] that some of their people, who were detained in the English fort, should first be given up. Gladwyn demanded, on his part,[2] that the English

captives[3] known to be in their villages should be brought to the fort, and three of them were accordingly produced. As these were but a small part of the whole, the deputies were sharply rebuked for their duplicity, and told to go back for the rest. On the following day, a fresh deputation of chiefs made their appearance, bringing with them six prisoners. The Indians detained in the fort were about to be given up and a treaty concluded, when one of the prisoners declared that there were several others still[5] remaining in the Pottawattamie village. Upon this the conference was broken off[6] and the deputies ordered instantly[7] to depart.

1. Use *priusquam*. 2. *et ipse* ('himself also'). 3. *captivus*. 4. Say 'he complained bitterly (*gravissime*), because they displayed such perfidy.' 5. *etiam nunc*. 6. *colloquium dirimo*. 7. *statim*.

EXERCISE 75.

The British general, whose forces had now swelled to sixteen hundred, retreated to a new position at Beaver Dam, about twelve miles from Niagara. The Americans pursuing him with a force of twenty-five hundred[1] men, he continued his retreat to Burlington Heights. The enemy advanced to a stream known as Stoney Creek, where they encamped for the night. Relieved from immediate[2] pressure, Vincent sent out a strong reconnoitring party under Colonel Harvey, to examine the enemy's position. Finding the entrenchments carelessly[3] guarded, Harvey made a daring attack in the darkness. The American soldiers, rudely awakened, sprang up from their glimmering camp-fires[4] and stood their ground bravely for a time. But they were bewildered and without discipline.[5] After a brief struggle, they were routed at the point of the bayonet, and their two generals, Winder and Chandler, with one hundred other prisoners, fell into Harvey's hands. Vincent at once followed up the retreat of the invaders, and sent a small advance party to reoccupy the position of Beaver Dam. This dangerous duty,[6] which was entrusted to Lieutenant James FitzGibbon, with but thirty British regulars and thirty Mohawk Indians, was successfully performed.

1. Use *quingenti* ('five hundred'). 2. Use *in praesentia* ('for the present'). 3. *indiligenter*, or say 'by no means carefully (*diligenter*) defended.' 4. Say 'being surprised when off their guard and taken unawares, quickly seized their arms.' 5. Say 'unskilled in warfare.' 6. Say 'this task (*negotium*), although dangerous (*periculosus*), was quickly finished.'

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

(*Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-26.*)

1.—1. They had crossed in that year. 2. They had been harassed for several winters. 3. A large number of Germans crossed the rivers in the following year. 4. All the other tribes were staying at home. 5. This canton is the largest, that the most warlike. 6. Several years after, they were led out of this place. 7. With a hundred thousand Germans he was making war. 8. On account of their huge size they do none (lit. nothing) of those things. 9. The country was very cold. 10. The milk and corn make the Germans very warlike. 11. They used to bathe in the river.

2.—1. The merchants do not desire beasts of burden to be imported. 2. They used to use small and scrubby beasts. 3. They sell what they have taken to the Gauls. 4. The merchants have right of entry. 5. They had not ventured to leap down. 6. They betook themselves to the cavalry. 7. He betook himself to them. 8. It used to be considered disgraceful. 9. He leaps down on foot (lit. to the feet) because the cavalry are approaching. 10. They think it is disgraceful to use imported horses.

3.—1. On (*ex*) the other side, the country is unoccupied for six hundred paces. 2. The Suebi could not withstand the power of the state. 3. The same merchants used to come often to the Gauls themselves. 4. They think their state is large and flourishing. 5. It is the greatest possible glory to be more civilized than the Germans. 6. This state is said to be insignificant and weak. 7. They cannot be driven out because they are tributary to this state. 8. They are more civilized than the Germans themselves.

4.—1. Terrified by so great a number, they station guards. 2. The Germans drove the Menapii from their lands. 3. They keep the Menapii from wandering. 4. They had removed from both banks of the Rhine. 5. They pretend to cross the river. 6. He was informed of their arrival. 7. Being unable to maintain themselves they had returned to the river. 8. The whole journey had been finished in three days. 9. Having crushed the Menapii, they advanced for the rest of this night. 10. As the Germans had crossed the river, he seized their ships and villages.

5.—1. Influenced by this report, he asked what plans they were adopting. 2. He compelled the Gauls to answer. 3. He asked what they had heard or learned. 4. He repents of the plans which he has adopted. 5. No answer should be given to those who yield to these rumors. 6. The merchants, against their will, were compelled to come from each town.

6.—1. Having sent embassies to the leading men, they determined to set out for the Rhine. 2. They were invited to come. 3. Having determined to wage war they sent embassies to several states. 4. Some wander farther than usual. 5. On learning this he thought he ought to summon the leading men and demand an army. 6. When everything which he had demanded had been prepared, they thought that embassies should be sent.

7.—1. As ambassadors had not come from the Germans, he began to pick out cavalry. 2. Our ancestors have handed down this custom. 3. He had heard that the Roman people had made war on the Germans. 4. He began to attack the Germans from whom ambassadors had not come. 5. We wish to be friends to the Romans. 6. They said that the Suebi alone had been driven from their lands. 7. The Suebi do not yield even to the immortal gods. 8. As they have come against their will, having been driven from home, he assigns them lands.

8.—1. He answered that he could not give any lands to those who were seeking aid. 2. There cannot be friendship between Cæsar and the Ubii. 3. They may remain in their own lands. 4. It seems best to ask aid of Cæsar. 5. They are complaining of the outrages of the Ubii, who have settled in lands not their own. 6. So great a multitude cannot remain without wrong.

9.—1. The ambassadors said they would send the cavalry some days after. 2. They thought that the camp had been moved nearer. 3. Having reported this to their friends they returned to him. 4. He said he would move the camp. 5. He learned that some horsemen had not returned, and that the Ambivariti were awaiting him. 6. They thought they could gain their request from Cæsar.

10.—1. The island used to be inhabited by the Batavi. 2. A river which is called Mosa is thought to rise in (*ex*) the Alps.

3. The Alps are inhabited by a fierce nation which lives on birds. 4. After forming the island, it receives a branch from the Vacalus. 5. Many barbarous nations inhabit a large part of the islands.

11.—1. When the ambassadors were returning to Cæsar, the cavalry whom he had sent in advance were twelve miles distant. 2. Cæsar, meeting the leading men on the way, gave them three days' time to send ambassadors. 3. As he had not given them an opportunity of advancing, they begged him not to carry out these plans. 4. They sent ambassadors to say that the army was approaching nearer. 5. He thought they would not return the same day. 6. They said that as many as possible would assemble, and that as all the cavalry were approaching, he would gain his request.

12.—1. As soon as the cavalry returned, the ambassadors left the enemy. 2. Our men have no fear, because not more than eight hundred horsemen have returned. 3. Having put the cavalry to flight, and thrown the rest into confusion, they return to Cæsar. 4. He did not cease until his brother was saved from all danger. 5. When he had rescued his brother, he brought aid to his grandfather. 6. While resisting bravely, he was surrounded by the cavalry, and received many wounds. 7. As soon as they could, they brought aid to Piso, whom our senate had called friend.

13.—1. No time was given to the enemy for seeking peace. 2. After these ambassadors had been heard, he waited till they should adopt the plan. 3. He thought that the enemy had gained no prestige by these terms. 4. He perceived that, after accepting these terms, they were making war. 5. Cæsar is glad that the chief men and the ambassadors have been detained. 6. No time should be given for arranging these matters. 7. The cavalry, having followed up the enemy, had begun battle. 8. Cæsar, the next day, after leading out all the cavalry, ordered the battle to be begun.

14.—1. He began to draw up a triple line of battle. 2. The cavalry had been sent to defend the camp. 3. Terrified by the arrival of our cavalry, he had sought safety in flight. 4. The forces, alarmed by all this, perceived that they could not cross the Rhine. 5. Taking arms they gave the enemy no time to draw up

the line of battle. 6. With the rest of the women and children they fled to their friends.

15.—1. Seeing that a large number of our men had been killed, he threw away his arms. 2. Thirty thousand Germans had perished in that flight. 3. As they wished to depart, he said he would allow them their freedom. 4. Cæsar reached the river Rhine in safety. 5. They said that thirty military standards had been left. 6. Hearing the shouts of his men, and fearing the Gauls, he rushed out of the camp.

16.—1. The Germans had been very easily induced to cross the Rhine and make war on the Roman people. 2. Messengers were sent to promise vessels for crossing the Rhine. 3. After sending ambassadors and giving up hostages, they betook themselves to their friends. 4. As the Suebi had joined the Usipetes, he had, against his will, lent aid to these tribes. 5. Against Cæsar's will they had ventured to carry over the army. 6. He resolved that the war must be finished. 7. Perceiving that they were hard pressed by the Germans, they were alarmed. 8. They answered that they would prevent Cæsar from conveying his army across the Rhine. 9. They thought that they could not be safe without his consent. 10. He besought Cæsar to take part in the battle. 11. The Germans who had made war on Cæsar, were surrendered to him. 12. So great was Cæsar's reputation that the farthest tribes sent ambassadors and gave hostages.

18.—1. Cæsar began to lead the army across. 2. The army began to be led across. 3. For several days they were bringing in timber. 4. He ordered ambassadors to come to him from both states. 5. He ordered a garrison to be left at the bridge. 6. They began to conceal themselves in the woods. 7. Meanwhile, all the timber having been collected and the army led across, they began to prepare for flight.

19.—1. Cæsar learned that their wives and children had been placed in the woods, and that they were gathering to one place. 2. As the bridge had been torn down, Cæsar resolved to punish the Germans. 3. When the Ubii learned that all the buildings had been burned, and a bridge built, they betook themselves to the woods. 4. All can bear arms. 5. For ten days they had

awaited his arrival. 6. He thought that everything, for which he had led the army across, had been accomplished. 7. The Suebi, after learning this through scouts, had determined to burn all their villages and buildings. 8. Eight days in all had been spent in the districts which the Suebi held. 9. They betook themselves to their own territories.

20.—1. He found out that the traders did not visit these islands. 2. Almost all the harbors are suitable. 3. He found out to whom they had furnished auxiliaries. 4. He thought that the traders could find out how large the harbor was. 5. Although the harbors were not suitable, he set out for the island. 6. He knew that the winters were early. 7. All this will be of great service. 8. He found out that all the tribes had these customs.

21.—1. He instructs Volusenus to find out these things. 2. Ambassadors came from the states which he had conquered that summer. 3. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, had visited these states on the previous days. 4. They themselves, with all the fleet, assembled as quickly as possible. 5. Him he orders (*jubeo*) to visit the states. 6. He orders (*impero*) the traders to come to him. 7. Having given hostages, they return home. 8. He urges Volusenus to leave the ship. 9. He reported what they had promised. 10. Commius had been made king.

22.—1. He ordered about eight ships of war and a large number of transports. 2. They promised to make ready the ships which he had required. 3. While they were collecting the ships, ambassadors came from the Morini. 4. The rest of the ships could not carry over the legion. 5. After the two legions had been taken over, he gave the rest to Rufus to lead against the Morini. 6. When the hostages had been brought, he promised to receive them under his protection. 7. He left a garrison of two legions. 8. He does not wish either to wage war or to delay for the purpose of collecting cavalry. 9. In the previous year he had had an opportunity of taking over the legions. 10. This happened very opportunely.

23.—1. As the cavalry had advanced to the higher ground, he ordered the rest of the soldiers to follow them. 2. He ordered the anchors to be raised. 3. We cannot throw weapons from the

ship to the shore. 4. Thinking the shore suitable, they landed. 5. On the signal being given, they embarked and followed him. 6. He waited until he found a suitable tide for sailing. 7. About the ninth hour of the day he found out what was being done. 8. On the ninth day he ordered the tribunes to set sail from the farther harbor.

24.—1. They kept our men from leaping down. 2 Sending the charioteers in advance, they hurled their weapons more boldly. 3. The soldiers, burdened by their arms, leaped down from the ship. 4. The locality was unknown to our men, who did not show the same zeal as the enemy. 5. They had to advance into the water. 6. On account of the great difficulty, the rest of the forces cannot follow up the cavalry. 7. They were wont to use horses in their battles. 8. The enemy, dismayed by the size of the vessels, could not hurl their weapons.

25.—1. The soldiers were ordered to leap down. 2. As the soldier was leaping down, Cæsar noticed that the enemy had halted. 3. On the ships of war being removed a short distance, the enemy began to retreat. 4. He urged the soldiers not to betray the eagles to the barbarians. 5. He cried with a loud voice that he was willing to do his duty. 6. On account of the unusual kind of vessels, the matter turned out most favorably for Cæsar. 7. "Leap down, Cæsar," he said, "unless you wish to incur disgrace." 8 Our soldiers exhorted one another not to hesitate on account of the appearance of the barbarians.

26.—1. On the vessels being filled, he ordered aid to be sent to those who were in difficulty. 2. Whenever the enemy made an attack, Cæsar would order our men to keep their ranks. 3. Both sides were unable to leave their ships. 4. Whomsoever they attacked they put to flight. 5. Making an attack, they surrounded the enemy. 6. Having reached the island, the cavalry landed from the ship. 7. Having attacked the enemy, they fought fiercely. 8. This alone is lacking. 9. He had manned the ships of war with the cavalry.

II. EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION AT SIGHT.*

1. Gaul and Its Divisions.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

2. Cæsar's Second Invasion of Germany, B.C. 53.

Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat quod Germani auxilia

* All the words not given in the footnotes occur with the same meaning in the selections from Nepos and Cæsar in Part IV.

1.—2. lingua, *language*. 6. cultus, *civilization*. 6. humanitas, *refinement*. 7. minime, *by no means*. 7. commeo, *visit*. 8. pertineo, *tend*. 9. continenter, *continually*. 11. praecedo, *surpass*. 14. contineo, *bound*. 15. ab, *on the side of*. 20. ad, *next to*.

contra se Treveris miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulo supra eum locum quo ante exercitum traduxerat facere pontem instituit. Magno militum studio, paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros non missa esse; petunt atque orant ut sibi parcat; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa esse. Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit; aditus viasque in Suebos perquirit.

Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere, atque eis nationibus quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis imperat ut pecora deducant, suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant (sperans hostes inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci); mandat ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur, cognoscant.

Illi imperata faciunt, et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis copiis quas coegissent, ad extremos fines se recepisse; silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine; ad ejus silvae initium Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus (quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student), constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingit, rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim constituit, praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat; ipse ad bellum Ambiorigis proficiscitur.

2.—1. Ambiorix was the leader of a formidable revolt in north-eastern Gaul. 10. cognosco causam, *investigate a case.* 11. satisfactio, *excuses.* 12. perquiro, *inquire about.* 15. denuntio, *give notice.* 18. spero, *hope.* 18. cibaria, *provisions.* 19. iniquus, *unequal.* 24. extremus, *remotest.* 29. minime studeo, *pay very little attention.* 31. tollo with dat., *take away from.* 32. contingo, *touch.* 32. extremus pons, *the end of the bridge.* 32. turris, *tower.* 33. constituo, *erect.* 34. firmo, *strengthen.*

3. The Campaign against the Belgæ, B.C. 57.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, litteris Labieni certior factus est, omnes Belgas contra populum Romanum conjurare, quod vererentur ne, omni Gallia pacata, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur. His nuntiis commotus, Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate ad exercitum venit. Imperat Senonibus, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum Caesar re frumentaria comparata castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

Posteaquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas esse, et ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab exploratoribus cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit, atque in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus reliquit. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine Bibrax, aberat millia passuum octo. Id magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, qui tum oppido praecerat, nuntium ad Caesarem mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse. Eo media nocte Caesar duas cohortes subsidio oppidanis mittit: quorum adventu hostes discesserunt, agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis atque aedificiis quos adire potuerant incensis, omnibus copiis ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est.

Ibi vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praecerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum pontem traducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum nume-

---

3.—2. conjuro, *conspire*. 3. paco, *subdue*. 4. commoveo, *alarm*. 5. conscribo, *raise*. 9. conduco, *gather*. 14. maturo, *hasten*. 17. Remi, these were allies of the Romans. 19. sustento, *hold out*. 22. oppidani, *townspeople*. 23. depopulor, *lay waste*. 29. minus, *not*. 29. populor, *lay waste*.

rum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliqui audacissime transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulsi sunt; primi, qui transierant, equitatu circumventi interfectique sunt. Hoc proelio superati, hostes concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent.

Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu atque tumultu castris egressi sunt; ita ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui fugientes persequeretur, misit. Hi novissimos adorti magnam multitudinem eorum conciderunt, subque occasum solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id oppugnare conatus, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, quae ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter aggere jacto, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt.

His rebus gestis, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolunt, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturos, imperata facturos, pollicerentur.

4. The Gauls and the Germans.

In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis sed paene in singulis domibus factiones sunt; atque eodem modo tota Gallia divisa est in duas partes. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani.

3.—1. per, *over*. 6. introduco, *lead in*. 8. tumultus, *commotion*. 9. speculator, *spy*. 11. confirmo, *confirm*. 13. novissimi, *the rear*. 14. sub, *towards*. 19. latitudo, *breadth*. 23. jacio, *throw up*. 23. opera, *siege-works*.

4.—31. factio, *party, side*. 32. pars, *party*.

In omni Gallia eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt honore genera sunt duo; nam plebs paene servorum habetur loco. De his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Druides rebus divinis intersunt; sacrificiis publica atque privata procurant; de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt, neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt. Tantis excitati praemiis, et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat) omnes in bello versantur, plurimosque clientes habent.

Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus; atque ob eam causam qui in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolaturos vovent; publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia.

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt, nam neque druides habent qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; a parvis labori ac duritiae student. Pellibus utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda. Agriculturae non student, majorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos quantum visum est attribuunt, atque anno post alio transire cogunt.

Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope se audere

---

4.—1. honor, *repute, distinction.* 2. paene, *almost.* 3. druides, *the druids.* 3. eques, *knight.* 4. res divinae, *matters of religion.* 4. intersum, *am concerned with.* 4. sacrificium, *sacrifice.* 5. controversia, *dispute.* 7. tributum, *tax.* 8. excito, *stimulate.* 8. praemium, *reward.* 9. in disciplinam, *for instruction.* 10. versus, *verse.* 10. edisco, *learn by heart.* 11. sidus, *star.* 11. mundus, *the universe.* 12. disputo, *discuss.* 13. incido, *occur.* 14. soleo, *am wont.* 16. religio, *religious observance.* 17. victima, *victim.* 18. voveo, *vow.* 21, 23, 24. studeo, *indulge in, devote myself to, follow.* 22. studium, *pursuit.* 22. consisto in, *consist of.* 23. duritia, *hardiness.* 24. nudus, *bare.* 25. victus, *food.* 25. caseus, *cheese.* 26. modus, *quantity.* 28. proprius, *private.* 28. alio, *elsewhere.* 29. circum, *around.* 30. proprium, *a mark.*

consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas gerit, magistratus qui ei bello praesint deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt ab injuria prohibent sanctosque habent.

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Nunc quidem in eadem inopia atque egestate Germani permanent, eodem victu et vestitu utuntur; Gallos autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia humaniores effecit. Paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

5. The Battle of Marathon.

Darius autem, cum ex Europa in Asiam redisset, hortantibus amicis ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestatem, classem quingentarum navium comparavit, eique Datim praefecit et Artaphernem, iisque ducenta peditum, decem equitum millia dedit, causam interponens se hostem esse Atheniensibus, quod eorum auxilio Iones Sardes expugnassent suaque praesidia interfecissent. Illi, classe ad Euboeam appulsa, celeriter Eretriam ceperunt omnesque ejus gentis cives abreptos in Asiam ad regem miserunt.

Inde ad Atticam accesserunt ac suas copias in campum Marathona deduxerunt. Is est ab oppido circiter millia passuum decem. Hoc tumultu Athenienses tam propinquo tamque magno permoti, auxilium nusquam nisi a Lacedaemoniis petiverunt. Domi autem creant decem praetores qui exercitui praecessent, in iis Miltiadem. Inter quos magna fuit contentio, utrum moenibus se defenderent, an obviam irent hostibus acieque decernerent. Unus Miltiades maxime hortabatur ut castra fierent: id si factum esset, et civibus animum accessurum, cum viderent de eorum virtute non desperari,

---

4.—1. consisto, *settle*. 4. jus dico, *dispense justice*. 5. hospes, *guest*. 5. violo, *harm*. 6. sanctus, *sacred*. 9. colonia, *colony, settlement*. 10. egestas, *poverty*. 11. propinquitas, *nearness*. 11. transmarinus, *foreign*. 12. notitia, *acquaintance*.

5.—15. Darius, king of Persia from 521 to 485 B.C. 16. redigo in, *bring under*. 19. Iones, *the Ionians*. 22. abripio, *carry off*. 25. tumultus, *sudden attack*. 26. nusquam, *nowhere*. 28. [illegible]centio, *controversy*. 29. decerno, *fight, contend*. 30. castra facio, here meaning [illegible] *the field*. 31. accedo, *come, am given*.

et hostes eadem re fore tardiores, si animadverterent auderi adversus se tam exiguis copiis dimicari.

Hoc in tempore nulla civitas Atheniensibus auxilio fuit praeter Plataeenses. Ea mille misit milites. Itaque horum adventu decem millia armatorum completa sunt, quae manus mirabili flagrabat pugnandi cupiditate. Quo factum est ut plus quam collegae Miltiades valeret. Ejus ergo auctoritate impulsi Athenienses copias ex urbe eduxerunt, locoque idoneo castra fecerunt. Deinde postero die sub montis radicibus acie instructa (atque arbores multis locis erant rarae) proelium commiserunt hoc consilio ut et montium altitudine tegerentur et arborum tractu equitatus hostium impediretur.

Datis, etsi non aequum locum videbat suis, tamen fretus numero copiarum suarum confligere cupiebat, eoque magis, quod priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent, dimicare utile arbitrabatur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum, equitum decem millia produxit, proeliumque commisit. In quo tanto plus virtute valuerunt Athenienses ut decemplicem numerum hostium profligarint, adeoque eos perterruerunt ut Persae non castra sed naves petierint.

6. Hannibal's Father, Hamilcar.

Hamilcar, Carthaginiensis, primo Punico bello, admodum adulescentulus in Sicilia praeesse coepit exercitui. Cum ante ejus adventum et mari et terra male res gererentur Carthaginiensium, ipse, ubi adfuit, numquam hosti cessit neque locum nocendi dedit, saepeque e contrario, occasione data, lacessivit semperque superior discessit. Quo facto, cum paene omnia in Sicilia Poeni amisissent, ille Erycem sic defendit ut bellum eo loco gestum non videretur.

Interim Carthaginienses, classe apud insulas Aegates a C. Lutatio, consule Romanorum, superati, statuerunt belli facere finem. Paucis post annis, quo facilius causam bellandi cum Romanis reperiret, effecit ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.

5.—5. compleo, *make up.* 5. mirabilis, *wonderful.* 5. flagro, *be inflamed with.* 6. collega, *colleague.* 7. impello, *lead.* 9. sub radicibus, *at the foot.* 11. altitudo, *height.* 11. tego, *protect.* 11. tractus, *row.* 13. aequus, *favorable.* 13. fretus, *relying on.* 15. utile, *a good thing.* 16. produco, *lead out.* 18. decemplex, *tenfold.*

6.—20. admodum adulescentulus, *a mere youth.* 23. adsum, *am present.* 23. locus, *opportunity.* 24. e contrario, *on the contrary.* 24. occasio, *opportunity.* 25 paene, *almost.* 26. Eryx, a town in Sicily. 29. causa, *pretext.*

Erat praeterea cum eo adulescens Hasdrubal, qui, Hamilcare occiso, exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit. Ejus post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accepit imperium.

At Hamilcar, posteaquam mare transiit in Hispaniamque venit, magnas res secunda gessit fortuna; maximas bellicosissimasque gentes subegit, equis, armis, viris, pecunia totam locupletavit Africam. Hic cum in Italiam bellum inferre meditaretur, nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerat, in proelio pugnans adversus Vettones occisus est.

Hujus perpetuum [illegible]m erga Romanos maxime concitasse videtur secundum bellum Punicum. Namque Hannibal, filius ejus, assiduis patris obtestationibus eo est perductus ut interire quam Romanos non experiri mallet.

7. Datames Captures Aspis.

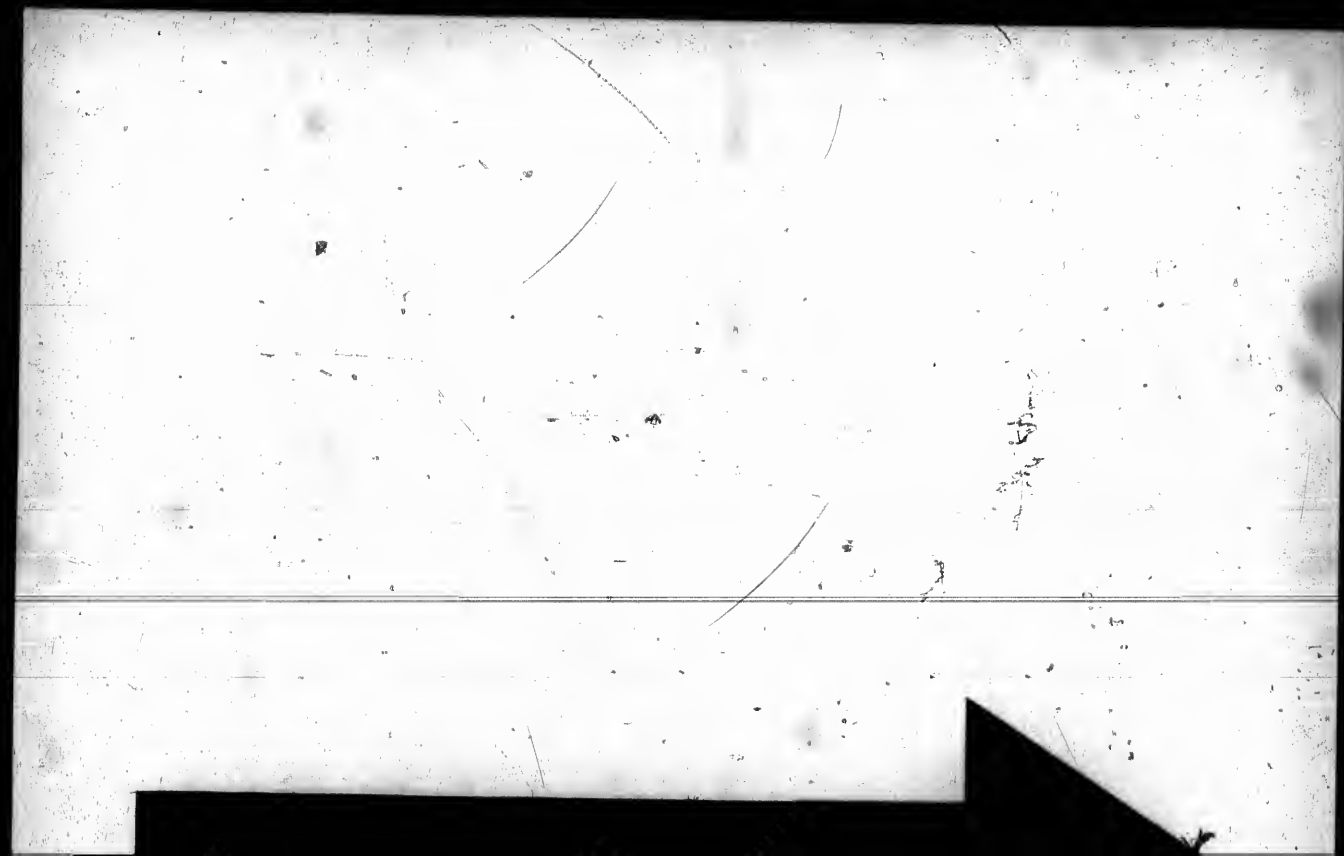
Datames cum maximo studio compararet exercitum, Aegyptumque proficisci pararet, subito a rege litterae sunt ei missae, ut Aspim aggrederetur, qui Cataoniam tenebat, quae jacet supra Ciliciam. Namque Aspis, saltuosam regionem castellisque munitam incolens, non solum imperio regis non parebat sed etiam finitimas regiones vexabat, et quae regi portarentur abripiebat. Datames, etsi longe aberat ab iis regionibus et a majore re abstrahebatur, tamen regis voluntati morem gerendum putavit.

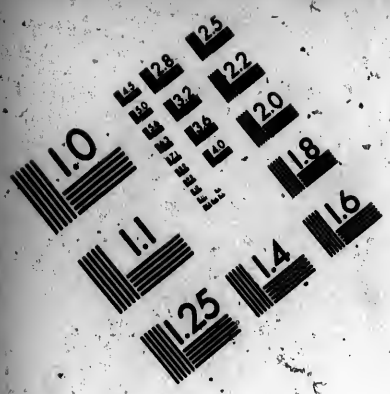
Itaque cum paucis sed viris fortibus navem conscendit, existimans, quod accidit, facilius se imprudentem parva manu oppressurum, quam paratum quamvis magno exercitu. Hac delatus in Ciliciam, egressus inde, dies noctesque iter faciens, Taurum transiit. Quaerit quibus locis sit Aspis; cognoscit haud longe abesse, profectumque venatum. Interim, adventus ejus causa cognoscitur. Pisidas, cum iis quos secum habebat, ad resistendum Aspis comparat. Id Datames ubi audivit, arma sumit, suos sequi jubet; ipse equo concitato ad hostem vehitur. Quem procul Aspis conspiciens ad se ferentem pertimescit atque a conatu resistendi

---

6.—5. secundus, *good*. 6. locupleto, *enrich*. 7. meditor, *plan*. 10. perpetuus, *unceasing*. 10. concito, *provoke*. 12. assiduus, *constant*. 12. obtestatio, *adjuration*. 12. perduco, *lead*. 13. experior, *try conclusions with*. 13. malo, *choose rather*.

7.—14. Datămes, a Persian general of Artaxerxes II. 16. jaceo, *lie*. 16. supra, *beyond*. 17. saltuosus, *full of forests*. 19. abripio, *carry off*. 20. abstraho, *draw away, divert*. 24. hac, *sc.* navi. 27. venor, *hunt*. 28. Pisidae, *the Pisidians*. 30. concito, *spur on*. 30. vehor, *am borne, ride*. 31. fero (here intransitive, se being omitted), *advance*. 31. pertimesco, *become frightened*. 31. conatus, *attempt*.





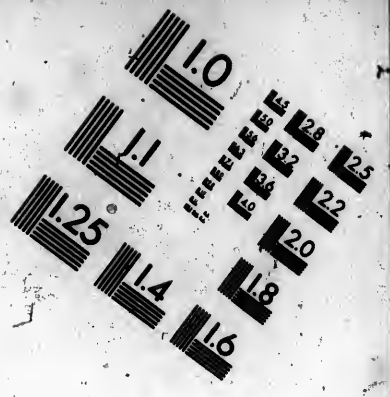
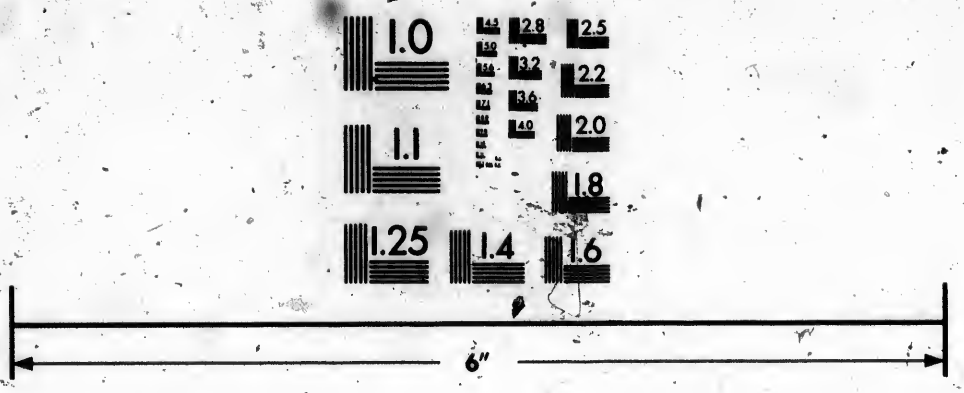
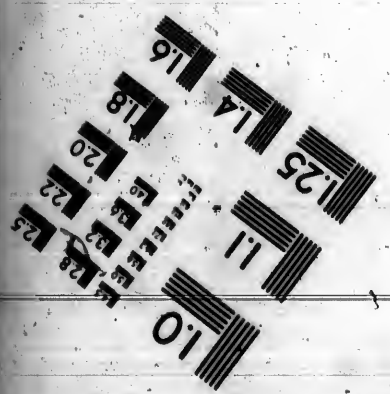
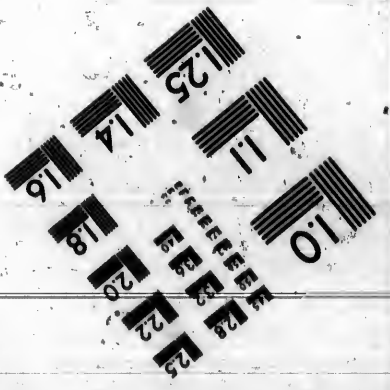


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)

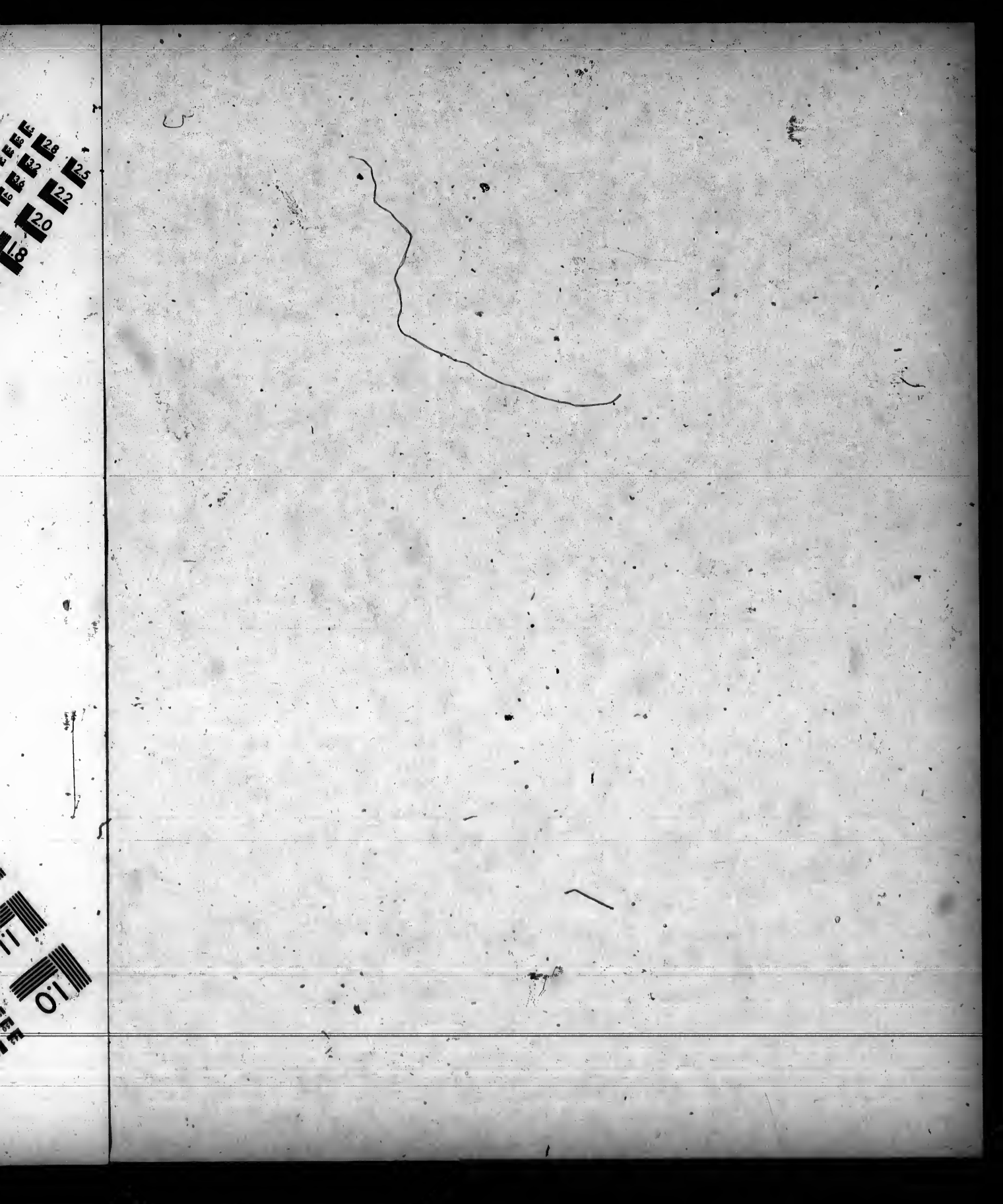






Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



deterritus sese dedidit. Hunc Datames vinctum ad regem tradendum dedit Mithridati.

8. The Military Genius of Iphicrates.

Iphicrates Atheniensis non tam magnitudine rerum gestarum quam disciplina militari nobilitatus est. Fuit enim talis dux, ut non solum aetatis suae cum primis compararetur, sed ne de majoribus natu quidem quisquam anteponeretur. Multum vero in bello est versatus, saepe exercitibus praefuit, tantumque eo valuit, ut multa in re militari partim nova attulerit, partim meliora fecerit. Namque ille pedestria arma mutavit. Cum ante illum maximis clipeis, brevibus hastis, minutis gladiis uterentur, ille, e contrario peltam pro clipeo fecit, ut ad motus concursusque essent leviores; hastae modum duplicavit, gladios longiores fecit. Idem genus loricarum novum instituit, et pro aeneis linteas dedit. Quo facto expeditiores milites reddidit.

Apud Corinthum tanta severitate exercitui praefuit, ut nullae umquam in Graecia neque exercitatiores copiae neque magis dicto audientes fuerint duci; in eamque consuetudinem adduxit, ut cum proelii signum ab imperatore esset datum, sine ducis opera sic ordinatae consisterent, ut singuli a peritissimo imperatore dispositi viderentur. Hoc exercitu moram Lacedaemoniorum interfecit, quod maxime tota celebratum est Graecia. Iterum eodem bello omnes copias eorum fugavit, quo facto magnam adeptus est gloriam.

9. The Honesty and Foresight of Epaminondas.

Diomedon, rogatu Artaxerxis regis, ut Epaminondam pecunia corrumperet, magno cum pondere auri Thebas venit et Micythum adulescentem, quem Epaminondas plurimum diligebat, quinque talentis ad suam perduxit voluntatem. Micythus Epaminon-

---

7.—1. vincio, *put in chains.*

8.—4. disciplina, *skill.* 4. nobilito, *make famous.* 6. vero, *in fact.* 8. affero, *introduce.* 8. melior, *better.* 9. pedester, *of infantry.* 9. muto, *change.* 10. clipeus, *shield.* 10. hasta, *spear.* 10. minutus, *very short.* 10. gladius, *sword.* 10. e contrario, *on the contrary.* 11. pelta, *light shield.* 11. pro, *in place of.* 11. levis, *light.* 12. modus, *measure, length.* 13. lorica, *cuirass.* 13. instituo, *introduce.* 13. linteus, *of linen.* 15. severitas, *strictness.* 16. exercitatus, *well trained.* 16. dicto audiens, *obedient.* 18. opera, *assistance.* 19. ordino, *set in order.* 19. peritus, *experienced.* 20. mora, a division of the Spartan army, *regiment.* 21. celebro, *talk of, praise.*

9.—24. rogatu, *at the request.* 25. corrumpo, *bribe.* 26. diligo, *be fond of.* 27. perduco, *bring over.*

dam convenit, et causam adventus Diomedontis ostendit. At ille, Diomedontis coram: "Nihil," inquit, "opus pecunia est; nam si rex ea vult quae Thebanis sunt utilia, gratiis facere sum paratus; sin autem contraria, non habet auri atque argenti satis. Namque orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriae caritate. Tu quod me incognitum tentasti, tuique similem existimasti, non miror, tibique ignosco; sed egredere propere, ne alios corrumpas, cum me non potueris. Et tu, Micythe, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id confestim facis, ego te tradam magistratui." Hunc Diomedon cum rogaret ut tuto exire suaque liceret efferre: "Istud quidem" inquit "faciam, neque tua causa, sed mea, ne, si tibi sit pecunia adempta, aliquis dicat id ad me pervenisse." A quo cum quaesivisset quo se deduci vellet, et ille Athenas dixisset, praesidium dedit, ut tuto perveniret.

Atque Meneclides quidam, adversarius Epaminondae, quod in re militari florere illum videbat, hortari solebat Thebanos ut pacem bello anteferrent, ne illius imperatoris opera desideraretur. Huic ille, "Fallis," inquit, "verbo cives tuos, quod eos a bello avocas; otii enim nomine servitutem concilias. Nam paritur pax bello. Itaque qui pace diutina volunt frui, bello exercitati esse debent. Quare si principes Graeciae vultis esse, castris est vobis utendum, non palaestra."

10. The Story of Ulysses.

The Lotus-Eaters.

Cum urbs Troja, a Graecis decem annos obsessa, tandem per insidias capta esset, Graeci longo bello fessi domum redire maturaverunt. Omnibus igitur ad profectionem paratis naves deduxerunt et tempestatem idoneam nacti magno cum gaudio solverunt. Erat inter primos Graecorum Ulixes quidam, vir summae virtutis ac prudentiae. Hic regnum insulae Ithacae obtinuerat et, paulo antequam cum reliquis Graecis ad bellum profectus est, puellam

---

9.—1. convenio, *go to*. 2. coram, *in the presence of*. 2. opus, *need of* (w. abl.) 3. gratiis, *for nothing*. 4. sin, *but if*. 4. contrarius, *opposite*. 5. orbis terrarum, *the whole world*. 5. caritas, *love*. 6. tento, *seek to bribe*. 6. similis, *like*. 8. reddo, *give back*. 10. effero, *carry away*. 10. istud, *what you ask*. 11. causa, *for . . . sake*. 16. floreo, *am conspicuous*. 16. soleo, *am wont*. 17. opera, *services*. 18. avoco, *dissuade*. 19. otium, *peace*. 19. servitus, *slavery*. 19. concilio, *bring about*. 19. pario, *obtain*. 20. diutinus, *lasting*. 20. fruor, *enjoy* (w. abl.). 20. exercitatus, *well-trained*. 22. palaestra, *wrestling school* (as typical of peace.)

10.—23. obsideo, *besiege*. 24. fessus, *wearied*. 24. maturo, *hasten*. 26. gaudium, *joy*. 29. antequam, *before*. 29. puella, *maiden*.

formosissimam, nomine Penelopen, in matrimonium duxerat. Nunc igitur, cum jam decem annos quasi in exsilio consumpsisset, magna cupiditate patriae et uxoris videndae incensus est.

Postquam tamen pauca millia passuum a litore Trojae progressi sunt, tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut nulla navium cursum tenere posset, sed aliae alias in partes disjicerentur. Navis autem qua ipse Ulixes vehebatur, vi tempestatis ad meridiem delata, decimo die ad litus Libyae appulsa est. Ancoris jactis Ulixes constituit nonnullos e suis in terram exponere, qui aquam ad navem referrent et qualis esset natura ejus regionis cognoscerent. Hi igitur e navi egressi imperata facere parabant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quibusdam ex incolis obviam facti ab eis hospitio accepti sunt. Accidit autem ut maximam partem miro quodam fructu, quem lotum appellabant, hi homines viverent. Quem cum Graeci gustassent, patriae et sociorum statim obliti, se confirmaverunt semper in ea terra mansuros, ut dulci illo cibo in perpetuum fruerentur.

At Ulixes, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum exspectasset, veritus ne socii sui in periculo versarentur, nonnullos e reliquis misit, ut quae causa esset morae cognoscerent. Hi igitur in terram expositi, cum ad vicum qui non longe aberat pervenissent, socios suos quasi vino ebrios reppererunt atque eis persuadere conabantur ut secum ad navem redirent. Illi tamen resistere ac manu se defendere coeperunt, saepe clamitantes se numquam ex eo loco discessuros. Quae cum ita essent, nuntii re infecta ad Ulixem redierunt. His rebus cognitis Ulixes ipse cum omnibus qui in navi relicti sunt ad locum venit; et socios suos frustra hortatus ut sponte sua redirent, manibus eorum post terga vinctis, invitos ad navem reportavit. Tum ancoris sublatis quam celerrime e portu solvit.

The Giant, Polyphemus.

Postridie ejus diei postquam totam noctem remis contenderant, ad terram ignotam navem appulerunt. Tum, quod naturam ejus

---

10.—1. formosus, *beautiful*. 1. matrimonium, *marriage*. 2. quasi, *as it were*. 6. disjicio, *scatter*. 10. refero, *bring back*. 12. fons, *spring*. 12. obviam fio, *fall in with*. 12. hospitium, *hospitality*. 13. mirus, *wonderful*. 14. fructus, *fruit*. 14. lotus, *the lotus*. 15. obliviscor, *forget* (w. gen.). 16. dulcis, *sweet, pleasant*. 17. fruor, *enjoy* (w. abl.). 18. vesper, *evening*. 19. socius, *comrade*. 22. ebrius, *drunk*. 25. re infecta, *without accomplishing their purpose*. 28. vincio, *bind*.

regionis ignorabat, ipse Ulixes cum duodecim e sociis in terram egressus locum explorare constituit. Paulum e litore progressi ad specum ingentem pervenerunt; quem, etsi intellegebant non sine periculo id facturos, intraverunt. Ibi magnam copiam lactis invenerunt in vasis ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mirantur quis eum locum incoleret, subito monstrum horribile animadvertunt, humana quidem specie et figura, sed immani corporis magnitudine. Cum autem vidissent gigantem unum omnino oculum habere in media fronte positum, intellexerunt hunc esse unum e Cyclopibus, de quibus famam jam acceperant.

Quod monstrum simul atque viderunt, timore perterriti in interiorem partem speluncae confugerunt. Polyphemus autem (id enim gigantis nomen erat) pecora sua in speluncam egit; tum cum saxo ingenti portam obstruxisset, ignem in medio specu accendit. Hoc facto, cum Graecos animadvertisset, voce magna clamavit: "Qui estis homines? Mercatores an praedones?" Tum Ulixes respondit se neque mercatores esse neque praedandi causa venisse; sed e Troja redeuntes vi tempestatum a cursu depulsos esse; oravit etiam ut sibi sine injuria discedere liceret. Tum Polyphemus, nullo dato responso, duo e Graecis manu corripuit et membris eorum divulsis carnem devorare coepit.

Dum haec geruntur, Graecorum animos tantus terror occupavit ut omni spe salutis deposita mortem praesentem exspectarent. At Polyphemus humi prostratus somno se dedit. Quod cum vidisset Ulixes, tantam occasionem rei bene gerendae non amittendam arbitratus, in animo habebat Polyphemum gladio occidere. At cum saxum animadvertisset, quo introitus praeclusus erat, nihil se profecturum intellexit si Polyphemum interfecisset. Tanta enim erat ejus saxi magnitudo, ut ne decem quidem homines movere possent.

Orta luce Polyphemus jam e somno excitatus idem quod superiore die fecit; correptis enim duobus e reliquis viris, carnem eorum sine mora devoravit. Tum cum saxum amovisset, ipse cum

---

10. – 3. specus, *cave*. 4. intro, *enter*. 5. condo, *put away*. 6. monstrum, *monster*. 6. horribilis, *dreadful*. 7. humanus, *human*. 8. gigas, *giant*. 9. frons, *forehead*. 10. Cyclops, a fabulous kind of giant. 12. spelunca, *cavern*. 14. saxum, *stone*. 14. obstruo, *barricade*. 14. ignis, *fire*. 14. accendo, *kindle*. 15. clamo, *shout*. 20. corripio, *seize*. 21. divello, *tear asunder*. 21. devoro, *devour*. 23. praesomnus, *sleep*. 25. occasio, *opportunity*. 26. gladius, *sword*. 31. excito, *arouse*. 33. amoveo, *remove*.

pecore suo progressus est, atque postquam omnes oves exierunt saxum in locum restituit.

Sub vesperum Polyphemus ad specum rediit et eodem modo quo ante cenavit. Tum Ulixes utrem vini prompsit, quam forte secum habebat, et giganti praebuit. Polyphemus, qui numquam antea vinum gustaverat, statim hausit; quod cum fecisset, quaesivit quo nomine Ulixes appellaretur. Ille respondit se Neminem appellari. Quod cum audivisset, Polyphemus, "Hanc tibi gratiam," inquit, "pro tanto beneficio referam; te ultimum omnium devorabo." His dictis, cibo vinoque gravatus, brevi tempore somno oppressus est. Tum Ulixes sociis convocatis, "Habemus," inquit, "quam petimus facultatem." Tum postquam quid fieri vellet ostendit, sudem praeacutam conquirebat. Quam cum repperisset, igni calefecit, atque oculum Polyphemi dum dormit transfodit; quo facto omnes in ultimas speluncae partes se abdiderunt.

At ille subito illo dolore, quod necesse fuit, e somno excitatus, clamorem ingentem sustulit, et dum per speluncam errat, Ulixem manu comprehendere conatur; cum tamen jam omnino caecus esset, nullo modo hoc efficere potuit. Interea reliqui Cyclopes clamore audito undique ad speluncam convenerunt et quid gereretur quaesiverunt. Ille respondit se graviter vulneratum esse. Cum tamen ceteri quaesivissent quis ei vim intulisset, respondit ille Neminem id fecisse. Quibus auditis unus e Cyclopibus "At si nemo," inquit, "te vulneravit, non dubium est quin consilio deorum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hoc supplicio afficiaris." His dictis, arbitrati eum in insaniam incidisse, discesserunt Cyclopes.

At Polyphemus, ubi socios suos abiisse sensit, furore atque amentia impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam invenisset, saxum amovit ut pecus ad agros exiret. Tum ipse in introitu sedit, et ut quaeque ovis ad locum venerat, tergum ejus manibus tractabat, ne Graeci inter oves effugere possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixes, hoc iniit consilium: intellexit enim omnem spem salutis in dolo magis quam in virtute poni.

10.—1. ovis, *sheep*. 2. restituo, *put back*. 3. sub, *towards*. 4. uter, *skin*. 4. promo, *bring out*. 4. forte, *by chance*. 6. haurio, *drink off*. 9. beneficium, *service*. 9. ultimus, *last*. 10. gravatus, *heavy*. 13. praeacutus, *sharpened at the end*. 13. conquiro, *look about for*. 14. calefacio, *heat*. 14. dormio, *sleep*. 14. transfodio, *pierce*. 16. dolor, *pain*. 17. erro, *wander*. 18. caecus, *blind*. 26. in insaniam incido, *become mad*. 28. abeo, *go away*. 28. furor, *rage, frenzy*. 31. sedeo, *sit down*. 32. tracto, *feel*.

Primum tres quas vidit pinguissimas oves delegit; quas cum inter se conexuisset, unum sociorum ventribus earum ita subjecit ut omnino lateret; deinde oves hominem secum ferentes ad portam egit. Id accidit quod fore suspicatus erat. Polyphemus enim, postquam manus tergis earum imposuit, oves exire passus est. Eodem modo omnes suos socios emisit; ipse ultimus evasit.

His rebus ita confectis, Ulixes cum sociis magnopere veritus ne Polyphemus dolum sentiret, ad litus contendit. Quod cum venisset, non satis tutum esse arbitratus si in eo loco maneret, quam celerrime proficisci constituit. Jussit igitur omnes navem conscendere, et ancoris sublatis paulum a litore in altum provectus est. Tum magna voce dixit, "Tu, Polypheme, qui jura hospitii spernis, justam et debitam poenam solvisti." Hac voce audita Polyphemus ira et dolore incensus ad mare se contulit, et ubi intellexit navem paulum e litore remotam esse, saxum ingens manu correptum in eam partem conjecit unde vocem venire sensit. Graeci autem, nullo accepto damno, cursum tenuerunt.

Circe, the Enchantress.

Brevi intermisso spatio insulae cuidam appropinquaverunt, quam Circe, filia Solis, incolebat. Ibi cum navem appulisset, Ulixes in terram frumentandi causa egrediendum esse statuit; cognoverat enim frumentum quod in navi haberet jam deficere. Sociis igitur ad se convocatis quo in loco res esset et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Cum tamen omnes memoria tenerent quam crudelem mortem occubuissent ei qui in fines Cyclopum egressi essent, nemo repertus est qui hoc negotium suscipere vellet. Tandem res ad sortem revocatur, atque Eurylochus cum duobus et viginti sociis proficiscitur. Vix quidem poterant ei qui in navi relicti erant lacrimas tenere; credebant enim se socios suos numquam iterum visuros.

Illi autem aliquantum itineris progressi ad villam quandam pervenerunt summa magnificentia aedificatam. Cujus villae domina, cui nomen erat Circe, Graecos invitavit ut apud se deversarentur. Eurylochus autem insidias suspicatus foris exspectare

---

10.—1. pinguis, *fat*. 2. conecto, *fasten together*. 2. venter, *belly*. 2. subjicio, *place beneath*. 3. lateo, *am hidden*. 5. impono, *put on*. 6. evado, *escape*. 12. sperno, *despise*. 13. debitus, *deserved*. 13. solvo, *pay*. 14. ira, *anger*. 17. damnum, *loss, damage*. 21. deficio, *give out*. 23. crudelis, *cruel*. 23. occumbo, *meet*. 25. ad sortem revocari, *to be decided by lot*. 27. lacrima, *tear*. 29. villa, *country-house*. 30. magnificentia, *splendor*. 30. domina, *mistress*. 31. deversor, *stay*. 32. foris, *outside* (the door).

constituit; reliqui rei novitate adducti introierunt atque convivium magnificum invenerunt omnibus rebus instructum. At Circe vinum medicamento quodam miscuerat; quod cum illi bibissent, gravi sopore omnes subito oppressi sunt. Tum Circe baculo aureo quem gerebat capita eorum tetigit; quo facto omnes in porcos statim conversi sunt. Interea Eurylochus ignarus quid gereretur, ad ostium sedebat; postquam tamen ad solis occasum frustra exspectavit, solus ad navem reverti constituit. At Ulixes, cum intellexisset socios suos in periculo versari, Eurylocho imperavit ut sine mora viam ad istam domum monstraret. Ille tamen multis cum lacrimis Ulixem complexus obsecrare coepit ne in tantum periculum se committeret; si quid gravius ei accidisset, omnium salutem in summo discrimine fore. Ulixes autem respondit se neminem invitum secum adducturum; ei licere, si mallet, in navi manere; se ipsum sine ullo auxilio rem suscepturum. Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, e navi desiluit.

Aliquantum itineris progressus, subito adulescentem quendam conspicatus est, forma pulcherrima, aureum baculum manu gerentem. Hic "Quo proficiscoris?" inquit, "Nonne scis amicos tuos in Circes domu inclusos esse, in porcos conversos? Num vis ipse in eandem calamitatem venire?" Ulixes, simul atque vocem audivit, deum Mercurium agnovit; nullis tamen precibus ab instituto consilio deterreri potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sensisset, herbam quandam ei dedit, quam contra carmina plurimum valere dicebat.

Brevi intermisso spatio, Ulixes ad omnia pericula subeunda paratus ad villam pervenit atque ab ipsa Circe benigne exceptus est. Omnia eodem modo atque antea facta sunt. Servi panem et obsonia ei apposuerunt. Mox, ubi cenasset, Circe poculum aureum vino repletum dedit. Ille, etsi suspicatus est venenum sibi paratum esse, poculum exhausit. Quo facto Circe, postquam caput ejus baculo tetigit, ea verba locuta est quibus socios ejus antea in

---

10.—1. introeo, *enter*. 1. convivium, *banquet*. 2. magnifi-us, *sumptuous*. 3. medicamentum, *drug*. 3. misceo, *mix*. 3. bibo, *drink*. 4. sopor, *sleep*. 4. baculum, *wand*. 5. porcus, *pig, swine*. 6. converto, *turn*. 6. ignarus, *not knowing*. 7. ostium, *door*. 10. monstro, *point out*. 11. complector, *embrace*. 11. obsecro, *beg, beseech*. 12. committo, *put*. 12. gravius, *serious*. 13. discrimen, *peril*. 14. malo, *prefer*. 18. pulcher, *comely, handsome*. 19. scio, *know*. 20. includo, *imprison*. 21. calamitas, *mishap*. 22. Mercurius, *Mercury*, the messenger of the gods. 22. agnosco, *recognize*. 24. herba, *plant*. 24. carmen, *incantation*. 26. subeo, *undergo, encounter*. 27. benigne, *cordially*. 27. excipio, *welcome*. 29. appono, *set before*, 29. poculum, *goblet*. 30. repleo, *fill*. 31. exhaurio, *drain*. 32. loquor, *speak*.

porcos converterat. Res tamen aliter evenit atque illa speraverat. Tanta enim vis erat ejus herbae quam dederat Mercurius ut neque venenum neque verba quicquam efficere posset. Tum Circe multis cum lacrimis eum obsecrare coepit ne interficeret.

Ulixes autem, ubi animadvertit eam timore perterritam esse, postulavit ut socios sine mora in speciem pristinam reduceret; nisi id factum esset, ostendit se statim cum cruciatu necaturum. At Circe graviter his rebus commota ad pedes ejus se projecit et multis cum lacrimis jurejurando confirmavit se quae imperasset omnia facturam. Ita sociis receptis, nuntium ad navem misit qui reliquis Graecis quae facta essent nuntiaret.

Atque multa alia pericula Ulixi subeunda erant priusquam in patriam suam perveniret; quae tamen longum est omnia enumerare.—(*Adapted from Ritchie, Fabulae Faciles.*)

11. Hannibal's Youth.

Illud bellum maxime omnium erat memorabile, quae umquam gesta sunt, quod Hannibale duce Carthaginienses cum populo Romano gesserunt. Numquam enim validiores opibus ullae inter se civitates gentesque contulerunt arma; atque odiis prope majoribus certarunt quam viribus. Fama est etiam Hannibalem annorum ferme novem, pueriliter blandientem patri Hamilcari, ut duceretur in Hispaniam, altaribus admotum esse ac jurejurando adactum, se cum primum posset hostem foro populo Romano. Si autem diutius vixisset, Hamilcare duce Poeni arma Italiae illaturi erant; sed mors Hamilcaris opportuna et pueritia Hannibalis distulerunt bellum. Tum Hasdrubal octo ferme annos imperium obtinuit, atque, plura consilio quam vi gerens, rem Carthaginiensem auxit. Is Hannibalem adulescentem litteris ad se arcessivit.

Missus Hannibal in Hispaniam primo statim adventu omnem exercitum in se convertit; Hamilcarem juvenem redditum sibi veteres milites credebant. Numquam ingenium idem ad res diversissimas, parendum atque imperandum, habilius fuit. Itaque

10.—1. spero, *hope, expect.* 2. vis, *power, virtue.* 8. commoveo, *alarm.*

11.—15. memorabilis, *famous.* 17. validus, *powerful.* 18. arma confero, *engage in war.* 19. certo, *contend.* 20. ferme, *about.* 20. pueriliter, *in boyish fashion.* 20. blandior, *coax* (with dat.). 21. altaria, *altar.* 21. admoveo, *bring up to.* 22. adigo, *bind.* 24. pueritia, *boyhood.* 25. differo, *postpone.* 26. res, *power.* 29. converto, *attract the attention of.* 29. juvenis, *young man.* 30. ingenium, *mind, genius.* 31. diversus, *different.* 31. habilis, *fitted.*

haud facile discerneres, utrum imperatori an exercitui carior esset, neque Hasdrubal alium quemquam praeficere malebat, ubi quid fortiter ac strenue agendum esset, neque milites alio duce plus confidebant aut audebant.

Plurimum audaciae ad pericula capessenda, plurimum consilii inter ipsa pericula erat. Nullo labore aut corpus fatigari aut animus vinci poterat. Equitum peditumque idem longe primus erat; princeps in proelium ibat, ultimus conserto proelio excedebat. Has tantas viri virtutes ingentia vitia aequabant, inhumana crudelitas, perfidia plus quam Punica, nihil veri, nullus deorum metus, nulla religio.

11.—1. haud, *not*. 1. discerno, *decide*. 1. utrum, *whether*. 1. carus, *dear*. 2. malo, *prefer*. 3. strenue, *vigorously*. 5. audacia, *boldness*. 6. fatigo, *weary*. 8. princeps, *foremost*. 9. aequo, *equal*. 9. inhumanus, *savage, inhuman*. 10. crudelitas, *cruelty*. 10. Punicus, *Punic, Carthaginian*.

SUPPLEMENTARY CHAPTER.

The Roman Mode of Reckoning Time.

1. After the reform of the calendar by Julius Cæsar, in B.C. 46, the Roman year consisted of 365 days (in leap year, 366), the months containing the same number of days respectively as the English months.

2. The day of the month was calculated in the following manner:—Three points were taken in the month, the Calends (*Kalendae*), the Ides (*Īdūs*), and the Nones (*Nōnae*), which the names[1] of the months qualified adjectively, and from these three points respectively the date was calculated *backward*.

3. The Calends fell in every case on the first of the month; in March, May, July and October, the Ides were on the fifteenth and the Nones on the seventh; in the other months, the Ides came on the thirteenth and the Nones on the fifth. Any day between the Calends and the Nones was reckoned such and such a day before the Nones; any day between the Nones and the Ides such and such a day before the Ides, and any day after the Ides such and such a day before the Calends of the following month.

1. These names are Jānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Jūnius, Quintīlis (*or* Jūlius), Sextīlis (*or* Augustus), September, Octōber, November and December. The names *Quintilis, fifth month, Sextilis, sixth month, September, seventh month*, etc., are explained by the fact that the Roman year originally began with March.

4. From these three dates the other days were reckoned inclusively, that is, both days were counted in, and consequently to obtain the corresponding English date we must subtract the given day from the day on which the Nones or Ides fall increased by one, and as the Calends fall within the next month, if the day come before that date, we must add two to the last day of the month and then subtract.

5. The Romans had no *second day before* any of these three fixed points. The day before was called *prīdiē Kalendās* (or *Kalendārum*), *prīdiē Nōnās*, *prīdiē Īdūs*. The day before that was called the *third* day before, being the *second* according to our mode of reckoning.

6. The following examples will illustrate these calculations:

July 10th = (15 + 1-10) = **VI. Id. Jul.**
Feb. 15th = (28 + 2-15) = **XV. Kal. Mart.**
June 3rd = (5 + 1-3) = **III. Non. Jun.**
May 14th = (15 + 1-14) = **Prīdiē Id. Mai.**
Sept. 13th = **Īdibus Septembribus.**

7. The Roman dates given in the above section are somewhat contracted. For example, *VI. Id. Jul.* is strictly *diē sextō ante Īdūs Jūliās*, *diē* and *ante* being omitted, the numeral *VI.* being substituted for *sextō* and the other words abbreviated.

Frequently we find it in the form *a.d. VI. Id. Jul.*, that is *ante diem sextum Īdūs Jūliās*, where *diē sextō*, coming between the preposition and its object, is attracted into the accusative *diem sextum*. Such expressions are looked upon as single words and may be governed by other prepositions; as, *They fix their departure for the 12th of July:* **Profectiōnem in a.d. IV. Id. Jul. cōnfirmant.**

8. The additional day in leap year was inserted after February 23rd, the 24th (*i.e.*, *VI. Kal. Mart.*) being reckoned twice and in the second case of occurrence called *bis sextus;* whence the year itself was called *bisextilis*, from which we have our word *bissextile.*

9. The Romans reckoned their time from the building of the city (Rome), the date of which is fixed at 753 B.C., and to reduce the Roman date to the corresponding year before Christ, the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754, and *vice versa;* as, *Cicero delivered an oration against Catiline on November 8th, B.C. 63:* **Cicerō in Catilīnam VI. Id. Nov. A.U.C. DCXCI. ōrātiōnem habuit.** (A.U.C. = *ab urbe conditā*, or *annō urbis conditae.*) If the year specified is written out in full, the ordinal numerals agreeing with *annō* are used; as, **Annō sescentēsimō nōnāgēsimō prīmō.**

10. Any date in our era may be calculated from the birth of Christ with or without *Annō Dominī;* as, *Queen Victoria ascended the throne June 20th, 1837:* **Victōria Rēgīna rēgnum excēpit XII. Kal. Jul. MDCCCXXXVII.**

EXPLANATORY NOTES TO THE VOCABULARY.

The quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. Vowels not marked are to be considered short by nature.

The following abbreviations are used:

abl.	*ablative.*	n. or neut.	*neuter.*
acc.	*accusative.*	part.	*participle.*
adj.	*adjective.*	pass.	*passive.*
adv.	*adverb.*	perf.	*perfect.*
conj.	*conjunction.*	plur.	*plural.*
dat.	*dative.*	prep.	*preposition.*
f. or fem.	*feminine.*	pres.	*present.*
gen.	*genitive.*	pron.	*pronoun.*
indecl.	*indeclinable.*	sing.	*singular.*
interj.	*interjection.*	subst.	*substantive.*
m. or masc.	*masculine.*	w.	*with.*

PART VI.

VOCABULARIES AND INDEX.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A

A, *an abbreviation for* **Aulus.**

ā, ab, 1. *prep. with abl.* (**ā** *before consonants;* **ab** *before vowels and some consonants*), away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in, against. 2. *adv.* off.

ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, hide, conceal.

ab-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead off, remove; carry off.

abiēs, -etis, F., fir.

ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw away, throw to one side (*as of no value*).

absēns, -entis, absent, away, being away.

absimilis, e, unlike.

ab-sistō, ere, -stitī, keep away (*from*).

abstinentia, ae, F., self-restraint, unselfishness, integrity.

abstulī, *from* **auferō.**

absum, abesse, āfuī, be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; be away, lack, be lacking.

ac (*shorter form for* **atque**, *used only before consonants*), and, and further; *in comparisons*, as, than.

ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, approach, draw near, come up, go to; be added.

acceptus, a, um, *adj.* (*really perf. part. pass. of* **accipiō**), welcome, acceptable.

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, befall, happen, occur; turn out.

ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; hear.

accubō, āre, āvī, ātum, recline at table.

ac-currō, ere, -currī (**-cucurrī**), run up.

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, charge, accuse.

ācer, cris, cre, sharp, shrewd, eager.

acerbus, a, um, sour.

ācerrimē, *from* **ācriter.**

Achillās, ae, M., Achillas, *an Egyptian officer.*

aciēs, ēī, F., edge, line, line of battle; pitched battle, battle, the field.

ac-quiēscō, ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, die, *lit.* '*come to rest*'; *cf. our expressions,* '*rest from his labors,*' '*pass to his rest.*'

ācriter, *adv.* (**ācrius, ācerrimē**), fiercely, hotly, desperately; eagerly; actively; rigorously.

āctuārius, a, um, light, swift.

āctus, a, um, *from* **agō.**

acūtus, a, um, sharp, pointed.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, towards,

against; with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among; before; until.

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, equal.

ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, add.

ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, bring; bring in, conduct; induce, influence, prompt, force.

adēmptus, a, um, *from* **adimō.**

adeō, *adv.,* to such a degree, so, so much, so very, such a, so . . . a, so much as.

ad-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, go to, advance; attack; visit; approach.

adeptus, a, um, *from* **adipiscor.**

adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, ride up.

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, call in, bring along, bring in; use, employ.

adhortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage, cheer.

ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, hurl, cast.

ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, take away, destroy.

ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum, obtain, gain, acquire.

aditus, ūs, M., approach, advance, access, means of approach, right of approaching, admittance.

ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw up.

ad-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, join to, unite, add.

ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, assist, help; aid; be of assistance to, further.

Admētus, ī, M., Admetus, *a king of the Molossians in Epirus.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry out, execute, attend to, manage.

admīror, ārī, ātus sum, wonder, wonder at, admire, be astonished, be surprised.

ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, allow, incur; commit; let go.

admodum, *adv.,* very, very much, exceedingly, in a high degree.

admoneō, ēre, uī, itum, advise, warn.

ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, attack, assault.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, be near at hand, be present.

ad-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, take with (*one's self*).

adulēscēns, -entis, M., young man; the younger.

adulēscentia, ae, F., youth.

adventus, ūs, M., arrival, approach, coming.

adversārius, ī, M., opponent, enemy.

adversum *or* **adversus,** *prep. with acc.,* against.

adversus, a, um, opposite, facing, in front; unsuccessful; **proelium adversum,** defeat, repulse.

ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, turn towards; **animum advertō,** observe, notice.

advocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call to, summon to.

advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, fly to, fly up; rush upon, fall upon.

aedēs, is, F. (*sing.*), temple; (*plur.*), house.

aedificium, ī, N., building.

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, build, construct, arrange.

Aeduus, ī, M., an Æduan; *in plur.,* the Ædui, *a tribe in the centre of Gaul.*

aegrē, *adv.* (**aegrius, aegerrimē**), scarcely, with difficulty.

Aegyptus, ī, F., Egypt.

Aemilius, ī, 1. Marcus Æmilius Paulus, *consul in* 255 *B.C.;*

2. Lucius Æmilius Paulus, *consul in* 216 *B.C.*; 3. Lucius Æmilius Paulus, *consul in* 182 *B.C.*

aēneus, a, um, bronze, of bronze, copper.

aequālis, e, of the same age, contemporary; *as noun*, **aequālis, is**, M., contemporary, coeval.

aequē, *adv.*, equally.

aequinoctium, I, N., equinox.

aequiperō, āre, āvī, ātum, equal, rival.

aequitās, -tātis, F., fairness, justice, sense of justice.

aequus, a, um, fair, just, right, reasonable, proper; level, favorable.

aerārium, I, N., treasury.

aes, aeris, N., bronze, copper; money.

aestās, -tātis, F., summer.

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, estimate, assess; reckon; regard.

aestus, ūs, M., tide.

aetās, -tātis, F., age, years, time.

Āfer, Āfrī, M., an African.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, bring, cause.

af-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, visit with; affect (*often to be rendered by* cause, inflict, impose); *in pass.*, be troubled, be attacked.

affirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, assert, declare.

afflictō, āre, āvī, ātum, buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.

afflictus, a, um, *from* **affligō**.

af-fligō, ere, -flixī, -flictum, strike down, shatter, damage, wreck.

affore, *fut. inf. of* **adsum**.

Afrānius, I, M., Lucius Afranius, *a general of Pompey in Spain.*

Āfrica, ae, F., Africa, *usually of the vicinity of Carthage only, Libya.*

Āfricus, I, M., Africus, *the south west wind.*

ager, agrī, M., field, land, country, territory.

agger, -eris, M., mound, rampart, earthwork, agger.

ag-gredior, I, -gressus sum, attack.

aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, attach, join.

agilis, e, active.

agmen, -minis, N., army on the march, line of march, column, army; **primum agmen**, the van; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, drive; do, plan, carry on; confer; **grātiās agō**, thank; **id agō**, strive.

agricola, ae, M., husbandman, farmer, peasant.

agricultūra, ae, F., agriculture, tilling the land, farming.

āiō, *defective verb*, say, affirm, declare.

āla, ae, F., wing.

alacritās, -tātis, F., eagerness, ardor.

albus, a, um, white.

Alexander, drī, M., Alexander the Great, *king of Macedonia.*

Alexandrīa, ae, F., Alexandria, *a city on the north coast of Egypt.*

aliās, *adv.*, on other occasions.

aliēnus, a, um, of another, of others, another's; unfavorable, unsuitable, disadvantageous.

aliō, *adv.*, in a different direction, to a different object.

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time.

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time; at last, at length.

aliquantus, a, um, some; *neut. as subst.*, some portion, a considerable part.

aliquī, qua, quod, some.

aliquis, quid, some one, something.

aliquot, *adj. indeclinable*, several, some, a few.

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.

alius, a, ud, other, another; different; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . others.

allātus, a, um, *from* **afferō**.

Allia, ae, F., the Allia, *a river north of Rome.*

Allobrogēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Allobroges, *a tribe near the Rhone.*

alō, ere, aluī, altum (alitum), nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster.

Alpēs, ium, F. *plur.*, the Alps.

Alpicī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, dwellers in the Alps, Alpine tribes.

alter, era, erum, the other; the one, another (*of two*); second; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.

altitūdō, -dinis, F., depth; height.

altus, a, um, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as subst.*, **altum, i**, the deep, deep water, the sea.

alveus, i, M., channel, bed (*of river*).

amābilis, e, lovable.

amanter, *adv.*, lovingly, affectionately.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Ambivariti, *a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

ambulō, āre, āvī, ātum, walk.

āmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.

amīcē, *adv.*, in a friendly manner.

amīcitia, ae, F., friendship, alliance.

amīcus, a, um, friendly.

amīcus, i, M., friend, ally.

āmissus, a, um, from **āmittō**.

ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, lose.

amō, āre, āvī, ātum, love.

amphora, ae, F., wine-jar, two-handled jar, amphora.

am-plector, ī, -plexus sum, embrace, grasp.

amplitūdō, -dinis, F., size, extent, greatness.

amplius, *adv.*, *comparative of* **amplē**, more, further; more than.

amplus, a, um, large, great, numerous; illustrious, noble.

an, *conj.*, or, *introducing the second part of a double question*; whether.

Ancalitēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Ancalites, *a tribe in Britain.*

an-ceps, -cipitis, double, two-fold; doubtful.

ancilla, ae, F., maidservant.

ancora, ae, F., anchor.

angulus, i, M., corner, angle.

angustē, *adv.*, closely.

angustiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, narrows, straits; narrow defile.

angustus, a, um, narrow, small, confined, contracted, steep.

anima, ae, F., life.

animadver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, notice, observe, perceive.

animal, -ālis, N., animal.

animus, i, M., soul, mind, heart, spirit, will, feelings, courage, character, ability, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.

annālis, is, M., *sc.* **liber**, historical work, chronicles.

annōtinus, a, um, of the year before.

annus, **ī**, M., year.

annuus, **a**, **um**, a year's; for a year.

ānser, **-eris**, M., goose.

ante, 1. *adv.*, before, formerly, previously; above. 2. *prep. with acc.*, before.

anteā, *adv.*, before, previously.

ante-cēdō, **ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, go before, go in advance, precede; surpass, excel.

ante-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, place before, consider superior.

ante-pōnō, **ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, place before, regard of more importance than.

ante-stō, **-stāre**, **-stetī**, stand before, surpass, be superior to, excel.

Antiochus, **ī**, M., Antiochus, *king of Syria*, 223-187 *B.C.*

antīquus, **a**, **um**, old, ancient.

Ap., *an abbreviation for* **Appius**.

aper-iō, **īre**, **-uī**, **-tum**, open; disclose, reveal.

apertus, **a**, **um**, *adj.* (*really perf. part. pass. of* **aperiō**), open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear, unobstructed.

Apoll-ō, **-inis**, M., Apollo, *the god of the sun, prophecy, healing and music; his chief shrine was at Delphi.*

appāreō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, come in sight, appear.

apparō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, make ready, prepare.

appellō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, call, name; accost, address.

ap-pellō, **ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsum**, bring to land; *pass.*, land, put in.

Appenninus, **ī**, M., the Appenines, *a range of mountains in Italy.*

appet-ō, **ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, strive after, seek, try to get.

Appius, **ī**, M., Appius, *a Roman prenomen.*

applicō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, attach.

ap-pōnō, **ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, set before one, serve.

apportō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, bring.

approbō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, approve.

appropinquō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, approach, draw near, be near (*with dat.*).

aptus, **a**, **um**, suited, suitable, fitted.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, with, among, near, before, in the presence of; at the house of; in the writings of; on.

Āpūlia, **ae**, F., Apulia, *a district in south-eastern Italy.*

Āpulus, **ī**, M., an Apulian.

aqua, **ae**, F., water.

aquātīō, **-ōnis**, F., getting *or* fetching water.

aquila, **ae**, F., eagle, *the ensign or standard of a Roman legion.*

Aquītānia, **ae**, F., Aquitania, *the south-western part of Gaul.*

Aquītānus, **ī**, M., an Aquitanian; *in plur.* the Aquitani.

āra, **ae**, F., altar.

Ar-ar, **-aris**, M., the Arar, *a river in Gaul.*

arbiter, **trī**, M., arbitrator.

arbitrium, **ī**, N., pleasure, will, judgment.

arbitror, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, think, consider, judge.

arbor, **-oris**, F., tree.

arcess-ō, **ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, summon, send for.

Arduenna, **ae**, F., Ardennes, *a forest in the north-east of Gaul.*

arduus, **a**, **um**, steep, difficult.

argentum, **ī**, N., silver.

Argī, **ōrum**, M. *plur.*, *see* **Argos**.

Argos, N. (*only nom. and acc.*), *usually in the form* **Argī**,

ōrum, M. *plur.*, Argos, *a city in the north-eastern Peloponnesus.*

āridus, a, um, dry; *neut.*, **āridum, ī**, *as subst.*, dry land, solid ground.

Ariovistus, ī, M., Ariovistus, *a chief of the Germans.*

Aristidēs, is, M., Aristides, *a famous Athenian.*

arma, ōrum, N. *plur.*, arms; force of arms; war.

armāmenta, ōrum, N. *plur.*, tackling, tackle, rigging.

armātī, ōrum, M. *plur. of perf. part. pass. of* **armō**, armed men.

Arminius, ī, M., Arminius, *a German prince.*

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, arm, equip; rouse, incite; *perf. part. pass.*, armed, in arms, with one's arms.

ar-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize, catch up.

ars, artis, F., art, skill.

Artaxerxēs, is, M., Artaxerxes, *surnamed Longimanus* ('*Long-hand*'), *king of Persia* 465-425 *B.C.*

Artemisium, ī, N., Artemisium, *a promontory at the northern end of the island of Eubœa.*

arx, arcis, F., citadel; *in Athens*, the Acropolis; *in Rome*, the Capitol.

a-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, mount, climb, ascend; embark upon, go on board; (*of a carriage*) get into.

ascēnsus, ūs, M., ascent.

Asia, ae, F., Asia, Asia Minor.

aspectus, ūs, M., appearance.

asper, era, erum, rugged, rough.

a-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see.

assuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, accustom, train.

astu, N., *indeclinable*, city; *usually* Athens.

at, *conj.*, but, but yet.

Athēnae, ārum, F. *plur.*, Athens, *the capital of Attica and chief city of Greece.*

Athēniēnsis, e, *adj.*, Athenian; *masc. as subst.*, an Athenian.

atque, *conj.*, and, and further, and I may say; *in comparisons*, than, as.

Atre-bas, -batis, M., an Atrebatian; *in plur.*, the Atrebates, *a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.*

Atrius, ī, M., Quintus Atrius, *an officer of Cæsar's.*

Attica, ae, F., Attica, *the district of Greece of which Athens was the capital.*

Atticus, ī, M., Titus Pomponius Atticus, *a Roman historian, a great friend of Cicero and Nepos.*

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch; border on; reach.

attrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign, give.

auctor, -ōris, M., leader, adviser; an authority, author, historian.

auctōritās, -tātis, F., influence, weight, prestige; power.

audācia, ae, F., daring.

audācter, *adv.*, boldly, fearlessly.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare, venture, attempt.

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, hear, listen to; hear of.

audītiō, -ōnis, F., hearsay, rumor.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, increase, strengthen.

Augustus, ī, M., Augustus, *the first emperor of Rome.*

Aulus, ī, M., Aulus, *a Roman prænomen.*

Aurēlius, I, M., C. Aurelius Cotta, *consul in* 200 *B.C.*

aureus, a, um, of gold; golden.

aurīga, ae, M., charioteer.

auris, is, F., ear.

aurum, I, N., gold, money.

Aurunculēius, I, M., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

ausus, a, um, *from* **audeō.**

aut, *conj.*, or, or else; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, but, whereas, while; moreover, now, however, furthermore, again.

autumnus, I, M., autumn.

auxilior, ārī, ātus sum, give aid, help, assist.

auxilium, I, N., aid, help, assistance; *in plur.*, auxiliaries, reinforcements.

Avaricum, I, N., Avaricum, *a town in Gaul.*

avāritia, ae, F., avarice, greed, covetousness.

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn aside.

avidē, *adv.*, eagerly.

aviditās, -tātis, F., eagerness, greed.

avis, is, F., bird.

avus, I, M., grandfather.

Axona, ae, F., Axona, *a river in Gaul.*

B

Babylōn, -ōnis, F., Babylon, *a city on the Euphrates.*

Babylōnius, I, M., a Babylonian.

Bæbius, I, M., Cn. Bæbius Tamphilus *and* M. Bæbius Tamphilus, *consuls in* 182 *and* 181 *B.C. respectively.*

balineum, I, N., bath.

barbarus, a, um, foreign; uncivilized, rude, barbarian.

barbarus, I, M., a barbarian, a native; *in Them.*, 4, 5, the Persian.

barbātus, a, um, bearded; *masc. as subst.*, Long-beard (*of a goat*).

Batāvī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Batavians, *a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.*

beātus, a, um, fortunate, happy.

Belgae, ārum, M. *plur.*, the Belgians, *a people occupying the north-east of Gaul.*

Belgium, I, N., Belgium, *the country of the Belgæ.*

bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.

bellō, āre, āvī, ātum, make war, carry on war, fight.

Bellovacī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Bellovaci, *a tribe in Gaul.*

bellum, I, N., war.

bellus, a, um, pretty, lovely.

bene, *adv. of* **bonus (melius, optimē),** well.

Bibrocī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Bibroci, *a tribe of Britain.*

Bibulus, I, M., Lucius Bibulus, *consul in* 59 *B.C.*

bīduum, I, N., the space of two days, two days' time.

bīnī, ae, a, two by two, two at a time, two each.

bis, *adv.*, twice.

Bithȳnia, ae, F., Bithynia, *a country on the north-west coast of Asia Minor.*

Bithȳnī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Bithynians.

Blithō, -ōnis, M., Publius Sulpicius Blitho, *a Roman historian.*

Boiī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Boii, *a tribe of German origin.*

bonitās, -tātis, F., goodness, excellence.

bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), good; safe; N. *plur. as subst.*, **bona, ōrum,** goods, property; services.

bōs, bovis, M. *and* F., ox, cow.
Brennus, ī, M., Brennus, *a leader of the Gauls.*
brevis, e, short; *as adv.* **brevī** (*for* **brevī tempore**), in a short time, shortly, presently, quickly.
Britannia, ae, F., Britain.
Britannicus, a, um, of Britain, of *or* with the Britons.
Britannus, ī, M., a Briton.
brūma, ae, F., the winter solstice; winter.
Bruttiī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Bruttii, *a people in the south of Italy.*
Būcephala, ae, F., Bucephala, *a town in India.*
Būcephalus, ī, M., Bucephalus, *Alexander the Great's war-horse.*

C

C., *an abbreviation for* **Cāius.**
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall, be slain.
cādūceus, ī, M., a herald's staff.
caedēs, is, F., slaughter.
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesum, slay, kill.
caelum, ī, N., heaven.
caerimōnia, ae, F., religious observance, reverence.
caeruleus, a, um, blue, dark blue.
Caesar, aris, M., 1. Caius Julius Cæsar, *a Roman general.* 2. Lucius Cæsar, *a lieutenant with Cæsar.*
Cāius, ī, M., Caius, *a Roman prænomen.*
calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster, reverse.
calceus, ī, M., shoe.
callidē, *adv.*, skilfully, cleverly, shrewdly.
calliditās, -tātis, F., cunning, trickery.
callidus, a, um, skilful, shrewd, cunning, sagacious.
Campānia, ae, F., Campania, *a district in Italy, south of Rome.*
campus, ī, M., field, plain; the open.
candidus, a, um, bright, shining, white.
canis, is, M. *and* F., dog.
Cannae, ārum, F. *plur.*, Cannæ, *a town of Apulia.*
Cannēnsis, e, of Cannæ.
Cantium, ī, N., Kent, *in the south-east of England.*
caper, prī, M., goat.
capess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, take part in, undertake.
capillus, ī, M., hair.
capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, take, catch, seize, capture, take prisoner; get, occupy, reach; move, affect; form, adopt; select.
Capitōlium, ī, N., the Capitol, *the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome.*
captīvus, ī, M., captive, prisoner.
captus, ūs, M., capacity, nature, standard, notions.
Capua, ae, F., Capua, *the chief city of Campania in Italy.*
cap-ut, -itis, N., head; person; capital, chief city; *of a river,* mouth.
careō, ēre, uī, itum, be without, be free from, *with abl.*
carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat.
carrus, ī, M., cart, wagon.
Carthāginiēnsis, is, M., a Carthaginian.
Carthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, *a city in northern Africa, on the Mediterranean.*
cārus, a, um, dear; valuable.
Carvilius, ī, M., Carvilius, *a king ruling in Kent.*
casa, ae, F., hut.

Cassī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Cassi, *a tribe in Britain.*

Cassivellaunus, I, M., Cassivellaunus (*also written* Cassivellaunus), *a British chief.*

castellum, I, N., fortress, fort, stronghold; fortified dwelling.

Casticus, I, M., Casticus, *a chief of the Sequani.*

castra, ōrum, N. *plur.*, camp, encampment.

cāsus, ūs, M., fall; accident, chance; emergency; misfortune, disaster.

catēna, ae, F., chain.

causa, ae, F., cause, reason; pretext, excuse; position, situation; *in the abl. sing. with a gen. preceding*, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard against, beware of.

cecidī, *from* **cadō.**

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, retreat, give way, retire; yield.

celer, eris, ere, swift, speedy, rapid, sudden.

celeritās, -tātis, F., swiftness, speed, rapidity, quickness.

celeriter, *adv.* (**celerius, celerrimē**), swiftly, quickly, rapidly.

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, hide, conceal.

celsus, a, um, tall.

cēna, ae, F., dinner.

Cenimāgnī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Cenimagni, *a tribe of Britain.*

cēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, dine.

Centēnius, I, M., Caius Centenius, *a Roman general.*

centum, a hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion, *an officer in the Roman army.*

cēpī, *from* **capiō.**

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, perceive, behold, see.

certāmen, -minis, N., contest, struggle, battle.

certē, *adv.*, certainly; at least.

certus, a, um, certain, sure, fixed, specified, exact; **certiōrem facere,** inform.

cervix, -icis, F., neck.

cessī, *from* **cēdō.**

cēterī, ae, a, the other, the others, the rest of.

Cethēgus, I, M., P. Cornelius Cethegus, *consul in* 181 *B.C.*

cibus, I, M., food, provisions; meal.

Cicerō, -ōnis, M., Cicero, *a Roman name.*

Cingetorix, -igis, M., Cingetorix, 1. *a chief of the Treveri;* 2. *a king of Kent.*

cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, surround.

circā, *prep. with acc.*, around, near.

circiter, *adv.*, about, nearly.

circuitus, *perf. part. pass. of* **circumeō.**

circuitus, ūs, M., circumference.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, surround, invest.

circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead around.

circum-eō, -īrē, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *or* **circuitum,** go around, surround; make a tour of, visit, make the round of.

circum-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, cast around.

circum-sedeō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, encamp about.

circumsiliō, īre, hop about.

circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, surround, crowd around.

circum-stō, stāre, -stetī, stand around, surround.

circum-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround, outflank.

cis, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.

citerior, ius, *adj.* (*comparative*), hither, nearer.
citō, *adv.* (**citius, citissimē**), quickly, swiftly, rapidly.
citō, āre, āvī, ātum, hasten; summon; *perf. part. pass.*, **citātus,** *as adj.*, swift, at full speed.
citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.
cīvis, is, M. *or* F., citizen, fellow-citizen.
cīvitās, -tātis, F., state, country.
clādēs, is, F., defeat, disaster.
clam, *adv.*, secretly.
clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum, cry out, keep shouting.
clāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, cry, call out.
clāmor, -ōris, M., shouting, outcry.
clandestīnus, a, um, secret.
clārus, a, um, celebrated.
classiārii, ōrum, M. *plur.*, seamen; sailors, naval forces.
classicum, i, N., trumpet-call (*for battle*).
classis, is, F., fleet.
Clastidium, i, N., Clastidium, *a town of Cisalpine Gaul.*
Claudius, i, M., 1. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, *consul in* 208 *B.C.* 2. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, *son of the preceding, consul in* 196 *B.C.* 3. Appius Claudius, *consul in* 54 *B.C.*
claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, close; surround, hem in, enclose; shut in, imprison.
clāva, ae, F., club.
clīēns, -entis, M., vassal, dependant, retainer.
clīvus, i, M., hill, slope.
Clūsīnus, a, um, of Clusium, *a city in Etruria.*
Cn., *an abbreviation for* **Cnaeus.**
Cnaeus, i, M., Cnaeus, *a Roman prænomen.*
concervō, āre, āvī, ātum, heap up, collect.
coāctus, a, um, *from* **cōgō.**
Cocles, -itis, M., Cocles, Horatius Cocles, *a famous Roman hero.*
coēgī, *from* **cōgō.**
coepī, isse, coeptus sum, began, have begun.
coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, restrain, check.
cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, consider, think.
cōgnātiō, -ōnis, F., relationship, connections.
cōgnōmen, -minis, N., surname, family name.
cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, perceive, learn, find out, discover, ascertain, become acquainted with; inquire into; *in perf. tenses*, know, be aware.
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, gather, get together; compel, force, constrain.
co-hors, -hortis, F., cohort, company, *one-tenth of a legion.*
cohortātiō, -ōnis, F., encouragement; speech, harangue.
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage, urge.
collabe-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum, be ruined, be overthrown.
collātus, a, um, *from* **cōnferō.**
collaudō, āre, āvī, ātum, praise, commend highly.
collēga, ae, M., associate, colleague.
col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, collect; **sē colligere,** rally.
collis, is, M., hill.
collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, place, station; arrange, stow; give in marriage.
colloquium, i, N., conference, interview.
col-loquor, i, -locūtus sum, converse, confer, discuss.
collum, i, N., neck.

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, till, cultivate; cherish, regard, venerate, reverence, esteem.

color, -ōris, M., color.

columba, ae, F., dove.

coma, ae, F., hair; foliage, leaves.

com-edō, ere, -ēdī, -ēsum, eat.

comitor, ārī, ātus sum, accompany, follow.

commeātus, ūs, M., supplies, provisions; passage, trip.

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum, mention, relate, state, tell.

commendō, āre, āvī, ātum, commend, commit, entrust.

com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, join; do; trust, entrust, put trust in; *with* **proelium**, begin, engage.

Commius, I, M., Commius, *a king of the Atrebates.*

commodē, *adv.*, satisfactorily, easily, to advantage; well, fluently, effectively.

commodus, a, um, suitable, favorable; *neut. as subst.*, **commodum, I**, advantage, convenience.

commoror, ārī, ātus sum, stay, delay, wait.

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, disturb, alarm, agitate, stir, affect, arouse.

commūnicō, āre, āvī, ātum, communicate, share; announce.

commūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, fortify.

commūnis, e, common, general, concerted; joint, united, of all.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., change, turn.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, provide, procure, get, make ready; raise, collect; compare.

com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive, gather.

com-perīō, īre, -perī, -pertum, learn, find out, discover, hear of.

com-plector, I, -plexus sum, embrace.

compl-eō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill, fill up; man.

complexus, ūs, M., embrace.

complūrēs, a (*gen.* **-ium**), several, many, a great many.

com-pōnō, ere, -posuī, positum, settle, conclude; **bellum compōnere**, end a war by treaty, make peace.

comportō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring in, collect.

compre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, catch, capture.

comprobō, āre, āvī, ātum, ratify, sanction, approve.

compulī, compulsus, *from* **compellō**.

cōnātum, I, N., attempt, undertaking.

con-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, grant, allow, permit; yield; depart, withdraw.

con-cidō, ere, -cidī, fall; fall dead, be slain.

con-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down, cut to pieces, kill, slay.

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum, win over, make friendly, join; gain.

concilium, I, N., meeting, assembly, council.

concitō, āre, āvī, ātum, rouse, excite; spur on, urge on.

concordia, ae, F., harmony, union, concord.

con-currō, ere, -currī (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, hurry, flock; meet, join battle; make a common attack.

concursus, ūs, M., running together; collision; charge, attack; conflict.

condiciō, -ōnis, F., terms, proposal, agreement, condition.

con-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, found.

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, overlook.

Condrūsī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Condrusi, *a tribe in the northeast of Gaul.*

cōn-fercīō, īre, -fersī, -fertum, pack closely; *perf. part. pass.*, **cōnfertus, a, um,** crowded, in close array, in close order.

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, collect, gather, convey; compare; **sē cōnferre,** betake one's self, go; *with* **culpam,** lay, put.

cōnfertus, a, um, *from* **cōnfercīō.**

cōnfestim, *adv.*, immediately, at once.

cōn-ficīō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, carry out, complete, accomplish, perform; exhaust, spend; write, compose.

cōn-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, trust, rely on, have confidence in; be confident.

cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum, arouse; establish; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure.

cōnfīsus, a, um, *from* **cōnfīdō.**

cōn-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīctum, contend, engage, fight.

cōnfluēns, -entis, M., confluence, junction.

cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, flee, flee for refuge, take refuge.

con-gerō, ere, -gessī, gestum, collect.

con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, meet; fight, engage battle.

congregō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring together; *in pass.*, come together, assemble.

con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl, cast, throw, throw together; infer, conjecture; *with* **in fugam,** drive, put; **sē conjicere,** throw *or* betake one's self.

con-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, join, connect, unite; **sē conjungere,** join.

con-junx, -jugis, F., wife.

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, F., conspiracy, league.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, try, attempt, endeavor, undertake.

cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, mount; embark on, go on board.

cōn-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, enlist, levy, enroll; **patrēs cōnscriptī,** senators.

cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, follow up, pursue, hunt down.

cōnsecūtus, a, um, *from* **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēdī, *from* **cōnsīdō.**

cōnsēnsus, ūs, M., consent.

cōn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, follow; arrive; overtake; obtain, gain, secure; succeed; accomplish.

cōn-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, join; **manum cōnserere,** join battle.

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum, keep, save; preserve, keep alive.

cōnsīderō, āre, āvī, ātum, consider, reflect.

cōn-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down; encamp, take up a position; settle.

cōnsilium, ī, N., plan, design, intention, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice, strategy; intrigue; council; **cōnsilium capere,**

form (adopt) a plan; **commūnī cōnsiliō**, by common consent, according to a common course of action.

cōnsimilis, e, very similar, like.

cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, take up position; get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand.

cōnsōlor, ārī, ātus sum, console.

cōnspectus, ūs, M., sight, view.

cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, catch sight of, see, observe, behold.

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, come in sight of, catch sight of, observe, see.

cōnspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum, combine, conspire.

cōnstanter (**cōnstantius**, **cōnstantissimē**), *adv.*, steadfastly, uniformly.

cōnstantia, ae, F., firmness, heroism.

cōnstīpō, āre, āvī, ātum, crowd, press.

cōnstitī, *from* **cōnsistō**.

cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, establish, arrange, make, appoint, fix, settle; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.

cōn-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, consist; stand firm; **cōnstat**, *impersonal*, it is agreed, it is understood.

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; *in perf. tenses*, am accustomed, am wont.

cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F., custom, habit.

cōnsul, -sulis, M., consul, *one of two chief magistrates at Rome, elected annually.*

cōnsulāris, e, of consular rank; M. *as subst.*, one who has been consul.

cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, consult, ask advice, enquire; provide for, take thought for, *with dat.*

cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum, deliberate, take counsel.

cōnsultō, *adv.*, purposely.

cōnsultum, ī, N., resolution, decree.

cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, spend; expend; exhaust.

con-temnō, ere, -tempsī, -temptum, despise.

conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert one's self; have a contest, struggle, fight, contend; assert, affirm, maintain.

contentiō, -ōnis, F., contest.

con-terō, ere, -trīvī, -trītum, exhaust, harass.

contestor, ārī, ātus sum, call upon, invoke.

continēns, -entis, F., mainland, continent.

con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, restrain, hem in, keep, hold; border, bound; *pres. part. as adj.*, **continēns**, -entis, continual, incessant, continuous; **continēns terra**, mainland, continent.

continuus, a, um, successive.

cōntiō, -ōnis, F., assembly.

contrā, 1. *adv.*, otherwise; on the contrary; **contrā atque**, contrary to what, otherwise than. 2. *prep. with acc.*, opposite, over against; against.

con-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -tractum, collect, gather together, assemble; reduce, contract.

contulī, *from* **cōnferō**.

contumēlia, ae, F., reproach, disgrace.

con-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, meet, assemble together; be agreed on;

convenit, *impersonal*, it is agreed.

conventus, ūs, M., meeting; assizes, court.

conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn, change.

Convictolitāvis, is, M., Convictolitavis, *a Gaul's name.*

convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call together, call, summon, assemble.

co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, arise.

cōpia, ae, F., supply, abundance, plenty, amount, quantity; *in plur.*, resources, stores; forces, troops.

cōpiōsus, a, um, well supplied, rich; abundant.

cōram, *adv.*, in person, face to face, with one's own eyes.

Corcȳra, ae, F., Corcyra, *an island west of northern Greece.*

Corcȳraeus, a, um, Corcyrean, of Corcyra; M. *plur. as subst.*, **Corcȳraeī, ōrum**, the Corcyreans.

Cornēlius, I, M., 1. P. Cornelius Scipio, *consul in* 218 *B.C.* 2. C. Cornelius Cethegus, *consul in* 197 *B.C.* 3. Lucius Cornelius Merula, *consul in* 193 *B.C.*

cornū, ūs, N., horn; wing (*of an army*).

corōna, ae, F., garland, wreath, crown.

corpus, -oris, N., body, person.

cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -rup-tum, bribe, win over.

Cōrus, I, M. (*with* **ventus**), the north-west wind.

Corvīnus, I, M., Corvinus, *a famous Roman.*

corvus, I, M., raven.

cotīdiānus, a, um, daily; regular.

cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

Cotta, ae, M., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

Cotus, I, M., Cotus, *a Gaul's name.*

Crassus, I, M., Marcus Licinius Crassus, *a Roman general, consul* 55 *B.C.*

crēber, bra, brum, frequent, numerous, many.

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, entrust; believe, trust, (*with dat.*); think.

cremō, āre, āvī, ātum, burn.

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, choose, elect.

crepitus, ūs, M., noise, flapping.

Crēta, ae, F., Crete, *a large island, south of the Ægean.*

Crētēnsēs, ium, M. *plur.*, the Cretans, *inhabitants of Crete.*

crīmen, -minis, N., charge, accusation.

Crœsus, I, M., Crœsus, *king of Lydia from* 560 *to* 546 *B.C.*

cruciātus, ūs, M., torture, cruelty.

crūdēlis, e, cruel, barbarous.

cubiculum, I, N., (bed) chamber.

culmen, -minis, N., summit.

culpa, ae, F., blame, fault.

cultus, ūs, M., civilization.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, together with; against.

cum, *conj.*, when, whenever, while; as, since; although; **cum prīmum**, as soon as; **cum . . . tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, hesitate, hold back.

cūnctus, a, um, all, all together.

cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.

cupiditās, -tātis, F., eagerness, fondness.

Cupīdō, -dinis, M., Cupid, Love (*personified*).

cupidus, a, um, eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.
cup-iō, erē, -īvī, -ītum, be eager, desire, desire earnestly.
cūr, *adv.*, why; *freely*, that.
cūra, ae, F., care, concern, diligence.
cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, attend to, take care; *with gerundive*, cause to be (*done*), have (*done*),
currus, ūs, M., chariot.
cursus, ūs, M., running, running powers, speed, pace; course, passage.
custōdia, ae, F., guard, picket.
custōdiō, īre, īvī (ĭī), ītum, guard, watch.
custōs, -tōdis, M., guard, sentry.
Cȳrēnaei, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Cyreneans, *inhabitants of Cyrene, a town in the north of Africa.*
Cȳrus, I, M., Cyrus (*the elder*), *founder of the Persian empire; reigned from* 559 *to* 529 *B.C.*

D

D., *an abbreviation for* **Decimus.**
damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, condemn.
Dārius, I, M., Darius, *king of Persia from* 521 *to* 485 *B.C.*
dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, down from; of, out of; about, concerning, of, in regard to; *with* **pāx, dēditiō**, to treat of; *with* **nox, vigilia**, in; *with* **causa**, for.
dēbeō, ēre, uī, ĭtum, owe; *with infin.*, ought, should, cannot help; *in pass.*, be due.
dēbilitō, āre, āvī, ātum, weaken.
dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, die.
decem, ten.
dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, determine, decree, order, assign; fight, do battle.
dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum, decide the issue, fight.
dē-cidō, ere, -cidī, fall down.
decimus, a, um, tenth.
Decimus, I, M., Decimus, *a Roman prænomen.*
dē-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, disappoint, balk, defeat.
dēclārō, āre, āvī, ātum, show, make clear.
dēclīvis, e, sloping.
decorō, āre, āvī, ātum, adorn.
dēcrētus, a, um, *and* **dēcrētūrus**, *from* **dēcernō.**
dēcrēvī, *from* **dēcernō.**
decumānus, a, um, **porta**, rear.
dē-currō, ere, -curri (-cucurrī), -cursum, run down.
dēdecus, -oris, N., disgrace, reproach.
dedī, *from* **dō.**
dēdidī, *from* **dēdō.**
dēditiō, -ōnis, F., surrender.
dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, surrender, give up; devote.
dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead off, withdraw; launch, lead out; lead (home), wed, marry; conduct.
deerām, deesse, *from* **dēsum.**
dēfatigō, āre, āvī, ātum, weary, exhaust.
dēfectiō, -ōnis, F., revolt.
dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, defend, protect.
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry, bring, convey; report; confer upon (**ad**).
dēfessus, a, um, *perf. part. of* **dēfetiscor**, exhausted.
dē-fetiscor, I, -fessus sum, become exhausted.
dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail, be wanting; revolt, forsake.

dē-fīgō, ĕre, -fīxī, -fīxum, fix, set.

dē-fluō, ĕre, -fluxī, -fluxum, flow off, divide.

dēfōrmis, e, ill-shaped, unshapely.

dēfuī, *from* **dēsum.**

dē-fungor, ī, -fūnctus sum, have done, complete; die.

deinceps, *adv.*, in turn.

deinde, *adv.*, then, thereupon, thereafter, next.

dē-jiciō, ĕre, -jēcī, -jectum, throw down, haul down; carry down, drive ashore; dismount, unhorse.

dēlātus, a, um, *from* **dēferō.**

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum, delight; *in pass.*, take pleasure.

dēlectus, ūs, M., levy.

dēlectus, a, um, *from* **dēligō, ĕre**; *as adj.*, picked, chosen.

dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy, annihilate.

dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum, discuss, consider; question, consult oracle.

dēliciae, ārum, F. *plur.*, delight; darling, beloved.

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, bind fast, fasten; moor.

dē-ligō, ĕre, -lēgī, -lectum, pick out, choose, select, levy.

dēlit-ēscō, ĕre, -uī, conceal one's self.

Dēlos, ī, F., Delos, *an island in the Ægean.*

Delphī, ōrum, M., Delphi, *a city in northern Greece, famous for its oracle of Apollo.*

Delphicus, a, um, Delphic, of Delphi.

dēmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.

dēmer-gō, ĕre, -sī, -sum, sink.

dē-metō, ĕre, -messuī, -messum, cut down, reap.

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, remove, withdraw.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, point out, explain, state, mention.

dēnī, ae, a, ten each, in groups of ten, by tens.

dēnsus, a, um, dense, thick.

dē-pellō, ĕre, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out, drive from, force from.

dēper-eō, -īre, -iī, perish, be lost.

dē-pōnō, ĕre, -posuī, -positum, lay down, lay aside; store away, deposit, place; give up.

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, remove, carry, convey.

dēpositus, a, um, *from* **dēpōnō.**

dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, petition against; ask mercy, ask quarter.

dēpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight it out, fight to the end.

dēpulsus, a, um, *from* **dēpellō.**

dē-scendō, ĕre, -scendī, -scēnsum, come down, descend.

dēser-ō, ĕre, -uī, -tum, desert, abandon.

dēsīderium, ī, N., longing, regret.

dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātum, desire, wish for; lose, miss.

dēsiī, *from* **dēsinō.**

dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, leap down.

dē-sinō, ĕre, -sīī (sīvī), -situm, cease, desist.

dē-sistō, ĕre, -stitī, -stitum, cease, leave off; give up, desist from.

dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, give up hope; despair of, be in despair.

dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum, choose, betroth.

dēstitī, *from* **dēsistō.**

dē-stringō, ĕre, -strinxī, strictum, unsheathe, draw.

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, be wanting, be lacking.

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, deter, discourage, prevent.

dētineō, ēre, uī, dētentum, detain.

dē-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, take off, remove.

dētrectō, āre, āvī, ātum, decline, refuse.

dētrīmentōsus, a, um, hurtful.

dētrīmentum, ī, N., loss, defeat.

dētrūdō, ere, -sī, -sum, dislodge.

dētulī, *from* **dēferō.**

dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, haul down.

deus, ī, M., god.

dē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come, come down.

dēvincō, ere, -vīcī, -victum, conquer thoroughly, overcome.

dēvorō, āre, āvī, ātum, devour, destroy.

dexter, tra, trum, right, on the right; *fem.* **dextra,** *as subst.* (*sc.* **manus**), right hand; pledge.

dī *or* **dīī,** *from* **deus.**

Diāna, ae, F., Diana, *the goddess of hunting.*

dīcīō, -ōnis, F., rule, sway.

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, say, state, mention; call.

dictātor, -ōris, M., dictator, *an officer appointed at Rome with absolute power, when great danger threatened the state.*

diēs, ēī, M. (*rarely* F.), day, time, period.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, defer, postpone; differ, be different.

difficilis, e, difficult.

difficultās, -tātis, F., difficulty.

difficulter, *adv.* (**difficilius, difficillimē**), with difficulty.

dif-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, distrust, *w. dat.*

dif-fugiō, ere, fūgī, flee, vanish, disappear.

dignitās, -tātis, F., esteem, respect; reputation; rank, dignity; splendor, magnificence; **dignitātem tribuere,** have respect for.

dignus, a, um, worthy, deserving, *with abl.*

dī-lābor, ī, -lāpsus sum, scatter, dispense.

diligenter, *adv.*, carefully.

diligentia, ae, F., care, watchfulness; diligence, earnestness.

dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, love, esteem.

dimicō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight, struggle, contend, engage.

dimidium, ī, N., half.

dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send out, despatch; dismiss, send away, send in different directions; lose; let go away; abandon.

dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, withdraw, depart; retire, come off; scatter; **discēdere ab,** leave.

discessus, ūs, M., departure, withdrawal.

disciplīna, ae, F., training, discipline.

discō, ere, didicī, learn.

discordia, ae, F., dissension, disunion.

discordō, āre, āvī, ātum, quarrel.

dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, break, scatter; raze.

dispālātus, a, um, *part. of* **dispālor,** *as adj.*, straggling, scattered.

dis-pār, -paris, unequal.

dī-spergō, ere, -spersī, -spersum, scatter, separate.

dis-pliceō, ēre, -plicuī, -plici-

tum, find no favor with, be distasteful to, displease, *with dat.*

dis-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, place at intervals, post, station.

dis-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, *with* **ab**, have a quarrel with, be at variance with.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal.

dis-solvō, ere, -solvī, -solūtum, destroy, break up.

dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, keep apart; keep at a distance.

distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign, distribute.

dī-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, busy, occupy.

dītō, āre, āvī, enrich.

diū, *adv.*, (**diūtius, diūtissimē**), long, for a long time.

dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, divide, separate.

dīvīnus, a, um, divine, sacred.

dīvitiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, riches, wealth.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, grant, allow, afford, bestow, furnish; appoint; *with* **finem**, *or* **in fugam**, put; **operam dare**, take pains, see to it, give attention to, put forth efforts; **verba dare**, cheat, deceive; **terga dare**, flee.

doc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, teach, tell, inform, explain.

doctē, *adv.*, skilfully, well.

doctor, -ōris, M., teacher, instructor.

dolor, -ōris, M., pain, grief, sorrow, distress; indignation, resentment; grievance.

dolus, ī, M., deceit, deception; craft, cunning; artifice, trick, strategy.

domesticus, a, um, at home, personal, private; *with* **bellum**, intestine, civil.

domī, *adv.* (*really locative of* **domus**), at home.

domicilium, ī, N., home, residence, dwelling.

domina, ae, F., mistress.

dominātiō, ōnis, F., -sway, supremacy, rule.

dominus, ī, master, ruler, captain.

Domitius, ī, M., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, *consul* 54 *B.C.*

dom-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, subdue, conquer.

domus, ūs, F., house, home, dwelling place; household, family, house; **domī**, *locative*, at home.

dōnec, *conj.*, so long as, while.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, present, give, grant, bestow.

dōnum, ī, N., gift.

dōs, dōtis, F., dowry, marriage portion.

Druidēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Druids, *priests of the Gauls.*

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, doubt, hesitate; have doubts.

dubium, ī, N., doubt; **sine dubiō**, undoubtedly.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, bring; take; carry off; run, make, prolong, spin out; consider; marry.

ducis, e, pleasant, agreeable.

dum, *conj.*, while, until.

Dumnorix, -īgis, M., Dumnorix, *a leader of the Æduī.*

duo, -ae, -o, two.

duodecim, twelve.

duodēnī, ae, a, twelve each; in groups of twelve, by twelves.

duodēvīgintī, *indecl.*, eighteen.

dū-plex, -plicis, twofold, double.

duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum, double.

dūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, endure, remain.

Dūrus, ī, M., Quintus Laberius Durus, *a military tribune with Cæsar.*

dux, ducis, M., leader, general; guide.

E

ē, *prep. with abl., see* **ex.**

eā, *adv.* (*abl. fem. of* **is**; *sc.* **viā**), by that way; there.

Eburōnēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Eburones, *a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*

ecce, *interjection*, look! see! behold!

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out, lead forth.

effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum, enervate, make effeminate; *in pass.*, become effeminate.

efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātum, bear out, carry away, bury.

ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, make, cause, produce, form, construct; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; make up, complete.

ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, escape.

ef-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour out, bring forth.

ēgī, *from* **agō.**

ego, meī, I.

ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, depart, go forth, leave; land, disembark; come, set out.

ēgregiē, *adv.*, excellently, extremely well, admirably.

ēgregius, a, um, exceptional, marked, remarkable, eminent, excellent.

ēgressus, a, um. *from* **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, ūs, M., landing.

ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, fling out, cast out; banish; *with* **sē,** rush, dash, rush out.

ē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, pick.

elephantus, ī, M., elephant.

ēloquentia, ae, F., eloquence, ability to speak.

ēmendō, āre, āvī, ātum, correct, amend, make good.

ē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send out.

enim, *conj.*, for, now, in fact, indeed.

Ennius, ī, M., Ennius, *a Roman poet.*

ēnumerō, āre, āvī, ātum, recount, relate, tell of.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, disclose.

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go, march, proceed; advance.

eō, *adv.*, thither, there, to that place, to them (it, *etc.*).

eō, *adv.*, *with comparatives* or *before* **quod** *cause*, the, all the; on this account.

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place, to the same thing, in the same direction.

Epaminōndās, ae, M., Epaminondas, *a famous Theban general.*

Ephesus, ī, F., Ephesus, *a city of Ionia in Asia Minor.*

Ephialtēs, ae, M., Ephialtes, *a Greek.*

ephippiātus, a, um, using saddles.

ephippium, ī, N., horse-cloth; (*freely*) saddle.

ephorus, ī, M., ephor, *a Spartan magistrate.*

Epīrus, ī, M., Epirus, *a district of northern Greece, on the Adriatic.*

epistula, ae, F., letter, epistle.

equ-es, -itis, M., horseman, horse-soldier, cavalryman; *in plur.*, cavalry.
equester, tris, tre, of cavalry, cavalry.
equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.
equus, i, M., horse.
ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards.
ergō, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly.
ē-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, arouse, raise up.
ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize, snatch away; rescue.
ērogō, āre, āvī, ātum, expend, pay out.
error, -ōris, M., mistake, delusion, blunder.
ērudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītum, train, educate, teach.
ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, make a sally.
ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., sally, sortie.
ē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, embark.
essedārius, i, M., charioteer, chariot-fighter.
essedum, i, N., chariot, war-chariot.
et, *conj.*, and, but; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.
etiam, *conj. and adv.*, also, further; even, still, besides; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also.
etiamnunc, even then.
etiamtum, *adv.*, even then, still.
Etrūria, ae, F., Etruria, *a district in Italy, north of Rome.*
Etrūscus, i, M., an Etrurian.
etsi, *conj.*, even if, although.
Euboea, ae, F., Euboea, *an island lying east of Greece.*
Eumenēs, is, M., Eumenes, *king of Pergamum,* 198-158 *B.C.*
Euphrātēs, is, M., Euphrates, *a river in Persia.*
Eurōpa, ae, F., Europe.
Eurybiadēs, is, M., Eurybiades, *a Spartan admiral.*
Eurystheus, ei, M., Eurystheus, *the king who imposed upon Hercules his twelve labors.*
ēvā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, make one's way, climb; escape.
ē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, turn out, result.
ēventus, ūs, M., outcome, experience, fate.
ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out, summon, challenge.
ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, fly away; rush out.
ex (*sometimes* **ē** *before consonants*), *prep. with abl.*, from, out of; of, belonging to; after, upon; in accordance with; *of direction*, in, on.
exāctus, a, um, *from* **exigō.**
exadversum, *prep. with acc.*, over against, opposite.
exagitō, āre, āvī, ātum, harass, drive out, expel.
exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, weigh, test.
exanimō, āre, āvī, ātum, kill; *in pass.*, be killed, die.
ex-ārdēscō, ere, -ārsī, -ārsum, blaze forth; become enraged, become incensed.
ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go out, go away, withdraw, depart, leave, quit.
excellō, ere, excellui, excel, surpass.
excīō, īre, īvī, ītum *or* **ītum,** summon; arouse.
ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, follow, succeed, relieve.
excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, awake, rouse; stimulate, arouse.
excitus, a, um, *from* **excīō.**
exclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out, cry out.
ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut off, cut off, hinder.

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, devise, plan.

excubō, āre, āvī, ātum, sleep out; keep watch.

excursiō, -ōnis, F., invasion, raid.

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, excuse; **sē excūsāre,** apologize.

exemplum, I, N., example.

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, (-īvī), -itum, go out; set out; start; leave, disembark; *of a report,* spread, go abroad.

exercēō, ēre, uī, itum, exercise; work, till; arouse to action; exasperate.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., training, exercise, practice.

exercitus, ūs, M., army, forces.

ex-haurīō, īre, -hausī, -haustum, exhaust.

exhērēdō, āre, āvī, ātum, disinherit.

ex-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, drive out, expel.

exiguitās, tātis, F., scantiness, smallness, shortness, small size, small extent.

exiguus, a, um, small, scanty, limited, meagre.

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think, believe, consider; estimate.

exitus, ūs, M., way out, exit; conclusion; issue, result.

expediō, īre, īvī, ītum, free, extricate; *perf. part. pass.,* **expeditus, a, um,** *as adj.,* unincumbered, free; easy; in light marching order.

expeditiō, -ōnis, F., expedition.

ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out; banish.

exper-ior, īrī, -tus sum, try, prove, make an attempt; experience, find by experience.

explicō, āre, āvī, ātum, set forth, state; unfold, carry on; extend, deploy, move freely.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, examine, investigate, reconnoitre; endeavor to learn.

ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, display; array, land, disembark; set forth, relate.

exportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry off, remove.

ex-poscō, ere, -poposcī, demand, ask earnestly from, require the surrender of.

ex-primō, ere, -pressī, pressum, describe, express.

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, take by storm, carry.

expulsus, a, um, *from* **expellō.**

exquīsītus, a, um, carefully chosen; excruciating.

ex-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, enforce.

exsilium, I, N., exile.

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, await, wait for; wait.

ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, blot out, extinguish.

exstō, āre, stand out, be above.

ex-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, raise, erect, build.

exsul, -sulis, M., exile.

extemplō, *adv.,* at once, immediately.

extrā, *prep. with acc.,* outside of, beyond; out of reach of.

ex-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw out, extract; waste by delay, fritter away.

extrēmus, a, um (*superlative of* **exterus, exterior**), farthest, last, outermost; **ad extrēmum,** at last; to the last.

extulī, *from* **efferō.**

ex-ūrō, ere, -ussī, -ūstum, burn up.

F

faber, brī, M., artisan, workman, engineer.

Fabius, I, M., 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus, *consul and dictator in the second Punic war.* 2. Quintus Fabius Labeo, *consul in* 183 *B.C.*

Fabricius, I, M., Caius Fabricius Luscinus, *consul in* 278 *B.C.*

facile, *adv.*, easily, readily.

facilis, e, easy.

faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *pass.* **fiō, fierī, factus sum**, make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about; with **proelium**, fight; with **vim**, offer, use; with **potestātem**, give; with **praedam**, obtain; **verba facere**, speak, plead; **certiōrem aliquem facere**, inform one; *in pass. often*, become; take place, come to pass, happen, result; **quō factum est**, the result was.

factiō, -ōnis, F., party, faction.

factum, I, N., deed, act, action; occurrence.

facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity, chance, power; *in plur.*, wealth, means, resources.

faenus, -oris, N., interest, usury.

fāgus, I, F., beech.

Falernus, a, um, Falernian, of Falernus, *a district in Campania.*

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive; elude, escape discovery by.

falsus, a, um, false, untrue.

fāma, ae, F., rumor, report, news; fame, reputation.

famēs, is, F. (*abl.*, **famē**), hunger, famine.

familia, ae, F., household, family.

familiāris, e, private; **rēs familiāris**, property, estate.

familiāritās, -tātis, F., intimacy, friendship.

fās, N., *indeclinable*, right (*by divine law*).

fascis, is, M., bundle.

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, favor (*with dat.*).

fefellī, *from* **fallō**.

fēlīciter, *adv.*, happily, prosperously, successfully.

fēlix, -īcis, happy; prosperous.

ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly; about; for the most part.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring; endure; withstand; *in pass.*, rush, go, flow; *with* **auxilium**, lend; *with* **condiciōnem**, offer; *with* **sententiam**, give; **graviter ferre**, be annoyed at, feel keenly; **opīniō fert**, opinion goes; **cōnsuētūdō fert**, it is customary.

ferōx, -ōcis, warlike, fierce.

ferreus, a, um, of iron, iron.

ferrum, I, N., iron; sword; **ferrō atque ignī**, with fire and sword.

fertilis, e, fertile.

ferus, a, um, fierce, savage.

festīvus, a, um, joyous, charming.

fictilis, e, made of clay, earthen.

fictus, a, um, *from* **fingō**.

fidēlis, e, faithful, loyal, trusty.

fidēs, eī, F., trust, faith, confidence, belief; pledge, word, oath, promise, honor; loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance; **fidem facere**, give a pledge; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge one's honor; **fidem praestāre**, keep faith; **fidem sequī**, embrace alliance, attach one's self to.

fīdūcia, ae, F., confidence.

fīgūra, ae, shape.

fīlia, ae, F., daughter.

fīlius, I, M., son.

fingō, ere, finxī, fictum, make up, invent.
finiō, īre, īvī, ītum, limit, bound.
fīnis, is, M., end, limit; *in plur.*, borders, territory, land, district.
finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjoining, adjacent; M. *plur.*, *as substantive*, neighbors.
fiō, fierī, factus sum, *pass. of* **faciō**, be made, be done; become; be brought about, be effected, take place, come to pass, happen, result; **quō factum est**, the result was.
firmiter, *adv.*, firmly, steadily.
firmō, āre, āvī, ātum, strengthen.
firmus, a, um, strong, powerful.
Flāminīnus, ī, M., T. Quintius Flaminius, *consul in* 198 *B.C.*
Flāminius, ī, M., Caius Flaminius, *consul in* 217 *B.C.*
flamma, ae, F., blaze, flame, burning.
flectō ere, flexī, flexum, turn, guide, direct.
fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep, be in tears.
flō, āre, āvī, ātum, blow.
flōreō, ēre, uī, bloom; prosper; *pres. part.*, **flōrēns, -entis**, *as adj.*, flourishing, prosperous, influential.
fluctus, ūs, M., wave.
flūmen, -minis, N., river.
fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, flow.
foederātus, a, um, in league with, allied.
foedus, -eris, N., treaty, league.
fore, *fut. infin. of* **sum**.
forem, = **essem**.
foris, is, F., door.
fōrma, ae, F., shape, form.
formīca, ae, F., ant.
fortē, *adv.*, by chance; as it happened.
fortis, e, brave, courageous.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, gallantly, stoutly.
fortitūdō, -dinis, F., bravery, courage, valor.
fortuitō, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally.
fortūna, ae, F., chance, fortune, luck; good fortune, success; lot; *in plur.*, property, possessions, fortunes.
forum, ī, N., market-place, forum.
fossa, ae, F., trench, ditch, moat.
fragor, -ōris, M., crash.
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, shatter, wreck; crush.
frāter, -tris, M., brother.
fraus, fraudis, F., trick, evasion.
Fregellae, ārum, F. *plur.*, Fregellae, *a city in Latium*.
frēgī, *from* **frangō**.
fremitus, ūs, M., din, confused noise.
frequēns, -entis, in large numbers.
frīgidus, a, um, cold.
frīgus, -oris, cold; frost; cold season.
frūgēs, um, F. *plur.*, fruits.
frūgī, *adj. indecl.*, temperate, frugal, moderate.
frūmentārius, a, um, of grain, pertaining to grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supply of corn, grain, provisions; **nāvis frūmentāria**, corn-ship.
frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum, get grain, get provisions, forage.
frūmentum, ī, N., grain, corn, provisions; *in plur.*, crops.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain.
frūstror, ārī, ātus sum, deceive, disappoint.
frūstum, ī, N., piece, bit.
fūdī, *from* **fundō**.

fuga, ae, F., flight, rout; **in fugam conjicere** *or* **dare,** put to flight.

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee, escape.

fugō, āre, āvī, ātum, put to flight, rout.

fuī, *from* **sum.**

Fulvius, ī, M., Servius Fulvius Nobilior, *consul in* 255 *B.C.*

funda, ae, F., sling.

fundāmentum, ī, N., foundation.

Fundānius, ī, M., Fundanius, *a friend of Pliny.*

fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, rout, overthrow.

fungor, ī, fūnctus sum, hold, fill, *with abl.*

fūnis, is, M., rope, cable.

fūnus, -eris, N., death.

Fūrius, ī, M., Lucius Furius Purpureo, *consul in* 196 *B.C.*

fūsus, *from* **fundō.**

futūrus, a, um, *from* **sum**; N. *plur. as subst.*, **futūra, ōrum,** the future.

G

Galba, ae, M., Galba, *a Roman's name.*

galea, ae, F., helmet.

Gallia, ae, F. Gaul.

1. *The Roman provinces of Gaul.* Gallia Cisalpina *or* Citerior, *the northern part of Italy*; *and* Gallia Transalpina *or* Ulterior, *the south-eastern part of France.*

2. *The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany.*

3. *The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the* Belgæ *and the* Aquitani *holding the other two.*

Gallicus, a, um, of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallīna, ae, F., hen.

gallus, ī, M., cock.

Gallus, ī, M., a Gaul.

gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice.

gaudium, ī, N., joy, rejoicing.

Geminus, ī, M., Cn. Servilius Geminus, *consul in* 217 *B.C.*

gemma, ae, F., precious stone, jewel.

gener, erī, M., son-in-law.

generōsus, a, um, of noble birth.

gens, gentis, F., tribe, race, nation.

genus, -eris, N., race; family; kind, sort, class.

Germānia, ae, F., Germany, *the region east of the Rhine.*

Germānicus, a, um, German, of *or* with the Germans.

Germānus, ī, M., a German.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, carry on, wage; do, perform, conduct; *in pass.*, be done, go on, happen; **rem** *or* **rēs gerere,** carry on operations; **rēs gesta,** exploit, deed; **mōrem gerere,** humor, comply with (one's) wish; **magistrātum gerere,** hold office.

gesta, ōrum, N. *plur.* (*perf. part. pass. of* **gerō**, *used substantively*), events, operations.

gladius, ī, M., sword.

glōria, ae, F., glory, fame.

Gōbryās, ae, M., Gobryas, *a noble Persian.*

Gortȳnīī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Gortynians, *citizens of Gortyna, a city in Crete.*

Gracchus, ī, M., Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, *consul* 215 *and* 213 *B.C.*

Graecia, ae, F., Greece.
Graecus, a, um, Greek.
Graecus, I, M., a Greek.
gradus, ūs, M., step; position.
Grāius, a, um, Greek, Grecian; Graian; M. *plur. as subst.*, **Grāii, ōrum,** the Greeks.
grāmen, -minis, N., grass.
grātia, ae, F., favor, good-will; influence; favor, service, kindness; **grātiās agere,** thank; *in abl. preceded by gen.*, **grātiā,** for the sake of.
grātulātiō, -ōnis, F., rejoicing; thanksgiving.
grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, thank, give thanks to.
grātus, a, um, agreeable, pleasing; welcome, acceptable.
gravis, e, heavy, severe, serious; hard, bitter, difficult; weighty, strong.
gravitās, -tātis, F., weight; strength, power, importance; dignity.
graviter, *adv.*, severely, bitterly, seriously; **graviter ferre,** be annoyed, feel keenly.
gremium, I, N., lap, bosom.
gubernātor, -ōris, M., pilot, helmsman.
gustō, āre, āvī, ātum, taste, eat.

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, have, possess, occupy; keep; hold; find; treat, regard, consider; *with* **ōrātiō,** deliver, make; *with perf. part. pass.*, have.
habitō, āre, āvī, ātum, dwell, live, reside.
Hadrūmētum, I, N., Hadrumetum, *a town on the coast of Africa.*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesum, stick fast, am imprisoned.
Halicarnassius, a, um, Halicarnassian, of Halicarnassus, *a city of Asia Minor.*
Hamilcar, -aris, M., Hamilcar, *the father of Hannibal.*
Hannibal, -alis, M., Hannibal, *the famous Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar.*
Hasdrubal, -alis, M., Hasdrubal, *the name of the brother-in-law and also of the brother of Hannibal.*
haud, *adv.*, not.
Hellēspontus, I., M., the Hellespont (*now the Dardanelles*).
Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian, of the Helvetii; *in plur.*, **Helvētiī, -ōrum,** M., the Helvetians, *a tribe of Gaul, dwelling in the modern Switzerland.*
Hērculēs, is, M., Hercules, *son of Jupiter; a Greek national hero, who, after his death, was worshipped as the god of strength.*
hērēditās, -tātis, F., inheritance.
Herminius, I, M., Herminius, *a Roman.*
hiberna, ōrum, N. *plur.*, winter camp, winter-quarters.
Hibernia, ae, F., Ireland.
hīc, haec, hōc, *pron.*, this; he; the following; the present; *often loosely*, that; **hōc,** N. *abl. as adv.*, in this way, on this account, *and with comparatives*, the.
hīc, *adv.*, here, herein; upon this, hereupon, now.
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, winter, pass the winter.
hiems, hiemis, F., winter, stormy weather.
hinc, *adv.*, hence, from this place.
hircus, I, M., goat.
Hispānia, ae, F., Spain, *including Portugal.*
historia, ae, F., history.

hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.
hodiernus, a, um, to-day's, of this day.
hom-ō, -inis, M. *and* F., man, person; *in plur.*, man, mankind, people.
honestās, -tātis, F., honor, integrity.
honestus, a, um, upright, honorable, worthy; becoming, refined.
honor (*or* **honōs**), **-ōris**, M., honor, repute; office, official position.
hōra, ae, F., hour.
Horātius, i, M., Horatius, *a Roman hero.*
horreō, ēre, uī, tremble at, dread.
horreum, ī, N., storehouse, granary, barn.
horridus, a, um, terrible, frightful, horrible.
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.
hosp-es, -itis, M., guest, friend.
hospitium, ī, N., guest-friendship, hospitality.
hostia, ae, F., animal for sacrifice, victim.
hostis, is, M., enemy, public foe.
hūc, *adv.*, to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.
hūmānitās, -tātis, F., refinement, culture.
hūmānus, a, um, of a man, human; civilized, refined.
humī, *adv.* (*really locative of* **humus**), on the ground.
humilis, e, low, lowly, of little importance, obscure.
humilitās, -tātis, F., lowness.

I

Ibam, ibō, *from* **eō**.
ibī, *adv.*, there, in that place.
idcircō, *adv.*, for this reason.
idem, eadem, idem, the same; also, likewise.
idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.
ieram, *from* **eō**.
igitur, *conj.* accordingly, therefore; to resume, then.
ignis, is, M., fire.
ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, not know, be unacquainted with, be ignorant.
ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, forgive, pardon, *with dative.*
ignōtus, a, um, unknown.
Ilerda, ae, F., Ilerda, *a city in Spain.*
illātus, *a, um, from* **inferō**.
ille, illa, illud, that, he, she, it, the other, the former.
illō, *adv.*, to that point, thither, there.
illūc, *adv.*, to that place, thither.
il-lūdō, ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, deceive, mock at, make sport of.
illūstris, e, distinguished.
illūstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, make famous; *pass.* become famous.
Illyricum, ī, N., Illyricum, *a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.*
imbēcillis, e, weak, feeble.
immānis, e, huge, enormous.
im-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, let loose; **sē immittere**, to leap in.
immolō, āre, āvī, ātum, offer, sacrifice, immolate.
immortālis, e, immortal.
immōtus, a, um, undisturbed, untouched.
impedīmentum, ī, N., hindrance, obstacle; *in plur.*, baggage, baggage-train.
impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, hinder, hamper, obstruct, check, prevent, interfere with; *perf. part. pass. as adj.*, **impeditus, a, um**, hampered, occupied; difficult, impassable.

im-pellō, ere, -pulī, pulsum, push; instigate, incite.

im-pendō, ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, expend, devote, apply.

impēnsus, a, um, expensive, high.

imperātor, -ōris, M., commander, leader, general.

imperātum, I, N., order, command, bidding.

imperītus, a, um, inexperienced, unacquainted, *with gen.*

imperium, I, N., command, order; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy, sway, authority; *generally with the notion of military power.*

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, demand, require, order to furnish, levy, requisition; order, command.

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on.

impetus, ūs, M., attack, charge, rush, onset; fury, impetuosity.

impl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill up, complete.

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, beg, beseech, entreat.

im-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, place on.

importō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring in, introduce, import.

impraesentiārum, *a rare colloquial adv.* (=**in praesentiā rērum**), for the present, for the time being, under the (present) circumstances.

improvīsus, a, um, unforeseen; **improvīsō** *or* **dē improvīsō**, unexpectedly, unaware.

imprūdēns, -entis, unsuspecting, off one's guard.

imprūdenter, *adv.*, unwisely, imprudently.

imprūdentia, ae, F., thoughtlessness, indiscretion; ignorance, inadvertence.

impudēns, -entis, shameless.

impulsus, *from* **impellō**.

in, *prep.*, 1. *with acc.*, into, to; at, towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to, according to; in (*where there is the notion of rest, as well as of motion*). 2. *with abl.*, in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; over; considering, in view of; in the case of, in regard to.

inānis, e, empty.

incendium, I, N., fire, burning.

in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set on fire, set fire to, burn; inflame, arouse.

incertus, a, um, uncertain, untrustworthy, groundless; confused, in disorder.

in-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, fall; fall in with, come upon.

in-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut into, cut through.

incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, urge on, impel, excite, spur on; irritate; *in pass.*, go at full speed.

incōgnitus, a, um, unknown; strange.

incola, ae, M. and F., inhabitant.

incol-ō, ere, -uī, inhabit; dwell, live.

incolumis, e, safe, unharmed; in safety, without loss.

incommodē, *adv.*, disastrously, unfortunately, badly.

incommodum, I, N., misfortune, loss.

incrēdibilis, e, incredible.

increp-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, upbraid, taunt.

incursiō, -ōnis, F., raid, inroad.

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, next.

indicium, i, N., mark, sign, indication, proof.
in-dicō, ere, -dixi, -dictum, declare, proclaim, declare publicly.
Indicus, a, um, of *or* with India.
indigeō, ēre, ui, be dependent upon, *with gen.*
indignor, ārī, ātus sum, be indignant, be angry.
in-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead into, draw into, lure.
indul-geō, ēre, -si, -tum, favor, *with dat.*
ind-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, put on.
industria, ae, F., diligence, industry, activity.
industriē, *adv.*, strenuously, vigorously.
indūtiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, truce.
Indutiomarus, i, M., Indutiomarus, *a chief of the Treveri.*
in-eō, ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, enter upon, adopt, form, devise; begin (*trans. or intrans.*).
inermis, e, unarmed.
in-ers, -ertis, dull, lifeless; lazy, unmanly.
Infectus, a, um, not done, unaccomplished; **Infecta pāce,** without having effected peace; **Infectā rē,** without accomplishing his purpose.
Inferior, ius, *comparative of* **Inferus, a, um,** lower.
Inferō, Inferre, intuli, illātum, bring; bring upon; cause; **bellum Inferre,** *with dat.*, make *or* wage war on.
in-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, stain.
Infinitus, a, um, endless, countless, boundless, vast.
Infirmitās, -tātis, F., fickleness, inconstancy.
infirmus, a, um, weak, powerless.
Infitior, ārī, ātus sum, deny.
in-fluō, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, flow (into), empty (into).
infrā, *adv.*, below, farther down.
in-fringō, ere, -frēgi, -frāctum, break, crush, weaken.
ingēns, -entis, large, huge, great, vast, enormous.
ingrātīs, *adv.*, against one's will.
ingrātus, a, um, ungrateful.
in-gredior, i, -gressus sum, enter; enter upon, begin.
in-haereō, ēre, -haesi, -haesum, cling to, hang upon.
inimicus, a, um, unfriendly, hostile; *as subst.*, **inimicus, i,** M., enemy, personal enemy; *superl.*, **inimicissimus, i,** M., bitterest enemy.
initium, i, N., beginning; edge, frontier, borders; *abl.*, **initiō,** at first.
initus, a, um, *from* **ineō.**
in-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, cast, put into; inspire, strike into.
injūria, ae, F., wrong, injury, injustice, wrong-doing, violence.
injūstē, *adv.*, unjustly.
innocentia, ae, F., innocence, integrity.
inopia, ae, F., want, scarcity, lack, dearth.
inopīnāns, -antis, not expecting, contrary to expectation, unawares.
inopīnātus, a, um, unexpected.
inquam, inquit, *defective*, say.
Insciēns, -entis, not knowing, (being) unaware.
inscius, a, um, ignorant, unawares.
in-sequor, i, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue.
in-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, take possession of, seize, occupy.

Insidiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, ambush, plot, stratagem, treachery.

Insidior, ārī, ātus sum, lie in wait for; plot against; strive to entrap, *with dat.*

Insil-iō, īre, -uī, leap into.

Insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, wind in; *with* **sē,** work one's way in.

In-sistō, ere, -stitī, stand on, perch on; keep one's footing.

Inspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look on.

Instābilis, e, unsteady, changeable.

Instantia, ium, N. *plur. of pres. part. as subst.*, the present.

Instit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, undertake, begin, set about; adopt; get ready, build; train; levy.

Institūtum, I, N., custom, practice.

Instō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, press forward.

In-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up, arrange; build, equip.

Insuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, train, accustom.

Insuētus, a, um, unaccustomed.

Insula, ae, F., island.

Integer, gra, grum, unimpaired; fresh, unwearied.

Intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn, feel.

Intemperantia, ae, F., excess, arrogance, haughtiness.

Inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, during; **inter sē,** one another, each other, to *or* with one another.

Inter-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, come, exist, *or* arise between.

Inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, cut off, intercept.

Inter-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum, forbid, warn.

Interdum, sometimes.

Intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

Inter-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, perish, die; be lost, be squandered.

Interest, *from* **intersum.**

Inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, slay, put to death, kill, destroy.

Interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

Interior, ius, *comparative adj.*, inner, interior, more secret; M. *plur. as subst.*, **interiōrēs, um,** those living in the interior.

Interitus, ūs, M., death.

Inter-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, leave off, stop, interrupt, discontinue; delay, postpone; let pass, leave between; *in pass.* be left, intervene, elapse, cease.

Inter-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, interpose; pledge; put forward, allege; *in pass.* intervene, arise (to prevent).

Inter-pres, -pretis, M., interpreter.

Interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask, question.

Inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break down, destroy.

Inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, be between; be engaged in, take part in; *as impersonal verb*, interest, it is of importance, it concerns.

Intervāllum, I, N., interval, distance.

Intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside of.

Intrō, āre, āvī, ātum, enter.

Intrō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in.

Introitus, ūs, M., entrance, approach.

in-tueor, ērī, -tuītus sum, look upon, regard, consider.
intulī, *from* **inferō**.
intus, *adv.*, within, in the house.
inūsitātus, a, um, unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.
inūtilis, e, useless, unserviceable, harmful.
invā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, enter; **invādō in**, invade, attack.
in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find.
invicem, *adv.*, in turn.
invictus, a, um, unconquered.
invidia, ae, F., envy, jealousy, hatred.
invītō, āre, āvī, ātum, invite.
invītus, a, um, unwilling, against one's will.
iō, *interj.*, ah! oh!
ipse, a, um, himself, he himself, itself, *etc.*; in person; very.
irātus, a, um, angry, raging.
īre, *from* **eō**.
ir-rīdeō, ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, make sport of, jeer at.
ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break into, storm, rush into.
is, ea, id, that, this; he, she, it, they; the; such; *abl.* **eō** *as adv.*, so much, the, on that account.
ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way, in such a way, as follows.
Italia, ae, F., Italy.
itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore, so, accordingly, then.
item, *adv.*, likewise, also, in like manner.
iter, itineris, N., route, march, road, journey, line of march; passage, admission; right of passing, right of way. **iter facere**, march.
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.
Itius, *adj.*, **portus Itius**, Portus Itius, *a harbor on the coast of Gaul, near the modern Calais.*

J

jaceō, ēre, uī, itum, lie.
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, throw, cast, hurl.
jam, *adv.*, now, at length, by this time; already; *with negatives*, any more, longer.
Jānīculum, ī, N., the Janiculum, *a fortress across the Tiber from Rome.*
jānua, ae, F., door, entrance.
Jovis, *from* **Juppiter**.
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, order, bid, command.
Jūdaeus, ī, M., a Jew.
jūdicium, ī, N., trial, lawsuit; judgment, opinion.
jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, judge, decide, consider, think; declare, proclaim, adjudge; pass judgment.
jugum, ī, N., yoke.
Jūlius, ī, M., Julius, *a Roman prænomen.*
jūmentum, ī, N., beast of burden, ox, horse, etc.
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, unite.
Jūnō, -ōnis, F., Juno, *a Roman goddess.*
Juppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter, Jove, *the chief god among the Romans.*
Jūra, ae, M., Jura, *a range of mountains in Gaul.*
jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *or* **jūror, ārī, ātus sum**, swear, take an oath.
jūs, jūris, N., right, law; privilege.
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, N., oath.

Jussī *and* **Jussus, a, um,** *from* **Jubeō.**

Jussū, *abl. used as adv.*, by order.

Jūstitia, ae, F., justice, fair dealing, uprightness.

Jūstus, a, um, just, rightful, fair; **Jūstus, I,** M., the Just.

Juvencus, I, M., bullock, young ox.

Juvenis, is, M., a youth, young man.

Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, aid, keep, assist.

L

L., *an abbreviation for* **Lūcius.**

Labeō, -ōnis, M., Quintus Fabius Labeo, *consul in* 183 *B.C.*

Laberius, I, M., Quintus Laberius Durus, *a military tribune with Cæsar.*

Lablēnus, I, M., Titus Labienus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

labor, -ōris, M., toil, hardship, labor, exertion, occupation; endurance, hardihood; difficulty.

lābor, I, lāpsus sum, slip; do wrong, fall away.

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, toil, strive; be in difficulty, be hard pressed, be in distress.

labrum, I, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, F., Sparta, *the chief city of the Peloponnesus.*

Lacedaemonius, I, M., a Spartan.

lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, provoke, harass, attack, assail.

lacrima, ae, F., tear.

lacus, ūs, M., lake.

laetitia, ae, F., joyfulness, rejoicing.

Laevinus, I, M., Publius Valerius Laevinus, *consul in* 280 *B.C.*

lāmentum, I, N., wailing, lamentation.

Lampsacus, I, F. (*or* **um, I,** N.), Lampsacus, *a town in Asia Minor, on the Hellespont.*

laniō, āre, āvī, ātum, tear, lacerate.

largītiō, -ōnis, F., distribution, bribery.

Lārissa, ae, F., Larissa, *a city in Thessaly.*

Lārs, Lārtis, M., Lars, *an Etruscan prænomen.*

Lārtius, I, M., Lartius, *a Roman.*

lassitūdō, -dinis, F., fatigue, exhaustion.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively.

lātitūdō, -dinis, F., width, breadth, extent.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide, extensive.

latus, -eris, N., side, flank.

laudandus, a, um, *really gerundive of* **laudō,** praiseworthy.

laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, praise, commend.

laus, laudis, F., praise, glory, credit.

lavō, āre, āvī, ātum, *or* **lāvī, lautum** *or* **lōtum,** wash; *in pass.*, bathe.

lectīca, ae, F., litter, sedan.

lectulus, I, M., couch.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., embassy.

lēgātus, I, M., ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, *a staff officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.*

legiō, -ōnis, F., legion, *a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of six thousand, divided into ten cohorts.*

legiōnārius, a, um, of a legion, legionary.

lēgitimus, a, um, legal.

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, choose; read.

Lemannus, i, M., Lemannus, *a lake now called Geneva.*
lēnis, e, gentle, light.
lēnĭter, *adv.*, gently, with little vigor.
leō, -ōnis, M., lion.
Leōnidās, ae, M., Leonidas, *a Spartan king, slain at Thermopylæ*, 480 *B.C.*
Lepontĭī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Lepontii, *an Alpine tribe.*
lepus, -oris, M., hare.
levis, e, light, slignt, trifling.
lēx, lēgis, F., law.
lĭbenter, *adv.*, gladly, with pleasure.
lĭber, brī, M., book.
lĭber, era, erum, free, independent.
lĭberālĭter, *adv.*, generously, graciously, kindly, courteously.
lĭberē, *adv.*, freely, unrestrainedly, frankly.
lĭberī, -ōrum, M. *plur.*, children.
lĭberō, āre, āvī, ātum, free, set free, release.
lĭbertās, -tātis, F., liberty, freedom, independence.
licĕt, ēre, licuit, it is permitted, it is allowable; *freely* may, might.
lignĕus, a, um, of wood, wooden.
lignum, i, N., log; *in plur.*, firewood.
Ligurēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Ligurians, *a people living on the west coast of northern Italy.*
līmen, -mĭnis, N., threshold, door.
Lingonēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Lingones, *a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.*
lingua, ae, F., tongue, language.
linquō, ere, līquī, lictum, leave.
linteum, i, N., linen cloth, curtain.
līquor, -ōris, M., fluid, water.
lis, lītis, F., law suit; damages, penalty.
Litaviccus, i, M., Litaviccus, *a leading man of the Ædui.*
littera, ae, F., letter (of the alphabet), character; *in plur.*, letter, despatch; literature, literary pursuits.
lītus, -oris, N., shore.
locus, i, M. (*plur.*, **loca, ōrum**, N.), place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, destination, country; *in plur.*, space, ground, district, region, country, place.
longē, *adv.*, far, long, by far.
longinquus, a, um, distant, remote; long, protracted.
longitūdō, -dĭnis, F., length.
longus, a, um, long; tedious.
nāvis longa, war-ship, war galley.
Longus, i, M., Ti. Sempronius Longus, *consul in* 218 *B.C.*
loquor, i, locūtus sum, speak, say.
lōtus, a, um, *from* **lavō**.
Lūcānī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Lucanians, *a people dwelling in southern Italy.*
Lūcius, i, M., Lucius, *a Roman prænomen.*
lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctum, lament, mourn, weep.
Lugotorix, -igis, M., Lugotorix, *a Briton of rank.*
lūna, ae, F., moon.
Lutētĭa, ae, F., Lutetia, *a town in Gaul.*
lūx, lūcis, F., light, dawn; **primā lūce** *or* **ortā lūce**, at daybreak, at dawn.

Lȳdī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Lydians, *a people living in Asia Minor.*

lympha, ae, F., water.

Lȳsimachus, ī, M., Lysimachus, *father of Aristides.*

M

M., *an abbreviation for* **Mārcus.**

maeror, -ōris, M., grief, sorrow.

magis, *comparative adv.* (*see* **māgnopere**), more, rather.

magister, trī, M., master, commander; **magister equitum,** master of the horse, *chief subordinate of the Dictator.*

magistrātus, ūs, M., magistrate; office, magistracy; *in plur.*, authorities, chief officials.

Māgnēsia, ae, F., Magnesia, *a city of south-western Asia Minor.*

māgnitūdō, -dinis, F., greatness, great size; size, extent; stature.

māgnopere, *adv.* (**magis, māximē**), greatly, exceedingly, very much, earnestly, urgently.

māgnus, a, um (**mājor, māximus**, great, large, important; eminent; loud, extensive; **māgnī** *as adv.*, highly, greatly.

Māgō, -ōnis, M., Mago, *brother of Hannibal.*

mājor, us, *comparative of* **māgnus**; **mājor nātū,** elder; *in* M. *plur. as subst.*, elders, ancestors.

male, *adv.*, ill, badly, wrongly, unsuccessfully, cruelly; **vōbīs male sit,** curses upon you.

maleficium, ī, N., mischief, outrage.

mālō, mālle, māluī, prefer, had rather, be more willing.

malum, ī, N., evil, ill, harmful deed; calamity.

malus, a, um, evil, accursed.

mandātum, ī, N., order, instruction, message.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, instruct, order; give up, betake.

Mandubracius, ī, M., Mandubracius, *a Briton of rank.*

māne, *adv.*, in the morning.

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, stay, remain; abide.

Mānlius, ī, M., 1. Titus Manlius Torquatus, *a famous Roman.* 2. Marcus Manlius, *consul in* 392 *B.C.* 3. Cn. Manlius Volso, *consul in* 189 *B.C.*

manus, ūs, F., hand; band, force; **manū,** by force, *or, with* **mūnītus,** by art; **manum cōnserere,** join battle.

Marathōnius, a, um, of *or* at Marathon.

Mārcellus, ī, M., Marcus Claudius Marcellus, 1. *a famous Roman general*; 2. *consul in* 183 *B.C.*

Mārcus, ī, M., Marcus, *a Roman prænomen.*

Mardonius, ī, M., Mardonius, *a Persian general.*

mare, is, N., sea.

margarītum, ī, N. (*or* **a, ae,** F.), pearl.

margō, -inis, M., edge, margin, side.

marītimus, a, um, on *or* of the sea, at sea, on the coast, maritime, naval.

māter, -tris, F., mother.

māteria, ae, F., timber, wood.

mātrōnālis, e, of a matron, womanly.

mātūrē, *adv.* (**mātūrius, mātūrrimē**), early, soon.

mātūrus, a, um, early, ripe.

māximē, *superlative adv.* (*see* **māgnopere**), very greatly, very much, most, especially; in the highest degree.

Māximus, I, M., Quintus Fabius Maximus (*see* **Fabius**).

māximus, a, um, *superlative of* **māgnus.**

Mēdī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Medes, *a people of western Asia.*

medicus, I, M., physician.

Mediomatricēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Mediomatrices, *a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

mediterrāneus, a, um, inland.

medius, a, um, middle, central; *generally rendered by* middle *or* midst of.

Meldī, -ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Meldi, *a tribe in northern Gaul.*

melior, us, *comparative of* **bonus.**

mellītus, a, um, honey-sweet.

membrum, I, N., limb.

memor, -oris, mindful, remembering, *with gen.*

memoria, ae, F., memory, recollection, tradition, account; time; **memoriae prōdere,** record, recount, describe.

Menapii, -ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Menapii, *a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*

mēns, mentis, F., mind, intellect, feeling, way of thinking.

mēnsis, is, M., month.

mēnsūra, ae, F., measurement.

mentiō, -ōnis, F., mention.

mercātor, -ōris, M., trader, merchant.

mereō, ēre, uī, itum, deserve, earn.

meridiānus, a, um, of mid-day; **meridiānum tempus,** noon.

meridiēs, ēī, M., mid-day, noon; the south.

meritum, I, N., service; desert, merit.

metallum, I, N., mine.

metō, ere, messuī, messum, reap, cut grain.

metus, ūs, M., fear.

meus, a, um, my, mine.

mīl-es, -itis, M., soldier, man.

mīlitāris, e, military, of war.

mille, *indeclinable adj.*, a thousand; *subst. in plur.*, **mīlia, ium,** N., thousand, thousands.

Miltiadēs, is, M., Miltiades, *a famous Athenian general.*

minimē, *adv.*, *superlative of* **parum,** by no means, very little, least.

minor, us, *comparative of* **parvus,** less, smaller; younger; less great, less eminent.

Minucius, I, M., 1. M. Minucius Rufus, *master of the horse in 217 B.C.* 2. Quintus Minucius, *consul in 193 B.C.*

min-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen, diminish, decrease.

minus, *adv.*, *comparative of* **parum,** less, not . . . enough; *sometimes nearly* = **nōn,** scarcely, not.

mīror, ārī, ātus sum, wonder, wonder at, be surprised at.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful.

misellus, a, um, *diminutive of* **miser,** poor, hapless.

miser, era, erum, wretched, unhappy, pitiable.

misericordia, ae, F., compassion, pity.

mītesco, ere, grow mild, relax.

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, send, despatch.

mōbilis, e, fickle, changeable, capricious, uncertain.

mōbilitās, -tātis, F., activity, mobility.

moderor, ārī, ātus sum, manage, check, control.

modestē, *adv.*, modestly.

modicus, a, um, moderate; small.

modo, *adv.*, only, but, merely; **modo . . . modo**, now . . . now.

modus, I, M., measure, fashion, style, way, manner, kind, sort; *abl.*, **modō**, in the manner *or* character (of), like, as.

moenia, ium, N. *plur.*, walls.

mōlior, īrī, ītus sum, meditate, plan.

mollis, e, easy; gently sloping; favorable.

Molossī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Molossians, *a people in the eastern part of Epirus.*

mōmentum, I, N., movement, impulse.

Mona, ae, F., Mona, *an island in the Irish Sea.*

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, warn, advise, remind, admonish.

mōns, montis, M., mountain, hill, cliff; mountain range.

monumentum, I, N., monument; memorial.

mora, ae, F., delay.

morbus, I, M., illness, disease, sickness.

morībundus, a, um, dying, at the point of death.

Morinī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Morini, *a tribe in the north of Gaul.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, die; *perf. part. as adj.*, **mortuus, a, um**, dead.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, delay, wait, stay, linger.

mors, mortis, F., death.

mortālis, e, mortal; M. *as subst.*, man.

mortuus, a, um, *from* **morior.**

mōs, mōris, M., manner, custom, habit, usage; *in plur. often*, character; will, humor; **mōrem gerere**, *with dat.*, do a person's will, humor, obey.

Mosa, ae, M., the Meuse, *a river in north-eastern Gaul.*

mōtus, ūs, M., movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move, set in motion; influence; **sē movēre**, stir; *with* **castra**, move, break up.

mox, *adv.*, soon, presently; soon afterwards, then, next.

mulier, -eris, F., woman.

multitūdō, -dinis, F., great number, great numbers, large body, multitude, host, number; the crowd, the multitude, the common people.

multō, āre, āvī, ātum, punish, fine.

multō, *adv.*, by far, by much, much, far, long.

multum, *adv.* (**plūs, plūrimum**), much, often, frequently, very.

multus, a, um (**plūs, plūrimus**), much; N. *plur. as subst.*, **multa, ōrum**, many things.

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, fortify, protect, defend, secure; build, construct.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F., work of fortification, fortifying, construction; fortification, line of defence; fortified works, defences.

mūnītus, a, um, *perf. part. pass. of* **mūniō**, *as adj.*, fortified.

mūnus, -eris, N., present, gift.

mūrus, I, M., wall.

mūs, mūris, M., mouse.

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, change, exchange.

Myūs, untis (*acc.* **Myunta**), F., Myus, *a city of Caria, in Asia Minor.*

N

nactus, a, um, *from* **nanciscor**.

Naevius, I, M., Marcus Naevius, *a Roman.*

nam, *conj.*, for.

namque, *conj.*, for indeed, for.

nanciscor, I, nactus *or* **nanctus sum**, find, get, meet with, obtain.

Nantuātēs, ium, M. *plur.*, the Nantuates, *a tribe in the Alps.*

nārrō, āre, āvī, ātum, tell, relate.

nāscor, I, nātus sum, be born, be sprung from, derive origin; *of metals*, be found.

Nāsica, ae, M., Scipio Nasica, *an eminent Roman.*

nātiō, -ōnis, F., race, tribe, nation.

nātūra, ae, F., nature, character; shape.

nātus, a, um, *from* **nāscor**.

nātus, ūs, M., birth.

naufragium, I, N., shipwreck, *literal and figurative.*

nauta, ae, M., sailor, mariner, seaman.

nauticus, a, um, naval, nautical, pertaining to the sea; **rēs nauticae**, seamanship.

nāvālis, e, naval.

nāvicula, ae, F., boat.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F., sailing, voyage.

nāvigium, I, N., ship, vessel, boat.

nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum, sail.

nāvis, is, F., ship, boat, vessel; **nāvis longa**, warship, man-of-war; **nāvis onerāria**, transport; **nāvis frūmentāria**, corn-ship.

Naxos, I, F., Naxus, *an island in the Ægean.*

nē, *conj.*, that not, lest, in order that not; *often best rendered* not to; *with verbs of fearing*, that, lest.

nē, *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even.

-ne, *enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions*, whether.

nebulō, -ōnis, M., worthless fellow, wretch.

nec, *see* **neque**.

necessāriō, *adv.*, of necessity, unavoidably.

necessārius, a, um, critical.

necesse, *indeclinable adj.*, necessary, inevitable; **necesse est**, *often to be rendered by* must, inevitably.

necessitās, -tātis, F., necessity.

necō, āre, āvī, ātum, kill, put to death.

neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, neglect, slight, disregard, be indifferent to.

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, deny, say . . . not; refuse, say "no."

negōtium, I, N., business affair, matter; trouble, difficulty.

Nemea, ae, F., Nemea, *a city in the Peloponnesus.*

nēmō (nēmĭnis), M., *gen. and abl. not in use*, **nūllius** *and* **nūllō** *being used instead*, no one, nobody.

Neoclēs, is *and* **I**, M., Neocles, *the father of Themistocles.*

nēquāquam, *adv.*, by no means.

neque, *or sometimes* **nec** *before consonants*, *adv. and conj.*, and not, nor; *when repeated*, neither . . . nor, not . . . nor.

Nervii, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Nervii, *a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

neu, *conj.* and not, nor.

neuter, tra, trum, neither; *in plur.*, neither side.

nihil, N. *indecl.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no; *acc. as adv.*, not at all.

nihilōminus, *adv.*, none the less.

nihilum, I, N., nothing; **nihilō**, *abl. as adv. with comparatives*, none, no; **nihilō minus, nihilō sēcius**, nevertheless, none the less, all the same.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.

nitidus, a, um, neat, elegant.

nītor, I, nīsus *and* **nīxus sum**, rest upon, mount; strive; depend upon, rely upon.

nix, nivis, F., snow.

Nōbilior, -ōris, M., Servius Fulvius Nobilior, *consul in* 255 *B.C.*

nōbilis, e, noble, of high birth; well-known, famous, prominent.

nōbilitās, -tātis, F., high birth; the nobility, the nobles.

noceō, ēre, uī, itum, do harm to, molest, injure, *with dat.*

noctū, *abl. as adv.*, by night.

nocturnus, a, um, of the night, by night.

Nōla, ae, F., Nola, *a city in Campania, south of Rome.*

Nōlānus, a, um, of Nola.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, am unwilling, do not wish, do not want, refuse.

nōmen, -minis, N., name; reputation, prestige; people.

nōminātim, *adv.*, by name.

nōn, *adv.*, not, no.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnne, *interrogative particle*, not; whether not.

nōnnihil, N., *indecl.*, somewhat, something; *with gen.*, some, considerable.

nōnnūllus, a, um, some.

nōnus, a, um, ninth.

nōs, *plur. of* **ego**.

nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, become acquainted with; *in perf.*, know; *perf. part. pass.* **nōtus, a, um**, *as adj.*, known, well-known, familiar.

noster, tra, trum, our; M. *plur. as subst.*, our men, our forces.

notō, āre, āvī, ātum, observe.

nōtus, *from* **nōscō**.

novem, nine.

novī, *from* **nōscō**.

novitās, -tātis, F., novelty, unfamiliar character.

novus, a, um, new, fresh; strange; **novissimus**, latest, last, rear; **novae rēs**, change of government, revolution.

nox, noctis, F., night.

nūbilus, a, um, cloudy, gloomy.

nūdus, a, um, naked, without clothing, unprotected, bare.

nūllus, a, um, no, none; *in gen. and abl. sing. supplies cases of* **nēmō**, no one.

num, *an interrogative particle, expecting (in direct questions) a negative answer; in indirect questions*, whether.

numerō, āre, āvī, ātum, count, reckon; consider; possess.

numerus, I, M., number; amount.

Numidae, ārum, M. *plur.*, the Numidians, *a people of northern Africa.*

nummus, I, M., coin, money.

numquam *or* **nunquam**, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at this time, at that time; **nunc . . . nunc**, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, announce, report, bring word, tell.

nūntius, I, M., messenger; news, report, message, tidings.

nūptiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, marriage, wedding.
nūtrix, -īcis, F., nurse.
nūtus, ūs, M., nod, beck, sign.

O

ō, *interjection*, oh!
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of, for; **ob eam causam,** on that account, therefore.
ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring over, draw over, overspread.
ob-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, meet; discharge, perform.
obitus, ūs, M., death.
ob-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, place in the way of, throw in the way of, present, cause to appear; *pass.* lie opposite.
oblātus, a, um, *from* **offerō.**
ob-līviscor, ī, -lītus sum, forget, *with gen.*
ob-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, bury.
obscūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, darken, hide.
obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, beseech, implore.
ob-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, obey, submit to, *with dat.*
ob-ses, -sidis, M., hostage.
ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, blockade, besiege, beset; occupy.
obsidiō, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade, pressure, besetment.
obsōnium, ī, N., *that which is eaten with bread*, relish, viands, meat, fish.
obstinātē, *adv.*, steadily, firmly.
obstinātus, a, um, resolute, steadfast.
ob-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, bind.
obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, obey, submit to, *with dat.*
ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess, occupy, keep, maintain.
obtrectātiō, -ōnis, F., jealousy, detraction.
obtrectō, āre, āvī, ātum, be opposed, thwart.
obtulī, *from* **offerō.**
obviam, *adv.*, in the way of, **obviam īre** *or* **venīre** (*with dat.*), go (*or* come) to meet, meet.
occāsiō, -ōnis, F., opportunity.
occāsus, ūs, M., setting; **sōlis occāsus,** sunset, the west.
oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, set; fall, be slain.
oc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, slay, kill; M. *plur. as subst.*, **occīsī,** the slain.
occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, hide, conceal.
oc-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, fall, be slain.
occupātiō, -ōnis, F., engagement, occupation.
occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, seize, get possession of; *perf. part. pass.* **occupātus, a, um,** *as adj.*, busy, occupied, engaged.
oc-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, meet, fall in with, come upon, find; oppose, check, *with dat.*
Ōceanus, ī, M., the ocean.
ocellus, ī, M., *diminutive of* **oculus,** (poor) eye.
Ocelum, ī, N., Ocelum, *a town near the Alps.*
octāvus, a, um, eighth.
octingentī, ae, a, eight hundred.
octō, eight.
octōdecim, eighteen.
octōgintā, eighty.
oculus, ī, M., eye.
odium, ī, N., hatred, enmity.
odor, -ōris, M., perfume; spices.

ob-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, present; **sē offerre,** come forward, confront, throw one's self upon; *in pass.* fall into one's hands.

officium, I, N., service (*especially* public *or* official), duty; allegiance, obligation.

ōlim, *adv.*, once, once upon a time.

ō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, let fall, drop; pass over, omit, say nothing of.

omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, entirely, in all, only; *with negatives,* at all, whatever.

omnis, e, all, every, whole; *neut. plur.*, **omnia,** everything.

onerārius, a, um, for burdens; **nāvis onerāria,** a transport.

onerō, āre, āvī, ātum, load.

onus, -eris, N., burden, weight; load, cargo, freight.

opera, ae, F., effort, exertion; services, assistance agency; **tuā operā,** through your fault, thanks to you; **operam dare,** take pains, take measures, see to it, bestow care on, give attention to.

oper-iō, īre, -uī, -tum, cover, cover over.

opēs, *from* **ops.**

opīniō, -ōnis, F., opinion, belief; reputation, prestige.

oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impersonal verb,* it behoves, it is necessary; *render freely by* ought, should, must.

oppidum, I, N., town.

op-pleō, ēre, -plēvī, -ētum, fill; *perf. part. pass.* **opplētus, a, um,** filled, swarming.

op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, set against, oppose, put in the way of.

opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely, conveniently.

opportūnus, a, um, opportune, fortunate; fitting, suitable, advantageous.

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise; burden, weigh down, bear down.

oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, attack, assault, storm.

(ops), opis, F., power, aid; *generally in plur.*, **opēs, opum,** riches, resources; power, forces; support, assistance.

optimus, a, um, *superlative of* **bonus,** best.

opulentus, a, um, rich, wealthy.

opus, -eris, N., work; fortification, structure; **opere,** *with* **mūnītus,** by art.

opus, N., *found only in nom. and acc. sing.*, need; *with* **esse,** a necessity, *freely,* necessary.

ōra, ae, F., edge, border; shore, coast.

ōrāculum, I, N., oracle.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., speech, address, words, statement.

ōrātor, -ōris, M., ambassador.

orbis, is, F., circle; *with or without* **terrārum,** the world.

Orcus, I, M., Orcus, *the abode of the dead.*

ōrdior, īrī, ōrsus sum, begin, make a start.

ōrdō, -dinis, M., rank, line; arrangement, order.

orior, īrī, ortus sum, rise, arise, begin; spring, be born; **oriēns sōl,** sunrise, the east.

ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum, supply, furnish, equip, prepare; **ōrnātus, a, um,** *perf. part. pass. as adj.*, with all (its) trappings.

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, pray, beg, entreat.

ortus, a, um, *from* **orior.**

ōs, ōris, N., mouth ; face.
os, ossis, N., bone.
osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *or* **ostēnsum,** show, display ; point out, declare, state ; disclose, unmask.
ōstium, I, N., door.
ōtium, I, N., leisure, rest.
ōvum, I, N., egg.

P

P., *an abbreviation for* **Pūblius.**
pābulātor, -ōris, M., forager.
pābulor, ārī, ātus sum, forage.
pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, subdue ; *perf. part. pass.* **pācātus, a, um,** *as adj.*, peaceable, quiet.
Padus, I, M., the Po, *a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).*
paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
paenitet, ēre, paenituit, *impersonal verb*, it repents, it causes to repent ; *render freely by* be sorry, regret.
pāgus, I, M., district, canton.
palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly ; *with force of pred. adj. in* **palam facere,** make clear, disclose, make known.
pal-ūs, -ūdis, F., marsh, swamp, fen.
Pamphȳlius, a, um, Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, *a district in Asia Minor.*
pānis, is, M., bread.
pār, paris, equal, similar, like, the same ; *of battles,* drawn, indecisive ; a match.
parcō, ere, peperī (parsī), parsum (*or* **parcitum**), spare, *with dat.*
parēns, -entis, M. *and* F., parent.
pāreō, ēre, -uī, itum, be obedient, obey, submit ; listen to, follow, comply with ; *with dat.*
pariō, ere, peperī, partum, produce ; win, gain, secure.
parō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, get ready, have in view ; procure, get, acquire ; *perf. part. pass.* **parātus, a, um,** *as adj.*, ready, prepared.
Parrhasius, I, M., Parrhasius, *a famous Greek painter.*
pars, partis, F., part, portion, number, share, some ; quarter, direction, side.
partim, *adv.*, partly ; *when repeated, often rendered by* some . . . others.
partus, *from* **pariō.**
parumper, *adv.*, for a short time, for a while.
parvulus, a, um, little, small, tiny.
parvus, a, um, (minor, minimus), small, trifling.
passer, -eris, M., sparrow.
passim, *adv.*, in all directions.
passus, a, um, *from* **patior.**
passus, ūs, M., pace (*about five feet*) ; *one thousand paces made one Roman mile.*
pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, open, throw open, keep open, open up.
pate-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of* **patefaciō.**
pateō, ēre, uī, extend.
pater, -tris, M., father ; **patrēs cōnscriptī,** senators.
paternus, a, um, of a father, father's, paternal.
patientia, ae, F., patience, endurance.
patior, I, passus sum, suffer, allow, permit, endure, withstand.
patria, ae, F., native country, native land, (one's) country.
patrius, a, um, ancestral, of one's fathers ; of one's coun-

try; *in Them.* 7, 4, **deī patriī**, the gods of the state (*i.e., of Attica*).

paucī, ae, a (*sing. very rare*), few, but few.

paucitās, -tātis, F., small number, fewness.

paulātim, *adv.*, gradually, by degrees.

paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time, for a while.

paulō, *adv.*, a little; slightly, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.*, a little; a short distance.

Paulus, I., M., *see* **Aemilius.**

paupertās, -tātis, F., poverty.

Pausaniās, ae, M., Pausanias, *a Spartan general.*

pavor, -ōris, M., fear, panic, alarm.

pāx, pācis, F., peace.

pecūnia, ae, F., money, sum of money.

pecus, -oris, N., cattle, herd; flesh, meat.

ped-es, -itis, M., foot-soldier, infantry-man; *in plur.*, infantry.

pedester, tris, tre, on *or* by land; of infantry; **cōpiae pedestrēs**, land forces; infantry.

peditātus, ūs, M., infantry.

pellis, is, F., skin, hide.

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, defeat, rout, drive back; banish, drive out.

Peloponnēsus, I, F., the Peloponnesus, *that part of Greece lying south of the isthmus and gulf of Corinth.*

penātēs, ium, M. *plur.*, household gods, Penates.

pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, weigh, pay.

penes, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the hands of.

pepercī, *from* **parcō.**

pepulī, *from* **pellō.**

per, *prep. with acc.*, through; during; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of.

per-agō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, finish, complete.

per-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, hear.

percontātiō, -ōnis, F., inquiry.

percontor, ārī, ātus sum, ask.

per-currō, ere, -curri (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, run along.

per-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring over, bring; carry, carry along; lead safely.

per-eō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itum**, perish, be killed.

perequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, ride about.

perexiguus, a, um, very small.

perfacilis, e, very easy.

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry, report, bring; bear to the end, endure, submit to.

per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, carry out.

perfidia, ae, F., faithlessness, treachery.

per-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, pierce.

perfuga, ae, M., deserter.

per-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, flee for refuge, flee.

perfugium, I, N., refuge, place of refuge.

per-fungor, I, -fūnctus sum, perform, endure, undergo, finish.

Pergamēnī, -ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Pergamenians, *inhabitants of Pergamum in Asia Minor.*

Pergamēnus, a, um, of *or* belonging to Pergamum, Pergamenian.

periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.

periculum, I, N., danger, peril, risk; attempt, experiment.

perītus, a, um, skilled, expert.
perlātus, a, um, *from* **perferō.**
per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, continue, remain, abide, persist.
per-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, give up, entrust; allow, permit.
per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move, influence; alarm, excite, dismay.
per-mulceō, ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum *and* **-mulctum,** soothe, calm.
permultī, ae, a, very many.
permūtātiō, -ōnis, F., exchange.
perpaucī, ae, a, very few.
perpetuus, a, um, continuous, lasting; **in perpetuum,** for ever.
per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, forcé one's way through.
Persae, ārum, M. *plur.*, the Persians.
per-sequor, ī, -secutus sum, pursue, follow up; attack; punish.
Persēs, ae (*abl.* **Persē**), **M.,** a Persian; *as adj.*, Persian.
persevērō, āre, āvī, ātum, persist, persevere.
Persicus, a, um, Persian.
Persis, -idis, F., Persia.
per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see, observe, examine, reconnoitre; ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.
per-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade, convince; prevail upon, induce; *with dat.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, terrify, frighten, alarm; disconcert, dismay; *in pass.*, be panic-stricken.
per-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, extend, reach, stretch; tend, serve.
pertulī, *from* **perferō.**
perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., alarm, panic, confusion.
perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, thrown into confusion, disturb, disconcert, alarm.
pervā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, spread through, penetrate.
pervagor, ārī, ātus sum, roam about, range, scour the country.
per-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come; reach, arrive at.
pēs, pedis, M., foot; **pedibus,** on foot; **pedem referre,** fall back, retire, retreat.
pet-ō, ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, seek to reach; aim at, attack.
phal-anx, -angis, F., phalanx, solid column.
Phalēricus, a, um, Phalerian, of Phalerum.
Philippus, ī, M., Philip, *king of Macedonia*, 220-179 *B.C.*
pictor, -ōris, M., painter.
pictūra, ae, F., picture.
pila, ae, F., ball, game of ball, tennis.
pīlum, ī, N., javelin, spear.
pingō, ere, pinxī, pictum, paint.
pīpiō, āre, peep, chirp.
Pīraeus, ī, M., Piræus, *the chief port of Athens.*
Pīrūstae, ārum, M. *plur.*, the Pirustae, *a tribe in Illyricum.*
piscis, is, M., fish.
Pisō, -ōnis, M., Piso, *an Aquitanian of rank.*
placeō, ēre, uī, itum, please.
plānus, a, um, level.
Platacae, ārum, F. *plur.*, Platæa, *a town in Bœotia.*
plēbs, plēbis, F., plebs, the common people.
plēnus, a, um, full.

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, the most, most persons.

plērumque, *adv.*, generally, for the most part.

plumbum, ī, N., lead; **plumbum album**, tin.

plūrimum, *adv.*, *superlative of* **multum**, most, very much.

plūrimus, a, um, *superlative of* **multus**, most, very much; *in plur.*, very many; **quam plūrimī**, as many as possible.

plūs, plūris, *comparative of* **multus**, more; *in plur.*, more, several, many.

poena, ae, F., penalty, punishment.

poenitet, *see* **paenitet**.

Poenus, a, um, Carthaginian.

Poenus, ī, M., a Carthaginian, *an inhabitant of Carthage, especially* the Carthaginian, *i.e.*, *Hannibal*.

poēta, ae, M., poet.

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, promise, make a promise.

Polybius, ī, M., Polybius, *a Greek historian*.

pōmifer, era, erum, fruit-bearing, fruitful.

Pompēius, ī, M., Pompey, *Cneius Pompeius, the triumvir, consul in 55 B.C.*

pondus, -eris, N., weight.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, place, station, post; depend, rest; *with* **castra**, pitch; *with* **arma**, lay down; *in pass.*, be situated, lie.

pōns, pontis, M., bridge.

Pontus, ī, M., Pontus, *a country in Asia Minor, on the southern shore of the Euxine Sea*.

poposcī, *from* **poscō**.

populor, ārī, ātus sum, devastate, ravage.

populus, ī, M., people, nation.

Porsena, ae, M., Lars Porsena, *an Etruscan king*.

porta, ae, F., gate.

portō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry, bear.

portus, ūs, M., harbor, port.

poscō, ere, poposcī, demand, ask, request, call for.

pos-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, seize, occupy, take possession of.

possum, posse, potuī, be able, can, be possible; be powerful, be strong, have weight *or* influence.

post, 1. *adv.*, afterwards, after. 2. *prep. with acc.*, after, behind.

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards, later.

posteāquam, *conj.*, after, when.

posterus, a, um, next, following; later, subsequent; M. *plur. as subst.*, **posterī**, descendants.

post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, set aside, disregard.

postquam (*often written* **post . . . quam**), *conj.*, after, when, as soon as.

postrīdiē, *adv.*, next day, on the morrow, on the following day.

postulātum, ī, N., demand.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, demand, require, ask.

Postumius, ī, M., L. Postumius Albinus, *consul in 215 B.C.*

potēns, -entis, *part. of* **possum**, powerful, influential.

potentia, ae, F., power, influence.

potestās, -tātis, F., power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.

potissimum, *adv.*, especially, chiefly, most, in preference to all others.

potius, *adv.*, rather, more, in preference.

potŭī, *from* **possum**.

praebeō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, show; furnish, supply.

prae-cēdō, **ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, surpass.

prae-ceps, **-cipitis**, headlong; abrupt, steep.

praeceptor, **-ōris**, M., teacher.

praeceptum, **ī**, N., direction, instruction, command.

prae-cipiō, **ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, instruct, give instructions, order, direct.

praecipitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, fling, throw headlong.

praecipuē, *adv.*, especially, particularly.

praecipuus, **a**, **um**, especial, particular.

praeclārus, **a**, **um**, glorious, noble, distinguished, famous.

prae-clūdō, **ere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum**, close, barricade.

praeda, **ae**, F., plunder, booty, spoil.

praedicō, **āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, announce, declare, give out, publish, proclaim, state.

prae-dicō, **ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictum**, instruct, charge.

praedō, **-ōnis**, M., robber; **maritimus praedō**, pirate.

praedor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, plunder, pillage, raid.

praefectus, **ī**, M., officer, commander (*especially of cavalry*).

prae-ficiō, **ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, set over, place in command of, give control of, *with acc. and dat.*

prae-fīgō, **ere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum**, fix before, plant in front.

prae-gredior, **ī**, **-gressus sum**, go in advance.

prae-mittō, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, send in advance, send on, send forward.

praemium, **ī**, N., reward.

praeparō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, prepare *or* get ready beforehand.

praesēns, **-entis**, *part. of* **praesum**, present, on hand.

praesentia, **ae**, F., the present moment; **in praesentiā**, for the moment, for the time being.

praesertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly.

praesidium, **ī**, N., guard, garrison, (*protecting*) force; protection, support, escort; *in plur.*, entrenchments, defences.

prae-stō, **āre**, **-stitī**, **stātum** *or* **-stitum**, show, display; perform, do; excel, surpass; fulfil, make good; keep; **praestat**, *impersonal*, it is better, it is preferable.

prae-sum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, be over, be at head of, have command of, be in charge of, rule over, *with dat.*

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, except; beyond.

praeterea, *adv.*, besides, moreover.

praeter-mittō, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, pass over, let pass.

praetor, **-ōris**, M., general, commander; prætor, *a Roman magistrate ranking just below a consul.*

precēs, **um**, F. (*sing. defective and very rare*), prayers, entreaties.

precor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, pray, entreat.

premō, **ere**, **pressī**, **pressum**, press, press hard, attack fiercely, harass, beset, overwhelm; bear down upon; *in pass.*, be afflicted, be affected.

prētium, I, N., price.

prīdiē, *adv.*, the day before, on the previous day.

prīmō, *adv.*, at first, in the first place, first.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; **cum** *or* **ubī prīmum**, as soon as; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible.

prīmus, a, um, *superlative of* **prior**, first, foremost; **in prīmīs**, especially, in particular.

prīnceps, -cipis, first, chief; M. *as subst.*, leading *or* chief man, leader, chief.

prīncipātus, ūs, M., leadership, chief position, sovereignty.

prior, ius, *comparative*, former, earlier; first (*of two*).

prīscus, a, um, early, ancient, old-time.

prīstinus, a, um, former, previous; of former days, old-time.

prius, *comparative adv.*, earlier, sooner, first; *see also* **priusquam**.

priusquam (often written **prius . . . quam**) *conj.*, before; *with negatives*, until.

prīvātim, *adv.*, privately, as individuals.

prīvātus, a, um, private, individual, personal.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; instead of, in place of, as; in defence of, for; in accordance with; for, in return for.

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, approve; favor; recognize.

prō-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go forward, come forward, advance.

procer, -eris, M., noble, chief.

prōcēritās, -tātis, F., height.

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, from a distance, far.

prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, attend to, take care of.

prō-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, run forward.

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, come forward, appear.

prōditiō, -ōnis, F., treason.

prōditor, -ōris, M., traitor.

prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, betray, abandon, give up; hand down.

prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead forth; prolong, protract; draw out, lure, entice.

proelior, ārī, ātus sum, fight.

proelium, I., N., battle, engagement, fighting, fight.

profectiō, -ōnis, F., departure.

profectus, a, um, *from* **proficiscor**.

prōfectus, a, um, *from* **prōficiō**.

professus, a, um, *from* **profiteor**.

prōficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, effect, accomplish.

pro-ficiscor, ī, -fectus sum, set out, depart, start, go, proceed.

pro-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, confess, declare one's self; state.

prōfligō, āre, āvī, ātum, rout.

prō-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, flow forth, rise.

pro-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, flee, escape.

prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, go forward, advance, proceed, go.

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, restrain, keep, prevent, check, cut off; protect.

prō-iiciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw down, throw; **sē prōiicere**, leap down.

prō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, promise; let grow; *perf. part. pass.* **prōmissus**, a, um, *as adj.*, long, flowing.

prōmptus, a, um, ready, quick.
prōnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, declare, tell.
prōpatulum, ī, N., open court.
prope, *adv.* (**propius, proximē**), near; nearly, almost; *as prep. with acc.*, near.
prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, dislodge, force back.
properē, *adv.*, quickly, speedily.
properō, āre, āvī, ātum, hasten.
propinquitās, -tātis, F., nearness, proximity.
propinquus, a, um, near, close at hand, neighboring, at hand; M. *as subst.*, relative, kinsman.
propior, ius, *comparative*, nearer; *see* **proximus**.
propitius, a, um, gracious, benign.
propius, *adv.*, *comparative of* **prope**, nearer.
prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, set forth; present; display.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of.
propterea, *adv.*, on this account, for this reason; **propterea quod**, for the reason that, because.
prōpūgnāculum, ī, N., bulwark, rampart, defence.
prōpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, rush out (to fight); make sorties.
prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, attend, accompany; pursue, follow.
prōspectus, ūs, M., sight.
prōsperē, *adv.*, successfully.
prō-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, look out, watch; take precautions, take care, provide.
prō-terō, ere, -trīvī, -trītum, trample upon, supplant.
prōtinus, *adv.*, at once, immediately, right onward.
prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, drive back, repel.
prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward; *in pass.*, be carried, be driven, sail.
prō-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, provide, procure, make provision for, arrange for; guard against, take precautions.
prōvincia, ae, F., province; *especially* 'the Province' *of Gallia Transalpina.*
prōvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out, challenge.
proximus, a, um, nearest, next, close by; *superl. of* **propior.**
prūdentia, ae, F., discretion, sagacity, shrewdness, cunning.
Prūsiās (*or* **Prūsia**), **ae, M.**, Prusias, *king of Bithynia, to whom Hannibal fled for refuge.*
Ptolemaeus, ī, M., Ptolemy, *king of Egypt from* 51-47 *B.C.*
pūblicē, *adv.*, officially, in the name of the state, as a state, at the public expense.
pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātum, confiscate.
pūblicus, a, um, official, of the state, public; **rēs pūblica**, state; public affairs, public interests; *in Them.* 7, 4, **deī pūblicī**, the gods of the nation (*i.e., of Greece*).
Pūblius, ī, M., Publius, *a Roman prænomen.*
pudor, -ōris, M., sense of shame, shame.
puella, ae, F., girl, maiden, lass; sweetheart, mistress.
puellāris, e, of a girl, a girl's.
puer, erī, M., boy, child, lad; servant, slave; **ā puerīs**, from childhood.
puerulus, ī, M., a little boy;

puerulō mē, when I was a mere child.

pūgna, ae, F., fight, fighting, battle.

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight, contend.

pulsus, a, um, *from* **pellō**.

pulv-is, -eris, M., dust, cloud of dust.

puppis, is, F., stern of a vessel.

pūrgō, āre, āvī, ātum, exculpate, excuse, clear.

pūrus, a, um, plain.

puteus, ī, M., well.

putō, āre, āvī, ātum, think, believe, hold, consider.

Pydna, ae, F., Pydna, *a town of Macedonia, on the sea-shore.*

Pȳrēnaeus, a, um, of *or* over the Pyrenees, *the range of mountains between Gaul and Spain.*

Pyrrhus, ī, M., Pyrrhus, *king of Epirus from 295 to 272 B.C.*

Pȳthia, ae, F., Pythia, *the priestess of Apollo at Delphi, where was located the chief oracle of that deity.*

Q

Q., *an abbreviation for* **Quintus**.

quā, *adv.*, where, by which route.

quācumque, *adv.*, wherever.

quadrāgintā, forty.

quadringēnī, ae, a, four hundred (each).

quadringentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī (-iī), quaesītum, ask, enquire; seek, look for; **quaerere ab ōstiō** *or* **ā jānuā**, ask for (one) at the door.

quaestor, -ōris, M., quaestor, paymaster, *one in charge of the finances of a province or an army.*

quam, *adv.*, as; how; *after comparatives*, than; *with superlatives*, as . . . as possible. *for* **postquam**, after.

quamdiū, *rel. adv.*, as long as.

quamobrem, *adv.*, wherefore.

quamvīs, 1. *adv.*, however. 2. *conj.*, although.

quantus, a, um, how great, how much, what; *with* **tantus**, *expressed or understood*, (as great) as, (as much) as, such as; *neut. as subst.*, how much; **tantō . . . quantō**, as much . . . as.

quārē, *adv.*, wherefore, for which reason; consequently, therefore.

quārtus, a, um, fourth.

quasi, *conj.*, as if.

quattuor, four.

quattuordecim, fourteen.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and (*to be translated before the word to which it is added*).

queror, ī, questus sum, complain.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that; he who; *as coordinating relative*, this, he; *after* **īdem**, as.

quī, quae, quod, *interrogative adj.*, what, which.

quī, qua *or* **quae, quod**, *indefinite adj. or rarely pron.*, any; anyone.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quīcquam, *from* **quisquam**.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever, whichever.

quid, N. *of* **quis**, *as adv.*, why.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* **quoddam**, a certain, a certain man, a, one.

quidem, *adv.*, certainly, indeed; too; but, however; **nē . . . quidem**, not even.

quĭn, *conj.*, but that, but, that; *freely*, to, from.
quĭn, *adv.*, nay, in fact.
quindecim, fifteen.
quingentī, ae, a, five hundred.
quinquāgēnī, ae, a, fifty (each).
quinquāgintā, fifty.
quinque, five.
quinquiēs *or* **quinquiēns**, *adv.*, five times.
Quintilius, I, M., Publius Quintilius Varus, *a Roman general.*
Quintius, I, M., Titus Quintius Flamininus (*see* **Flāmininus**).
quintus, a, um, fifth.
Quintus, I, M., Quintus, *a Roman prænomen.*
Quirīs, -ītis, M., Roman citizen; *in voc. plur.*, fellow-citizens.
quis, quae, quid, *interrogative pron.*, who, which, what.
quis, qua, quid, *indefinite pron.*, anyone, anything; *with* **nisi**, something, someone.
quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, *interrogative pron.*, (**-nam** *adding emphasis*) who pray, what then, who, which, what.
quisquam, quidquam *or* **quicquam**, anyone, anything, any.
quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* **quodque**, each, each one; every, everyone.
quivis, quaevis, quidvis *or* **quodvis**, any, any whatever.
quō, *adv.*, 1. *rel.*, whither, where, to *or* into which, to whom. 2. *interrog.*, where, whither.
quŏ, *abl. of* **qui**, *as conj.*, that, in order that; because.
quŏ, *abl. of* **qui**, *as adv.*, by how much, by this, on this account.
quoad, *conj.*, until, as long as.
quŏd, *conj.*, because, that, in that; the fact that; *with adverbial force*, wherefore, so that.
quōminus *or* **quŏ minus**, *conj.*, so that not; *freely*, to, from.
quondam, *adv.*, once.
quoniam, *conj.*, since, seeing that.
quoque, *conj.*, also, too, as well.
quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many, as many as.
quotannis, *adv.*, yearly, every year, annually.
quotiēnscumque, *adv.*, as often as, whenever.

R

rādō, ere, -si, -sum, shave.
rāmus, I, M., branch.
rāna, ae, F., frog.
rapiditās, -tātis, F., swiftness.
rārus, a, um, scattered; *in plur.*, in detached groups, in small parties.
rāsus, a, um, *from* **rādō**.
ratiō, -ōnis, F., method, system, theory, science; character; manner, way; plan; consideration, reason; calculation, strategy.
ratis, is, F., raft.
ratus, a, um, *from* **reor**.
rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war; **rebelliōnem facere**, renew the war.
recēns, -entis, new, recent, late; fresh, unexhausted.
receptus, ūs, M., retreat, way of retreat.
reciperō, āre, āvi, ātum, recover.
re-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, regain, get back, recover; receive, admit, welcome; **sē recipere**, 1. recover one's self, recover, rally; 2. return, retreat, betake one's self.
re-currō, ere, -curri, hasten back, return,

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, refuse, object; reject.

red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give back, restore, return; make, render; **sē reddere**, to betake one's self again, return.

redēgī, *from* **redigō**.

red-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, come back, return; come in, be derived.

red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, reduce, make, bring.

reditiō, -ōnis, F., return.

reditus, ūs, M., return, returning.

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, carry back, drive back; bring back word, report; **pedem referre**, retreat, fall back; **sē referre**, betake one's self, retreat, return; **grātiam referre**, make a return, reward.

re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, repair, refit; recruit, rest.

re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, escape.

regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district, country, part.

rēgius, a, um, royal, of the king.

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, be king, reign.

rēgnum, I, N., kingdom; royal power, supreme power, the throne.

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule, govern.

re-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, return, go back.

rēgnla, ae, F., rule.

Rēgulus, I, M., Marcus Atilius Regulus, *a famous Roman, consul in* 156 *B.C.*

rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, drive back.

relātus, a, um, *from* **referō**.

relictus, a, um, *from* **relinquō**:

religiō, -ōnis, F., religious scruple, reverence, conscientiousness, obligation of an oath.

reliquiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, remainder, remnant.

re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum, leave, leave behind; abandon; neglect; *impersonal in pass.*, it remains.

reliquus, a, um, remaining, other, left, else; future, subsequent; *generally to be rendered by* the rest of; M. *plur.*, **reliquī, ōrum**, *as subst.*, the rest, the others; **reliquum tempus**, the future.

re-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, remain behind, stay.

rēm-ex, -igis, M., rower, oarsman.

Rēmī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Remi, *a tribe in northern Gaul.*

rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātum, row.

remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, move back, return.

re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send back, release, give up; relax; *perf. part. pass.*, **remissus, a, um**, *as adj.*, mild; light, cheerful.

remollēscō, ere, become soft *or* enervated.

re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move back, withdraw, draw back, draw away; put aside, put away; remove, destroy, put out of the way.

rēmus, I, M., oar.

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, renew.

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, report, bring back word; **renūntiātur**, word is brought (back).

reor, rērī, ratus sum, think.

reparō, āre, āvī, ātum, build again.

re-pellō, ere, reppulī (*or* **repulī**), **-pulsum**, drive back, defeat.

repente, *adv.*, suddenly.

repentīnus, a, um, sudden, hasty, unexpected.

re-perīō, īre, repperī (*or* **reperī**), **-pertum**, find, find out, discover, ascertain.

re-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petītum, demand back; bring back, renew; **repetere memoriā**, call to mind, recollect.

rēpō, ere, rēpsī, rēptum, creep, crawl along.

re-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, store up.

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry back, take back.

repperī, *from* **reperīō**.

re-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, restrain, check.

repulsus, a, um, *from* **repellō**.

rēs, reī, F., thing, matter, affair, circumstance, means, fact, act, object, interest, situation, deed, proposal, property; **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae**, F., state, public affairs, public interests; **rēs gestae**, F. *plur.*, deeds, exploits.

re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, break down, tear down, destroy.

re-sciscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, ascertain, learn, find out.

re-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, sit down.

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, hold one's ground, halt; resist, withstand, oppose, make resistance, *with dat.*

re-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, regard.

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer, make answer, reply.

respōnsum, ī, N., answer, reply.

rēs pūblica (*see under* **rēs**).

restitī, *from* **resistō**.

restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, restore; rebuild.

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain, keep; preserve, maintain.

re-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, bring back (by force).

rettulī, *from* **referō**.

re-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear *or* wrest away, pull up.

re-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum (*chiefly in perf. tenses*), return, come back, go back.

re-vertor, ī, -versus sum (*chiefly in pres. imperf. and fut. tenses*), return, come back, go back.

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, recall.

revolō, āre, fly back.

rēx, rēgis, M., king; commander, admiral.

Rhēnus, ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, ī, M., the Rhone.

Rhodiī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Rhodians, *the people of Rhodes, an island near Asia Minor.*

rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh.

rīpa, ae, F., bank.

rīsus, ūs, M., laughter, laugh.

rōbustus, a, um, strong, powerful.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask, request, entreat.

rogus, ī, M., funeral pile.

Rōma, ae, F., Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; M. *as subst.*, a Roman.

Rōmulus, ī, M., Romulus, *the founder and first king of Rome.*

rota, ae, F., wheel.

rubeō, ēre, be red.

ruber, bra, brum, red.

Rūfus, ī, M., 1. Marcus Minucius Rufus, *master of the horse*, 217 *B.C.* 2. Publius Sulpicius Rufus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

rūmor, -ōris, M., rumor, report.

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, break.

rūrsus, *adv.*, again, back again, in turn.

rūs, rūris, N., the country; field, land.

S

Sabīnus, ī, M., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

sacellum, ī, N., chapel, shrine.

sacer, cra, crum, sacred; N. *plur.* **sacra, ōrum,** *as subst.*, religious worship, sacred rites.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, M., priest.

sacrārium, ī, N., sanctuary, shrine.

sacrificō, āre, āvī, ātum, sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.* (**saepius, saepissimē**), often, frequently.

saepiō, īre, saepsī, saeptum, hedge in, surround, enclose.

sagācitās, -tātis, F., shrewdness.

sagitta, ae, F., arrow.

Saguntum, ī, N., Saguntum, *a town of eastern Spain, near the Mediterranean.*

Salamīnius, a, um, of Salamis.

Salamīs, -īnis (*acc.* **Salamīna**), F., Salamis, *an island off the west coast of Attica.*

sal-iō, īre, -uī, -tum, leap.

saltus, ūs, M., pass, mountain pass; woodland.

salum, ī, N., open sea, high sea.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety, welfare, protection; source of safety, benefit.

salvus, a, um, safe.

Samnītēs, ium, M. *plur.*, the Samnites, *a people living in central Italy.*

Santonēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Santones, *a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.*

sānus, a, um, sound, sane; **prō sānō,** like a discreet man, prudently.

sapiēns, -entis, wise; M. *as subst.* wise man, sage.

sarmentum, ī, N., twig, fagot, brushwood.

satiō, -āre, āvī, ātum, satisfy, sate.

satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably; *often as subst.*, enough, sufficient; *also as adj.*, enough, sufficient, satisfactory.

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, do enough; make amends; apologize.

saucius, a, um, wounded.

saxum, ī, N., stone, rock.

scāla, ae, F., ladder.

scandō, ere, climb, mount, ascend.

scapha, ae, F., skiff, small boat.

scientia, ae, F., knowledge.

scīlicet, *adv.*, evidently.

scindō, ere, scīdī, scissum, tear down.

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, know.

Scipiō, -ōnis, M., 1. Publius Cornelius Scipio, *consul in* 218 *B.C.* 2. *His son*, Publius Cornelius Africanus Major, *the conqueror of Hannibal.* 3. Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica, *consul in* 191 *B.C.*

scītum, ī, N., decree.

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write, state.

scūtum, ī, N., shield.

Scythae, ārum, M. *plur.*, the Scythians, *a people dwelling north of the Euxine Sea.*

sē, *from* **suī.**

sēcius, *from* **secus.**

secundus, a, um, second; favorable.

secus, *adv.* (*comparative* **sēcius**),

otherwise; **nihilō sēcius**, none the less, nevertheless.

secūtus, a, um, *from* **sequor**.

sed, *conj.*, but, however.

sēdecim, sixteen.

sēdēs, is, F., seat; abode, home, settlement.

Segontiaci, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Segontiaci, *a tribe in Britain.*

Segov-ax, -actis, M., Segovax, *a king ruling in Kent.*

sēgregō, āre, āvī, ātum, shut out, exclude.

sē-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, separate, divide.

sēmita, ae, F., path, by-path.

semper, *adv.*, always, at all times, ever.

Semprōnius, I, M., Sempronius, *see* **Gracchus**.

senātus, ūs, M., senate; audience of the Senate.

senectūs, -tūtis, F., old age.

senex, senis, M., old man; *as adj.*, old, aged.

sententia, ae, F., opinion, way of thinking; decision; **sententiam ferre dē**, to pass judgment on.

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, be aware, perceive, learn, discover; hold views, have opinions.

sēparō, āre, āvī, ātum, separate; *perf. part. pass.* **sēparātus**, a, um, *as adj.*, separate.

sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), sepultum, bury, inter.

septem, seven.

septentriō, -ōnis, M. (*chiefly in plur.*), the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear; *hence* the north.

Septimius, I, M., Lucius Septimius, *an officer who slew Pompey.*

septimus, a, um, seventh.

septingentī, ae, a, seven hundred.

septuāgēsimus, a, um, seventieth.

septuāgintā, seventy.

sepulcrum, I, N., tomb.

sepultus, a, um, *from* **sepeliō**.

Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian, of the Sequani; M. *as subst.*, a Sequanian; *in plur.*, the Sequani, *a tribe in Gaul north of 'the Province.'*

sequor, I, **secūtus sum**, follow, pursue, attend.

sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation, language.

serō, ere, sēvī, satum, sow, plant.

serpēns, -entis, M. *or* F., serpent, snake.

Servīlius, I, M., Servilius, *a Roman family name.*

servīō, īre, īvī, ītum, be subject; be a slave to; follow blindly; devote one's self to; *with dat.*

servitūs, -tūtis, F., bondage, slavery, subjection.

Servius, I, M., Servius, *a Roman prænomen.*

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, save; keep, maintain, observe, watch.

servulus, I, M., *diminutive of* **servus**, young slave, slave.

servus, I, M., slave.

sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.

sēsē, *from* **suī**.

seu, *see* **sīve**.

sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call aside.

sex, six.

sexāgēnī, ae, a, sixty (each).

sexāgintā, sixty.

sextus, a, um, sixth.

sī, *conj.*, if, even if; in case, to see whether.

sibi, *from* **suī**.

sīc, *adv.*, thus, in this way; so, in such a way.
siccitās, -tātis, F., drying up.
Sicilia, ae, F., Sicily.
significātiō, -ōnis, F., intimation, announcement, signal.
significō, āre, āvī, ātum, indicate, show; mean, signify.
signum, I, N., signal; standard.
silentium, I, N., quiet, silence.
Silēnus, I, M., Silenus, *a Greek historian.*
silva, ae, F., wood, forest.
silvestris, e, wooded.
similis, e, like, similar.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time; also; along with, in one's company *or* society; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and; **simul atque**, *or sometimes* **simul** *alone*, as sooh as.
simulācrum, I, N., image, shadow, reflection.
simulātiō, -ōnis, F., pretence, deceit.
simulō, āre, āvī, ātum, pretend.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without, free from.
singillātim, *adv.*, singly, one by one.
singulāris, e, extraordinary, unparalleled, remarkable; *in plur.*, one by one, in small detachments, in scattered groups.
singulī, ae, a, one each, one at a time, one by one; *often freely* severally, singly, individually.
sinister, tra, trum, left; *fem.* **sinistra**, *as subst.*, left hand (*sc.* **manus**).
sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, allow, permit.
sitiō, īre, īvī, thirst, be thirsty.
situs, a, um, situated, lying.
sīve *or* **seu**, *conj.*, or if; **sīve . . . sīve**, whether . . . or, either . . . or.
socer, erī, M., father-in-law.
societās, -tātis, F., alliance, league.
socius, I, M., ally.
sōl, sōlis, M., sun; **oriēns sōl**, the east; **occidēns sōl**, the west.
sōlācium, I, N., comfort, consolation.
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.
sōlitūdō, -dinis, F., solitude, wilderness.
sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, stir up, tempt, try to influence, tamper with, bribe, try to win over.
Solōn, -ōnis, M., Solon, *a famous Athenian law-giver.*
sōlum, *adv.*, only, merely, alone.
sōlus, a, -um, alone, only.
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, loose, open; free, exempt; *with or without* **nāvēs**, weigh anchor, set sail.
sordidus, a, um, unclean, mean, humble.
soror, -ōris, F., sister.
Sōsilus, I, M., Sosilus, *a Spartan historian.*
spatium, I, N., space, extent, distance; interval (*whether of space or time*); time, length, duration.
speciēs, ēī, F., appearance, form.
spectāculum, I, N., sight, spectacle.
spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look, face, slope, lie; have an aim *or* object.
speculātōrius, a, um, of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.
speculum, I, N., mirror.
spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, hope; hope for, expect.
spēs, eī, F., hope.
spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, strip, deprive, despoil.

spontis (*gen.*), **sponte** (*abl.*), *defective noun*, F.; *in abl.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily.
Spūrinna, ae, M., Spurinna, *a Roman general.*
Spurius, I, M., Spurius, *a Roman prænomen.*
stabiliō, īre, īvī, ītum, make steady *or* firm.
stabilitās, -tātis, F., steadiness, firmness.
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately, straightway.
statiō, -ōnis, F., post, guard, outpost.
statua, ae, F., statue.
stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, decide, determine.
statūra, ae, F., stature, size.
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātum, scatter; knock down, overthrow.
stilus, I, M., style, pen.
stīpendiārius, a, um, tributary.
stō, āre, stetī, statum, stand, remain standing.
strāgēs, is, F., confusion, confused mass; slaughter, defeat.
strepitus, ūs, M., noise, rattling.
strūctūra, ae, F., gallery, mine.
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, build, raise.
studeō, ēre, uī, strive, be eager for, pay attention.
studium, I, N., zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm.
stultē, *adv.*, foolishly, stupidly.
suāvitās, -tātis, sweetness, attractiveness.
sub, *prep.* 1. *with abl.*, under, beneath, near to, close to, at the foot of; at. 2. *with acc.*, close to, close up to.
subāctus, a, um, *from* **subigō.**
sub-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, draw off; draw up, haul up, beach.
subductiō, -ōnis, F., hauling on shore, beaching.
subēgī, *from* **subigō.**
sub-eō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, draw near, advance; go under, enter; undergo, encounter.
suberam, subesse, *from* **sub-sum.**
sub-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, stab from beneath *or* in the belly.
sub-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, subdue, overcome, subjugate.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
subitus, a, um, sudden.
sub-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, place beneath; place close to; expose; *in pass.*, lie near, lie close by.
sublātus, a, um, *from* **tollō.**
sublicius, a, um, built on piles; **Pōns Sublicius,** *a wooden bridge over the Tiber, the oldest of the Roman bridges.*
sublūstris, e, with a faint light, dark.
subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum, supply, furnish.
sub-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send (to aid), send to one's aid.
sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, drive off *or* away.
sub-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, follow (closely), follow up.
subsidium, I, N., aid, support, relief; reserves, reinforcements; **subsidia comparāre,** provide resources, make provision.
sub-sistō, ere, -stitī, stay; hold.
sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, be near, be close at hand; be at the bottom, lie concealed.
sub-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come to aid, aid (*with dat.*).

suc-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, succeed, take the place of, relieve, *with dat.;* come close up, approach, advance, come next, adjoin.

suc-cīdo, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down, cut through.

suc-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, yield, submit.

suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, run to aid, run to the rescue of (*with dat.*).

sudis, is, F., stake.

Suēbī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Suebi, *a German tribe on the Rhine.*

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, choose as successor, elect in one's stead.

suffrāgium, I, N., vote, voice, suffrage.

Sugambrī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Sugambri, *a German tribe on the Rhine.*

suī, sibi, sē *or* **sēsē,** *reflex. pron.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them; **inter sē,** one another, (to, with, from, *etc.*), one another.

Sulpicius, I, M. 1. Publius Sulpicius Galba, *consul in* 200 *B.C.* 2. Sulpicius Blitho, *a Roman historian.* 3. Publicius Sulpicius Rufus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

sum, esse, fuī, be, exist, prove; *with gen.*, belong to, be the part *or* mark of.

summa, ae, F., total; chief part; chief control, chief command, management, supremacy, *chiefly with* **imperī.**

summum, I, N., top, summit.

summus, a, um, *superlative of* **superus,** highest, greatest, chief, supreme, very great, very high, extreme, most important, perfect, entire, all; highest part of, top of, top.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take; get, obtain.

superbus, a, um, proud, haughty.

superincidēns, -entis, falling from above, falling on.

superior, ius, *comparative of* **superus,** higher, upper; former, previous; superior, more successful, victorious, stronger.

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, conquer, defeat, overcome; surpass, excel, overmatch; sail around, double.

super-stes, -stitis, surviving.

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, be over, remain, be left; survive.

sup-plex, -plicis, M., suppliant.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.

supplicium, I, N., punishment (*usually of death*); torture.

sup-primō, ere, -pressī, pressum, check.

suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, before; upon; over, more than.

sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake, enter upon.

suspiciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion; **in suspiciōnem (alicui) addūcere,** *freely,* to make (one) suspicious of.

suspicor, ārī, ātus sum, suspect.

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, withstand, meet, endure, hold out against, bear; hold one's own, hold one's ground; check, rein in.

sustulī, *from* **tollō.**

suus, a, um, his, her, its, their; his own *etc.*; **M.** *plur. as subst.*, **suī, ōrum,** his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen;

N. *plur. as subst.*, **sua, ōrum,** his (their) possessions, property, belongings.

Syria, ae, F., Syria, *a country in western Asia.*

T

T., *an abbreviation for* **Titus.**

tabellārius, I, M., letter-carrier, messenger.

tabula, ae, F., tablet; picture, painting.

tālea, ae, F., bar, rod.

talentum, I, N., talent, *a Greek standard of value, varying in different states; especially the Attic talent, equal to about* $1080.

tālis, e, of such a kind, such; this, the following; this, the preceding.

tam, *adv.*, so, so much; **tam . . . quam,** as *or* so (much) . . . as.

tamen, *adv.*, still, however, yet, nevertheless, for all that, yet at the same time.

Tamesis, is, M., the Thames.

Tamphilus, I, M., Tamphilus, *see* **Baebius.**

tamquam, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last.

tangō, ere, tetigī, tactum, touch; reach; border on.

tantulus, a, um, so small, so trifling.

tantum, *adv.*, only, merely.

tantus, a, um, so great, so large, so vast, so important, so much, such; as great, as much; N. **tantum,** *as adv.*, so much, so far.

tardē, *adv.*, slowly.

Tarentīnī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Tarentines, the people of Tarentum, *a city on the south coast of Italy.*

Tarquinius, I, M., Tarquin, *the last king of Rome.*

Taximagulus, I, M., Taximagulus, *a king ruling in Kent.*

tēctum, I, N., roof, abode, home, quarters.

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, hide, conceal; shelter, protect.

Tellus, I, M., Tellus, *an Athenian.*

tēlum, I, N., weapon, missile, dart, javelin.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, without cause, without good reason.

tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole, tongue (*of a vehicle*).

temperantia, ae, F., self-control.

temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, control; refrain; *perf. part. pass.* **temperātus, a, um,** *as adj.*, mild.

tempestās, -tātis, F., weather; storm, tempest.

templum, I, N., temple.

temptō, *or* **tentō, āre, āvī, ātum,** try, test, tempt.

tempus, -oris, N., time, season; age, period; occasion, opportunity, circumstances; crisis, emergency; **reliquum tempus,** the future.

Tencteri (*or* **Tenctēri**), **ōrum,** M. *plur.*, the Tencteri, *a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.*

tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsum *or* **tentum,** make one's way, go.

tenebrae, ārum, F. *plur.*, darkness, the shades.

tenebricōsus, a, um, dark, gloomy.

teneō, ere, uī, tentum, hold, grasp, keep, maintain; retain, detain.

tentō, *see* **temptō.**

Terentius, I, M., Caius Terentius Varro, *consul in* 216 *B.C.*

tergum, I, N., back, rear; **tergum vertere**, *or* **dare**, turn and flee, take to flight; **ā tergō**, in the rear.

terra, ae, F., earth, land; **in terrīs**, in the world, on earth; **orbis terrārum**, the world.

terreō, ēre, uī, itum, alarm.

terrestris, e, land, of the land.

territō, āre, āvī, ātum, frighten, terrify.

terror, -ōris, M., terror, alarm, panic.

tertiō, *adv.*, for the third time.

tertius, a, um, third.

testor, ārī, ātus sum, declare, assert.

testūdō, -dinis, F., tortoise, testudo, shelter of overlapping shields.

testula, ae, F., small tile *or* potsherd, voting-tablet, ballot.

Thēbānī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Thebans, the people of Thebes, *a famous city in Greece.*

Themistoclēs, is *or* ī, M., Themistocles, *a celebrated Athenian statesman and general.*

Thermopylae, ārum, F. *plur.*, Thermopylæ, *a famous pass in northern Greece.*

Thespiēnsēs, ium, M. *plur.*, the people of Thespiæ, *a town between Athens and Thebes.*

Thūcydidēs, is, M., Thucydides, *the great Greek historian of the Peloponnesian war.*

Ti., *an abbreviation for* **Tiberius.**

Tiberīnus, a, um, of the Tiber; **Tiberīnus pater**, Father Tiber, *as a river god.*

Tiberis, is, M., the Tiber, *the river on which Rome is situated.*

Tiberius, ī, M., Tiberius, *a Roman prænomen.*

timeō, ēre, uī, fear, be afraid.

timor, -ōris, M., fear, alarm, dread, panic.

Tiryns, -ynthis, F., Tiryns, *a city in the Peloponnesus.*

Titurius, ī, M., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

Titus, ī, M., Titus, *a Roman prænomen.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up; take on board; take away, remove; destroy, kill, slay.

tormentum, ī, N., engine, hurling-machine (*for throwing large missiles*).

Torquātus, ī, M., Torquatus, *the name of a famous Roman family.*

torquis, is, M. *and* F., necklace, collar.

tot, *indeclinable*, so many.

totidem, *indeclinable*, just as many, the same number of.

tōtus, a, um, whole, entire, all; *often rendered freely by* entirely, altogether.

trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, hand over, give up, surrender; hand down.

trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across, bring over; lead through.

trājectus, ūs, M., crossing, passage, route.

trānō, āre, āvī, ātum, swim over, swim across.

tranquillitās, -tātis, F., calm.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, over, beyond, on the other side of, to the other side of.

transāctus, a, um, *from* **trāns-igō.**

trāns-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across.

trāns-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, cross, cross over, go *or* come over.

trāns-ferō, ferre, -tulī, -lātum, transfer.

trāns-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, complete; *in pass.*, be completed, pass, go by.

trānsitus, ūs, M., passing over, crossing.

trānslātus, *from* **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, a, um, from beyond the sea.

trānsmissus, ūs, M., passage, distance across.

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry, lead, bring, *or* take over; convey across.

Trānsrhēnānus, a, um, living across the Rhine (*from Gaul*); M. *plur. as subst.*, the people across the Rhine.

Trasumēnus, ī, M., Trasumenus, *a lake in Etruria.*

Trebia, ae, M., Trebia, *a river in northern Italy.*

Trebōnius, ī, M., Caius Trebonius, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants.*

trecentī, ae, a, three hundred.

trepidō, āre, āvī, ātum, be in confusion, be in a panic.

trepidus, a, um, alarmed, terrified.

trēs, tria, three.

Trēverī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Treveri, *a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.*

Triboci, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Triboci, *a German tribe on the Rhine.*

tribūnus, ī, M., tribune; **tribūnus mīlitum,** *an officer in the Roman army;* **tribūnus plēbis,** *a civil magistrate at Rome.*

trib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, grant, bestow, devote; ascribe.

triduum, ī, N., a space of three days, three days.

triennium, ī, N., a space of three years, three years.

trīgintā, thirty.

Trinobantēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Trinobantes, *a tribe in Britain.*

tripertītō, *adv.*, in three divisions.

tripl-ex, -icis, triple, threefold.

triquetrus, a, um, triangular.

trirēmis, is, F., trireme, galley, *a vessel with three banks of oars.*

trīstis, e, sad, sorrowful; **trīstissimus,** with the saddest of hearts.

Troezēn, -ēnis, F., Troezen, *a city in the Peloponnesus.*

tropaeum, ī, N., trophy; victory.

trucidō, āre, āvī, ātum, cut down, slaughter, slay.

truncus, ī, M., trunk.

trux, trucis, fierce, grim, stern.

tū, tuī, thou, you.

tuba, ae, F., trumpet.

tueor, ērī, tūtus (*or* **tuitus**) **sum,** protect, guard, keep safe, defend.

tulī, *from* **ferō.**

tum, adv., then, at that time, thereupon; **eum . . . tum,** both . . and, not only . . but also.

tumulus, ī, M. hill.

turgidulus, a, um, swollen.

turma, ae, F., squadron, troop.

turpis, e, disgraceful, unbecoming, base.

turris, is, F., tower; dove-cote.

tūs, tūris, N., incense.

tūtō, *adv.*, safely, without danger.

tūtum, ī, N., position of safety, safety.

tūtus, a, um, safe, secure.

tuus, a, um, thy, your.

U

ubi, *adv.*, when, as soon as; where.

Ubii, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Ubii, *a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.*

ulciscor, I, ultus sum, punish, avenge.

ūllus, a, um, any; *as subst.*, anyone.

ulterior, ius, *comparative*, farther, more remote; M. *plur. as subst.*, **ulteriōrēs**, those more remote.

ultimus, a, um, *superlative*, farthest, most distant.

ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, without provocation.

umbra, ae, F., shadow, shade.

umerus, I, M., shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time.

ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, together, along.

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which.

ūndēvīgintī, nineteen.

undique, *adv.*, from (*or* on) all sides, from every quarter.

unguentum, I, N., ointment, perfume.

unguis, is, M., nail; claw, talon.

ūnicus, a, um, sole; unparalleled, unequalled.

ūniversus, a, um, all, all together, whole, united, in a body.

ūnus, a, um, one, a single; alone, only; one and the same; **ad ūnum**, to a man.

urbs, urbis, F., city, town.

urgeō, ēre, ursī, press hard; *in pass.*, be hard pressed.

Usipetēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Usipetes, *a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.*

ūsque, *adv.*, all the way, even, as far as; all the time, always.

ūsus, a, um, *from* **ūtor**.

ūsus, ūs, M., use, experience, practice; advantage, service, need, necessity; **ūsū venīre**, come about, happen; **ex ūsū**, of advantage, advantageous; **ūsuī esse**, be of service, be an advantage, be useful.

ut or **utī**, that in order that, so that; as, like; how; when; *with the relative*, seeing that, since.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both; M. *plur.*, both sides; both.

utī, *see* **ut**.

ūtilis, e, useful, serviceable.

ūtilitās, -tātis, F., advantage, usefulness, service, utility.

ūtor, I, ūsus sum, use, employ, have, make use of; experience, find; show, display; adopt, follow, avail one's self of; *with abl.*

utpote, *adv.* namely, as being, inasmuch as.

utrobīque, *adv.*, in both ways, on both sides, on both elements.

ūva, ae, F., grape, bunch of grapes.

uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

Vacalus, I, M., the Vacalus (*now the Waal*), *a branch of the Rhine, near its mouth.*

vacō, āre, āvī, ātum, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, a, um, empty.

vādō, ere, go, advance.

vadum, I, N., ford, shoal, shallow; pool.

vagor, ārī, ātus sum, wander, roam about.

valēns, -entis, strong, powerful.

valeō, ēre, uī, itum, be strong, be powerful, have influence, have weight; have force, mean.

Valerius, i, M., Marcus Valerius Corvinus, *a famous Roman.*

valētūdō, -dinis, F., state of health; illness.

vallēs, is, F., valley.

vāllum, i, N., rampart, entrenchment, wall.

varius, a, um, different, varied, changing.

Vārus, i, M., Publius Quintilius Varus, *a Roman general.*

vās, vāsis, N. *plur.*, **vāsa, ōrum**, vessel, jar.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, a, um, immense, vast.

vectīgal, -ālis, N., tax, tribute, revenue.

vectīgālis, e, tributary.

vectōrius, a, um, for carrying; **vectōrium nāvigium**, a transport ship.

vehementer, *adv.*, vigorously.

vehiculum, i, N., carriage.

vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, carry; *in pass.*, ride, sail.

Vēiī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, Veii, *an ancient city of Etruria.*

vel, *conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or.

velle, *from* **volō**.

vēlōx, -ōcis, swift, active.

vēlum, i, N., sail.

velut *or* **velutī**, *adv.*, just as if, just as though.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, F., hunting, hunt, the chase.

vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, sell.

venēnātus, a, um, poisonous, venomous.

venēnum, i, N., poison.

Venetī, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Veneti, *a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

Venēticus, a, um, of *or* with the Veneti.

venia, ae, F., pardon, favor, indulgence; **veniam dare**, consent.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, come, go.

ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, come often, resort, visit.

ventus, i, M., wind.

Venus, Veneris, F., *the goddess of love and beauty*; *plur.*, **Venerēs**, Graces.

Venusia, ae, F., Venusia, *a town in Apulia, in Italy.*

vēr, vēris, N., spring.

verbum, i, N., word; **verba dare**, cheat, deceive; **verba facere**, speak.

Vercingetorix, -igis, Vercingetorix, *king of the Arverni.*

vērē, *adv.*, truly, accurately.

verēcundia, ae, F., reserve, modesty.

vereor, ērī, itus sum, fear, be apprehensive, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, lie, face, incline.

vērō, *adv.*, in truth, indeed, in fact; but, however, moreover; *often untranslatable.*

versor, ārī, ātus sum, be engaged in, live.

ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn; **terga vertere**, turn and flee, take to flight; **puppēs vertere**, turn the ships, wheel about.

vērum, *conj.*, however, but.

vērus, a, um, true; real, genuine; accurate; right, fair, just, reasonable.

vester, tra, trum, your.

vestīgium, i, N., footprint; track; spot.

vestiō, īre, īvī, ītum, clothe, dress; *in pass. freely*, wear.

vestītus, ūs, M., clothing.

vestis, is, F., clothing, clothes; garment, robe.

vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, forbid, bid *or* order . . . not.
vet-us, -eris, old.
vexillum, ī, N., banner, flag (*a red banner was the signal for battle*).
vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, ravage, overrun.
vī, *from* **vīs.**
via, ae, F., way, road, route, journey.
viātor, -ōris, M., traveller.
vicēsimus, a, um, twentieth.
vicis, *gen.* (*nom. not found*) F., change, turn; **in vicem,** in turn.
vīcī, *from* **vincō.**
viciēs, *adv.*, twenty times.
victōria, ae, F., victory.
victrix, -icis, F., victorious.
victus, a, um, *from* **vincō.**
victus, ūs, M., life, living, manner of living.
vīcus, ī, M., village.
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, perceive; *in pass.*, be seen, be in sight, appear, seem, seem good *or* best.
vigil, -ilis, M., watch, sentry.
vigilia, ae, F., watch (*one-fourth of the night time*).
vīgintī, twenty.
vigor, -ōris, M., strength, activity.
vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum, bind.
vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat.
vinctus, a, um, *from* **vinciō.**
vinculum, ī, N., chain; *often in plur.*, prison.
vinea, ae, F., vineyard; vine.
vinum, ī, N., wine.
vir, virī, M., man.
vīrēs, ium, *from* **vīs.**
virga, ae, F., rod, stick.
virgō, -ginis, F., maiden.
virginālis, e, a maiden's, maidenly.
virtūs, -tūtis, F., manliness, valor, bravery, courage; virtue, excellence, good quality; energy, spirit, conduct.
vīs, vim, vī, *plur.* **vīrēs, ium,** F., force, strength, power, energy, might; violence, fury, attack, assault; *plur.*, strength, might, powers, bodily vigor, powers of endurance.
vīsus, a, um, *from* **videō.**
vīsus, ūs, M., sight, appearance, spectacle.
vīta, ae, F., life, course of life.
vītium, ī, N., fault, failing.
vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, avoid, escape.
vitrum, ī, N., woad (*a plant used for dyeing*), dyer's weed.
vīvidus, a, um, vigorous, full of life *or* energy.
vīvō, ere, vīxī, victum, live.
vīvus, a, um, alive, live, living.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, barely
vīxī, *from* **vīvō.**
vocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call, summon, invite.
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing, desire, want, intend.
Volsō, -ōnis, M. (*see* **Mānlius**).
voluntās, -tātis, F., wish, inclination; good will; disposition, attitude.
voluptās, -tātis, F., pleasure, delight.
Volusēnus, ī, M., Caius Volusenus, *a military tribune with Cæsar.*
Vorēnus, ī, M., Lucius Vorenus, *a centurion with Cæsar.*
vōs, you, *plur. of* **tū.**
Vosegus, ī, M., the Vosges Mountains, *in eastern Gaul.*
vōx, vōcis, F., voice.
vulgus, ī, N., the common people, the crowd, the masses.
vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum, wound.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound; blow.
vulpēcula, ae, F., little fox, fox.
vulpēs, is, F., fox.
vultus, ūs, M., expression, look; countenance, face.

X

Xanthippus, I, M., Xanthippus, *a Spartan general.*
Xerxēs, is, M., Xerxes, *king of Persia, from* 485 *to* 465 *B.C.*

Z

Zama, ae, F., Zama, *a town of Numidia, in northern Africa.*
Zephyrus, I, M., the west wind.
Zeuxis, is, M., Zeuxis, *a celebrated Greek painter.*

II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A

abandon, prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.
ability, ingenium, ī, N.
able, be—, possum, posse, potuī.
abound in, abundō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. abl.*
1. **about,** (=*concerning*), dē, *prep. w. abl.*
2. **about,** *with numerals,* circiter, *adv.*
3. **about, to be—to,** *use the fut. part. active with* sum.
absent, absēns, absentis.
accept, ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
access, aditus, ūs, M.
accomplish, prō-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum; cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
accomplishments, hūmānitās, -tātis, F. (*in the sing.*).
accordance, in—with, prō, *prep. w. abl.*, or *abl.* alone.
account, on—of, propter, *prep. w. acc.*
1. **accustomed, be—,** cōnsuēvī, isse (*perf. tense of* cōnsuēscō).
2. **accustomed, become—,** cōnsuēscō, ere, -suēvī.
acquainted, become—with, cōgnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *w. acc.*
acquit, ab-solvō, ere, -solvī, -solūtum.
1. **across,** trāns, *prep. w. acc.*
2. **across, lead—,** trāns-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
action, course of—, rēs, reī, F.
added, be—, *third sing. active of* ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum.
adjacent, fīnitimus, a, um.
Aduatuci, Aduatucī, ōrum, M.
1. **advance,** prō-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum; prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum; sīgna ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
2. **advance,** *noun,* adventus, ūs, M.
3. **advance, send in—,** prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
4. **advance guard,** prīmum agmen (agminis, N.).
1. **advantage,** ūsus, ūs, M.
2. **advantage, take—of,** ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
3. **advantage, to any—,** satis commodē, *adv.*
advice, ask—of, cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *w. acc.*

advise, admoneō, ēre, uī, itum.
Æduī, Aeduī, ōrum, M.
affair, rēs, reī, F.
1. **after**, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*
2. **after**, *conj.*, postquam, cum; *or use perfect participle.*
afterwards posteā.
afraid, be—of, vereor, ērī, itus sum.
again, rūrsus.
against, in, *prep. w. acc.; with contendō*, ad, *w. acc.; with bellum gerō*, cum, *w. abl.*
agency, through the—of, per, *prep. w. acc.*
ago, abhinc.
agree, cōn-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
1. **aid**, *verb*, juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *w. acc.*; suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *w. dat.*
2. **aid**, *noun*, auxilium, ī, N.; subsidium, ī, N.
3. **aid, come to—of**, auxiliō veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *w. dat.*
4. **aid, go to—of**, auxiliō eō, īre, iī (ivī), itum, *w. dat.*
5. **aid, send to—of**, auxiliō mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *w. dat. and acc.*
alarm, per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, mōtum; com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
alertness, dīligentia, ae, F.
Alesia, Alesia, ae, F.
all, omnis, e.
allegiance, officium, ī, N.
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, um, M.
1. **allow**, patior, ī, passus sum.
2. **allowed, be—**, licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal w. dat.*
ally, socius, ī, M.
almost, paene.
alone, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a, um.
aloof, hold—, absum, esse, āfuī.
already, jam, *adv.*
although, etsī; quamquam; quamvīs.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, ī, M.
ambush, Insidiae, ārum, F., *in plural only.*
among, inter, *prep. w. acc.*
ancestors, mājōrēs, um, M.
1. **anchor, weigh—**, = *set sail.*
2. **anchor, at—**, in ancorīs.
ancient, vetus, -eris.
and, et, -que, atque, āc.
angry, be—with, īrāscor, ī, īrātus sum, *w. dat.*
announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
annoyed, be—, graviter ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
1. **another**, alius, a, ud.
2. **another, one—**, inter sē.
1. **answer**, *verb*, re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
2. **answer**, *noun*, respōnsum, ī, N.
3. **answer, give (*or* make)—**, = *answer, verb.*
1. **any**, ūllus, a, um; *after sī*, quī (quis), qua, quod; = *any amount of*, quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs *or* quodvīs.
2. **any one**, quisquam; *with a negative use* nēmō = *no one*; *after sī*, quis.
3. **anything**, ūlla rēs, quidquam; *after sī*, quid.
anxiety, without—, aequō animō.
apart, keep—, dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
apologize, satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum.
appearance, figūra, ae, F.; speciēs, ēī, F.; aspectus, ūs, M.
apprised, become—of, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *w. acc.*
1. **approach**, *verb*, ac-cēdō, ere,

-cessī, -cessum; appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

2. approach, *noun*, adventus, ūs, M.

approval, cōnsēnsus, ūs, M. (*used of several persons*); voluntās, -tātis, F.

Arar, Arar, Araris, M.

Ardennes, Arduenna, ae, F.

ardor, studium, ī, N.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, M.

arise, co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum.

armed, armātus, a, um.

armor, arma, ōrum, N., *in plur. only.*

arms, arma, ōrum, N., *in plur. only.*

army, exercitus, ūs, M.

around, circum, *prep. w. acc.*

arouse, cōnfirmō, āre, āvi, ātum.

arrange, cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.

arrangement, rēs, reī, F.

arrival, adventus, ūs, M.

arrow, sagitta, ae, F.

1. as = *since*, cum.

2. as, *after idem*, quī, quae, quod.

3. as = *while*, dum, cum, *or use present participle.*

4. as, *sign of apposition, untranslated; use appositive or dative of purpose.*

5. as soon as, simul atque.

6. as—as possible, quam *with superl.*

7. as to, *use the genitive.*

ascend, ascendō, ere, ascendī, ascēnsum.

ascertain, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.

ashamed, be—, pudet, *impersonal.*

aside, lay—, dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.

2. aside, turn—, ā-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum.

1. ask* (*of making a request*), petō, ere, petīvī, petītum; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. ask* (*of asking a question*), quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. ask for, petō, ere, petīvī, petītum, *w. ab.*

4. ask advice of, cōnsul-ō, ere -uī, -tum, *w. acc.*

assemble, (*intransitive*), con-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

assembly, concilium, ī, N.

assist, sub-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *w. dat.*; juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *w. acc.*

1. assistance, auxilium, ī, N.

2. assistance, go to—of, auxiliō eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *w. dat.*

3. assistance, send to—of, auxiliō mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *w. dat. and acc.*

1. at, *of time when, use abl.*

2. at, *of place where, use locative, or* in *and abl.*

3. at, *after conjiciō*, in, *w. acc.*

4. at once, statim, *adv.*

5. at, *in phrase throw one's self at feet*, ad, *w. acc.*

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, F., *in plur. only.*

1. attack, *verb*, (*of places*), oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; (*of men*), ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum; ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum; impetum facere in, *w. acc.*

2. attack, *noun*, impetus, ūs, M.

1. attempt, *verb* (= *try, w. infinitive*), cōnor, ārī, ātus sum; (= *make an attempt on*), temptō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. attempt, make an—, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.

---

* The person who is asked is in the acc., with *peto* in the abl. with *ab*, with *quaero* in the abl. with *ex* or *de*.

1. **avenge**, ulciscor, ī, ultus sum.
2. **avenge one's self on** (*or* **upon**), ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, *w. acc.*

await, exspectō, āre, āvi, ātum.

away, take—, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum.

B

back, tergum, ī, N.

baggage, baggage animals, impedīmenta, ōrum, N. *plur.*

band, manus, ūs, F.

bank, rīpa, ae, F.

bar, tālea, ae, F.

barbarian, barbarus, ī, M.

1. **battle**, proelium, ī, N.; pūgna, ae, F.
2. **battle array, line of battle**, aciēs, ēī, F.

be, sum, esse, fuī; *to express distance, use* absum, abesse, āfuī.

1. **bear**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
2. **bear on**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

beat a retreat, sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

1. **because**, quod.
2. **because of**, propter, *prep.*, *w. acc.*

become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.

1. **before**, *prep.* (*of time and place*), ante, *w. acc.*; (*of place*) prō, *w. abl.*; (=*near*) apud, *w. acc.*; (*with summon*) ad, *w. acc.*
2. **before**, *conj.*, antequam, priusquam.

beg, ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

1. **begin**, incipiō, ere; *for the perfect tenses, use* coepī, isse, coeptus sum.
2. **begin battle**, proelium committō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

beginning, initium, ī, N., *or use* prīmus.

behalf, on—of, prō, *prep. w. abl.*

behold, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

Belgians, Belgae, ārum, M. *plur.*

believe, crē-dō, ere, -didī, ditum, *w. dat.*

bent, become—, sē in-flectō, ere, -flexī, -flexum.

beseech, ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum; impiōrō, āre, āvī, ātum: ob-secrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

beset, ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum.

1. **best**, optimus, a um.
2. **best armed**, ōrnātissimus, a, um.

bestow upon, dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

1. **betake**, re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
2. **betake one's self to flight**, sē fugae mandāre, (mandō, āre, āvī, ātum).

1. **better**, melior, ius.
2. **better, it is—**, praestat, āre, *impersonal.*

betray, prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.

1. **between**, inter, *prep. w. acc.*
2. **between, be—**, inter-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *w.* inter *and acc.*

beyond, trāns, *prep. w. acc.*

Bibracte, Bibracte, is, N.

blind, vin-ciō, īre, -xī, -ctum.

bitter, gravis, e.

boast of, glōrior, ārī, ātus sum, *w. abl.*

Boii, Boiī, ōrum, M. *plur.*

boldly, audācter.

boldness, audācia, ae, F.

bondage, servitūs, -tūtis, F.

1. **border**, *noun*, initium, ī, N.; fīnis, is, M.
2. **border** (=*hem in*), con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

born, nātus, a, um.

1. **both . . . and**, et . . . et.
2. **both**, uterque, utraque, utrumque, =*each.*
3. **both, on—sides**, utrimque.

bough, rāmus, ī, M.

bow, arcus, ūs, M.; *abl. plur.*, arcubus.
boy, puer, erī, M.
branch, rāmus, ī, M.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -tūtis; fortitūdō, -dinis, F.
1. **break down**, re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum.
2. **break out**, co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum.
3. **break up camp**, castra moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
1. **bring**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
2. **bring** (*followed by* **across**), trā-dūco, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
3. **bring back** (=*lead back*), re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum; (=*carry back*), referō, ferre, rettulī, relātum.
4. **bring word**, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
5. **bring back word**, renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
6. **bring in** (=*collect*), comportō, āre, āvi, ātum; (=*import*), importō, āre, āvī, ātum.
7. **bring over**, transportō, āre, āvī, ātum.
8. **bring up the rear**, agmen claudō, ere, clausī, clausum.
9. **bring together**, comportō, āre, āvī, ātum; cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum.
Britain, Britannia, ae, F.
Briton, Britannus, ī, M.
broad, lātus, a, um.
bronze, aes, aeris, N.
brother, frāter, -tris, M.
Brutus, Brūtus, ī, M.
buffeting, contumēlia, ae, F.
build, aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum; faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
building, aedificium, ī, N.
burden, onus, oneris, N.
1. **burn**, in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
2. **burn up**, com-būrō, ere, -bussī, -būstum.
burst in, ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.
business, negōtium, ī, N.; rēs, reī, F.
1. **but**, sed.
2. **but**, =*who—not*, quīn.
3. **but, cannot—**, facere nōn posse quīn.
buy up, co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum.
by, ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*

C

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, M.
1. **call** (=*summon*), vocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (=*name*), appellō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātum.
camp, castra, ōrum, N., *in plur. only.*
camp-follower, cālō, -ōnis, M.
can, possum, posse, potuī.
capable, be—of, possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, ī, M.
capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum.
care (=*carefulness*), dīligentia, ae, F.; (=*object of concern*), cūra, ae, F.
carefully, dīligenter.
carelessness, indīligentia, ae, F.
1. **carry**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (*of carrying a report*), per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
2. **carry down**, dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
3. **carry off**, ab-dūcō, ere, dūxī, -ductum.
4. **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.
5. **carry out**, cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

5. **carry over,** trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.
case, since (*or* **although**) **this is the—,** quae cum ita sint.
cast, (=*throw headlong*), praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
Casticus, Casticus, ī, M.
cattle, pecus, -oris, N.
1. **cause,** *noun,* causa, ae, F.
2. **cause,** *verb,* cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *with gerundive.*
caution, with—, cautē; **with the greatest—,** *use superlative* cautissimē.
1. **cavalry,** *noun,* equitātus, ūs, M. (*in sing.*); equitēs, um, M. (*in plur.*).
2. **cavalry,** *adj.,* equester, tris, tre.
3. **cavalry-man,** equ-es, -itis, M.
centre, *use adj.* medius, a, um.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
1. **certain** (=*some*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* quoddam.
2. **certain** (=*fixed*), certus, a, um.
chain, vinculum, ī, N.; catēna, ae, F.
challenge, ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum.
chance, cāsus, ūs, M.
1. **change,** commūtātiō, -ōnis, F.
2. **change, political—,** novae rēs, F. *plur.*
character, of such a—, tālis, e, *adj.*
charge, place (**put**) **in—of,** praeficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
charioteer, essedārius, ī, M.
1. **chief,** prīn-ceps, -cipis, M.; rēgulus, ī, M.
2. **chief man,** prīn-ceps, -cipis, M.
3. **chief power,** rēgnum, ī, N.; imperium, ī, N.
chiefly, māximē.
children, līberī, ōrum, M.
choose, dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
chosen, dēlēctus, a, um; ēlēctus, a, um.
circumstance, rēs, rēī, F.
citizen, cīvis, is, M.
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, F.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
clemency, clēmentia, ae, F.
cliff, mōns, montis, M.
1. **close,** *verb,* claudō, ere, clausī, clausum.
2. **close, be—at hand,** ad-sum, -esse, -fuī.
closely, angustē.
coast, ōra, ae, F.
cohort, co-hors, -hortis, F.
collect (=*get together*), cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum; col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum; (=*summon together*), convocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (=*carry to one place*), cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum.
color, color, -ōris, M.
1. **come,** veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
2. **come often,** ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **come together,** con-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
4. **come up with,** cōn-sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *w. acc.*
5. **come upon,** oc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *w. dat.*
1. **command** (=*order*), *verb,* imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
2. **command,** *noun* (=*military power*), imperium, ī, N.; (=*order given*), imperātum, ī, N.
3. **command, have—of, be in—, be at head of—,** prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*
4. **command, chief—,** summa (ae, F.) imperiī.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.
commit, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
Commius, Commius, ī, M.
common, commūnis,

communication, hold—, col-loquor, I, -locūtus sum.

compare, comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.

complain, queror, I, questus sum.

complaint, make a—, queror, I, questus sum.

complete, *verb*, cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

comrade, their comrades, suī, ōrum, M., *plur.*

conceal, occultō, āre, āvī, ātum; cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum.

1. **concerns, it —**, interest; rēfert.

2. **concern, object of—**, cūra, ae, F.

3. **concerned, so far as I was—**, per mē.

4. **concerning**, dē, *prep. w. abl.*

conclude (=*make*), faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.

condition, condiciō, ōnis, F.

confer upon, dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. dat.*

conference, colloquium, I, N.

confidence, fīdūcia, ae, F.

confine, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

1. **confusion**, tumultus, ūs, M.

2. **confusion, throw into—**, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; **throw into great confusion**, māgnopere perturbō.

conquer, vincō, ere, vīcī, victum; superō, āre, āvī, ātum.

consider, aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Considius, Cōnsidius, I, M.

conspire, conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.

consulship, in the—of, *use* cōnsul *in the abl. absolute.*

1. **consult**, cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *w. acc.*

2. **consult** (*or* **consult for**) **interests (welfare) of**, cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *w. dat.*

consummate, summus, a, um.

contest (=*battle*), certāmen, -minis, N., pūgna, ae, F.; (=*war*), bellum, I, N.

continent, continēns, -entis, F.

continually, continenter.

continue, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum.

convenient, idōneus, a, um.

conversation, sermō, -ōnis, M.

1. **converse**, loquor, I, locūtus sum.

2. **converse, hold—**, loquor, I, locūtus sum.

1. **corn**, frūmentum, I, N.

2. **corn, supplies of—**, rēs frūmentāria, F., (*use the sing.*).

Cotta, Cotta, ae, M.

council, concilium, I, N.

country (=*land*), ager, agrī, M.; fīnēs, ium, M. *plur.*; (=*ground*), locus, I, M.; (=*state*), rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae; (=*native country*), patria, ae, F.; (=*rural districts*), rūs, rūris, N.

courage, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

1. **course**, cursus, ūs, M.

2. **course of action**, rēs, reī, F.

cover (=*complete*), cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

coward, Ignāvus, I, M.

Crassus, Crassus, I, M.

cross, cross over, *verb*, trāns-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum.

cruelty, crūdēlitās, -tātis, F.

crush, frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum; opprimō, ere, -pressī, -pressum.

custom, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F.; mōs, mōris, M.

cut off (=*intercept or shut off*), inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum; (=*kill*), inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

D

danger, perīculum, ī, N.
dangerous, perīculōsus, a, um.
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.
dark-blue, caeruleus, a, um.
dart, tēlum, ī, N.
date, the—of, *use clause with* quandō (=*when*).
daughter, fīlia, ae, F.
day, diēs, ēī, M.
day before, the—, prīdiē.
daybreak, prīma lūx, lūcis, F.
dear, cārus, a, um.
1. **death**, mors, mortis, F.
2. **death, put to—**, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
decide (*form a resolve*), cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum; (=*form an opinion*), jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum; (=*adjudicate*) dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
declare (=*assert*), cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum; (=*make known*), prōnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum; (*of declaring war*), in-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum.
deed, factum, ī, N.
deep, altus, a, um.
1. **defeat**, *verb*, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum.
2. **defeat**, *noun*, proelium adversum, N.; calamitās, -tātis, F.
defend, dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum.
dejection, trīstitia, ae, F.
delay, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
delightful, jūcundus, a, um.
demand, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; poscō, ere, poposcī.
dense, dēnsus, a, um.
deny, negō, āre, āvī, ātum.
depart, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.
1. **departure**, discessus, ūs, M.; profectiō, -ōnis, F.
2. **departure, take one's—**, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum; pro-ficiscor, ī, -fectus sum.
deprive, dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum; (**of**, *expressed by abl.*).
depth, altitūdō, -dinis, F.
desert, dēstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.
design, cōnsilium, ī, N.
desire, cup-iō, ere, -īvī, -ītum.
despair, be in despair, dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum; (**of**=dē *w. abl.*).
destination, reach—, locum capiō, capere, cēpi, captum.
destroy, re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum.
destruction, perniciēs, ēī, F.
detain, re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
deter, dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum; impediō, īre, īvī, ītum.
determine, cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.
devise, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum; in-eō, īre, -iī, -itum.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; vītā (*or* ē vītā) dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum.
differ, differō, differre, distulī, dilātum.
different, alius, a, ud; **in different directions**, = some in one direction, others in another.
difficult, difficilis, e.
1. **difficulty**, difficultās, tātis, F.
2. **difficulty, with—**, vix, aegrē, *adv.*
3. **difficulty, with the greatest—**, aegerrimē, *adv.*
direct (=*order*), imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
1. **direction**, pars, partis, F.
2. **directions, from all—**, undique, *adv.*; *or use* pars (=*quarter*).
3. **direction, in what—**, quam in partem.
disappointed in, dējectus, a, um, *w. abl.*; repulsus, a, um, *w.* ab *and abl.*
disaster, calamitās, -tātis, F.

discharge, fungor, I, fūnctus sum, *w. abl.*

disclose, osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *or* ostēnsum.

disconcert, com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

discover, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum ; reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum.

disembark, ē nāvibus ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum.

disgrace, turpitūdō, -dinis, F.; dēdecus, -oris, N.

disgraceful, turpis, e.

dislodge, prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

dismay, per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

dismiss, dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

dispel, ex-pellō, ere, pulī, -pulsum.

disperse, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.

display, prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum *or* stātum.

displease, dis-pliceō, ēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, *w. dat.*

1. **disposition**, animus, I, M.
2. **disposition, merciful—**, -clēmentia, ae, F.

dispute, contrōversia, ae, F.

1. **distance**, spatium, I, N.
2. **distance, at a—**, procul, *adv.*

distant, be—, absum, abesse, āfuī.

distress, be in—, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

distribute, distrib-uō, ere, -uī, ūtum; (**among**, *express by dat.*).

district, regiō, -ōnis, F.

distrust, dif-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *w. dat.*

disturb, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, mōtum.

ditch, fossa, ae, F.

divide, dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.

do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum ; (=*carry on*), gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.

double, duplex, duplicis.

1. **doubt**, *verb*, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **doubt**, *noun*, dubitātiō, -ōnis, F.
3. **doubt, there is no—**, nōn est dubium (=*it is not doubtful*).

draught animal, jūmentum, I, N.

1. **draw** (*of drawing a sword*), dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum.
2. **draw near**, =*approach*.
3. **draw out**, ē-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum.
4. **draw up**, in-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.

dread, vereor, ērī, itus sum.

1. **drive** (=*urge on*), im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum ; (=*drive back*), repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum ; (*of driving headlong*), agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.
2. **drive back**, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum ; rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
3. **drive off**, sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
4. **drive out**, ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum ; ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

Druids, Druidēs, um, M.

Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -igis, M.

during, *use acc. of time how long.*

duty, mūnus, -eris, N.; **do duty**, officium (I, N.) prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum *or* -stātum.

dwell, in-colō, ere, -coluī.

E

each (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque ; (*of more than two*), quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* quodque.

1. **eager**, alacer, cris, cre.
2. **eager, be most—**, studeō, ēre, uī.

eagerly, cupidē.
eagerness, alacritās, -tātis, F.
eagle, aquila, ae, F.
early, mātūrus, a, um.
earnestly, māgnopere.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, e; **very easy**, perfacilis, e.
eat, vescor, I (*with abl.*).
edge, the water's—, lītus, -oris, N. (=*shore*).
eight, octō.
eighteen, duodēvīgintī; octōdedecim; decem et octō.
eighth, octāvus, a, um.
eighty, octōgintā.
elect, creō, āre, āvī, ātum.
eleventh, ūndecimus, a, um.
else, alius, a, ud.
embark, nāvēs cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, F.
encamp, cōn-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, sessum.
encourage, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum.
end, fīnis, is, M.
endure (=*tolerate*), patior, I, passus sum; (=*withstand*), per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
enemy, hostis, is, M. (*usually in the plur.*).
1. **engage**, com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
2. **engage in**, versor, ārī, ātus sum, *w.* in *and abl.*; **engage in (battle)**, com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
3. **engage with**, cōn-flīgō, ere, -flīxi, -flīctum, *w.* cum *and abl.*
4. **engaged**, occupātus, a, um.
1. **engagement**, proelium, I, N.
2. **engagement, during the—**, =*while fighting.*
engine, tormentum, I, N.
enjoy, fruor, I, frūctus sum (*w. abl.*).
enquire, make enquiry, quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
enrol, cōn-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
enterprise, rēs, reī, F.
entirely, *use* tōtus, a, um, *adj.*
entrust, com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
envoy, lēgātus, I, M.
1. **equal**, *verb*, adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **equal**, *adj.*, pār, paris.
equip, armō, āre, āvī, ātum; ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum.
escape, ē-lābor, I, -lāpsus sum; ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum.
escort, praesidium, I, N.
especial, *use* praecipuē = *especially.*
establish, cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum; *of establishing a precedent*, īnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem; **even if**, etiam sī.
1. **ever** (=*always*), semper.
2. **ever, for—**, in perpetuum.
1. **every**, omnis, e; quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* quodque =*each.*
2. **every one**, omnēs, *plur.*; *or* quisque, *sing.*, =*each.*
everything, omnia; omnēs rēs.
example, exemplum, I, N.
excel, prae-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.
excellently, ēgregiē.
exercise (=*show*), ūtor, I, ūsus sum.
exhibit, ūtor, I, ūsus sum.
exhort, hortor, ārī, ātus sum.
expect, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.
experience, ūsus, ūs, M.
extend, pertineō, ēre, uī.
extensively, lātē.
extent, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.
extremely, māximē (*or use the superl. degree*).

F

fall, dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
faithful, fidēlis, e; fīdus, a, um.
faithfully, fidēliter; summā fidē.
1. **fall,** *verb,* cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum; con-cidō, ere, -cidī.
2. **fall,** *noun,* mors, mortis, F. (=*death*); calamitās, -tātis, F.
fame, fāma, ae, F.
famous, praeclārus, a, um.
far, longē; **too far,** longius.
1. **farther,** *adv.,* longius.
2. **farther,** *adj.,* ulterior, ius.
farthest, ultimus, a, um.
fate, fortūna, ae, F.
father, pater, patris, M.
father-in-law, socer, erī, M.
fatigued, dēfessus, a, um.
favor, probō, āre, āvī, ātum; faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum (*w. dat.*).
favorable, idōneus, a, um.
1. **fear,** *verb,* timeō, ēre, -uī; pertim-ēscō, ere, -uī; vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
2. **fear,** *noun,* timor, -ōris, M.; metus, ūs, M.
feel, intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
feelings, animus, I, M. (*use sing.*).
fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, M.
fertile, fertilis, e; ferāx, -ācis.
few; but few, paucī, ae, a; **a few,** nōnnūllī, ae, a; **very few,** perpaucī, ae, a.
1. **field,** ager, agrī, M.
2. **field** (=*field of battle*), **leave the field,** proeliō ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.
3. **field, take the—,** arma sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; ad bellum pro-ficiscor, I, -fectus sum.
fierce, *use* ācriter.
fiercely, ācriter.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fifth, quīntus, a, um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
1. **fight,** pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **fight a battle,** proelium faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
3. **fighting,** pūgna, ae, F.; *or use gerund of* pūgnō.
fill, fill up, com-pleō, ēre, -plēvī, -plētum.
finally, dēnique.
1. **find,** reperiō, īre, repperī, rēpertum; in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
2. **find out,** cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; com-periō, īre, -perī, -pertum.
fine, pulcher, chra, chrum.
finish, per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum; cōn-ficiō, ere, fēcī, -fectum.
1. **fire,** īgnis, is, M.
2. **fire, set—to,** in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *w. acc.*
first, prīmus, a, um; **at first,** prīmō.
fish, piscis, is, M.
five, quīnque; **five hundred,** quīngentī, ae, a.
fix (=*appoint*), ē-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum; (*with dies*), dīcō, ere, -dīxī, dictum.
flag, vēxillum, ī, N.
flank, latus, -eris, N.
flee, cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī; fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum.
fleet, classis, is, F.
flesh, carō, carnis, F.
1. **flight,** fuga, ae, F.
2. **flight, take to—,** sē fugae mandāre, (mandō, āre, āvī, ātum).
flow, fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum.
1. **follow,** sequor, ī, secūtus sum.
2. **follow up,** per-sequor, ī, secūtus sum.
3. **following,** *adj.,* posterus, a, um; īnsequēns, -entis.

4. **follows, as—**, hīc, haec, hōc.
follower, camp—, cālō, -ōnis, M.
folly, āmentia, ae, F.; stultitia, ae, F.
food, cibus, ī, M.
1. **foot**, pēs, pedis, M.; **on foot**, pedibus.
2. **foot, at the—of**, sub, *with abl.*
footsoldier, ped-es, -itis, M.
1. **for** (*of motion towards*), in, ad, *w. acc.*; (*with reason*), dē, *w. abl.*; (*of purpose*), ad *and gerund or gerundive*; (*of time how long*), *acc. only*; (*with infinitive clause*) *untranslated*; (*of arrangements for the future*), in, *w. acc.*; (=*on behalf of*), prō, *w. abl.*
2. **for**, *conj.*, nam.
forbearance, mānsuētūdō, -dinis, F.
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitum.
1. **force**, *verb*, com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
2. **force**, *noun* (=*violence*), vīs, F.; **forces** (=*troops*), cōpiae, ārum, F. *plur.*
3. **forced** (*of a march*), māgnus, a, um.
ford, vadum, ī, N.
forest, silva, ae, F.
forever, in perpetuum.
forget, ob-līviscor, ī, -lītus sum, *w. gen.*
1. **form** (=*make*), faciō, ere, fēci, factum; *with* cōnsilium, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum.
2. **form** (=*draw up*), īn-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
former, prīstinus, a, um.
forsake, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *w.* ab *and abl.*
fort, castellum, ī, N.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, F.; opus, -eris, N.
fortify, mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum.
forty, quadrāgintā.
forty each, quadrāgēnī, ae, a.
forward, send—, prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
four, quattuor; **four hundred**, quadringentī, ae, a.
fourth, quārtus, a, um; **three-fourths**, =*three parts.*
1. **free**, *verb*, līberō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **free**, *adj.*, līber, era, erum.
freed, līberātus, a, um.
freedom, lībertās, -tātis, F.
freely, līberē.
frequent, crēber, bra, brum.
fresh, integer, gra, grum.
friend, amīcus, ī, M.; *often expressed by possessive pronouns.*
friendly, amīcus, a, um.
friendship, amīcitia, ae, F.
frightful, horridus, a, um.
1. **from**, ā, ab (=*away from*), ex (=*out of*); **from which**, unde; (*with verbs of taking away*), *use the dat.*; (*with gerund in -ing*), quīn, quōminus, *w. subjunctive.*
2. **from, be—**, absum, abesse, āfuī.
front, in—of, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*
fugitives, =*those fleeing.*
full, plēnus, a, um.
furnish, order to—, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum (*w. dat. of persons ordered, acc. of that to be furnished*).

G

1. **gain**, potior, īrī, ītus sum, *w. abl.*; ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum, *w. acc.*
2. **gain a request**, impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
Galba, Galba, ae, M.
gallantly, ācriter.
Gallic, Gallicus, a, um; *or use* Gallōrum.
garrison, praesidium, ī, N.
gate, porta, ae, F.

gather, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.
1. **Gaul**, (*the country*), Gallia, ae, F.
2. **Gaul** (*a native of Gaul*), Gallus, ī, M.
general, imperātor, -ōris, M.
Geneva, Genāva, ae, F.
gentleness, clēmentia, ae, F.
German, Germānus, ī, M.; *or adj.*, Germānus, a, um.
1. **get**, nanciscor, ī, nactus *or* nanctus sum.
2. **get ready**, expediō, īre, īvī, ītum.
1. **give**, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
2. **give orders**, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **give up** (=*hand over*), trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum; (=*abandon*), dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, *w. abl.*
glorious, pulcher, chra, chrum.
1. **go**, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum.
2. **go forth**, ex-eō, -īre, -iī, itum.
3. **go out**, ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
4. **go outside**, ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *w.* extrā *and acc.*
5. **going, to be—on**, fīō, fierī, factus sum; geror, ī, gestus sum.
6. **going, to be—to**, *use fut. part. in* -ūrus *and* sum.
gone, be—, discessī, isse.
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.
grain, frūmentum, ī, N.
grant, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
great, māgnus, a, um;
how great, quantus, a, um;
so great, tantus, a, um;
very great, māximus, a, um.
greatest, māximus, a, um; *or use adv.*, māximē.
greatly, māgnopere, māgnō opere; **how greatly**, quantopere; quantō opere.
Greek, Graecus, ī, M.
grievance, dolor, -ōris, M.
1. **ground** (=*position*), locus, ī, M.
2. **ground, stand (hold) one's—**, cōnsistō, ere, -stitī; sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
3. **ground, provisions of—corn**, molita cibāria, ōrum, N. *plur.*
4. **ground, on the—that**, quod.
1. **guard**, *verb*, custōdiō, īre, īvī, ītum.
2. **guard**, *noun*, praesidium, ī, N.
guide, dux, ducis, M.
guilty, find—, condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

H

half a mile=*five hundred paces.*
halt, cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.
1. **hand**, manus, ūs, F.
2. **hand down**, prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.
3. **hand, be at—**, ad-sum, -esse, fuī.
4. **hand over**, trā-dō, ere, -didī, ditum.
5. **hands, at the—of**, ā, ab, *w. abl.*
hang out, prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.
happen, accid-ō, ere, -ī, ; fīō, fierī, factus sum.
harass, lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum.
harbor, portus, ūs, M.
1. **hard**, difficilis, e.
2. **hard pressed, to be—**, premor, ī, pressus sum; urgeor, ērī.
harm, noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. dat.*; laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, *w. acc.*
haste, make—, mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum; conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.
hasten, conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.

1. **have**, habeō, ēre, uī, itum; (=*cause*), cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **have to** (=*must*), *use gerundive with* **sum**.

he, is; sē.

1. **head**, cap-ut, -itis, N.
2. **head, be at the—of**, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*

headlong, prae-ceps, -cipitis.

health, be in good—, valeō, ēre, uī, itum.

hear, hear of, audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *w. acc.*

hearing, without a—, indictā causā.

1. **heart**, animus, ī, M.
2. **heart, lose—**, animum dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

heavy, gravis, e.

1. **height** (*of measurement*), altitūdō, -dinis, F.
2. **height** (=*a high place*), superior locus, ī, M.; (*in plur.*, superiōra loca, N.).
3. **height of madness**, summa dēmentia, =*extreme madness*.

help, auxilium, ī, N.

Helvetian, Helvētius, ī, M.; *adj.*, Helvētius, a, um.

Helvetii, Helvētiī, ōrum, M.

hem in, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

hesitate, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

hesitation, cunctātiō, -ōnis, F.

hide, sē abdere, (ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum).

1. **high**, altus, a, um; =*great*, māgnus, a, um.
2. **higher** (*of position*), superior, ius.
3. **highest**, summus, a, um.

hill, collis, is, M.; **up the hill**, adversō colle.

himself, ipse, a, um; sē.

hinder, impediō, īre, īvī, ītum; prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.

hither, *adj.*, citerior, ius.

1. **hold**, teneō, ēre, tenuī, tentum.
2. **hold a levy**, dēlēctum habeō, ēre, uī, itum.
3. **hold out**, sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
4. **hold** (*of holding power*), obtineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
5. **hold** (=*regard*), habeō, ēre, uī, itum.

home, domus, ūs, F.; domicilium, ī, N.; **at home**, domī.

honor, ōrnāmentum, ī, N.; honor, -ōris, M.

1. **hope**, *verb*, spērō, āre, āv, ātum; exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum; (**for** *express by acc.*).
2. **hope**, *noun*, spēs, speī, F.

horse, equus, ī, M.; (=*cavalry*), equitātus, ūs, M.

horseman, equ-es, -itis, M.

hostage, ob-ses, -sidis, M.

hostile, inimīcus, a, um.

hour, hōra, ae, F.

how (=*in what manner*), quōmodō; (=*by what route*), quā; **how great, how large**, quantus, a, um; **how greatly**, quantopere, quantō opere; **how many**, quot (*indeclinable.*)

however, quamvīs.

humanity, hūmānitās, -tātis, F.

hundred, centum.

1. **hurl**, con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
2. **hurl back**, rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

hurt, of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum.

I

if (=*in case that*), sī; (=*whether*), num; **as if**, quasi, velut.

imagine, putō, āre, āvī, ātum.

immediately, statim.

immense, ingēns, -entis.

imminent peril, obsidiō, -ōnis, F.

impassable, impedītus, a, um.
important, māgnus, a, um; **most important**, summus, a, um.
impossible, **be**, *use* possum.
impress, com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
in, in, *prep. w. abl.*
incensed, **be ... at**, exār-dēscō, ere, -sī, -sum, *w. abl.*
inclose, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum.
incredible, incrēdibilis, e.
incur, ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
induce, ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
indulge, indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, *w. dat.*
indulgence, **show**—, indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, *w. dat.*
inevitably, *use* necesse est.
inexperienced, imperītus, a, um.
infant, īn-fāns, -fantis, M.
infantry, peditātus, ūs, M.; pedestrēs cōpiae, F. *plur.*
inferior, īnferior, ius.
1. **inflict** (*of punishment*), sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; (**upon**, dē, *w. abl.*); (*of injury*), īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum; (**upon**, *express by dat.*).
2. **inflict death upon oneself**, mortem cōn-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *w. dat.*
1. **influence**, *verb*, ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum; per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
2. **influence**, **try to**—, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **influence**, *noun*, auctōritās, -tātis, F.; grātia, ae, F.
influential, **be**—, valeō, ēre, uī.
inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; **of**, = dē, *w. abl.*
inhabit, in-colō, ere, -coluī.
inheritance, hērēditās, -tātis, F.
injure, noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. dat.*
injury, injūria, ae, F.
inland, interior, ius.
inquire, quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.
inroad, incursiō, -ōnis, F.
instead of, prō, *w. abl.*
instruct, prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *w. dat.*; jubeō, ere, jussī, jussum, *w. acc.*
insult, contumēlia, ae, F.
insultingly, īnsolenter.
intend (*use future partic. in* -ūrus *and* sum).
intercept, inter-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
interest, **be of**—, interest; rē-fert.
interpreter, inter-pres, -pretis, M.
into, in, *w. acc.*
invade, in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *w.* intrā *and acc.*
invite, arcess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum.
1. **iron**, ferrum, ī, N.
2. **iron**, **of**—, ferreus, a, um, *adj.*
island, īnsula, ae, F.
Italy, Ītalia, ae, F.

J

javelin, pīlum, ī, N.; tēlum, ī, N.
join battle, proelium com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
journey, iter, itineris, N.
judge, jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
judgment, cōnsilium, ī, N.
Jura, Jūra, ae, M.

K

1. **keep,** con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
2. **keep apart,** dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
3. **keep from,** prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. infin., or w.* ab *and abl.*
4. **keep off,** prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.

kill, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum; oc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
kind, of what—, quālis, e.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
know, sciō, īre, īvī, ītum.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī, M.
1. **lack,** careō, ēre, uī, *w. abl.*
2. **lacking, be—,** dēsum, deesse, dēfuī.

ladder, scāla, ae, F.
lake, lacus, ūs, M.
1. **land** (=*country*), ager, agrī, M.; fīnēs, ium, M.; (*opposed to water*), terra, ae, F.
2. **land, native—,** patria, ae, F.
3. **land, on—,** pedester, tris, tre, *adj.*
4. **land,** *verb,* ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum.

language, lingua, ae, F.
1. **large,** māgnus, a, um; **how large,** quantus, a, um; **very large,** māximus, a, um.
2. **larger,** māj-or, -us.
3. **largest,** māximus, a, um.

later (=*after*), post.
latter, ille, a, ud.
1. **last,** *verb,* **the battle lasts,** pūgnātur, *impersonal passive.*
2. **last,** *adv.,* proximē.

law, lēx, lēgis, F.
1. **lay aside,** dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.
2. **lay waste,** vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum; populor, ārī, ātus sum.
1. **lead,** dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum; (=*influence*), ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
2. **lead across,** trāns-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *often w. two accusatives.*
3. **lead back,** re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
4. **lead out,** ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

leader, dux, ducis, M.
leadership, prīncipātus, ūs, M.
1. **leading man,** prīn-ceps, -cipis, M.
2. **leading place,** prīncipātus, ūs, M.

leap down, dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum.
learn, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
lease, red-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum.
1. **leave** (=*leave behind*), relinquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum.
2. **leave** (=*go away from*), discēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *w.* ab *and abl.*
3. **leave** (=*go out of*), ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *w.* ex *and abl.*

left, sinister, tra, trum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
legionary, legiōnārius, ī, M.
lend (aid), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (=*bring*).
less, minus, *adv.*
lest, nē.
letter, litterae, ārum, F. *plur.*; epistula, ae, F.
let slip, dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
1. **levy,** *verb,* cōn-scribō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
2. **levy,** *noun,* dēlēctus, ūs, M.

liberality, līberālitās, -tātis, F.
1. **liberty,** lībertās, -tātis, F.
2. **liberty, be at—,** licet, *w. dat., impersonal.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, M.

life, vīta, ae, F.
light (=*estimation*), locus, ī, M.
like, similis, e, *w. dat.*
likely, be—to, *use future participle in* -ūrus *with* sum ; *or* volō, velle, voluī.
1. **line, line of battle,** aciēs, ēī, F.
2. **line of march,** agmen, -minis, N.
linger, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
1. **little, a—,** paulum ; (*w. ante*), paulō, *adv.*
2. **little, be within a very—of,** minimum abesse, *w.* quīn.
live, vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum ; (**on,** *expressed by abl.*).
load, onerō, āre, āvī, ātum.
lofty, altus, a, um.
1. **long,** *adj.*, longus, a, um.
2. **long,** *adv.*, diū ; **longer,** diūtius.
3. **long, as—as,** dum, *conj.*
lose, ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum ; (=*let slip*), dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum ; (*of losing men in battle*), dēper-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *or* āmittō.
1. **loss,** dētrīmentum, ī, N.
2. **loss** (=*disaster*), calamitās, -tātis, F. ; (=*disadvantage*), dētrīmentum, ī, N. ; (*of loss in battle*), *use* āmittō=*lose*, *or* interficiō=*slay*.
lot, fortūna, ae, F.
loud, māgnus, a, um.
love, dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum ; amō, āre, āvī, ātum.
low, humilis, e.
lower, inferior, ius.
loyalty, fidēs, eī, F.
Lucius, Lūcius, ī, M.

M

made, be—, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
madness, furor, -ōris, M.
magistrate, magistrātus, ūs, M.
1. **make,** faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
2. **make a march,** iter (*gen.* itineris, N.) faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
3. **make ready,** comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.
4. **make use of,** ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
5. **make war,** bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum ; (**on,** *expressed by dat.*).
1. **man,** vir, virī, M. ; homō, hominis, M. ; (=*soldier*), mīles, -itis, M., *or often by the possessive pronoun.*
2. **man, to a—,** ad ūnum omnēs.
manner, ratiō, -ōnis, F.
many, multī, ae, a ; *if followed by another adjective, supply* et *or* -que, =*and* ; **how many,** quot, *indeclinable* ; **so many,** tot, *indeclinable* ; **very many,** permultī, ae, a.
1. **march,** *verb*, iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, =*make a march* ; conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.
2. **march,** *noun*, iter, itineris, N.
3. **march, line of—,** agmen, -minis, N.
4. **marching,** *noun*, iter, itineris, N.
Marius, Marius, ī, M.
marriage, give in—, nūptum (*supine*) dō, dare, dedī, datum.
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, F.
Massilia, Massilia, ae, F.
master, become—of, potior, īrī, ītus sum, *w. abl.*
material, māteria, ae, F.
1. **matter,** rēs, reī, F.
2. **matter, no—how,** quamvīs.
may, licet, *impersonal w. dat.*
mean, volō, velle, voluī, *w. dat. of reflexive pronoun.*
1. **means** (=*measures*), rēs, reī, F.

2. **means of approach**, aditus, ūs, M.
3. **means, by no**, nēquāquam, *adv.*
4. **means, by—of**, per, *prep. w. acc.*

meantime, in the—, intereā.
measure, cōnsilium, ī, N.
1. **meet**, oc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum.
2. **meet with**, nanciscor, ī, nactus *or* nanctus sum, *w. acc.*

memory, memoria, ae, F.
mention, commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.
merciful disposition, clēmentia (ae, F.) āc mānsuētūdō (-dinis, F.).
merit, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
merited, meritus, a, um.
message, nūntius, ī, M.
messenger, nūntius, ī, M.
middle, *use* medius, a, um, *adj.*
midnight, media nox (noctis, F.).
midst, *use* medius, a, um, *adj.*
mile, =*a thousand paces.*
military, mīlitāris, e.
milk, lāc, lactis, N.
mischief, maleficium, ī, N.
missile, tēlum, ī, N.
mistaken, be—, errō, āre, āvī, ātum.
mode, genus, -eris, N.
Mona, Mona, ae, F.
money, sum of money, pecūnia, ae, F.; (=*coin*), nummus, ī, M.
month, mēnsis, is, M.
more, plūs, amplius.
Morini, Morinī, ōrum, M.
morning, on the following—, postrīdiē ējus diēī māne.
morrow, on the—, postrīdiē, *adv.*
most, māximē, *or use superlative.*
mount, a-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
move forward, prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum.
much, *adv.*, multum; multō.
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, F.
murder, caedēs, is, F.
1. **must**, *use gerundive passive with* sum.
2. **must needs**, necesse est, *w. dat.*

my, meus, a, um.

N

name, nōmen, -minis, N.
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, F.
native land, patria, ae, F.
nature, nātūra, ae, F.
nearer, propius, *adv.*
nearest, proximus, a, um.
1. **need**, *verb*, *use* opus est (=*there is need*), *impersonal*, *w. abl.*
2. **need**, *noun*, ūsus, ūs, M.

neglect, neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
neighbor, fīnitimus, ī, M.
neighborhood, in the—of, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, a, um.
1. **neither**, *adj.*, neuter, tra, trum.
2. **neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque.

Nervii, Nerviī, ōrum, M. *plur.*
next, posterus, a, um; proximus, a, um.
new, novus, a, um.
night, nox, noctis, F.
nine, novem.
ninety, nōnāgintā.
ninth, nōnus, a, um.
no, nūllus, a, um.
no one, nēmō; *gen.*, nūllīus; *acc.*, nēminem; *abl.*, nūllō; **that no one**, nē quis.
noble, nōbilis, e.

noise, strepitus, ūs, M.
none, nūllus, a, um.
nor, neque.
1. **not,** nōn (*in final and imperative clauses,* nē); **and not,** neque (*or in final clauses,* nēve, neu).
2. **not a man,** = *no one.*
3. **not yet,** nōndum.
nothing, nihil, N., *indeclinable.*
now (= *by this time*), jam; (= *at this present time*), nunc.
1. **number,** numerus, ī, M., *or use clause with* quot = *how many.*
2. **number, large—,** multitūdō, -dinis, F.; māgnus numerus, ī, M.
3. **numbers, great—,** = *large number* (*use sing.*).
numerous, crēber, bra, brum; multī, ae, a.

O

oak, rōb-ur, -oris, N.
1. **oath,** jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, N.
2. **oath, take an—,** jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
obedient, be—, pāreō, ēre, uī.
obey, pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. dat.*; obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
objections, raise—, recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w.* quōminus *and subjunctive.*
observe, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
obtain a request, impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
occupy, ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
occur, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
of (= *about*), dē, *w. abl.*
offer, prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.
1. **officer,** lēgātus, ī, M.
2. **officer, cavalry—,** praefectus (ī, M.) equitum.
old, vet-us, -eris; (*so many years*) **old,** nātus, a, um.
on (*of place where*), in *w. abl.*; (*of time when*), *use abl. only*; (*of making attack on*), in *w. acc.*; (*of direction*), ab *or* ex *w. abl.*; (= *concerning*), dē *w. abl.*
on account of, propter, *w. acc.*
1. **once, at—,** statim, *adv.*
2. **once more,** = *again.*
1. **one,** ūnus, a, um; **one hundred,** centum; **no one,** nēmō.
2. **one another,** inter sē.
3. **one at a time,** singulāris, e, *adj.*
4. **one, the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
only, ūnus, a, um, *adj.*
onset, impetus, ūs, M.
open, pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum; *passive* pate-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum.
1. **opinion,** sententia, ae, F.
2. **opinion, be of the—,** exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum.
opportune, opportūnus, a, um.
opportunely, opportūnē.
1. **opportunity,** occāsiō, -ōnis, F.; facultās, -tātis, F.; potestās, -tātis, F.
2. **opportunity, give—,** facultātem dare, *or* potestātem facere.
1. **oppose** (= *resist*), repūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; re-sistō, ere, -stitī; *w. dat.*
2. **oppose** (= *set in opposition*), op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.
or, aut; (*in questions*), an; **or not** (*in questions*), annōn (*direct*), necne (*indirect*).
Orcynia, Orcynia, ae, F.
1. **order,** jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum *w. acc.*; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
2. **orders, give—,** imperō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **orders, receive—,** jubeor, ērī, jussus sum, (= *be ordered*).

4. **order, in—that,** ut, nē.
5. **order, in—to,** ut, causā, ad.
6. **orders, without his—,** injussū suō.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -igis, M.

1. **other, another,** alius, a, ud.
2. **other, the—,** (*of two*), alter, era, erum; (=*the remaining*), reliquus, a, um.
3. **others, the—,** reliquī, ae, a; cēterī, ae, a.

ought, *use gerundive passive with* sum; *or* dēbeō, ēre, uī; oportet, ēre, oportuit.

our, noster, tra, trum.

out of, ex, ē, *w. abl.*

outer, exterior, ius.

outside, go—of, ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *w.* extrā *and acc.*

over (*of bridges over rivers*), in, *w. abl.*

overwhelm, op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum.

own, *use possessive pronouns with or without* ipsīus, ipsōrum.

P

1. **pace,** passus, ūs, M.
2. **pace, slacken—,** dē celeritāte rē-mittor, ī, -missus sum.
1. **panic,** timor, -ōris, M.
2. **panic, throw into a—,** perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.
1. **pardon,** *verb,* ī-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, *w. dat.*
2. **pardon,** *noun,* venia, ae, F.

parent, parēns, -entis, M. *or* F.

1. **part,** pars, partis, F.
2. **part, in—,** partim, *adv.*
3. **part, for the most—,** māximam partem.
4. **part, take—in,** inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*

participate in, inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*

party, factiō, -ōnis, F.

1. **pass** (*by*), eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum.
2. **pass beyond,** ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *with* extrā *and acc.*
3. **pass the winter,** hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.

passage, iter, itinĕris, N.

pay, pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum.

peace, pāx, pācis, F.

people, populus, ī, M.

perceive, cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum; intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

perhaps, fortassĕ.

peril, perīculum, ī, N.; **to the—,** cum perīculō.

permission, have—, licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal, w. dat.*

1. **permit,** patior, ī, passus sum,
2. **permitted, be—,** licet, *impersonal, w. dat.*

1. **person** (=*a man*), *generally untranslated.*
2. **person, in—,** ipse, a, um, =*himself.*

persuade, persuā-deō, ēre, -sī, -sum, *w. dat.*

pillage, praedor, ārī, ātus sum.

pitch (*of a camp*), pōnō, ere, posuī, positum.

pity, feel—for, misereor, ērī, itus sum, *w. gen.*

1. **place,** *verb,* pōnō, ere, posuī, positum; collocō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **place,** *noun,* locus, ī, M. *sing.*; loca, ōrum, N. *plur.*
3. **place, leading—,** prīncipātus, ūs, M.
4. **place, in that—,** ibi, *adv.*
5. **place, to that—,** eō, *adv.*

plan, cōnsilium, ī, N.

pleasing, grātus, a, um.

plenty, cōpia, ae, F.

plunder, praeda, ae, F.

1. **point out,** doceō, ēre, uī; ostendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum *or* ostēnsum.

2. **point, be on the—of,** *use fut. part. in* ūrus *with* sum.
3. **point, on that—,** =*about that.*
political change, novae rēs, F. *plur.*
Pompey, Pompēius, ī, M.
popular, acceptus, a, um.
port, portus, ūs, M.
portion, pars, partis, F.
1. **position,** locus, ī, M.; *or use clause with* ubi *or* quō in locō.
2. **position, keep a—,** cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.
possess, ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum ; pos-sideō, ēre, sēdī, -sessum.
1. **possessions, their—,** sua, ōrum, N. *plur.*
2. **possession, gain—of,** potior, īrī, ītus sum, *w. abl.*
3. **possession, take—of,** occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. acc.*
possibility, potestās, -tātis, F.
possible, as . . . as—, quam, *with superlative.*
posterity, posterī, ōrum, M. *plur.*
1. **power, royal—, chief—, supreme—,** rēgnum, ī, N.
2. **power, gain the sovereign—of,** potior, īrī, ītus sum, *w. gen.*
1. **powerful,** fīrmus, a, um ; potēns, -entis.
2. **powerful, be most—,** plūrimum possum, posse, potuī.
practice, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F.
1. **praise,** *verb,* laudō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **praise,** *noun,* laus, laudis, F.
pray for, dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, *w. acc.*
precedent, exemplum, ī, N.
preceding, superior, ius.
prefer (*with nouns*), anteˊ-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum ; (*with the infinitive*) mālō, mālle, māluī.
preparations, make—, comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.
prepare, parō, āre, āvī, ātum.
1. **present,** dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **present, be—,** ad-sum, -esse, -fuī.
preserve, re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
1. **press, press hard,** urgeō, ēre, ursī ; premō, ere, pressī, pressum.
2. **press forward,** īn-stō, āre, -stitī, stātum.
prevail, superō, āre, āvī, ātum.
prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.
previous, superior, ius.
previously, ante.
price, pretium, ī, N.
priest, sacer-dōs, -dōtis, M.
prisoner, captīvus, ī, M.
private, prīvātus, a, um.
proceed, prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum ; prō-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.
proceedings, =*things.*
procure, parō, āre, āvī, ātum ; comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.
produce, ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
project, form a,—cōnsilium (ī, N.) capiō (ere, cēpī, captum) *or* ineō (īre, iī, itum).
promise, make a promise, polliceor, ērī, itus sum.
prompt, hortor, ārī, ātus sum ; im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
protect, mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum.
protection, praesidium, ī, N.
protract, prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
provide for, prō-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *w. dat. or acc.*
prove, probō, āre, āvī, ātum.
provided that, dum.
province, prōvincia, ae, F.
provisions, commeātus, ūs, M. (*use the singular*).

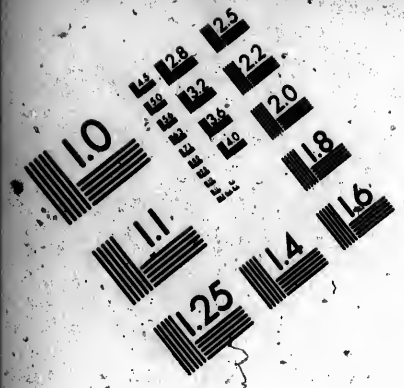
provoke to battle, proeliō (*abl.*) lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum.
prowess, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
punish, ulciscor, ī, ultus sum.
punishment, supplicium, ī, N.
pupil, discipulus, ī, M.
1. **purpose**, rēs, reī, F.
2. **purpose, for the—of**, causā, *w. gen. preceding.*
1. **pursue**, prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum ; cōn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum ; [illegible]or, ī, secūtus sum.
2. **pursue a march**, iter faciō (ere, fēcī, factum).
push forward (*or* **onward**), conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.
1. **put**, collocō, āre, āvī, ātum ; pōnō, ere, posuī, positum.
2. **put (in chains)**, con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *with* in *and acc.*
3. **put to death**, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
4. **put spurs to a horse**, equum ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
5. **put an end to**, fīnem faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *w. gen.*

Q

1. **quarters, from all—**, undique, *adv.*
2. **quarters, winter—**, hīberna, ōrum, N. *plur.*
queen, rēgīna, ae, F.
question, quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
quickly, celeriter.
quickness, celeritās, -tātis, F.

R

rage, the battle rages, pūgnātur, *impersonal passive.*
raise (=*collect*), comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.
rampart, vāllum, ī, N.
rank, ōrdō, -dinis, M.
rashness, temeritās, -tatis, F.
rate, at any—, certē.
1. **rather**, potius, magis.
2. **rather, had—**, mālō, mālle, māluī.
reach, per-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *or* in *and acc.*
readily (=*without cause*), temerē.
1. **ready**, [illegible]rātus, a, um ; (**for** *or* **to**, [illegible]*w. acc.*).
2. **ready, make—**, comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **ready, get,**—(*of arms*), expediō, īre, īvī, ītum ; (*of vessels*), parō, āre, āvī, ātum.
rear, novissimum agmen (-minis), N. ; **in the rear**, ā tergō, *or* āversus, a, um *in agreement* ; **to the rear**, ad novissimōs.
reason, causa, ae, F. ; *or use clause with* cūr *or* quamobrem.
rebuild, restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.
recall, revocō, āre, āvī, ātum.
1. **receive**, ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
2. **receive orders** = *be ordered.*
recent, recēns, -entis.
recover (=*win back*), reciperō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (=*regain courage*), sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
refrain, temperō, āre, āvī, ātum.
refuse (=*object*), recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.
regain, reciperō, āre, āvī, ātum.
regard, habeō, ēre, uī, itum.
region, regiō, -ōnis, F.
regular (*of troops*), legiōnārius, a, um.
reinforcements, subsidium, ī, N.
relationship, cōgnātiō, -ōnis, F.
reliance, place—on, cōn-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *w. dat.*
reluctance, with—, invītus, a, um, *adj. in agreement.*



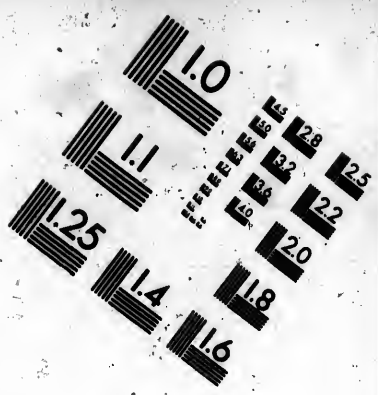
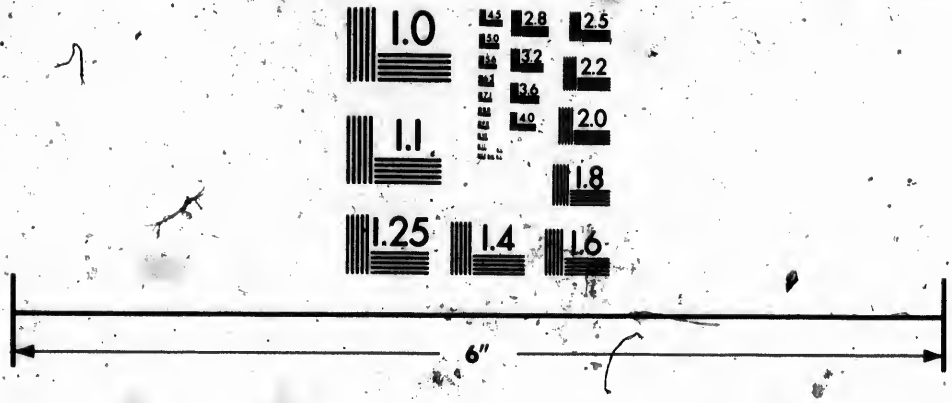
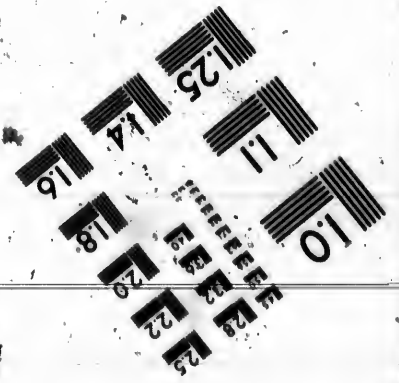


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

relying on, frētus, a, um, *w. abl.*
remain, re-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum; maneō; per-maneō.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remember, memoriam re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *w. gen.*; meminī, isse (*imperative,* memen-tō, -tōte); reminiscor, ī.
Remi, Rēmī, ōrum, M. *plur.*
remind, commone-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum.
remotest, ultimus, a, um.
remove, re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
renew, renovō, āre, āvī, ātum.
renown, fāma, ae, F.; glōria, ae, F.; laus, laudis, F.
repair, reficiō, ere, -fēcī, fectum.
reply, re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
1. **report,** *verb,* nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum; renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum; re-ferō, ferre, rettulī, relātum.
2. **report,** *noun,* fāma, ae, F.
3. **report, bring—,** fāmam per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *or use* nūntiō, =*announce.*
reprove, repre-hendō, ere, -hendī, hēnsum.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.
1. **request,** pet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *with* ab *and abl.*
2. **request, gain—, obtain—,** impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
require, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum.
reserve, subsidium, ī, N.
resist, re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *w. dat.*
resistance, *use the verb* resistō.
resolution, cōnsilium, ī, N.; **form a resolution,** cōnsilium in-eō, īre, -iī, -itum.
resolve, cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.
resources, opēs, -um, F. *plur.*
respond, re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
1. **rest,** *verb,* pōnō, ere, posuī, positum.
2. **rest,** *noun; use* reliquus, a, um, *adj.*
restore, red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.
restrain, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.
1. **result, be the result,** fīō, fierī, factus sum.
2. **result in** (=*be attended with*), sum, esse, fuī, *with* cum *and abl.*
retainer, cliēns, -entis, M.
retire, sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; sē cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum.
1. **retreat,** *verb,* pedem re-ferō (-ferre, rettulī, -lātum); sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
2. **retreat,** *noun,* receptus, ūs, M.; fuga, ae, F.
3. **retreat, beat a—,** sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
1. **return,** *verb,* re-vertor, ī, versus sum; re-vertō, ere, vertī; red eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum.
2. **return, returning,** *noun,* reditus, ūs, M.; *or use clause with verb.*
revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, N.
revolt, dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
reward, praemium, ī, N.
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, M.
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, M.
ride up, adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
1. **right,** *noun,* jūs, jūris, N.
2. **right,** *adj.,* dexter, tra, trum.
ripe, mātūrus, a, um.
river, flūmen, -minis, N.
road, via, ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.

roam about, vagor, ārī, ātus sum.
Roman, *noun*, Rōmānus, ī, M.; (*adj.*) Rōmānus, a, um.
1. **Rome** (*as a place*), Rōma, ae, F.; **at Rome**, Rōmae.
2. **Rome** (*as a nation*), populus (ī, M.) Rōmānus = *the Roman people.*
3. **Rome, of**—(= *Roman*), Rōmānus, a, um.
1. **rout**, *noun*, fuga, ae, F.
2. **rout**, *verb*, fugō, āre, āvī, ātum; fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum.
route, iter, itineris, N.
royal power, rēgnum, ī, N.
rubbish, agger, aggeris, M.
rugged, asper, era, erum.
rule, imperium, ī, N.
run down, dē-currō, ere, -currī *or* -cucurrī, -cursum.
1. **rush to arms**, con-currō, ere, -currī *or* -cucurrī, -cursum.
2. **rush out**, sē ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum; (**of**, ex *w. abl.*).

S

Sabis, Sabis, is, M.
sacred, sacer, cra, crum.
safe, tūtus, a, um.
safeguard, praesidium, ī, N.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.; **in safety**, *use* incolumis, e, *adj.*, = *safe.*
sail, nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum; (**for**, in *w. acc.*).
sailor, nauta, ae, M.
sake, **for the—of**, causā, *w. gen. preceding.*
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F.
same, Idem, eadem, idem.
satisfaction, give—, satis-faciō, ere, -fēci, -factum.
save (= *rescue*), ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *with* ex *and abl.*; (= *spare*), cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum.
say, dicō, ere, dīxī, dictum; *if followed by negative, use* negō, āre, āvī, ātum, = *deny.*
scarcely, vix.
scatter, dis-pergō, ere, -sī, -sum.
scarcity, inopia, ae, F.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M.
1. **sea**, mare, maris, N.
2. **sea, on the—**, maritimus, a, um, *adj.*
3. **sea coast**, ōra (ae, F.) maritima.
search for, quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *w. acc.*
1. **second**, secundus, a, um.
2. **second, a—time**, iterum, *adv.*
secretly, clam.
secure, mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum.
see, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seek, pet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum; appet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum.
seem, videor, ērī, vīsus sum, *passive.*
seize (= *take possession of*), occupō, āre, āvī, ātum; (= *with impedīmenta*), potior, īrī, ītus sum; (= *take prisoner*), compre-hendo, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
select, dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
senate, senātus, ūs, M.
1. **send**, mittō, ere, mīsī, missum.
2. **send back**, re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
3. **send forward, send in advance**, prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
separate, dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.
Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, M. *plur.*
seriously, graviter.
1. **service**, officium, ī, N.
2. **service, be of—**, ūsuī esse.
1. **set fire to**, in-cendō, ere, cendī, -cēnsum, *w. acc.*
2. **set out**, pro-ficiscor, ī, -fectus sum.

3. **set sail**, nāvēs solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, =*loose the ships*.
settle (=*take up position*), cōnsīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum; (=*decide*), cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, ūtum.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, a, um.
seventy, septuāgintā.
several, complūrēs, -ium; aliquot, *indeclinable*.
severe, gravis, e.
shameful, turpis, e.
shatter, af-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum.
1. **ship**, nāvis, is, F.
2. **ship of war**, nāvis longa.
shore, lītus, -oris, N.
1. **short**, brevis, e.
2. **short, in a—time**, brevī.
3. **short, (for) a—time**, paulisper.
shortly, brevī.
should, =*ought, use gerundive with* sum; *for other values see* V. 144.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, M.
show, osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum *or* ostēnsum.
shudder at, horreō, ēre, uī, *w. acc.*
1. **side**, latus, -eris, N.; pars, partis, F.
2. **side, from all sides**, undique, *adv.*
3. **side, on both sides**, utrimque, *adv.*
4. **side, on this—of**, cis *or* citrā *prep. w. acc.*
5. **side, on the other—of**, trāns, *prep. w. acc.*
sight, cōnspectus, ūs, M.
signal, signum, I, N.
1. **silent**, tacitus, a, um.
2. **silent, be—, keep—**, taceō, ere, uī, itum.
similar, similis, e.
since, cum.
six, sex; **six hundred**, sescentī, ae, a.
sixteenth, sextus (a, um) decimus (a, um).
sixty, sexāgintā.
size, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.; *or use clause with* quantus, a, um.
skirmish, proelium (I, N.) leve *or* parvulum, =*slight battle*.
slaughter, caedēs, is, F.
slave, servus, I, M.
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, F.
slay, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum; oc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
sling, funda, ae, F.
slinger, funditor, -ōris, M.
sloping, dēclīvis, e.
small, parvus, a, um.
smaller, min-or, -us.
snatch away, ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum; (**from**, *use dat*).
so, (=*to such an extent*), tam; (=*therefore*), itaque; **so great**, tantus, a, um.
soldier, mīl-es, -itis, M.
1. **some** (=*some or other*), aliquis (aliquī), -qua[illegible]uid *or* -quod; (=*a few*), [illegible]nūllī, ae, a.
2. **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī.
3. **some one**, aliquis.
4. **some day**, aliquandō.
son, fīlius, I, M.
son-in-law, gener, erī, M.
1. **soon**, mox, brevī.
2. **sooner**, (=*rather*), potius, magis.
soon, as—as, simul atque.
sorry, be—, paenitet, *impersonal*.
1. **sort, of what—**, quālis, e, *adj*.
2. **sort, what—of man**, quālis, e. =*of what sort*.
sovereign power, imperium, I, N.; rēgnum, I, N.
space, spatium, I, N.
spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, par- *w. dat.*
speak, dicō, ere, dīxī, dictum.

spear, hasta, ae, F.
specified, certus, a, um.
special, show—indulgence = *indulge specially.*
specially, praecipuē.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.; cursus, ūs, M.
speedily, celeriter.
spend, cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum.
spirit, animus, ī, M.; virtūs, -tūtis, F.
spring, vēr, vēris, N.
spy, speculātor, -ōris, M.
squadron, turma, ae, F.
stain, īn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
stand one's ground, cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.
1. **standard**, sīgnum, ī, N.
2. **standard bearer**, = *he who bore the standard.*
start, ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum.
1. **state**, *noun*, cīvitās, -tātis, F.; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.
2. **state**, *verb*, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.
statement, vōx, vōcis, F.; *or use* dīcō = *say.*
station, collocō, āre, āvī, ātum.
stay, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
steep, prae-ceps, -cipitis; arduus, a, um.
stimulate, excitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
stir up, incitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
stone (*for building*), saxum, ī, N.; (*for hurling*), lap-is, -idis, M.
stop, cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.
1. **storm**, *verb*, expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **storm**, *noun*, tempestās, -tātis, F.
3. **storm, take by—**, = *storm*, (*verb*).
strategem, cōnsilium, ī, N.
stream, rīvus, ī, M.; flūmen, -minis, N.
strength, fīrmitūdō, -dinis, F.; *or use clause with* quot.
strengthen, fīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum; mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum.
stretch, pertineō, ēre, uī.
strive, conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum; nītor, ī, nīsus sum.
strong, be—, valeō, ēre, uī.
1. **struggle**, *verb*, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **struggle**, *noun*, certāmen, -minis, N.; bellum, ī, N.
subjection, servitūs, -tūtis, F.
submit, serviō, īre, īvī, ītum.
successfully, bene; fēlīciter.
successive, continuus, a, um.
1. **such** (=*so great*), tantus, a, um.
2. **such, of—a character**, tālis, e.
3. **such . . . as**, *often* quī *w. subjunctive.*
1. **sudden**, repentīnus, a, um.
2. **sudden, make a—attack**, *use* subitō, *adv.*, = *suddenly.*
suddenly, subitō.
sue for, pet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *w. acc.*
suffer (=*receive*), ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum; (=*allow*), patior, ī, passus sum.
sufficient, sufficiently, satis.
suggestion, at the—of, *use* auctor, -ōris, M., = *suggester*, *in abl. absol.*
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, -tātis, F.
summon (*of several persons*), convocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (*of one person*), vocō, āre, āvī, ātum.
superior, be—, prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum *or* -stitum.
1. **supplies**, commeātus, ūs, M.
2. **supplies of corn**, rēs frūmentāria.
suppose, arbitror, ārī, ātus sum; putō, āre, āvī, ātum; jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum.

supreme power, rēgnum, ī, N.
surpass, prae-stō, āre, -stitī, stātum *or* stitum, *w. dat.*; ante-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *w. acc.*
1. **surrender**, *verb, transitive*, dēdō, ere, -didī, -ditum; *intransitive*, sē dēdere.
2. **surrender**, *verb* (*of giving up arms*), trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum.
3. **surrender**, *noun*, dēditiō, -ōnis, F.
surround, circum-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (=*put round*), circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum; (=*overwhelm*), circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum.
1. **suspect**, suspicor, ārī, ātus sum.
2. **suspected, become—**, in suspiciōnem veniō, (īre, vēnī, ventum).
swamp, pal-ūs, -ūdis, F.
swarm around, circum-fundor, ī, -fūsus sum.
sway, diciō, -ōnis, F.
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, F.
sword, gladius, ī, M.; **with fire and sword**, ferrō et ignī.

T

Tarentum, Tarentum, ī, N.
1. **take**, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum; (*of taking a census*), habeō, ēre, uī, itum.
2. **take away**, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum; ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum; (**from**, *express by dat.*).
3. **take up** (=*fill up*), contineō, ēre, uī; (*of taking up arms*), capiō, ere, cēpī, captum.
4. **take up a position**, cōn-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
taught, be—, discō, ere, didicī, =*learn*.
tax, tribūtum, ī, N.
tear, lacrima, ae, F.
tell, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *w. dat. of person.*
tempest, tempestās, -tātis, F.
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, a, um.
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, F. (*use sing.*).
terrify, terreō, ēre, uī, itum.
territory, ager, agrī, M.; fīnēs, -ium, M. *plur.*
terror, terror, -ōris, M.; timor, -ōris, M.
test, perīclitor, ārī, ātus sum.
Thames, Tamesis, is, M.; (*acc.* Tamesim).
than, quam.
1. **that**, *pronoun*, is, ea, id; *emphatic*, ille, a, ud.
2. **that**, *conj., with noun clauses untranslated; with clauses of purpose*, ut, nē; *with clauses of result*, ut.
their, suus, a, um; *or* eōrum.
then (=*next*), deinde.
there (=*in that place*), ibi; (=*to that place*), eō; (*as introductory adverb*), *untranslated.*
thereupon, tum.
they, eī, eae, ea.
thing, rēs, reī, F.; *or in nom. and acc. use neuter of adj. or pronoun.*
think, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
third, tertius, a, um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
though, =*although*.
thousand, mīlle; *plur.*, mīllia, ium, N.
threaten, minor, ārī, ātus sum.
three, trēs, tria; **three hundred**, trecentī, ae, a.
through, per, *w. acc.*

1. **throw** (*of weapons*), ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum ; con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
2. **throw** (*into chains*), con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
3. **throw one's self**, sē prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum ; **throw one's self into**, ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *w.* in *and acc.*; **throw one's self in front of**, sē offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *w. dat.*
4. **throw away**, ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
5. **throw down**, ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

thus, itaque.

1. **time**, tempus, -oris, N.
2. **time, a second—**, iterum, *adv.*
3. **time, a short—**, paulisper, *adv.*
4. **time, at that—**, tum, *adv.*; *or literally.*
5. **time, one at a—**, singulāris, e, *adj.*

to, *prep.*, ad, *w. acc.*; in, *w. acc.*

to-day, hodiē, *adv.*

to-morrow, crās, *adv.*

top, *use* summus, a, um, *adj.*

tortoise, testūdō, -dinis, F.

towards, ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, F., (*acc.* turrim).

town, oppidum, I, N.

trader, mercātor, -ōris, M.

1. **transport**, *verb*, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **transport**, *adj.*, onerārius, a, um.

traveller, viātor, -ōris, M.

treachery, perfidia, ae, F.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.

tree, arbor, -oris, F.

trench, fossa, ae, F.

tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, F.

tribune, tribūnus, I, M.

tributary, vectīgālis, e.

trick, artificium, I, N.

trifling, levis, e.

triple, tri-plex, -plicis.

troopers, = *cavalry.*

troops, mīlitēs, um, M. ; cōpiae, ārum, F.

trunk, truncus, I, M.

trust, cōn-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum.

1. **try**, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum ; *or use the imperfect tense of the verb.*
2. **try to influence, try to win over**, sōllicitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **try to prevent**, prohibeō, ēre, *in pres., imperf., or fut. tense.*

1. **turn**, ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum.
2. **turn aside**, ā-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vīgintī ; **twenty-fifth**, vīcēsimus (a, um) quīntus (a, um).

twice, bis.

two, duo, duae, duo ; **two hundred**, ducentī, ae, a.

U

unable, be—, nōn possum, posse, potuī.

uncertain, incertus, a, um.

under, sub, *prep. w. abl.*

undertake, sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

undertaking, cōnātus, ūs, M.

understand, intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

unexhausted, recēns, -entis.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um ; inīquus, a um ; incommodus, a, um.

unfriendly, inimīcus, a, um.

unknown, incōgnitus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unoccupied, be—, vacō, āre, āvī, ātum.

unsuccessful, adversus, a, um.

1. **until**, *conj.*, dum, dōnec.
2. **until**, *prep.*, ad *w. acc.*

unwilling, be —, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
uphold, cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum.
upon, in *w. acc.*
upper, superior, ius.
uprising, mōtus, ūs, M.
urge, hortor, ārī, ātus sum.
1. **use,** *verb,* ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
2. **use, make—of,** =*use.*
3. **use to come,** ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
4. **used to,** *use the imperfect tense.*

useful, ūtilis, e.
useless, inūtilis, e; (**for,** =ad, *w. acc.*)
1. **usual, his—,** *use* suus, a, um.
2. **usual, than—,** *express by comparative.*

utmost, summus, a, um.

V

Valerius, Valerius, I, M.
valiantly, fortiter.
valid, perfectly—, justissimus, a, um.
valley, vallēs, is, F.
valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
value, of great—, māgnī.
vanish, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum.
1. **vanquish,** vincō, ere, vīcī, victum; superō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **vanquished,** victus, a, um.

vehemence, vīs, F.
vengeance, supplicium, I, N.
venture, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.
very, admodum; *often* ipse.
Vesontio, Vesontiō, ōnis, F.
vessel, nāvis, is, F.
vicinity, *express by using* ab *or* ad, *with names of towns.*
victorious, victor, -ōris, M.
victory, victōria, ae, F.
vigorous, make a—attack, māgnō impetū ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum; ācriter impetum faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
vigorously, ācriter.
village, vīcus, I, M.
violence, vīs, F.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.
voluntarily, ultrō.

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.
wagon, carrus, ī, M.
1. **wait,** moror, ārī, ātus sum; exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **wait for,** exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. acc.*

wall (*of town*), mūrus, ī, M.; (*of camp*), vāllum, ī, N.
wander, vagor, ārī, ātus sum.
1. **want,** inopia, ae, F.
2. **wanting, be —,** dēsum, deesse, dēfuī.

1. **war,** bellum, ī, N.
2. **war galley, war ship,** nāvis (is, F.) longa.

warn, moneō, ēre, uī, itum.
1. **waste,** (=*lose*), dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
2. **waste, lay—,** vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum; populor, ārī, ātus sum.

watch, vigilia, ae, F.
water, aqua, ae, F.
wave, fluctus, ūs, M.
way, in any—, ūllō modō.
wealth, dīvitiae, ārum, F. *plur.*
weapon, tēlum, ī, N.
weary, dēfātigō, āre, āvī, ātum.
weather, tempestās, -tātis, F.
1. **weep,** fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētum.
2. **weeping,** flētus, ūs, M.

1. **weigh,** exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **weigh anchor,** nāvēs solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, =*loose the ships.*

3. **weigh down**, op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum.
weight (=*influence*), auctōritās, -tātis, F.; (=*heaviness*), onus, oneris, N.
welfare, consult—of, cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *w. dat.*
well-merited, meritissimus, a, um.
west, sōlis occāsus, ūs, M.
what, quis, quae, quid.
1. **whatever**, (*pron.*), quī, quae, quod.
2. **whatever**, *adv.* (=*at all*), omnīnō.
when (*relative*), ubi, cum; (*interrogative*), quandō.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum.
whereas, cum.
whether, num; **whether ... or**, utrum ... an; sīve ... sīve.
1. **which** (*of two*), uter, tra, trum;
2. **which, from—**, unde.
while, dum; *or use pres. part.*
who (*relative*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quae, quid.
whole, tōtus, a, um.
wholly, omnīnō; penitus.
why, cūr; quārē.
wide, lātus, a, um.
widely, lātē.
width, lātitūdō, -dinis, F.
wife, con-junx, -jugis, F.
will, against the—, *use* invītus, a, um, *adj.* (=*unwilling*).
1. **willing, be—**, volō, velle, voluī.
2. **willing, be more—**, mālō, mālle, māluī.
1. **win**, vincō, ere, vīcī, victum.
2. **win over**, conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum.
3. **win, try to—over**, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
wing, cornū, ūs, N.
1. **winter**, *verb*, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **winter**, *noun*, hiems, hiemis, F.
3. **winter, pass the—**, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.
winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, N. *plur.*
wipe out, dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
1. **wish**, volō, velle, voluī.
2. **wish, not to—**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
with, cum, *w. abl.*; *or use abl. alone*; (=*among*), apud, *w. acc.*
1. **withdraw, withdraw one's self**, sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum; (*if from a rampart*), dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.
2. **withdraw** (=*lead off*), dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
1. **within** (*of place*), intrā, *prep. w. acc.*
2. **within** (*of time*), *use abl.*
3. **within, be—a very little**, minimum abesse.
1. **without**, sine, *w. abl.*
2. **without, be—**, careō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. abl.*
withstand, sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; (*of storms*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
road, vitrum, I, N.
woman, mulier, -eris, F.
wont, be—to, *use perfect tenses of* cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī.
wood, silva, ae. F.
wooded, silvestris, e.
1. **word, bring—**, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **word, bring back—**, renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.
work, opus, -eris, N.
workman, faber, brī, M.
worthy, dignus, a, um, *w. abl.*, *or w.* quī *and subjunctive.*

would that, utinam, *w. subjunctive.*

1. wound, *verb,* vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. wound, *noun,* vulnus, -eris, N.

wretched, miser, era, erum.

wrong, injūria, ae, F.; **wrongs done to . . . by . . . ,** *use objective and subjective genitive.*

wrong-doing, injūria, ae, F.

Y

year, annus, ī, M.

yesterday, herī.

1. yet, tamen.

2. yet, not—, nōndum.

you, tū, vōs.

young man, adulēscēns, -entis, M.

your, tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum.

III. INDEX.

(The references are to the sections of Parts III. and V., except where otherwise specified.)

A

Ablative absolute, V. 45-50; 104.
Ablative case, various uses of, V. 92-108; 45-50; 54, 55.
Accent, page 3.
Accompaniment, ablative of, V. 103.
Accusative and infinitive construction, V. 14-18.
Accusative case, various uses of, V. 69-75.
Adjectives, declension of, III. 10-12; 14; 57-59; comparison of, III. 13; 60; agreement of, V. 11, 12, *b*; used as substantives, V. 205, *g*; used in a partitive sense, V. 86, iv. *b*; genitive with, V. 90; dative with, V. 78, ii.; ablative with, V. 107, iii.
Advantage, dative of, V. 79.
Adverbial accusative, V. 72, i.; adverbial clauses, position of, V. 6.
Adverbs, formation from adjectives, III. 17; comparison of, III. 17; 60; position of, V. 4, *d*.
Agent, ablative of, V. 97; dative of, V. 80, *d*; the secondary agent, V. 99, i.
Agreement, forms of, V. 10-13.
āiō, conjugation of, III. 72, *c*.
aliquis, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 167, *a*.
alius, declension of, III. 14; uses of, V. 168, *a*.
alter, declension of, III. 14; uses of, V. 168, *b*.
Answers, *yes* or *no*, V. 39, iii.
Antecedent, peculiarities of, V. 173; agreement of pronoun with, V. 13.
Anticipation, accusative of, V. 194, fn.
Apodosis, V. 58.
Apposition, V. 10.
Appositive noun clauses, V. 194-199.
Arrangement of words and clauses, V. 1-9.
Attraction, subjunctive by, V. 177, i.
Attributive words, agreement of, V. 11.

B

bōs, declension of, III. 9.

C

Calendar, Roman, page 464.
capiō, conjugation of, III. 39.
Cardinal numerals, list of, III. 15; declension of, III. 16.
Cases, use of, see under Genitive, Accusative, etc.
Causal clauses, V. 145-148, 171.
Cause, Ablative of, V. 96.
Characteristic, ablative of, V. 105; genitive of, V. 87; relative clause of, V. 32.
Chiasmus, V. 3, i.
coepī, conjugation of, III. 72, *a*; **coeptus sum**, use of, V. 22, iii.
Cognate accusative, V. 72.
Collective noun with plural verb, V. 13, N. B.
Commands, how expressed, V. 132.
Comparatives, declension of, III. 12; formation of, III. 13; 17; 60; construction with, V. 98.
Comparison, ablative of, V. 98; expressed by *quam*, V. 98, iii.; standard of comparison omitted, V. 98, vi.; of adjectives, III. 13; of adverbs, III. 17; conditional clauses of, V. 68.
Complementary infinitive, V. 19-22.
Concessive clauses, V. 65, 66; 171.
Concords, V. 10-13.
Conditional sentences, V. 58-64; in indirect narration, V. 192; conditional clauses of comparison, V. 68.
Conjugation of verbs, III. 27-46.
Conjunctions, V. 4, *h*.
Connection of thought, how expressed, V. 3, *b*; 202.
Consecutive clauses, V. 29-33.
Continuous narrative prose, V. 201-204.
Coordinating relative, V. 172.
Correlatives, table of, III. 26, *a*; rendered by *as*, V. 174.
cum (conjunction), uses of, V. 148-151.
cum (preposition), appended to pronouns, III. 62, *b*; 64, *b*; with ablative of manner and accompaniment, V. 103, i., ii.

D

Dates, how expressed, page 464.
Dative case, various uses of, V. 76-81; 52, 55.
dēbeō, use of, V. 140, *b*.
Declension of nouns, III. 1-9; 48-56; of adjectives, III. 10-12; 14; 57-59; of pronouns, III. 18-26; 62-64; of numerals, III. 15, 16; 61.

Defective nouns, III. 53, 54; adjectives, III. 59; comparison, III. 13; 60; verbs, III. 72.
Definition, genitive of, V. 89.
Deliberative questions, V. 134, *d*.
Demonstrative pronouns, declension of, III. 22, 23; 63; peculiar forms of, III. 63; uses of, V. 158-163.
Dependent questions, V. 35-37; clauses in indirect narration, V. 175, 176; 186, 187.
Deponent verbs, III. 68: synopsis of conjugation, III. 40; gerundive of, III. 68, *b*; peculiarities of, III. 68, *d*.
Desiderative verbs, III. 74, *c*.
Desire, subjunctive of, V. 135.
deus, declension of, III. 9.
Difference, ablative of measure of, V. 101.
Direct object, V. 69.
Direct question, V. 34, 38.
Disjunctive questions, V. 38.
Distance, accusative of, V. 128.; ablative of, V. 101, i.
Distributive numerals, III. 61, *c*.
domus, declension of, III. 9.
dum, uses of, V. 67; 153-155.
Duration of time, V. 129.
Duty, how expressed, V. 140.

E

Effecting, construction with verbs of, V. 33, v.
Emphasis, in relation to the order of words, V. 3, *a*.
Enclitics, V. 34, i., fn.
eō, conjugation of, III. 45; 71, *a*; passive of, III. 71, *a*; compounds of, III. 71, *a*.
Epistolary tenses, V. 178, ii., fn.
Ethical dative, V. 80, *c*.
Exclamations, accusative in, V. 74.

F

fārī, conjugation of, III. 72, *e*.
Fearing, construction with verbs of, V. 138.
ferō, conjugation of, III. 44; compounds of, III. 71, *b*.
Final clauses, V. 23-28.
flō, conjugation of, III. 46; compounds of, III. 71, *c*.
For, introductory, not translated in Latin, V. 195, fn.
fore ut, periphrasis with, V. 33, iv.
Frequentative verbs, III. 74, *b*; tenses in frequentative clauses, V. 149.
ful, fuēram, fuerō, in compound tenses, V. 182, *e*, i.
Future infinitive, with verbs of *hoping, promising*, etc., V. 17.
Future participle, V. 122, 124.
Future perfect tense, uses of, V. 184.
Future tense, uses of, V. 181.

G

Gender, general rules for, III. 47; gender endings and exceptions in the five declensions, III. 48, *c*; 49, *c*; 50, *c*; 51, *c*; 52, *c*.
Genitive case, various uses of, V. 82-91; 53, 55.
Gerund, forms of, III. 35.; uses of, V. 113, 114.
Gerundive, forms of, III. 34; uses of, V. 118-121.
Greek nouns, 48, *d*; 49, *d*; 50, *d*; Greek accusative, V. 73.

H

habeō, with perfect participle, V. 182, *e*, ii.
Heteroclite nouns, III. 56.
Heterogeneous nouns, III. 55.
hīc, declension of, III. 23; peculiar forms of, III. 63, *a*; uses of, V. 158.
Hindering, verbs of, V. 139.
Historical infinitive, V. 112.
Historical present, V. 179, *c*; sequence of tenses with, V. 28, iv.
Hortatory (or Hortative), subjunctive, V. 134, *a*.

I

I-stems, declension of nouns, III. 50, *b*.
Idem, declension of, III. 23; followed by *qui* or *ac*, V. 174; uses of, V. 162.
Idiom, differences between English and Latin, V. 203; 205.
ille, declension of, III. 23; peculiar forms of, III. 63; uses of, V. 160.
Imperative mood, inflection of, III. 37, 38; uses of, V. 132, 133; in indirect discourse turned by subjunctive, V. 186, i., *c*.
Imperfect tense, uses of, V. 180.
Impersonal verbs, III. 73; impersonal passive, V. 56, 57; impersonal verbs, with clause or infinitive as subject, V. 110, i.
Inceptive or inchoative verbs, III. 74, *a*.
Indeclinable nouns, gender of, III. 47, *c*; list of, III. 54, *b*; indeclinable adjectives, III. 59.
Indefinite pronouns, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 166-169.
Indicative mood, inflections of, III. 27, 28; 64, *c*; tenses of, V. 178-184.
Indirect narration, V. 185-193; principal clauses put in, V. 186, 1; subordinate clauses in, V. 175; 186, 2; virtual, V. 177; tenses in, V. 187; pronouns in, V. 188; adverbs in, V. 189; real or apparent exceptions to rules of, V. 175, i.; 190; conditional sentences in, V. 192.
Indirect object, V. 77, 78.
Indirect questions, V. 35-39.
Indirect reflexive, V. 164, i.
Infinitive, forms of, III. 31, 32; uses of, V. 109-112; 14-18; 19-22; 195.

inquam (inquit), conjugation of, III. 72, *d*; use of, V. 18, vi. 4, *g*.
Instrumental ablative, V. 92; 99.
Intensive verbs, III. 74, *b*.
interest, construction with, V. 53, *b*, i., ii.
Interest, dative of, V. 79, 80.
Interrogative particles, *-ne, nōnne, num*, V. 34, i., 35, i., 39, iv.; *utrum ... an*, V. 38, 39, ii.; *annōn, necne*, V. 39, i.
Interrogative pronouns, declension of, III. 25; 64; uses of, V. 34, 35, 37.
Intransitive verbs, corresponding to English transitive verbs, V. 51-55; used impersonally in the passive, V. 56-57.
-iō, verbs of third conjugation in, III. 39; 67.
ipse, declension of, III. 23; uses of, V. 163.
Irregular nouns, declension of, III. 9; case-endings of nouns, III. 48, *c*; 49, *c*; 50, *c*; 51, *c*; 52, *c*; case-endings of adjectives of third declension, III. 58, *b*; verbal endings, III. 66.
is, declension of, III. 22; uses of, V. 159.
iste, declension of, III. 23; uses of, V. 161.
It, no equivalent in Latin, when used as an impersonal or representative subject, V. 195, fn.
Iterative verbs, III. 74, *b*.
-ius, adjectives with genitive singular in, III. 14.

J

jam, and its compounds, with present and imperfect, V. 179, *e*; 180, *e*.
Juppiter, declension of, III. 9.
jūsjūrandum, declension of, III. 9.
Jussive subjunctive, V. 134, *b*.

L

licet, use of, V. 143; as concessive particle, V. 66, i.
Limit of motion, accusative of, V. 125.
Locative ablative, V. 92; 106.
Locative case, the, III. 48, *e*; 49, *e*; 50, *e*.

M

magis, comparison expressed by, III. 60, *b*.
mālō, conjugation of, III. 43.
Manner, ablative of, V. 103.
māterfamiliās, declension of, III. 9.
māximē, comparison expressed by, III. 60, *b*.
Means, ablative of, V. 99.
meminī, conjugation of, III. 72, *b*; construction with, V. 53, *a*.
Middle use of passive, V. 73.
mīlle (mīllia), declension of, III. 16; use of, III. 61, *e*.
Months, names of, page 464, fn.
Moods, see Indicative, Subjunctive, etc.
Motion, limit of, V. 125; motion *from*, V. 126.

N

Natural gender, rules for, III, 47.
-ne (enclitic), V. 34, fn.; used in questions, V. 34, i; 35, i.
nē, with negative purpose, V. 24, 28, 1; with verbs of fearing, V. 133; with *dum* in clauses of proviso, V. 67; with imperative or subjunctive to express prohibitions, etc., V. 132-135; with clauses of concession, V. 134.
nē ... quidem, V. 4, *f*.
Necessity, how expressed, V. 141.
Negatives, position of, V. 4, *f*.
nēmō, declension of, III. 54, *c*.
nēve and **neu**, V. 28, ii.
Neuter adjectives used substantively with the partitive genitive, V. 86, i.; as cognate accusatives, V. 72.
nisi, in conditional clauses, V. 64, iii.; ablative absolute, V. 50, iv.; with single words, V. 44, iii.
nōlī (nōlīte), with infinitive, to express prohibitions, V. 133.
nōlō, conjugation of, III. 43.
Nominative cases, III. i., fn.
nōn quod, nōn quia, with subjunctive, V. 147, iii.
nōnne, force of, V. 34, i.
noster, nostrī, nostrum, use of, III. 62, *a*.
Noun clauses, different forms of the, V. 194-199.
Nouns, declension of, III. 1-9; 48-56.
num, force of, V. 34, i.; in dependent questions, V. 35, i.
Numeral adverbs, III. 61, *d*.
Numerals, III. 15, 16; 61; method of combining, III. 61, *a*.

O

Object, direct, V. 69; indirect, V. 77, 78; noun clauses used as objects, V. 194-199.
Objective genitive, V. 85; with adjectives, V. 90.
Oblique cases, III. 1, fn.
ōdī, conjugation of, III. 72, *b*.
oportet, uses of, 140, *b*.
Optative use of subjunctive, V. 135.
Ōrātiō obliqua, see Indirect narration.
Order of words, V. 1-4; of clauses, V. 5-9; 204.
Ordinal numerals, list of, III. 15; declension of, III. 16.

P

Participial phrases, value of, V. 43, 48; position of, V. 7.
Participles, formation of, III. 33, 34; use of, V. 40-44; 45-50; 118-124; with force of substantives, V. 205, *g*; case endings of present participle, III. 58, *c*.

Partitive genitive, V. 86.
Passive voice, inflection of, III. 28, 30, 32, 34, 38; impersonal use of, V. 56, 57.
paterfamiliās, declension of, III. 9.
Perfect tense, uses of, V. 182; perfect participle with *habeō*, V. 182, *c*, ii.; perfect participle with *fuī*, *fueram*, *fuerō*, V. 182, *c*, i.
Periodic structure, V. 9; 204.
Periphrastic conjugations, III. 69; V. 120, 124; indicative of, in apodosis, V. 64, i.
Permission, how expressed, V. 143.
Personal construction of *verba sentiendī et dēclārandī*, V. 18, vii.
Personal pronouns, declension of, III. 18, 19, 20, 22, 62; peculiar forms of, III. 62, *c*; uses of, V. 157.
Phraseology, differences between English and Latin, V. 203.
Place, *from which*, V. 126; *in which*, V. 127; *to which*, V. 125.
Pluperfect tense, uses of, V. 183.
Plural, nouns with special meaning in, III. 53, *c*, *d*.
plūs, declension of, III. 12.
Possession, dative of, V. 80, *c*.
Possessive genitive, V. 88.
Possessive pronouns (adjectives), III. 21; 62, *a*; uses of, V. 165.
possum, conjugation of, III. 42, 70; use of, V. 142.
Potential subjunctive, V. 136.
Predicate noun, V. 12, *c*; adjective, V. 12, *b*; genitive, V. 83, i.; 86, v.; 87, iii.; dative, V. 148, i.; accusative, V. 69, v.; ablative, V. 55, v.; 105, i.
Prepositions, with accusative, V. 70; with ablative, V. 108; construction with verbs compounded with prepositions, V. 78, v.
Present tense, uses of, V. 179.
Price, genitive of, V. 88; ablative of, V. 100.
Primary tenses, V. 25; primary sequence, V. 25; 176; 187; 190, vi.
Principal parts of the verb, III. 65.
Priusquam, uses of, V. 156.
Prohibitions, how expressed, V. 133
Pronouns, see Personal, Relative, etc.
Pronunciation of Latin, page 1.
Protasis, V. 58.
Proviso, clauses of, V. 67.
Purpose, expressed by the subjunctive, V. 24-28; by supine after verb of motion, V. 116; by gerund and gerundive, V. 114, *a*, *c*; 119; dative of, V. 81.

Q

quaesō, conjugation of, III. 72, *f*.
Qualities, two, compared, V. 173.
Quality, genitive of, V. 87; ablative of, V. 105.
quam, with superlative, V. 174, i.; after comparatives, V. 98, iii.; with *ante* and *prius*, V. 156, i.
quamquam, in concessive clauses, V. 65, *a*; meaning *and yet*, V. 65, *a*, fn.
quamvīs, with subjunctive, V. 65, *c*; joined with single word, V. 66, ii.
Questions, direct and indirect, V. 34-39; in indirect discourse, V. 168, 1, *b*; deliberative questions, V. 134, *d*; rhetorical questions, V. 136, *b*.
qui, see Relative Pronoun.
quīdam, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 167, *c*.
quīn, with words of *doubting*, *preventing*, etc., V. 139; in relative clauses of characteristic, V. 33, ii.
quis, indefinite, declension of, III. 26; 64, *c*; uses of, V. 166, *a*.
quisquam, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 166, *b*.
quisque, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 169, *a*.
quīvīs, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 166, *c*.
quō, with clauses of purpose, V. 28, iii.
quod (conjunction), V. 145-147; introducing noun clauses, V. 198.
quōminus, use of, V. 139.

R

Reciprocal relation, how expressed, III. 62, *c*.
Reference, dative of, V. 80, *b*.
rēfert, construction with, V. 53.
Reflexive pronoun, declension of, III, 20; peculiar forms of, III. 62, *c*; of first and second person, III. 62, *d*; uses of, V. 164; verbs, V. 69, vii.
Relative clauses, ordinary, V. 170-174; of purpose, V. 26; of characteristic, V. 32; causal, V. 171; concessive, V. 171.
Relative pronouns, declension of, III. 24; 64; uses of, V. 170-174; peculiar forms of, III. 64, *a*.
rēspūblica, declension of, III. 9.
Result, clauses of, V. 29-33.

S

Saying, construction with verbs of, V. 14-18; used personally in the passive, V. 18, vii.
sē, declension of, III. 20; uses and reference of, V. 16, *a*; 164.
Secondary tenses, V. 25; secondary sequence, V. 25, 176, 187.
Semi-deponents, III, 68, *c*.
Sense construction, V. 13, N.B.
Separation, ablative of, V. 93; dative with verbs of, V. 80, *a*.
Sequence of tenses, V. 25, 176, 187, 190, vi.
Should, different values and ways of translating, V. 144.
sī, with conditional clauses, V. 58-63.
Source, ablative of, V. 95.
Space, accusative of extent of, V. 128.

Specification, accusative of, V. 73; ablative of, V. 102.
Stem, nature of, III. 48; fn. 1.
Stems of the five declensions, III. 48, *a*; 49, *a*; 50, *a*; 51, *a*; 52, *a*; present, perfect and supine stems of verbs, III. 65.
Structure of sentences in Latin, V. 1-9; 204.
Subject, agreement of verb with, V. 12, *a*; subject of infinitive, V. 109; of historical infinitive, V. 112; noun clauses used as subjects, V. 194-199.
Subjective genitive, V. 84.
Subjunctive mood, inflection of, III. 29, 30; in principal clauses, V. 134-136; in clauses of purpose, V. 24-27; of result, V. 29-32; in dependent questions, V. 35; in conditional clauses, V. 61, 63; in concessive clauses, V. 65; in conditional clauses of comparison, V. 68; with verbs of *fearing*, V. 138; with *quin* and *quōminus*, V. 139; with *quod*, V. 147; with *cum*, V. 148, 151; with *dōnec*, *quoad*, V. 67; 155; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, V. 156; with *quī*, V. 27; 32; 171; in indirect discourse, V. 175; 186; of virtual indirect narration, V. 177; by attraction, V. 177, i.
Substantival use of infinitive, V. 109-111.
Substantive clauses, V. 27; 31; 194-199.
sum, conjugation of, III. 41; peculiar forms of, III. 70; compounds of, III. 70.
sunt quī, with clause of characteristic, V. 32, i.; 167, *d*.
Supine, formation of, III. 36; uses of, V. 115-117.
Syllabication, page 2.
Syncopated verb forms, III. 66, *a*.

T

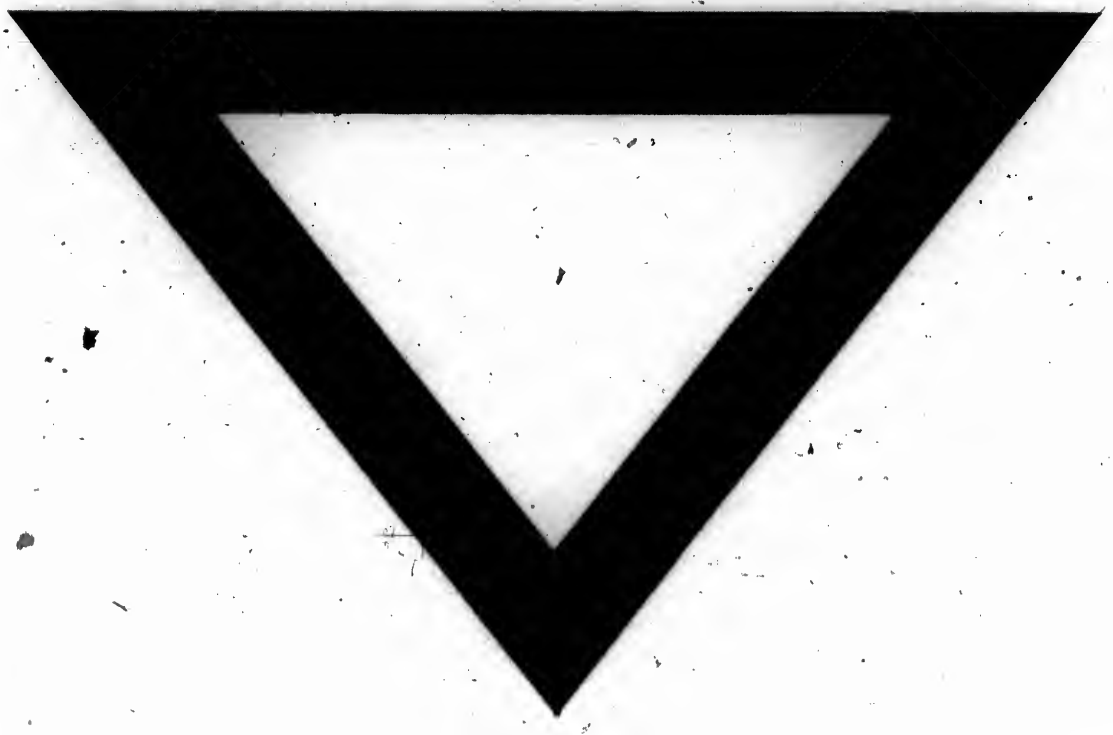
Temporal clauses, V. 149-156.
Tenses of the indicative, V. 178-184; of the infinitive, V. 15; 110, ii.; of participles, V. 41; 123; of the subjunctive, see under the various kinds of subjunctive; in indirect narration, V. 187.
Third declension, accusative in *im*, ablative in *ī*, genitive plural in *ium*, neuter plural in *ia*, III. 50, *b*.
Time, duration of, V. 129; time *when*, V. 130; time *within which*, V. 131.
trāns, compounds of, with two accusatives, V. 69, iv.

U

ubi, with perfect indicative, V. 152, *b*; with subjunctive in relative clause of purpose, V. 26.
ūllus, declension of, III. 14; uses of, V. 166, *b*.
ūnus, declension of, III. 14.
ut (utī), to denote concession, V. 134; in final clauses, V. 24, 27; in consecutive clauses, V. 29, 31; substantive clauses introduced by, V. 196, 197; in temporal clauses, V. 152, *b*; omission after certain verbs, V. 28, vi.
uterque, declension of, III. 26; use of, V. 169.
utinam, use of, V. 135.
ūtor, with ablative, V. 54; with two ablatives, V. 55, v.; gerundive of, used impersonally, V. 57, fn.; gerundive of, used personally, V. 119, ii.
utrum....an, V. 38.

V

Value, genitive of, V. 88; ablative of, V. 100.
Verba sentiendī et dēclārandī, construction of, V. 14-18; personal construction in passive, V. 18, vii.
Verbal adjectives, with genitive, V. 90, i.; gerundive, V. 118-121; participles, V. 40-44, 45 50, 122-124.
Verbal nouns, infinitive, V. 109-112; gerund, V. 113, 114; supine, V. 115-117.
Verbs, conjugation of, III. 27-46; principal parts of, III. 65; deponent, III. 40; 68; semi-deponent, III. 68, *c*; defective, III. 72; impersonal, III. 73; irregular forms, III. 66; position of, V. 2, 3, 4, *g*; agreement of finite verb with subject, V. 12, *a*; genitive with, V. 53; 91; dative with, V. 52; 78, v.; ablative with, 54; 167, ii.
vester, vestrī, vestrum, use of, III. 62, *a*.
videor, used personally, V. 18, vii.
Virtual indirect narration, V. 177.
vīs, declension of, III. 9.
Vocative case, III. 1, fn.
volō, conjugation of, III. 43; constructions with, V. 20, 21, 22, v.; 136.

W

Wish, how expressed, V. 135.
Would, different values and ways of translating, V. 137.